



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

Edw. T 918.98.745



Harvard College Library

THE GIFT OF
GINN AND COMPANY
DECEMBER 26, 1923



3 2044 097 078 232





A
JUNIOR LATIN BOOK

WITH
NOTES, EXERCISES, AND VOCABULARY

BY
JOHN C. ROLFE, PH.D.
AND
WALTER DENNISON, PH.D.
UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGAN

Boston
ALLYN AND BACON
1898

Educ. T 918. 98-745-
✓

**COPYRIGHT, 1898, BY
JOHN C. ROLFE AND
WALTER DENNISON.**

**Norwood Press
J. S. Cushing & Co. - Berwick & Smith
Norwood Mass. U.S.A.**

123
27
—
86

PREFACE

THIS book has been prepared in answer to the demand of a large number of teachers throughout the country, who wish a substitute for the four books of Caesar's *Gallic War*, which are required for admission to most colleges. The *Fables* and the *Roman History* have been taken from Jacobs and Döring's *Lateinisches Elementarbuch*, with a few unimportant changes. The *Fables* are really not so easy Latin as the *Roman History* which follows them, but on account of their brevity and familiarity are favorites with many teachers. They may be omitted, if desired, and the *Roman History* has been annotated without reference to them. In the selections from *Viri Romae* and *Nepos* we have used the text of my editions, and in the two books of Caesar's *Gallic War* Professor Kelsey's text has been followed. For the plan of the EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION INTO LATIN, see p. 315.

We are under great obligations to Professor Kelsey for permission to make use of the introduction, text, notes, and vocabulary of his *Caesar*.

JOHN C. ROLFE.

ANN ARBOR, MICHIGAN, 1898.

CONTENTS.

	PAGE
INTRODUCTION.	
I. The Fables, The Roman History, Viri Romae	1
II. The Life and Works of Cornelius Nepos	3
III. Introduction to the Selections from Caesar's Gallic War.	
1. The Roman Art of War in the Time of Caesar	9
2. The Theatre of the Gallic War	25
 TEXT.	
FABLES	27
ROMAN HISTORY	30
VIRI ROMÆ.	
I. Gaius Iulius Caesar	53
II. Marcus Tullius Cicerō	61
III. Caesar Octaviānus Augustus	67
 CORNELIUS NEPOS.	
I. Miltiadēs	75
II. Themistoclēs	81
III. Pausaniās	89
IV. Epaminōndās	93
V. Hamilcar	100
VI. Hannibal	102
VII. Catō	111
 CAESAR'S GALLIC WAR.	
Book I.	114
Book II.	151

	PAGE
RULES FOR THE PRONUNCIATION OF PROPER NAMES	171
HINTS TO THE PUPIL	173
NOTES	175
EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION INTO LATIN	315
VOCABULARY.	

MAPS.

Imperium Romanum	<i>Frontispiece</i>
	FACING PAGE
Ancient Italy	30
Rome and Environs	53
Graecia cum Insulis et Oris Maris Aegaei	75
Asia Citerior	93
Gallia	114

PLANS.

I. Caesar's Line of Works along the Rhone below Geneva	117
II. The Battle with the Helvetii	129
III. The Battle between Caesar and Ariovistus	148
IV. The Battle at the Aisne	154
V. The Battle at the Sambre	161
VI. The Siege of the Stronghold of the Aduatuci	166

INTRODUCTION.

I. THE FABLES, THE ROMAN HISTORY, VIRI ROMAE.

The FABLES are a prose paraphrase, dating from the Middle Ages, of the various metrical versions of the so-called Aesopian fables. Of Aesop himself but little is known. He appears to have lived in the early part of the sixth century before the Christian era, and to have been a slave by birth. Upon gaining his freedom he was sent by Croesus, the famous Lydian king, to distribute a sum of money among the people of Delphi. When the Delphians objected to the principle of division, Aesop refused to give them the money, whereupon they took vengeance upon him by throwing him over a precipice. The details of his history are obscure and mythical, and his very existence has been called in question.

The ROMAN HISTORY is simplified Latin, based for the most part upon the texts of Livy and Eutropius.

The legends of the founding of Rome and of the reigns of the seven kings, although believed in by the Romans themselves, and generally accepted in modern times until the publication of the first volume of Niebuhr's *History of Rome*, in 1811, cannot be accepted as history. They are largely *aetiological*, that is, many of the stories have been invented to explain

customs and institutions which were already in existence at the beginning of the historical period; and many of them may be traced to Greek sources. The dates were traditional with the Romans themselves, and are not to be relied on. According to Lewis (*On the Credibility of Early Roman History*), a trustworthy history of Rome does not begin until the war with Pyrrhus. In this statement he undoubtedly goes too far; but the history of the period before the destruction of the city by the Gauls in 390 B.C., while it narrates some historical facts, cannot be accepted as genuine in the form in which it has come down to us.

For an excellent discussion of the historical value of these legends, see Ihne's *Early Rome*.

The VIRI ROMÆ was compiled by Charles François Lhomond, Professor Emeritus of the University of Paris, who lived from 1727 to 1794. Lhomond was an enthusiastic teacher of younger pupils, and refused many brilliant positions in order to devote himself to his chosen work. His VIRI ROMÆ was a labor of love, especially designed to meet the difficulties of the early stages of Latin study. It is not manufactured Latin, but a compilation from Cicero, Livy, Valerius Maximus, and other Roman writers. In his preface he tells us that he shortened sentences which were too long, and slightly changed the order of the Latin words in some cases; that in the selection of his material he aimed to stimulate the curiosity and influence the character of his pupils by giving the preference to acts of valor, of mercy, of unselfishness, of nobility of character, and of kindness.

The text used in this book is that of the tenth edition of C. Holzer (Stuttgart, 1889), with a few changes in orthography and punctuation. Holzer revised Lhomond's original text by following more closely the phraseology of the Latin authors from whom the selections are made. He also omitted some passages and inserted others, mainly interesting anecdotes.

II. THE LIFE AND WORKS OF CORNELIUS NEPOS.

I. LIFE OF NEPOS.

Cornelius Nepos was born in Cisalpine Gaul, the native country of Catullus, Virgil, and Livy. The elder Pliny speaks of him as *Padī accola*; and since we know that he was a native of that part of Cisalpine Gaul which was called Insubria, it has been assumed with considerable probability that his birth-place was Ticinum, the modern Pavia.

The dates of his birth and death are not certainly known, but he appears to have lived from 99 to 24 B.C. We know that he survived Atticus, who died in 32 B.C., and that he lived to a good old age. His *praenōmen* is unknown.

Nepos took up his residence at Rome early in life. He seems to have had an independent fortune and to have devoted his whole attention to literary pursuits. He took no part in politics; at least, we know from one of Pliny's letters that he was not of senatorial rank, and therefore that he had not held even a quaestorship.

He was on terms of intimacy with Cicero, Atticus, and Catullus. Catullus dedicated his book of poems to Nepos in the following complimentary lines:

Cui dono lepidum novum libellum
Arido modo pumice expolitum?
Corneli, tibi; namque tu solebas
Meas esse aliquid putare nugas,
Iam tum cum ausus es unus Italarum
Omne aevum tribus explicare chartis,
Doctis, Iuppiter, et laboriosis!
Quare habe tibi quidquid hoc libelli
Qualecumque, quod, o patrona virgo,
Plus uno maneat perenne saeclo.¹

¹ Translated as follows by Theodore Martin, "The Poems of Catullus, Translated into English Verse," Edinburgh and London, 1875:

II. THE WORKS OF NEPOS.

Nepos was a prolific writer in several different departments of literature. Most of his works have been lost and are known to us only through references to them by other writers. They included the following :

1. *Love poems*, spoken of by the younger Pliny in the letter mentioned above.

2. *Chronica*, referred to by Catullus in his dedication to Nepos. This work comprised in three books an outline of the world's history from the earliest times until the author's own day. It was probably, like the *Annālēs* of Atticus, of a chronological character.

3. *Exempla*, a moral treatise in at least five books, drawing a comparison between the manners and customs of early Rome and those of his own day.

4. *A Life of Cato*, mentioned by Nepos himself.

5. *A Life of Cicero*, a panegyric, apparently composed after the death of the orator.

6. *A Treatise on Geography*, of which little or nothing is known.

7. *Dē Virīs Illūstribus*, his last and greatest work. This consisted of at least sixteen books. He arranged his biographies in classes or groups, giving two books to each class. The first book of every class included the distinguished men of foreign nations, mostly of Greece ; while the second treated

Whom shall I give this pretty little book to,
 New and fresh from the polish of the grit-stone ?
 Thee, Cornelius ! For often thou hast said, these
 Trifles of mine were not without their merit —
 Thou, who hast dared, alone of all Italians,
 This world's tale in volumes three to trace out ;
 Jove ! What research, what marvels there of learning !
 Therefore, such as it is, this little booklet,
 Take, friend ; and then, oh tutelary Virgin,
 Centuries to come may find it still surviving.

those of Rome. The following outline of Nipperdey, though open to question in some particulars, gives a good idea of the scope and arrangement of the work :

- I. *Dē Rēgibus Exterārum Gentium.*
- II. *Dē Rēgibus Rōmānōrum.*
- III. *Dē Excellentibus Ducibus Exterārum Gentium.*
- IV. *Dē Excellentibus Ducibus Rōmānōrum.*
- V. *Dē Iūris Cōsultis Graecis.*
- VI. *Dē Iūris Cōsultis Rōmānis.*
- VII. *Dē Ōrātōribus Graecis.*
- VIII. *Dē Ōrātōribus Rōmānis.*
- IX. *Dē Poētis Graecis.*
- X. *Dē Poētis Latīnis.*
- XI. *Dē Historicis Graecis.*
- XII. *Dē Historicis Latīnis.*
- XIII. *Dē Philosophis Graecis.*
- XIV. *Dē Philosophis Latīnis.*
- XV. *Dē Grammaticis Graecis.*
- XVI. *Dē Grammaticis Latīnis.*

Of this work we have the entire book *Dē Excellentibus Ducibus Exterārum Gentium*, and two lives from the book *Dē Historicis Latīnis*. The former was for a long time believed to be the work of Aemilius Probus, a grammarian of the time of Theodosius, on account of an epigram of his which appears in the manuscripts after the life of Hannibal. In this epigram Probus dedicates a work to Theodosius, which was assumed to be the collection of biographies which preceded it. That view is now generally rejected and is altogether untenable, especially on stylistic grounds.

III. HIS STYLE.

The style of Nepos is simple and pleasing. His vocabulary is limited, and he expresses himself as a rule in short sentences. When he occasionally attempts longer periods, it is evident that he is not at home in them. He shows considerable skill and taste in the order of his words. He is sometimes careless,

especially in the omission of pronouns, but as a rule is very clear.

Although he was a contemporary of Caesar, his Latinity is not so strictly classical as that of the author of the *Commentaries*. He is not free from archaism and colloquialisms, and his language sometimes has a poetic coloring which reminds one of Livy.

The deviations of Nepos from classical usage have been unduly exaggerated by those who have endeavored to prove that Probus was the author of the *Lives*. Many of his irregularities may be paralleled in Caesar and Cicero, and still more in Livy. As Nipperdey says, we must remember that Caesar and Cicero represent the highest literary perfection of their time; a period which includes Varro, and the writers of the *Bellum Africānum* and *Bellum Hispāniēse*, also has room for a stylist like Cornelius Nepos. His Latin is pure enough to prove beyond question that the *Lives* could have been written only in the Classical Period.

Since it is desirable that beginners in Latin writing use only regular constructions, the important deviations of Nepos from good classical usage are pointed out in the *NOTES*.

IV. NEPOS AS A HISTORIAN.

As history the work of Nepos is not of great value. His list of generals is not remarkably well chosen, for we miss some great names, such as Brasidas, Aratos, Philopoemen, and Cleomenes; and the space allotted to each is by no means proportionate to the importance of the subject of the biography. Nepos is inclined to exaggeration, and he lacks the critical faculty. It has been said that his work does more credit to his heart than to his head, and this is notably the case in his biography of his friend Atticus.

For his lives of generals of foreign nations he had an abundance of good authorities at his command, many of whom he

mentions by name; but he seems not always to have chosen wisely among them, and sometimes to have misunderstood them. He is careless in details: his chronology is confused, he makes mistakes in history and geography, and his work is marred by contradictions and omissions. On the other hand, he touches on most points of interest in Grecian history, and for that reason, as well as on account of their simple style, the *Lives* are well adapted for use as a school text-book. Some allowance should be made for his shortcomings in view of the fact, that in his day the Romans were just beginning to cultivate the writing of history as an art; and because he was the first Roman writer to treat the history of foreign nations.

V. HIS SOURCES.

The authorities whom Nepos cites, or appears to have consulted, are the following:

1. *Herodotus*, the 'father of history' (about 484 to 425 B.C.). His *History* gives an account of the struggle between the Greeks and Persians, with numerous digressions in which the history of other nations is treated. Nepos does not mention Herodotus, and although he sometimes agrees with the *History*, it is by no means certain that he consulted it at all. In his life of Miltiades he is at variance with Herodotus in several details.

2. *Thucydides* (about 455 to 400 B.C.) undertook a *History of the Peloponnesian War*, of which eight books, describing the course of events until 411 B.C., were completed. Nepos cites Thucydides in his life of Themistocles, and says that he followed him in preference to 'many other writers' whom he consulted; but he differs from him in several particulars. In his lives of Pausanias, Cimon, and Alcibiades, Nepos follows Thucydides more closely, but he does not appear on the whole to have recognized the importance of the *Peloponnesian War* as an authority.

3. *Xenophon* (from about 434 until after 359 B.C.). His *Hellenica*, in seven books, narrates the history of Greece from 411 B.C. — at which point the work of Thucydides ends — until the battle of Mantinea in 362 B.C. This work Nepos seems not to have consulted; he is in direct conflict with it in several of his lives.

4. *Philistus*, of Syracuse, a contemporary of the Dionysii, is mentioned by Nepos in his life of Dion, and may very likely have been one of his authorities.

5. *Ephorus*, of Cyme in Aeolia (died about 340 B.C.). He wrote the first *Universal History of Greece*, in thirty-eight books, beginning with the return of the Heracleidae and ending with the siege of Perinthus in 340 B.C. Nepos does not mention Ephorus, but his work, which was widely read, although of secondary value as an authority, seems to have been one of our author's chief sources of information.

6. *Theopompus*, of Chios (born about 380 B.C.). He wrote the *Hellenica*, in twelve books, which was, like the *Hellenica* of Xenophon, a continuation of the work of Thucydides, covering the period from 410 B.C. until the battle of Cnidos in 394 B.C.; and also the *Philippica*, in fifty-eight books, a history of the reign of Philip of Macedon, but with numerous digressions, in the course of one of which he devoted three books to the history of Sicily. Theopompus seems to have lacked the impartiality which should characterize the historian. Nepos, who cites him, calls him *maledicentissimus scriptor*, and Polybius censures his partiality in his account of King Philip. He was, however, a valuable authority, and was much used by Nepos.

7. *Timaëus*, of Tauromenium in Sicily (about 352 to 256 B.C.). He wrote a *History of Sicily*, in thirty-eight books, from the earliest times until 246 B.C., with numerous digressions. He was a careful historian, and a good authority, but had the same failing as Theopompus; Nepos couples him with Theopompus as a *maledicentissimus scriptor*, and among the Greeks he was

known as 'Ἐπιτίματος, 'the Carper.' Our author seems to have made considerable use of Timaeus in his lives of Alcibiades, Dion, and Timoleon.

8. *Dion* wrote a *History of Persia* down to 340 B.C., which Nepos cites as of great value.

9. *Polybius*, of Megalopolis (205 to 134 B.C.), one of the very best Greek historians. His *Universal History*, in forty books, seems to have been the chief authority for the lives of Hamilcar and Hannibal, although Nepos does not always agree with him.

In some of his lives Nepos makes statements which are not supported by any of our authorities, and must have been derived from some unknown source. In his life of Epaminondas, he says that 'very many writers' wrote biographies of illustrious men, and these he very probably had before him.

Two well known writers of later times to some extent described the same events, and used the same sources as Nepos. These are *Diodorus Siculus*, who in the time of Augustus wrote a *Universal History* in forty books; and *Plutarch* (46–120 A.D.), from whom we have forty-six *Parallel Lives* of illustrious Greeks and Romans. With these writers Nepos is frequently in conflict, although sometimes he agrees with them against the testimony of the earlier authorities.

III. INTRODUCTION TO THE SELECTIONS FROM CAESAR'S GALLIC WAR.¹

I. THE ROMAN ART OF WAR IN CAESAR'S TIME.

I. COMPOSITION OF THE ARMY.

1. **The legion.** — The strength of the Roman army lay in the legions (*legiōnēs*). These in Caesar's time were composed exclusively of Roman citizens, brought into the service by means

¹ For the life of Caesar see *Viri Romae*, Selection I., p. 53.

of levies (*dilēctūs*), which were now held in other parts of Italy as well as in Rome. Conscription was no longer limited to the higher classes, and those who had means could employ substitutes; probably the legionary soldiers (*legiōnārii milites*, or simply *milites*) of Caesar were mainly volunteers, who were willing to enlist for the regular term of twenty years on account of the certainty of the pay, and of provision for their old age in case they lived beyond the period of service. Citizens were liable to be called out at any time between the ages of seventeen and forty-six; Romans of the upper classes who wished to serve in the army, or found themselves unable to evade conscription, were employed as officers, or attached to the body-guard of the commander.

The number of men in a legion varied according to circumstances; for the killed or disabled were not replaced by recruits enrolled in the same legion, but when an accession of strength was received, either new legions were formed, or the recruits were placed in a separate corps. The longer a legion remained in service the smaller it became. The normal strength of a legion at the end of the Republic was 6000 men; but the average number of men in Caesar's legions probably did not exceed 3600. The legion was divided into ten cohorts (*cohorts*), averaging, in Caesar's army, about 360 men each; the cohort was divided into three maniples (*manipuli*) of 120 men; the maniples into two centuries (*ordinēs*). In legions having a full complement of men each century would contain 100; in Caesar's army the number could hardly have averaged more than 60.

The legions that had seen long service (not less than nine or ten years), were called 'veteran' (*legiōnēs veterānae*); the rest, 'last levied,' or raw (*legiōnēs proximē cōscriptae*, or *legiōnēs novum*). The different legions were designated by number. In the first year of the Gallic War Caesar had four veteran legions, numbered vii., viii., ix. (these three apparently brought from the vicinity of Aquileia), and x., the last

mentioned having been in 'the Province' at the time of his arrival; after he learned that the Helvetians proposed to go through the country of the Sequani and Aedui, he hastily raised two legions in Cisalpine Gaul, which were numbered XI. and XII. With these six legions he gained two of his most brilliant victories, over the Helvetians and over Ariovistus.

2. **The infantry auxiliaries.** — Besides the legions, a Roman army contained bodies of infantry and cavalry drawn from allied and subject peoples, or hired outright from independent nations (*auxilia*). These in some cases retained their native dress, equipment, and mode of fighting, in others were armed and trained after the Roman fashion. To the former class belong the light-armed troops (*militēs levis armātūrae*), including especially the slingers and bowmen. In the Gallic War Caesar availed himself of the help of slingers from the Balearic Islands, bowmen from Crete and from Numidia, and light-armed German troops. He utilized also contingents from Illyricum and from the Gallic States that he subdued. In 52 B.C. he had a force of 10,000 Aeduans. Caesar, as other Roman writers, is generally not careful to state the exact number of the auxiliary troops; they were regarded as relatively unimportant. The officers of the auxiliaries, both infantry and cavalry, were Romans.

3. **The cavalry.** — In the early organization of the Roman army a troop of cavalry accompanied each legion. While the evidence is not conclusive, it is probable that Caesar had contingents of cavalry in connection with his legions, averaging 200 to 300 men each. These horsemen were foreigners, serving for pay; they were drawn from Spain, from Germany, and from Gaul. Apart from the legionary contingents, Caesar had a force of cavalry raised from the Gallic States subject or friendly to Rome, which was reckoned as a single body, numbering under ordinary circumstances about 4000 men.

The cavalry was divided into squads (*turmae*), of about

of levies (*dilēctūs*), which were now held in other parts of Italy as well as in Rome. Conscription was no longer limited to the higher classes, and those who had means could employ substitutes; probably the legionary soldiers (*legiōnārii milītēs*, or simply *milītēs*) of Caesar were mainly volunteers, who were willing to enlist for the regular term of twenty years on account of the certainty of the pay, and of provision for their old age in case they lived beyond the period of service. Citizens were liable to be called out at any time between the ages of seventeen and forty-six; Romans of the upper classes who wished to serve in the army, or found themselves unable to evade conscription, were employed as officers, or attached to the body-guard of the commander.

The number of men in a legion varied according to circumstances; for the killed or disabled were not replaced by recruits enrolled in the same legion, but when an accession of strength was received, either new legions were formed, or the recruits were placed in a separate corps. The longer a legion remained in service the smaller it became. The normal strength of a legion at the end of the Republic was 6000 men; but the average number of men in Caesar's legions probably did not exceed 3600. The legion was divided into ten cohorts (*cohortēs*), averaging, in Caesar's army, about 360 men each; the cohort was divided into three maniples (*manipulī*) of 120 men; the maniples into two centuries (*ordinēs*). In legions having a full complement of men each century would contain 100; in Caesar's army the number could hardly have averaged more than 60.

The legions that had seen long service (not less than nine or ten years), were called 'veteran' (*legiōnēs veterānae*); the rest, 'last levied,' or raw (*legiōnēs proximē cōscriptae*, or *legiōnēs tīrōnum*). The different legions were designated by number. In the first year of the Gallic War Caesar had four veteran legions, numbered VII., VIII., IX. (these three apparently brought from the vicinity of Aquileia), and X., the last

mentioned having been in 'the Province' at the time of his arrival; after he learned that the Helvetians proposed to go through the country of the Sequani and Aedui, he hastily raised two legions in Cisalpine Gaul, which were numbered xi. and xii. With these six legions he gained two of his most brilliant victories, over the Helvetians and over Ariovistus.

2. **The infantry auxiliaries.** — Besides the legions, a Roman army contained bodies of infantry and cavalry drawn from allied and subject peoples, or hired outright from independent nations (*auxilia*). These in some cases retained their native dress, equipment, and mode of fighting, in others were armed and trained after the Roman fashion. To the former class belong the light-armed troops (*militēs levis armātūrae*), including especially the slingers and bowmen. In the Gallic War Caesar availed himself of the help of slingers from the Balearic Islands, bowmen from Crete and from Numidia, and light-armed German troops. He utilized also contingents from Illyricum and from the Gallic States that he subdued. In 52 B.C. he had a force of 10,000 Aeduans. Caesar, as other Roman writers, is generally not careful to state the exact number of the auxiliary troops; they were regarded as relatively unimportant. The officers of the auxiliaries, both infantry and cavalry, were Romans.

3. **The cavalry.** — In the early organization of the Roman army a troop of cavalry accompanied each legion. While the evidence is not conclusive, it is probable that Caesar had contingents of cavalry in connection with his legions, averaging 200 to 300 men each. These horsemen were foreigners, serving for pay; they were drawn from Spain, from Germany, and from Gaul. Apart from the legionary contingents, Caesar had a force of cavalry raised from the Gallic States subject or friendly to Rome, which was reckoned as a single body, numbering under ordinary circumstances about 4000 men.

The cavalry was divided into squads (*turmae*), of about

30 horsemen. Probably the squad contained three decuries (*decuriae*), of 10 men each, under the command of decurions (*decuriōnēs*). The higher officers were called cavalry prefects (*praefecti equitum*).

4. **The non-combatants.**—Of these there were two classes, slaves employed for menial services, and free men, or freedmen. In the former class were included the officers' servants and tent-servants (*cālōnēs*), as well as the drivers and muleteers with the heavy baggage (*mūliōnēs*); to the latter, citizens or others who were allowed to accompany the army, but were obliged to find quarters outside of the camp, as the traders (*mercātōrēs*), and the camp-followers (*lixae*).

Artisans (*fabrī*) were not enrolled as a separate corps, but were drawn from the ranks of the legionary soldiers whenever needed.

5. **The baggage-train.**—The heavy baggage (*impedimenta*) comprised tents, hand-mills for grinding grain, artillery, extra weapons, and other military stores, as well as supplies of food. Each legion had a separate baggage-train. When accompanied by this on the march it was called 'encumbered' (*legiō impedita*); when without the baggage, 'unencumbered' (*expedita*). From the baggage of the legion, or heavy baggage, the baggage of the soldiers, carried in individual packs (*sarcinae*), should be carefully distinguished.

II. THE OFFICERS.

The general was technically called 'leader' (*dux*) until he had won a victory; after the first victory he had a right to the title *imperātor*, 'commander.' Caesar used this title from the time that he defeated the Helvetii (B.C. 58) until his death.

Next in rank came the lieutenants (*lēgātī*), who were frequently placed by Caesar in command of separate legions, or of corps containing more than one legion. When acting in the absence of the general the lieutenant became 'lieutenant

in the general's place' (*légatus prō praetōre*), and exercised unusual authority. The quaestor was properly charged with the care of the military chest and of the supplies, but was sometimes clothed with purely military authority, and assumed the functions of a lieutenant. The quaestor and the lieutenants belonged to the staff of the general, and had with him the distinction of a body-guard (*cohors praetōria*), composed of picked soldiers and of young men of rank who wished to acquire military experience.

The military tribunes (*tribūnī militum*) numbered six to a legion. In earlier times these officers commanded the legion in turn. In Caesar's army they appear to have received appointment for personal rather than military reasons; as the command of the legions had been given over to the lieutenants, the military tribunes were intrusted with subordinate services, such as the leading of troops on the march, the command of detachments smaller than a legion, the securing of supplies, and the oversight of the watches. Only one military tribune (Gaius Volusenus) is mentioned by Caesar in terms of praise.

In marked contrast with the higher officers, who were of good social position, were the captains, or centurions (*centuriōnēs, ordinēs*). These were often of the humblest origin; they had been promoted from the ranks simply on account of bravery and military efficiency. At the drill, on the march, and in battle, they were at the same time the models and the leaders of the soldiers. As each century had a centurion, there were 60 in the legion. The first in rank was the first centurion of the first cohort (*primipilus*); but how the other centurions stood related in respect to authority, and what the order of promotion was, from present evidence it is impossible to determine.

Below the centurions, but ranking above the common soldiers, were the privileged soldiers, who were relieved from picket-duty as well as work on fortifications and other manual labor. Such were the veteran volunteers (*ēvocātī*), soldiers

who had served their full time but had reenlisted at the general's request; the orderlies (*beneficiarii*), who performed various services for the higher officers; the adjutants (*optiōnēs*), or substitutes chosen by the centurions; the musicians, and the standard-bearers.

III. PROVISIONING AND PAY OF THE SOLDIERS.

Caesar took every precaution to have ample supplies always at hand. The care of the stores was in the hands of the quaestor, with his staff. Not bread or flour, but grain (*frumentum*), usually wheat, was served out to the soldiers for rations. This they themselves ground with hand-mills (*molae manuālēs*) and prepared for food, by boiling into a paste or by making into bread without yeast. The grain was portioned out every fifteen days, and on the march each soldier carried his share in a sack. The amount furnished does not seem large when we reflect that the men lived almost exclusively on a vegetable diet. The allowance for the fifteen days was two Roman pecks (*modiū*), about half a bushel by our measure. As the weight of this was not far from thirty pounds, the soldier had about two pounds per day. On difficult or forced marches extra rations were served out.

Previous to Caesar's time the pay (*stipendium*) of the legionary soldier was 120 denarii per year, which amounted to about 6½ cents per day; the centurion received twice as much. At the beginning of the Civil War Caesar doubled this, so that the soldiers received (under the new coinage) 225 denarii a year, or about 12½ cents per day, the centurion 25 cents, not far from \$46 and \$92 per year respectively. Out of this sum the soldier had to provide for his own clothing and equipment, and other expenditures; but the purchasing power was much greater than that of an equivalent amount to-day.

In successful campaigns soldiers had a share of the booty (*praeda*), consisting largely of captives, who were sold as

slaves. These were bought up on the spot by the traders, and thus readily turned into cash.

At the close of his period of service (twenty years), or on reaching his fiftieth year, the soldier who had served well was entitled to an honorable discharge (*missiō honesta*), together with an allotment of land, or a payment of money, which under the Empire amounted to 3000 denarii. When released on account of sickness or wounds he received an invalid's discharge (*missiō causāria*). The general sometimes granted a discharge by favor (*missiō grātiōsa*). When convicted of cowardly or disgraceful conduct the soldier was deprived of his weapons and driven from camp, or in extreme cases put to death.

Regarding the pay of the higher officers and the auxiliaries definite information is not at hand.

IV. DRESS AND EQUIPMENT.

The legionary soldier wore a thick woollen undergarment reaching nearly to the knees (*tunica*). His cloak (*sagum*), which served also as a blanket, was likewise of undyed wool, and fastened by a clasp (*fībula*) on the right shoulder, so as not to impede the movement of the right arm. The soldier's half-boots (*caligae*) were much like a sandal, with heavy soles, held on by straps over the ankle. A uniform in the modern sense was unknown in antiquity. The cloak of the commander (*palūdāmentum*) differed from that of the soldier only in being more ample, of finer quality, and ornamented; it was ordinarily scarlet in color, and often fringed.

The weapons were of two kinds, defensive and offensive. As defensive weapons, the legionary soldier had :

1. A helmet of metal (*cassis* or *galea*), ornamented with a crest (*crista*).
2. A cuirass, or coat of mail (*lōrica*) of leather or of leather strengthened with strips of metal, or of metal, very strong and heavy.

3. A shield, ordinarily rectangular (*scūtum*), but in some cases probably oval (*clipeus*), made of two layers of boards fastened together, strengthened on the outside by layers of linen and of leather, and at the edges by a rim of metal.

His offensive weapons were :

1. A pike (*pilum*), a heavy and formidable javelin. It consisted of a square shaft of wood four feet long, into the end of which was carefully fitted a long iron point, suggestive of a bayonet, projecting two feet beyond the end of the wood. The weight of the whole was not far from ten or eleven pounds, about the same as that of the guns furnished by modern nations to their infantry. Pikes could be thrown only about 75 feet; but they were sent with such skill and force that the first hurling often decided the battle.
2. A sword, called 'Spanish' (*gladius Hispānus*) because made according to a pattern brought from Spain after the Second Punic War. The 'Spanish sword' was short, broad, two-edged, and pointed, better adapted for stabbing than for slashing, though used for both purposes.

The dress and equipment of the light-armed soldiers varied greatly, and our information on many points is incomplete. They, as well as the cavalry, seem generally to have had a round shield, about three feet in diameter (*parma*). The cavalry had light lances, or darts, for hurling (*trāgulae, tēla*), and a longer sword than that used by the infantry.

V. THE STANDARDS AND MUSICAL INSTRUMENTS.

The movements of the Roman army were directed largely by means of ensigns and of signals given on wind-instruments. While the ancient battle lacked the roar and smoke of cannon

and of smaller arms characteristic of modern engagements, great clouds of dust were raised and obscured the movements of the combatants; the standards were more numerous and had a relatively more important place than the flags of to-day.

The ensigns of Caesar's army were :

1. The legion-eagle (*aquila*) of silver, carried in battle on the end of a pole, and intrusted to the especial care of the first centurion (*primipilus*). In camp it was kept in a little shrine (*sacellum*). It was the standard of the legion as a whole, and its loss was the deepest disgrace that could be incurred. The bearer of the eagle was called *aquilifer*.
2. The standards (*signa*), one to each manipule. These seem to have manifested a considerable variety of detail. One type, known from a coin struck in 49 B.C., had small streamers attached to the end of the pole, underneath which were two half-moons (probably for good-luck), one just above the other; below these were two disks of metal (*phalerae*), no doubt presented to the manipule for meritorious conduct, and last of all a square piece of cloth (*vexillum*), indicating by a letter the place of the manipule. There was no separate standard for the cohort.
3. The banners (*vexilla*), rectangular flags of different sizes used for a variety of purposes. A large red *vexillum* was the especial ensign of the general. Smaller banners were used by special detachments not formed of regular manipules, or attached to the standards of the manipules.

The musical instruments were :

1. The trumpet (*tuba*), about three feet long, with a funnel-shaped opening; it had a deep tone.
2. The horn (*cornū*), a large curved instrument, with shriller note.

3. The shell-horn (*būcina*), an instrument having a slight resemblance to the large shells still in use about Naples as dinner-horns; it had a hoarse tone, apparently of a higher pitch than that of the trumpet, and was used especially in camp for giving the signals to change the watches.

As the maniples were the unit of military movement, signals were addressed to the standard-bearers (*signiferi*). The order 'to advance' or 'to retreat' was conveyed by the general to the trumpeters (*tubicinēs*; cf. Bel. Gal. ii. 20); their signal was taken up by the horn-blowers (*cornicinēs*), of whom there was one to each manipulus. The notes of the instruments could be heard above the din of battle much more clearly than the orders of the officers.

On the march the standard was at the front, in battle near the rear, of the manipulus. From the immediate association of the manipular standards with military movements arose several idiomatic expressions. Such are: *signa inferre*, 'to advance'; *signa referre*, 'to retreat'; *signa convertere*, 'to face about'; *signa efferre*, 'to leave camp'; *ad signa convenire*, 'to assemble.'

VI. THE ARMY ON THE MARCH.

Great attention was paid by Roman generals to the order and discipline of the march; but Caesar made his marches a strategic element of prime importance in determining the issues of war.

The army advanced ordinarily in three divisions. At the front (*primum agmen*) came the cavalry, with perhaps a division of light-armed troops, sent ahead to spy out the country, and in case of meeting an enemy, to hold him at bay until the rest of the army could prepare for action. Next came the main force, the arrangement of which varied according to circumstances; for while ordinarily each legion was accompanied by its baggage-train, when there was danger of attack

the legions marched in single column, with the baggage of the whole army united. The rear (*novissimum agmen*) might in case of danger be formed of one-fourth of the legionary force, the baggage being between the rear and the main body.

The regular day's march (*iustum iter*) was from six to seven hours long. The start was usually made at sunrise; but in special emergencies the army got under way at midnight, or two or three o'clock in the morning. The distance ordinarily traversed was about 16 English miles; on forced marches (*itinerā magna*) much greater distances were made, as 25 or 30 English miles. Caesar's forced marches were many in number, and manifested astonishing powers of endurance on the part of his soldiers.

On the march the soldier carried, besides his food-supply, his cooking utensils (*vāsa*), his arms, blanket, and one or two rampart stakes (*vāllī*). The luggage was done up in a tight bundle (*sarcinae*), which was fastened to a forked pole, and thus raised over the shoulder. This arrangement was introduced by Marius, in memory of whom soldiers so equipped were called "mules of Marius" (*mūlī Māriānī*). The helmet was hung by a cord from the neck, the other weapons disposed of in the most convenient way. When it rained, the oblong shields (*scūta*) could be put over the head like a roof. The entire weight of each legionary soldier's burden must have been at times as much as sixty pounds, — and still more than this when, on special service, rations were served out for an unusual period. The infantry of our day are not expected to carry more than forty pounds apiece. When preparing for battle the legionary soldiers freed themselves from their luggage, either leaving it in camp or depositing it in heaps in a guarded place.

VII. THE ARMY IN CAMP.

The Roman camp was laid out, fortified, and guarded with great care. Even when the army was to remain in a place but

a single night the same precautions were ordinarily taken as if a stay of weeks was intended. While the army was on the march, men were sent forward to choose a suitable location for a camp and measure it off (*castra mētārī*); whenever possible, a site was selected on a slight elevation (*locus superior*), with abundance of water and of wood for fuel near at hand. The proximity of a dense forest or overhanging mountain was avoided, that a favorable opportunity of attack might not be given to the enemy. When possible, the rear or one side was placed parallel with a river. The camp was usually square or oblong; in a few cases there were camps of other shapes, adapted to the nature of the ground.

First an embankment was thrown up on all sides. Outside of this was a trench, from which the earth for the embankment was taken. On the outer edge of the embankment a row of strong stakes or palisades (*vāllī*) was driven firmly in. The rampart thus made (*vāllum*) was several feet high and wide enough for the soldiers to stand on behind the palisades. The ditch (*fossa*) was from 12 to 18 feet wide, and from 7 to 10 feet deep. When the army expected to remain in the same place for a long time (*castra hiberna*, *castra stativa*), sometimes watch-towers were added at certain intervals, and the intervening spaces further protected by a roof. The labor of fortifying a camp was prodigious; the ease and quickness with which the work was done are a further evidence of the endurance of the Roman soldiers. The system was in every way productive of the best results. It lessened greatly the chances of successful night attacks by the enemy; and it made the army more independent, ready to stand wholly on the defensive if need be.

The camp had four gates. That in the direction of the advance, toward the enemy, was called the *porta praetōria*; the one opposite to this, at the rear, *porta decumāna*; those on the right and left side respectively, as one faced the front, *porta prīncipālis dextra* and *porta prīncipālis sinistra*. The last

two were connected by the chief street (*via principālis*). Inside the rampart, between it and the tents, a vacant space two hundred feet wide was left on all sides. The remaining room in the enclosure was systematically divided, so that every manipule, decuria, and body of light-armed troops knew its place and could find its quarters at once; but the details of the arrangement in Caesar's time are not known.

The tents were of leather. Each was calculated to hold ten men; but a centurion seems generally to have had more room to himself than the soldiers. In a hostile region a strong guard was always kept before the gates; and the entrances were made more easily defensible by an approach so arranged that an enemy attempting to enter would expose the right side, unprotected by a shield.

The night, from sunset to sunrise, was divided into four watches (*vigiliae*), numbered *prīma*, ending at 9 o'clock; *secunda*, ending at midnight; *tertia*, from midnight to 3 A.M.; and *quārta*, from 3 o'clock to sunrise. In the earlier times, and probably in Caesar's army, the password of the sentinels, different each night, was written on slips of wood, which were given by the commander to the military tribunes, and passed by these to the men on duty.

The winter-quarters (*hīberna*, or *castra hīberna*) were made more comfortable than the ordinary encampments, by the substitution of straw-thatched huts (*casae*) for tents. Many Roman camps became the nucleus of permanent settlements, which exist still in cities of to-day. In several towns which originated thus the plan of the Roman camp can be clearly seen in the arrangement of streets and the surrounding wall. A marked instance is the city of Chester, England, the name of which is derived from *castra*; so Rochester comes from *Rodolphī castra*, and all names of English towns ending in *-chester* point to Roman encampments.

VIII. THE ARMY IN BATTLE ARRAY.

When the Roman force was far outnumbered by the enemy, the legionary soldiers were arranged in a double line (*duplex aciēs*); or even in a single line (*simplex aciēs*). Under ordinary circumstances Caesar drew up his legions in a triple line (*triplex aciēs*), as in the battles with the Helvetii and with Ariovistus; probably also in the battles with the Belgae and the Nervii. Exactly what this arrangement was cannot be determined. The explanation which seems on the whole freest from objection is this:

Four cohorts of each legion stood in the first line; about 160 feet behind them stood three cohorts, the remaining three cohorts of the legion being posted farther back as a reserve. On the assumption that a legion contained the full quota of 6000 men, the first line of the *triplex aciēs* would have 2400 men, standing in 4 cohorts, or 12 maniples, 10 ranks deep; the second and third lines would each have 1800 men in 9 maniples of the same depth. The first rank of the legion would thus contain 240 men, and extend about 720 feet; by leaving intervals between legions six legions might be formed in a triple line of battle a mile or a mile and a half long. If a legion were of less than the normal size, the depth or front, perhaps both, would be correspondingly reduced; there is some reason for supposing that in Caesar's army the men stood 8 ranks deep. The soldiers in each battle-line stood about three feet apart each way. As the first line went into action the second followed closely behind; as the men of the first fell or withdrew exhausted, those of the second pressed forward and took their places; in case of need the third line advanced and in like manner relieved the combined first and second. At the battle with the Helvetii the whole third line faced about and repelled an attack on the rear.

When circumstances required it, soldiers were massed in serried ranks, as in a wedge-shaped column, or under a tortoise-

cover (see Vocab., *testūdō*). For defence sometimes a force was formed into a circle, corresponding with our hollow square.

The place of the light-armed troops and cavalry was ordinarily at first in front of the *triplex aciēs*, or on the wings. They opened the engagement by skirmishing, prevented flank movements of the enemy, drew the brunt of the attack if the legions wished to take another position, and were employed in various other ways as occasion demanded. The cavalry were utilized especially to cut down the fleeing.

IX. OPERATIONS AGAINST FORTIFIED PLACES.

The taking of walled towns was accomplished either by sudden storming without long preparation (*repentina oppugnātiō*); by siege-blockade (*obsidiō*, *obsessiō*), which aimed to repel all attempts of the enemy to escape, and to reduce him by starvation; or by siege (*longinqua oppugnātiō*), with the help of appliances to break down the enemy's fortifications and gain admission to the city.

The siege was begun by extending a line of works (*circumvallātiō*), in case the nature of the site allowed, entirely around the place to be reduced. Then a 'mole,' a high and wide embankment of timber and earth (*agger*), was begun just outside the reach of the enemy's weapons, gradually prolonged toward the city wall, and raised until at the front the top was on a level with the wall, or even higher. In the mole there were passageways through which the materials for the structure could be safely carried.

The workmen at the front were protected by movable breast-works (*plutei*), or by arbor-sheds (*vineae*), made of timber or of thick wickerwork, with raw-hides stretched over the outside as a protection against fire. Rows of arbor-sheds were placed along the sides of the mole to afford passageways to the front. Movable towers (*turrēs ambulatōriæ*), filled with soldiers, were brought up near the walls. The highest tower mentioned in the narrative of the Gallic War was of ten stories. In the

lowest story of the movable tower, or under a separate roof, was the battering-ram (*ariēs*), an enormous beam with a metallic head swung against the walls with terrific force.

For throwing heavy missiles the Romans had several kinds of artillery, called 'torsion-hurlers' (*tormenta*). Of these the most important were:

a. The catapult (*catapulta*) for shooting large arrows or darts. A small catapult is called 'scorpion' by Caesar.

b. The ballista (*ballista*), which cast stones, the trough being sharply inclined, while that of the catapult was more nearly horizontal.

The other operations of the siege varied according to circumstances. Where the ground allowed, the walls were undermined and tunnels run under the town. Meanwhile, of course, the besieged were not idle. Mines they met by counter-mines. With great hooks they tried to catch the head of the battering-ram and hold it, or let down masses of wood or wickerwork along the side of the wall to deaden the force of the blow, or drew the wall-hooks over into the city with windlasses. By frequent sallies (*ēruptiōnēs*) they endeavored to destroy the works of the besiegers, drove the workmen from their posts, and hurled firebrands into the sheds and towers. Owing to the amount of wood used the danger from fire was great. Sometimes even the mole was burned. When a breach had been made in the wall, or a gate battered down, an attack was begun wherever it was thought possible to force an entrance. The mole and towers were connected with the top of the wall by means of planks and beams thrown across. Detachments of soldiers, holding their oblong shields close together above their heads, formed a tortoise-cover, under which they marched up close to the walls and tried to scale them, or entered the breach. So carefully planned were their works, so powerful their military engines, and so irresistible their onset, that the Romans rarely failed to reduce a city which they had determined to take.

II. THE THEATRE OF THE GALLIC WAR.

I. GAUL.

The word *Gallia* was used by the Romans in three different ways. *a.* In its broadest sense it included *Gallia Cisalpina*, north Italy, and *Gallia Trānsalpina*, a vast region which comprised all of France, the greater part of Switzerland, and the western portion of Germany, with Holland and Belgium. *b.* In a narrower sense *Gallia* embraced only *Gallia Trānsalpina*. *c.* In its most restricted use *Gallia* was applied to the *land of the Galli*, the middle part of Gaul.

Transalpine Gaul, according to Caesar, falls into three parts: *a.* The land of the Belgae, in the northeast, between the Seine, the Marne, and the Rhine. *b.* The land of the Celtae, or Galli, in the central part between the Seine, the Marne, and the Garonne. *c.* The land of the Aquitani, in the south, between the Garonne and the Pyrenees. Besides these divisions, however, properly belonging to Gaul, but before Caesar's time already subject to the Romans, was 'the Province' (*prōvincia*) lying along the southeast coast, and extending for some distance back into the interior. See Map.

When Caesar came to Gaul he found the many states (*civitatēs*) constantly at war with one another, the stronger striving to extend their sway, the weaker to regain or maintain their independence. In each state usually there were two factions, each contending for the mastery. Changes of rulers were very frequent. The power was everywhere in the hands of the nobles and the Druid priests. The common folk were in a condition little better than slavery. This unsettled state of society enabled Caesar not infrequently to further his own ends, by setting one people or one party against the other.

The Druids had great influence. Above the individual, above the state, as endowed with authority from the unseen world they awed into submission the fierce spirit of a people

that acknowledged no other control. To the Druids was intrusted the administration of justice. Whoso obeyed not their decrees was ever after treated as an outcast. Once a year Druids from all parts of Gaul met in the land of the Carnutes, and settled difficulties between states as well as individuals. In Caesar's time the great stronghold of Druidism, however, was not Gaul but Britain. The Gauls were then degenerating. The growth of towns and the increase of wealth had made the distinctions of classes very marked, while the decline of society was hastened by corrupting contact with the Greeks.

After the conquest many Roman colonies were settled in Gaul. The country was rapidly Romanized. It was divided by Augustus into four provinces: *a. Narbonēnsis*, which in territory was the same as the former Provincia; capital, *Narbō*, now Narbonne. *b. Lugdūnēnsis*, which included most of the central and the eastern parts of Gaul; capital, *Lugdūnum*, now Lyons. *c. Aquitānia*, covering not merely the old land of the Aquitani, but the country north as far as the Loire. *d. Belgica*, comprising the rest of Gaul not belonging to the other provinces. The original speech was replaced by the Latin. Roman institutions became everywhere established. The remains of Roman structures,—amphitheatres, theatres, aqueducts, and the like,—in South France particularly, are most imposing.

II. GERMANY.

Before Caesar's time Germany (*Germānia*) was to the Romans an unknown land. Caesar himself has left but little information about it. According to him its boundaries were the Rhine and the Danube. Through the whole country stretched a great forest (*Silva Hercynia*), sixty days' journey long and nine days' journey wide.

Some victories over the German tribes were gained under Augustus and others of the early Emperors, but the country was never subdued by the Romans, except the borders along the Rhine and the Danube.

JUNIOR LATIN BOOK.

I. FABLES.

1. ACCIPITER ET COLUMBAE.

Columbae mīlvī metū accipitrem rogāvērunt, ut eas dēfenderet. Ille annuit. At in columbārium receptus, ūnō diē māiōrem strāgem ēdidit, quam mīlvus longō tempore potuisset ēdere.

Fābula docet, malōrum patrōcinium vītandum esse. 5

2. MŪS ET MĪLVUS.

Mīlvus laqueīs irrētītus mūsculum exōrāvit, ut eum, cor-rōsis plagīs, liberāret. Quō factō, mīlvus liberātus mūrem arripuit et dēvorāvit.

Haec fābula ostendit, quam grātiam malī prō beneficiīs reddere soleant. 10

3. GRŪS ET PĀVŌ.

Pāvō, cōram grue pennās suās explicāns, "Quanta est," inquit, "fōrmōsitās mea et tua dēfōrmitās!" At grūs ēvolāns, "Et quanta est," inquit, "levitās mea et tua tarditās!"

Monet haec fābula, nē ob aliquod bonum, quod nōbīs nātūra tribuit, aliōs contemnāmus, quibus nātūra alia et 15 fortasse māiōra dedit.

4. PĀVŌ.

Pāvō graviter conquerēbātur apud Iūnōnem, dominam suam, quod vōcis suāvitās sibi negāta esset, dum lusciniā, avis tam parum decōra, cantū excellat. Cui Iūnō, “et meritō,” inquit, “nōn enim omnia bona in ūnum cōferri
5 oportuit.”

5. ĀNSERĒS ET GRUĒS.

In eōdem quondam prātō pāscēbantur ānserēs et gruēs. Adveniente dominō prātī, gruēs facile āvolābant; sed ānserēs, impeditī corporis gravitatē, dēprehēnsī et māctātī sunt.

10 Sic saepe pauperēs cum potentiōribus in eōdem crimine dēprehēnsī, sōlī dant poenam, dum illī salvī ēvādunt.

6. CAPRA ET LUPUS.

Lupus capram in altā rūpe stantem cōspicātus, “Cūr nōn,” inquit, “relinquis nūda illa et sterilia loca, et hūc dēscendis in herbidōs campōs, quī tibi laetum pābulum
15 offerunt?” Cui respondit capra, “Mihi nōn est in animō, dulcia tūtīs praepōnere.”

7. CANIS ET BOVĒS.

Canis iacēbat in praesaepī, bovēsque lātrandō ā pābulō arcēbat. Cui ūnus boum, “Quanta ista,” inquit, “invidia est, quod nōn pateris, ut eō cibō vescāmur, quem tū ipse
20 capere nec velis nec possis!”

Haec fābula invidiae indolem dēclārat.

8. BOVĒS.

In eōdem prātō pāscēbantur trēs bovēs in māximā concordīā, et sic ab omni ferārū incursiōne tūtī erant. Sed,

discidiō inter illōs ortō, singulī ā ferīs petītī et laniātī sunt.

Fābula docet, quantum bonī sit in concordīā.

9. ASINUS.

Asinus pelle leōnis indūtus territābat hominēs et bēstiās, tamquam leō esset. Sed forte, dum sē celerius movet, aurēs 5 ēminēbant; unde agnitus in pīstrīnum abductus est, ubi poenās petulantiae dedit.

Haec fābula stolidōs notat, quī immeritis honōribus superbiunt.

10. MULIER ET GALLĪNA.

Mulier quaedam habēbat gallīnam, quae eī cottidiē ōvum 10 pariēbat aureum. Hinc suspicārī coepit, illam aurī māssam intus cēlāre, et gallīnam occīdit. Sed nihil in eā repperit, nisi quod in aliīs gallīnis reperīrī solet. Itaque dum māiōribus dīvitiīs inhiābat, etiam minōrēs perdidit.

11. VULPĒS ET ŪVA.

Vulpēs ūvam in vīte cōspicāta, ad illam subsiluit omnium 15 vīrium suārum contentiōne, sī eam forte attingere posset. Tandem dēfatigāta inānī labōre discēdēns dīxit, “At nunc etiam acerbae sunt, nec eās in viā repertās tollerem.”

Haec fābula docet, multōs ea contemnere, quae sē assequi posse dēspērent.

20

12. LUPUS ET GRŪS.

In faucibus lupī os inhaeserat. Mercēde igitur condūcit gruem, quī illud extrahat. Hōc grūs longitūdine collī facile effēcīt. Cum autem mercēdem postulāret, subrīdēns lupus et dentibus infrendēns, “Num tibi,” inquit, “parva mercēs vidētur, quod caput incolume ex lupī faucibus extrāxistī?” 25

II. ROMAN HISTORY.

Early Italian Rulers; Aeneas comes to Italy.

1. Antīquissimīs temporibus Sāturnus in Italiam vēnisse dicitur. Ibi haud procul ā Iāniculō arcem condidit, eamque Sāturniam appellāvit. Hīc Italōs prīmus agrī cultūram docuit.

- 5 2. Postea Latīnus in illīs regiōnibus imperāvit. Sub hōc rēge Trōia in Asiā ēversa est. Hinc Aenēās, Anchīsae filius, cum multīs Trōiānīs, quibus ferrum Graecōrum pepercerat, aufūgit, et in Italiam pervēnit. Ibi Latīnus rēx ei benignē receptō filiam Lāvīniam in mātirimōnium dedit. Aenēās
10 urbem condidit, quam in honōrem coniugis Lāvīnium appellāvit.

The Alban kings.

3. Post Aenēae mortem Ascanius, Aenēae filius, rēgnum accēpit. Hīc sēdem rēgnī in alium locum trānstulit, urbemque condidit in monte Albānō, eamque Albam Longam nūn-
15 cupāvit. Eum secūtus est Silvius, quī post Aenēae mortem ā Lāvīniā genitus erat. Eius posterī omnēs ūsque ad Rōmam conditam Albae rēgnāvērunt.

4. Ūnus hōrum rēgum, Rōmulus Silvius, sē Iove māiōrem esse dicēbat, et, cum tonāret, militibus imperāvit, ut clipeōs
20 hastīs percuterent, dicēbatque hunc sonum multō clārīōrem esse quam tonitrum. Fulmine ictus, et in Albānum lacum praecipitātus est.

5. Silvius Proca, rēx Albānōrum, duōs filiōs reliquit, Numitōrem et Amūlium. Hōrum minor nātū, Amūlius.

ANCIENT ITALY

SCALE OF STATUTE MILES
0 50 100

Longitude East 12 from Greenwich 16

8 Longitude East 12 from Greenwich 16

46 Latitude North 42

The map illustrates the Italian peninsula and its islands, with numerous place names and regional divisions. Major cities such as Roma (Rome), Capua, Tarentum, and Brundisium are marked. Regional names include ETRURIA, CAMPANIA, ABRUZZUM, and SICILIA. The Adriatic Sea (ADRIATIC) and Tyrrhenian Sea (TYRRHENIAN) are also labeled. The map is framed by a coordinate grid.

87

frātrī optiōnem dedit, utrum rēgnum habēre vellet, an bona, quae pater reliquisset. Numitor paterna bona praetulit; Amūlius rēgnum obtinuit.

Romulus and Remus ; founding of Rome.

6. Amūlius, ut rēgnum firmissimē possidēret, Numitōris filium per insidiās interēmit, et filiam frātris Rhēam Sil- 5
viam Vestālem virginem fēcit. Nam hīs Vestae sacerdōti-
bus nōn licet virō nūbere. Sed haec ā Mārte geminōs filiōs
Rōmulum et Remum peperit. Hōc cum Amūlius compe-
risset, mātrem in vincula coniēcit, puerōs autem in Tiberim
abici iussit. 10

7. Forte Tiberis aqua ultrā rīpam sē effūderat, et, cum
puerī in vadō essent positī, aqua refluēns eōs in siccō reli-
quit. Ad eōrum vāgitum lupa accurrit, eōsque ūberibus
suīs aluit. Quod vidēns Faustus quīdam, pāstor illius re-
giōnis, puerōs sustulit, et uxōrī Accae Lārentiae nūtrien- 15
dōs dedit.

8. Sic Rōmulus et Remus pueritiam inter pāstōrēs trāns-
ēgērunt. Cum adolēvissent, et forte comperissent, quis
ipsōrum avus, quae mātēr fuisset, Amūlium interfēcērunt,
et Numitōrī avō rēgnum restituērunt. Tum urbem condi- 20
dērunt in monte Aventīnō, quam Rōmulus ā suō nōmine
Rōmam vocāvit. Haec cum moenibus circumdarētur, Re-
mus occīsus est, dum frātrem irridēns moenia trānsilit.

The war with the Sabines.

9. Rōmulus, ut cīvium numerum augēret, asyllum pate-
fēcit, ad quod multī ex cīvitatibus suīs pulsī accurrērunt. 25
Sed novae urbis cīvibus coniugēs deerant. Fēstum itaque
Neptūnī et lūdōs instituit. Ad hōs cum multī ex finitimīs

populis cum mulieribus et liberis vēnissent, Rōmānī inter ipsōs lūdōs spectantēs virginēs rapuērunt.

10. Populī illī, quōrum virginēs raptae erant, bellum ad-
versus raptōrēs suscepērunt. Cum Rōmae appropinquārent,
5 forte in Tarpēiam virginem incidērunt, quae in arce sacra
prōcūrābat. Hanc rogābant, ut viam in arcem mōnstrāret,
eīque permīsērunt, ut mūnus sibi posceret. Illa petiit, ut
sibi darent, quod in sinistrīs manibus gererent, anulōs
aureōs et armillās significāns. At hostēs in arcem ab eā
10 perductī scūtīs Tarpēiam obruērunt; nam et haec in sini-
strīs manibus gerēbant.

11. Tum Rōmulus cum hoste, quī montem Tarpēium
tenēbat, pūgnam cōseruit in eō locō, ubi nunc forum Rō-
mānum est. In mediā caede raptae prōcessērunt, et hinc
15 patrēs, hinc coniugēs et socerōs complectēbantur, et rogā-
bant, ut caedis finem facerent. Utrīque hīs precibus com-
mōtī sunt. Rōmulus foedus icit, et Sabīnōs in urbem
recēpit.

Division of citizens; death of Romulus.

12. Postea cīvitātem dēscripsit. Centum senātōrēs lēgit,
20 eōsque cum ob aetātem tum ob reverentiam eīs dēbitam
patrēs appellāvit. Plēbem in trīgintā cūriās distribuit,
eāsque raptārum nōminibus nūcupāvit. Annō rēgnī tricē-
simō septimō, cum exercitum lūstrāret, inter tempestātem
ortam repente oculīs hominum subductus est. Hinc aliī eum
25 ā senātōribus interfectum, aliī ad deōs sublātum esse existi-
māvērunt.

Numa Pompilius, the lawgiver.

13. Post Rōmulī mortem ūnūs annī interrēgnum fuit.
Quō exāctō, Numa Pompilius Curibus, urbe in agrō Sabī-
nōrum, nātus rēx creātus est. Hīc vir bellum quidem

nūllum gessit; nec minus tamen cīvitātī prōfuit. Nam et lēgēs dedit, et sacra plūrima instituit, ut populī barbarī et bellicōsī mōrēs mollīret. Omnia autem, quae faciēbat, sē nymphae Ēgeriae, coniugis suae, iussū facere dīcēbat. Morbō dēcessit, quadrāgēsīmō tertiō imperiī annō. 5

Tullus Hostilius, the warrior.

14. Numae successit Tullus Hostilius, cūius avus sē in bellō adversus Sabīnōs fortem et strēnuum virum praestiterat. Rēx creātus bellum Albānīs indīxit, idque trigeminōrum Horātiōrum et Cūriātiōrum certāmine finīvit. Albam propter perfidiam Mettīi Fufetīi diruit. Cum trīgintā duōs 10 annōs rēgnāsset, fulmine ictus cum domō suā ārsit.

Ancus Marcius.

15. Post hunc Ancus Mārcius, Numae ex filiā nepōs, suscepit imperium. Hīc vir aequitāte et religiōne avō similis, Latīnōs bellō domuit, urbem ampliāvit, et nova eī moenia circumdedit. Carcerem prīmus aedificāvit. Ad Tiberis 15 ōstia urbem condidit, Ōstiamque vocāvit. Vicēsīmō quārtō annō imperiī morbō obiit.

Tarquinius Priscus; his public works.

16. Deinde rēgnum Lūcius Tarquinius Prīscus accēpit, Dēmarāti filius, quī tyrannōs patriae Corinthī fugiēns in Etrūriam vēnerat. Ipse Tarquinius, quī nōmen ab urbe 20 Tarquiniīs accēpit, aliquandō Rōmam profectus erat. Advenientī aquila pilleum abstulit, et, postquam altē ēvolāvit reposuit. Hinc Tanaquil coniūnx, mulier auguriōrum perīta, rēgnum eī portendī intellēxit.

17. Cum Rōmae commorārētur, Ancī rēgis familiāritatem 25

cōsecūtus est, quī eum filiōrum suōrum tūtōrem reliquit. Sed is pūpillis rēgnū intercepit. Senātōribus, quōs Rōmulus creāverat, centum aliōs addidit, quī minōrum gentium sunt appellātī. Plūra bella feliciter gessit, nec paucōs
 5 agrōs, hostibus adēptōs, urbis territōriō adiūnxit. Prīmus triumphāns urbem intrāvit. Cloācās fēcit; Capitōlium incohāvit. Tricēsīmō octāvō imperiī annō per Ancī filiōs, quibus rēgnū ēripuerat, occīsus est.

Servius Tullius; the census. Murder of the king.

18. Post hunc Servius Tullius suscepit imperium, genitus
 10 ex nōbili fēminā, captivā tamen et famulā. Cum in domō Tarquiniī Prīscī educārētur, flamma in eius capite vīsa est. Hōc prōdigiō Tanaquil eī summam dignitatem portendī intellēxit, et coniugī persuāsit, ut eum sicutī liberōs suōs educāret. Cum adolēvisset, rēx eī filiam in mātirimōnium
 15 dedit.

19. Cum Prīscus Tarquinius occīsus esset, Tanaquil dē superiōre parte domūs populum allocūta est, dīcēns, rēgen grave quidem sed nōn lētāle vulnus accēpisse; eum petere, ut populus, dum convalesceret, Serviō Tulliō oboediret. Sic
 20 Servius rēgnāre coepit, sed bene imperium administrāvit. Montēs trēs urbī adiūnxit. Prīmus omnium cēnsū ordīnāvit. Sub eō Rōma habuit capitum octōgintā tria milia cīvium Rōmānōrum cum hīs, quī in agrīs erant.

20. Hīc rēx interfectus est scelere filiae Tulliae et Tar-
 25 quiniī Superbī, filiī eius rēgis, cui Servius successerat. Nam ab ipsō Tarquiniō dē gradibus cūriae dēiectus, cum domum fugeret, interfectus est. Tullia in forum properāvit, et prīma coniugem rēgem salūtāvit. Cum domum redīret, aurīgam super patris corpus in viā iacēns carpentum
 30 agere iussit.

Tarquinius Superbus, the last of the kings; his banishment.

21. Tarquinius Superbus cognōmen mōribus meruit. Bellō tamen strēnuus plūrēs finitimōrum populōrum vīcit. Templum Iovis in Capitoliō aedificāvit. Postea, dum Ardeam oppūgnat, urbem Latī, imperium perdidit. Nam cum filius eius Lucrētiae, nōbilissimae fēminae, coniugī 5 Tarquiniī Collātīnī, vim fēcisset, haec sē ipsa occīdit in cōspectū maritī, patris, et amicōrum, postquam eōs obtestāta est, ut hanc iniūriam ulciscerentur.

22. Hanc ob causam L. Brūtus, Collātīnus, aliīque nōn-nūlli in exitium rēgis coniūrārunt, populōque persuāsērunt, 10 ut ei portās urbis clauderet. Exercitus quoque, quī civitatem Ardeam cum rēge oppūgnābat, eum reliquit. Fūgit itaque cum uxōre et liberis suis. Ita Rōmae rēguātum est per septem rēgēs, annōs ducentōs quadrāgintā trēs.

Creation of the consuls; war with Tarquinius.

23. Tarquiniō expulsō, cōsulēs coepēre prō ūnō rēge 15 duo creārī, ut, sī ūnus malus esset, alter eum coerceret. Annuum eis imperium tribūtum est, nē per diūturnitatem potestātis insolentiōrēs redderentur. Fuērunt igitur annō primō, expulsīs rēgibus, cōsulēs L. Iūnius Brūtus, ācerri-mus libertātis vindex, et Tarquinius Collātīnus, marītus 20 Lucrētiae. Sed Collātīnō paulō post dīgnitās sublāta est. Placuerat enim, nē quis ex Tarquiniōrum familiā Rōmae maneret. Ergō cum omnī patrimōniō suō ex urbe migrāvit, et in eius locum Valerius Pūblicola cōsul factus est.

24. Commōvit bellum urbī rēx Tarquinius. In primā 25 pūgnā Brūtus cōsul, et Arrūns, Tarquiniī filius, sēsē invicem occidērunt. Rōmānī tamen ex eā pūgnā victōrēs recessērunt. Brūtum Rōmānae mātrouae, quasi commūnem

patrem, per annum lūxērunt. Valerius Pūblicola Sp. Lu-
crētium, Lucrētiaē patrem, collēgam sibi fēcit; quī cum
morbō exstinctus esset, Horātium Pulvillum sibi collēgam
sūmpsit. Ita prīmus annus quīnque cōsulēs habuit.

War with Porsena, king of the Etruscans.

5 25. Secundō quoque annō iterum Tarquinius bellum
Rōmānīs intulit, Porsenā, rēge Etrūscōrum, auxilium ei
ferente. In illō bellō Horātius Coclēs sōlus pontem lig-
neum dēfendit et hostēs cohibuit, dōnec pōns ā tergō
ruptus esset. Tum sē cum armīs in Tiberim coniēcit et ad
10 suōs trānāvīt.

26. Dum Porsena urbem obsidet, Q. Mūcius Scaevola,
iuvenis fortis animī, in castra hostis sē contulit, eō cōnsiliō,
ut rēgem occīderet. At ibi scribam rēgis prō ipsō rēge
interfēcit. Tum ā rēgiīs satellitibus comprehēsus et ad
15 rēgem dēductus, cum Porsena eum ignibus allātis terrēret,
dextram ārae accēnsae imposuit, dōnec flammīs cōsumpta
esset. Hōc facinus rēx mīrātus iuvenem dīmīsīt incolu-
mem. Tum hīc quasi beneficium referēns ait, trecentōs
aliōs iuvenēs in eum coniūrāsse. Hāc rē territus Porsena
20 pācem cum Rōmānīs fēcit, Tarquinius autem Tusculum sē
contulit, ibique prīvātus cum uxōre cōsensuit.

The secession of the plebs.

27. Sextō decimō annō post rēgēs exāctōs, populus
Rōmae sēditionem fēcit, questus quod tribūtīs et militiā ā
senātū exhaurīrētur. Māgna pars plēbis urbem reliquit, et
25 in montem trāns Aniēnem amnem sēcēssit. Tum patrēs
turbātī Menēnium Agrippam mīsērunt ad plēbem, quī eam
senātūī conciliāret. Hīc eis inter alia fābulam nārrāvit dē
ventre et membrīs hūmānī corporis; quā populus commōtus

est, ut in urbem rediret. Tum primum tribuni plebis creati sunt, qui plebem adversum nobilitatis superbiam defenderent.

The story of Coriolanus.

28. Octavo decimo anno post exactos reges, Cn. Marcius, Coriolanus dictus ab urbe Volscorum Coriolis, quam bello 5 ceperat, plebi invidus fieri coepit. Quam rem urbe expulsus ad Volscos, acerrimos Romanorum hostes, contendit, et ab eis dux exercitus factus Romanos saepe vicit. Iam usque ad quintum miliarium urbis accesserat, nec ullis civium suorum legationibus flecti poterat, ut patriae parceret. Denique 10 Veturia mater et Volumnia uxor ex urbe ad eum venerunt; quarum fletu et precibus commotus est, ut exercitum removeret. Quo facto a Volscis ut proditor occisus esse dicitur.

War with the people of Veii.

29. Romani cum adversum Veientes bellum gererent, 15 familia Fabiorum sola hoc bellum suscepit. Profecti sunt trecenti sex nobilissimi homines, duce Fabio consule. Cum saepe hostes vicissent, apud Cremeram fluvium castra posuerunt. Ibi Veientes dolose eos in insidias pellexerunt. In proelio ibi exorto omnes perierunt. Unus superfuit ex 20 tanta familia, qui propter aetatem puerilem duci non potuerat ad pugnam. Hic genus propagavit ad Q. Fabium Maximum illum, qui Hannibalem prudenti cunctatione debilitavit.

The story of Virginia.

30. Anno trecentesimo et altero ab urbe condita decem- 25 viri creati sunt, qui civitati leges scriberent. Hi primo anno bene egerunt; secundo autem dominationem exercere coeperunt. Sed cum unus eorum Appius Claudius virginem

ingenuam, Verginiam, Verginiī centuriōnis filiam, corrumpere vellet, pater eam occidit. Tum ad milites profūgit, eōsque ad sēditionem commōvit. Sublāta est decemvirīs potestās, ipsīque omnēs aut morte aut exsiliō pūnītī sunt.

The Siege of Falerii; wars with the Gauls.

5 **31.** In bellō contrā Vēientānōs Fūrius Camillus urbem Falēriōs obsidēbat. In quā obsidiōne cum lūdī litterārīī magister principum filiōs ex urbe in castra hostium dūxisset, Camillus hōc dōnum nōn accēpit, sed scelestum hominem, manibus post tergum vinctīs, puerīs Falēriōs
10 redūcendum trādīdit; virgāsque eīs dedit, quibus prōditōrem in urbem agerent.

32. Hāc tantā animī nōbilitāte commōtī Faliscī urbem Rōmānīs trādiderunt. Camillō autem apud Rōmānōs criminī datum est, quod albīs equīs triumphāset, et praedam
15 iniquē dīvisisset; damnātusque ob eam causam, et civitāte expulsus est. Paulō post Gallī Senonēs ad urbem vērunt, Rōmānōs apud flūmen Alliam vicērunt, et urbem etiam occupārunt. Iam nihil praeter Capitōlium dēfendī potuit. Et iam praesidium famē labōrābat, et in eō erant, ut pācem ā
20 Gallis aurō emerent, cum Camillus cum manū militum superveniēns hostēs māgnō proeliō superāret.

33. Annō trecentēsīmō nōnāgēsīmō quārtō post urbem conditam Gallī iterum ad urbem accesserant, et quārtō
miliārīō trāns Anīēnem fluvium cōnsēderant. Contrā eōs
25 missus est T. Quīnctius. Ibi Gallus quīdam eximiā corporis māgnitūdine fortissimum Rōmānōrum ad certāmen singulāre prōvocāvit. T. Mānlius, nōbilissimus iuvenis, prōvocātiōnem accēpit, Gallum occidit, eumque torque aureō spoliāvit, quō ōrnātus erat. Hinc et ipse et posterī eius
30 Torquātī appellātī sunt. Gallī fugam capessivērunt.

34. Novō bellō cum Gallīs exortō, annō urbis quadringen-
tēsīmō sextō, iterum Gallus prōcessit rōbre atque armīs
insignīs, et prōvocāvit ūnum ex Rōmānīs, ut sēcum armīs
dēcerneret. Tum sē M. Valerius, tribūnus mīlitum, obtulit;
et, cum prōcessisset armātus, corvus eī suprā dextrum brac- 5
chium sēdit. Mox, commissā pūgnā, hīc corvus ālīs et un-
guibus Gallī oculōs verberāvit. Ita factum est, ut Gallus
facilī negōtiō ā Valeriō interficerētur, quī hinc Corvini
nōmen accēpit.

The Samnite wars; battle of the Caudine Forks.

35. Postēā Rōmānī bellum gessērunt cum Samnītibus, 10
ad quod L. Papīrius Cursor cum honōre dictātōris profectus
est. Quī cum negōtiī cūiusdam causā Rōmam īvisset, prae-
cēpit Q. Fabiō Rullianō, magistrō equitum, quem apud exer-
citum reliquit, nē pūgnam cum hoste committeret. Sed ille
occāsionem nactus fēlicissimē dīmīcāvit, Samnītēs dēlēvit. 15
Ob hanc rem ā dictātōre capitis damnātus est. At ille in
urbem cōnfūgit, et ingentī favōre mīlitum et populī liberā-
tus est; in Papīrium autem tanta exorta est sēditio, ut
paene ipse interficerētur.

36. Duōbus annīs post T. Veturius et Spurius Postumius 20
cōsulēs bellum adversum Samnītēs gerēbant. Hī ā Pontio,
duce hostium, in insidiās inductī sunt. Nam ad Furculās
Caudinās Rōmānōs pellexit in angustias, unde sēsē expedire
nōn poterant. Ibi Pontius patrem suum Hērennium rogāvit,
quid faciendum putāret. Ille respondit, aut omnēs occi- 25
dendōs esse, ut Rōmānōrum vīrēs frangerentur, aut omnēs
dīmīttendōs, ut beneficiō obligārentur. Pontius utrumque
cōnsilium improbāvit, omnēsque sub iugum mīsīt. Samnītēs
dēnique post bellum ūndēquīnquāgintā annōrum superātī
sunt.

War with Pyrrhus, king of Epirus.

37. Dēvictis Samnītibus, Tarentīnis bellum indictum est, quia lēgātis Rōmānōrum iniūriam fēcissent. Hī Pyrrhum, Ēpirī rēgem, contrā Rōmānōs auxilium poposcērunt. Is mox in Italiam vēnit, tumque primum Rōmānī cum trāns-
 5 marīnō hoste pūgnāvērunt. Missus est contrā eum cōsul P. Valerius Laevīnus. Hīc, cum explōrātōrēs Pyrrhī cēpisset, iussit eōs per castra dūcī, tumque dīmittī, ut renūtiārent Pyrrhō, quaecunque ā Rōmānīs agerentur.

38. Pūgnā commissā, Pyrrhus auxiliō elephantōrum vī-
 10 cit. Nox proeliō finem dedit. Laevīnus tamen per noctem fūgit. Pyrrhus Rōmānōs mille octingentōs cēpit, eōsque summō honōre tractāvit. Cum eōs, quī in proeliō interfectī erant, omnēs adversīs vulneribus et trucī vultū etiam mortuōs iacēre vidēret, tulisse ad caelum manūs dīcitur
 15 cum hāc vōce, “Ego cum tālibus virīs brevī orbem terrārum subigerem.”

39. Postea Pyrrhus Rōmam perrēxit; omnia ferrō igneque vāstāvit; Campāniam dēpopulātus est, atque ad Praeneste vēnit milāriō ab urbe octāvō decimō. Mox terrōre
 20 exercitūs, quī cum cōsule sequēbātur, in Campāniam sē recēpit. Lēgātī ad Pyrrhum dē captīvīs redimendīs missī honōrificē ab eō susceptī sunt; captīvōs sine pretiō reddidit. Ūnum ex lēgātīs, Fabricium, sic admirātus est, ut eī quārtam partem rēgnī suī prōmitteret, sī ad sē trānsīret; sed ā Fabri-
 25 ciō contemptus est.

40. Cum iam Pyrrhus ingentī Rōmānōrum admirātiōne tenērētur, lēgātum mīsīt Cīneam, praestantissimum virum, quī pācem peteret eā condiciōne, ut Pyrrhus eam partem Italiae, quam armīs occupāverat, obtinēret. Rōmānī re-
 30 spondērunt, eum cum Rōmānīs pācem habēre nōn posse, nisi

ex Italiā recessisset. Cīneās cum rediisset, Pyrrhō eum interrogantī, quālis ipsī Rōma vīsa esset, respondit, sē rēgum patriam vīdisse.

41. In alterō proeliō cum rēge Ēpirī commissō Pyrrhus vulnerātus est, elephantī interfectī, vīgintī mīlia hostium 5 caesa sunt. Pyrrhus Tarentum fūgit. Interiectō annō, Fabricius contrā eum missus est. Ad hunc medicus Pyrrhī nocte vēnit prōmittēns, sē Pyrrhum venēnō occisūrum, sī mūnus sibi darētur. Hunc Fabricius vinctum redūcī iussit ad dominum. Tunc rēx admīrātus illum dīxisse fertur: 10 “Ille est Fabricius, quī difficilīus ab honestāte, quam sōl ā cursū suō āvertī potest.” Paulō post Pyrrhus, tertiō etiam proeliō fūsus, ā Tarentō recessit, et, cum in Graeciam rediisset, apud Argos, Peloponnēsī urbem, interfectus est.

The First Punic War; the story of Regulus.

42. Annō quadringentēsīmō nōnāgēsīmō post urbem con- 15 ditam Rōmānōrum exercitūs prīmum in Siciliam trāiēcērunt, rēgemque Syrācūsārum Hierōnem, Poenōsque, quī multās civitatēs in eā Insulā occupāverant, superāverunt. Quīntō annō hūius bellī, quod contrā Poenōs gerēbātur, prīmum Rōmānī, C. Duiliō et Cn. Cornēliō Asinā cōsulibus, in 20 mari dīmīcāverunt. Duilius Carthāginiēnsēs vīcit, trīgintā nāvēs occupāvit, quattuordecim mersit, septem mīlia hostium cēpit, tria mīlia occīdit. Nulla victōria Rōmānīs grātor fuit. Duiliō concessum est, ut, cum ā cēnā redīret, puerī fūnālīa gestantēs et tībīcen eum comitārentur. 25

43. Paucīs annīs interiectīs, bellum in Āfricam trānslātum est. Hamilcar, Carthāginiēnsium dux, pūgnā nāvālī superātur; nam perditīs sexāgintā quattuor nāvibus sē recēpit; Rōmānī vīgintī duās āmīsērunt. Cum in Āfricam

vēnissent, Poenōs in plūribus proeliis vīcērunt, māgnam vim
 • hominum cēpērunt, septuāgintā quattuor cīvitātēs in fidem
 accēpērunt. Tum victi Carthāginiēnsēs pācem ā Rōmānis
 petiērunt. Quam cum M. Atilius Rēgulus, Rōmānōrum
 5 dux, dare nōllet nisi dūrissimis condiціōnibus, Carthāginiēn-
 sēs auxilium petiērunt ā Lacedaemoniis. Hī Xanthippum
 mīserunt, quī Rōmānum exercitum māgnō proeliō vīcit.
 Rēgulus ipse captus et in vincula coniectus est.

44. Nōn tamen ubique fortūna Carthāginiēnsibus fāvit.
 10 Cum aliquot proeliis victi essent, Rēgulum rogāvērunt, ut
 Rōmam proficīscerētur, et pācem captīvōrumque permūtā-
 tiōnem ā Rōmānis obtinēret. Ille cum Rōmam vēnisset,
 inductus in senātum dīxit, sē dēsiisse Rōmānum esse ex illā
 diē, quā in potestātem Poenōrum vēnisset. Tum Rōmānis
 15 suāsīt, nē pācem cum Carthāginiēnsibus facerent: illōs enim
 tot cāsibus frāctōs spem nūllam nisi in pāce habēre: tantī
 nōn esse, ut tot mīlia captīvōrum propter sē ūnum et pau-
 cōs, quī ex Rōmānis capti essent, redderentur. Haec sen-
 tentia obtinuit. Regressus igitur in Āfricam crudēlissimīs
 20 suppliciis exstinctus est.

45. Tandem, C. Lutātiō Catulō, A. Postumiō cōsulibus,
 annō bellī Pūnici vīcēsimo tertiō māgnū proelium nāvāle
 commissum est contrā Lilybaeum, prōmunturium Siciliae.
 In eō proeliō septuāgintā trēs Carthāginiēnsium nāvēs
 25 captae, centum vīginti quīnque dēmersae, trīgintā duo
 mīlia hostium capta, tredecim mīlia occisa sunt. Statim
 Carthāginiēnsēs pācem petiērunt, eisque pāx tribūta est.
 Captivi Rōmānōrum, quī tenēbantur ā Carthāginiēnsibus,
 redditī sunt. Poeni Siciliā, Sardinīā, et cēteris insulis, quae
 30 inter Italiā Āfricāque iacent, dēcēssērunt, omnemque
 Hispāniā, quae citrā Ibērum est, Rōmānis permīserunt.

Conflicts with the Gauls; the battle at Clusium.

46. Annō quīngentēsīmō ūndētrīcēsīmō ingentēs Gallōrum cōpia Alpēs trānsiērunt. Sed prō Rōmānīs tōta Italia cōsēnsit; trāditumque est octingentā mīlia hominum ad id bellum parāta esse. Rēs prōsperē gesta est apud Clūsium; quadrāgintā mīlia hominum interfecta sunt. 5 Aliquot annīs post pūgnātum est contrā Gallōs in agrō Īnsubrum, fīnitumque est bellum M. Claudiō Mārcellō, Cn. Cornēliō Scīpiōne cōsulibus. Tum Mārcellus rēgem Gallōrum, Viridomarum, manū suā occīdit et triumphāns spolia Gallī, stīpitī imposita, umerīs suis vexit. 10

The Second Punic War begun; the Romans are defeated at the Trebia; at Lake Trasimenus; at Cannae.

47. Paulō post Pūnicum bellum renovātum est per Hannibalem, Carthāginiēnsium ducem, quem pater Hamilcar novem annōs nātum ārīs admōverat, ut odium perenne in Rōmānōs iūrāret. Hīc annum agēs vicēsimum aetātis Saguntum, Hispāniae cīvitātem, Rōmānīs amīcam, oppūg- 15 nāre aggressus est. Huic Rōmānī per lēgātōs dēnūntiāvērunt, ut bellō abstinēret. Quī cum lēgātōs admittere nōllet, Rōmānī Carthāginem mīserunt, ut mandārētur Hannibālī, nē bellum contrā sociōs populī Rōmānī gereret. Dūra respōnsa ā Carthāginiēnsibus reddita. Saguntīnīs intereā 20 famē victīs, Rōmānī Carthāginiēnsibus bellum indixērunt.

48. Hannibal, frātre Hasdrubale in Hispāniā relictō, Pyrēnaeōs. et Alpēs trānsiit. Trāditur in Italiam octōgintā mīlia peditum, et vīgintī mīlia equitum, septem et trīgintā elephantōs addūxisse. Intereā multī Ligurēs et 25 Gallī Hannibālī sē coniūnxērunt. Prīmus eī occurrit P. Cornēlius Scīpiō, quī, proeliō ad Ticīnum commissō, su-

perātus est, et, vulnere acceptō, in castra rediit. Tum Semprōnius Longus cōnfligit ad Trebiam amnem. Is quoque vincitur. Multī populi sē Hannibali dēdiderunt. Inde in Etrūriam prōgressus Flāminium cōsulem ad Trasumēnum
 5 lacum superat. Ipse Flāminius interēptus, Rōmānōrum vīgintī quīnque mīlia caesa sunt.

49. Quīngentēsīmō et duodēquadrāgēsīmō annō post urbem conditam L. Aemilius Paulus et P. Terentius Varrō contrā Hannibalem mittuntur. Quamquam intellēctum erat, Han-
 10 nibalem nōn aliter vinci posse quam morā, Varrō tamen morae impatiēns apud vicum, quī Cannae appellātur, in Āpuliā pūgnāvit; ambō cōsulēs victī, Paulus interēptus est. In eā pūgnā cōsulārēs aut praetōrii vīgintī, senātōrēs trīgintā captī aut occīsī; mīlitum quadrāgintā mīlia; equi-
 15 tum tria mīlia et quīngentī periērunt. In hīs tantīs malīs nēmō tamen pācis mentiōnem facere dignātus est. Servi, quod numquam ante factum, manūmissī et mīlitēs factī sunt.

Operations in Sicily and in Spain.

50. Post eam pūgnam multae Italiae cīvitātēs, quae Rōmānīs pāruerant, sē ad Hannibalem trānstulērunt. Hanni-
 20 bal Rōmānīs obtulit, ut captīvōs redimerent; respōnsumque est ā senātū, eōs cīvēs nōn esse necessāriōs, quī armātī capī potuissent. Hōs omnēs ille postea variīs suppliciis interfēcit, et trēs modiōs aureōrum anulōrum Carthāginem mīsīt, quōs manibus equitum Rōmānōrum, senātōrum, et mīlitum
 25 detrāxerat. Interea in Hispāniā frāter Hannibalis, Hasdrubal, quī ibi remānserat cum māgnō exercitū, ā duobus Scīpiōnibus vincitur, perditque in pūgnā trīgintā quīnque mīlia hominum.

51. Annō quārtō postquam Hannibal in Italiam vēnerat,
 30 M. Claudius Mārcellus cōsul apud Nōlam, cīvitātem Cam-

pāniae, contrā Hannibalem bene pūgnāvit. Illō tempore Philippus, Dēmētriī filius, rēx Macedoniae, ad Hannibalem lēgātōs mittit, eiūque auxilia contrā Rōmānōs pollicētur. Quī lēgātī cum ā Rōmānīs captī essent, M. Valerius Laevinus cum nāvibus missus est, quī rēgem impedīret, quō 5 minus cōpiās in Italiam trāiceret. Idem in Macedoniam penetrāns rēgem Philipppum vicit.

52. In Siciliā quoque rēs prōsperē gesta est. Mārcellus māgnam hūius insulae partem cēpit, quam Poenī occupāverant; Syracūsās, nōbilissimam urbem, expūgnāvit, et 10 ingentem inde praedam Rōmam mīsit. Laevinus in Macedonia cum Philippō et multīs Graeciae populīs amicitiam fēcit; et in Siciliam profectus Hannōnem, Poenōrum ducem, apud Agrigentum cēpit; quadrāgintā cīvitatēs in dēditionem accēpit, vīgintī sex expūgnāvit. Ita omni Siciliā receptā, 15 cum ingentī glōriā Rōmam regressus est.

53. Intereā in Hispāniam, ubi duo Scīpiōnēs ab Hasdrubale interfectī erant, missus est P. Cornēlius Scīpiō, vir Rōmānōrum omnium ferē prīmus. Hīc, puer duodēvīgintī annōrum, in pūgnā ad Ticīnum, patrem singulārī virtūte 20 servāvit. Deinde post clādem Cannēensem multōs nōbilissimōrum iuvenum Italiam dēserere cupientium, auctōritāte suā ab hōc cōsiliō dēterrui. Vīgintī quattuor annōrum iuvenis in Hispāniam missus, diē, quā vēnit, Carthāginem Novam cēpit, in quā omne aurum et argentum et bellī 25 apparātum Poenī habēbant, nōbilissimōs quoque obsidēs, quōs ab Hispānīs accēperant. Hōs obsidēs parentibus reddidit. Quā rē omnēs ferē Hispāniae cīvitatēs ad eum unō animō trānsiērunt.

Hasdrubal defeated and killed at Sena; the battle of Zama.

54. Ab eō inde tempore rēs Rōmānōrum in diēs laetiōrēs factae sunt. Hasdrubal ā frātre ex Hispāniā in Italiam ēvocātus, apud Sēnam, Umbriae cīvitātem, in insidiās incidit, et strēnuē pūgnāns occīsus est. Plūrīmae autem cīvitātēs, 5 quae in Bruttīis ab Hannibale tenēbantur, Rōmānīs sē trādiderunt.

55. Annō decimō quārtō postquam in Italiam Hannibal vēnerat, Scīpiō cōsul creatus, et in Āfricam missus est. Ibi contrā Hannōnem, ducem Carthāginiēnsium, prōspere 10 pūgnat, tōtumque eius exercitum dēlet. Secundō proeliō undecim mīlia hominum occidit, et castra cēpit cum quatuor mīlibus et quīngentīs mīlitibus. Syphācem, Numidiae rēgem, quī sē cum Poenīs coniūxerat, cēpit, eumque cum nōbilissimīs Numidīs et infinitīs spoliīs Rōmam mīsīt. Quā 15 rē audītā, omnis ferē Italia Hannibalem dēserit. Ipse ā Carthāginiēnsibus in Āfricam redīre iubētur. Ita annō decimō septimō Italia ab Hannibale liberāta est.

56. Post plūrēs pūgnās et pācem plūs semel frūstrā tentātam, pūgna ad Zamam committitur, in quā perītissimī ducēs 20 cōpiās suās ad bellum ēducēbant. Scīpiō victor recēdit; Hannibal cum paucīs equitibus ēvādīt. Post hōc proelium pāx cum Carthāginiēnsibus facta est. Scīpiō, cum Rōmam rediisset, ingentī glōriā triumphāvit, atque Āfricānus appellātus est. Sic finem accēpit secundum Pūnicum bellum 25 post annum ūndēvīcēsimum quam coeperat.

Wars with Philip; with Antiochus; with Perseus.

57. Fīnitō Pūnicō bellō, secūtum est Macedonicum contrā Philippum rēgem. Superātus est rēx ā T. Quīnetiō Flāminiō apud Cynoscephalās, pāxque eī data est hīs lēgibus:

nē Graeciae cīvitātibus, quās Rōmānī contrā eum dēfenderant, bellum īferret; ut captīvōs et trānsfugās redderet; quīnquāgintā solum nāvēs habēret; reliquās Rōmānīs daret; mille talenta praestāret, et obsidem daret filium Dēmētrium. T. Quīnctius etiam Lacedaemoniīs intulit bellum, et ducem 5 eōrum Nābidem vīcit.

58. Finītō bellō Macedonicō, secūtum est bellum Syriacum contrā Antiochum rēgem, cum quō Hannibal sē iūnerat. Missus est contrā eum L. Cornēlius Scīpiō cōsul, cui frāter ēius Scīpiō Āfricānus lēgātus est additus. Han- 10 nibal nāvālī proeliō victus, Antiochus autem ad Māgnēsiam, Asiae cīvitātem, ā Cornēliō Scīpiōne cōsule ingentī proeliō fūsus est. Tum rēx Antiochus pācem petit. Data est ei hāc lēge, ut ex Eurōpā et Asiā recēderet, atque intrā Taurum sē continēret, decem mīlia talentōrum et vīgintī obsidēs 15 praebēret, Hannibalem, concitōrem bellī, dēderet. Scīpiō Rōmam rediit, et ingentī glōriā triumphāvit. Nōmen et ipse, ad imitātiōnem frātris, Asiāticī accēpit.

59. Philippō, rēge Macedoniae, mortuō, filius ēius Perseus rebellāvit, ingentibus cōpiīs parātis. Dux Rōmānōrum, 20 P. Licinius cōsul, contrā eum missus, gravī proeliō ā rēge victus est. Rēx tamen pācem petēbat. Cui Rōmānī eam praestāre nōluērunt, nisi hīs condiciōnibus, ut sē et suōs Rōmānīs dēderet. Mox L. Aemilius Paulus cōsul rēgem ad Pydnam superāvit, et vīgintī mīlia peditum ēius occīdit. 25 Equitātus cum rēge fūgit. Urbēs Macedoniae omnēs, quās rēx tenuerat, Rōmānīs sē dēdidērunt. Ipse Perseus ab amicīs dēsertus in Paulī potestātem vēnit. Hic, multis etiam aliīs rēbus gestīs, cum ingentī pompā Rōmam rediit in nāve Persei, irūsitātae māgnitūdinis; nam sēdecim 30 rēmōrum ordinēs habuisse dicitur. Triumphāvit māgnificentissimē in currū aureō, duōbus filiīs utrōque latere

astantibus. Antē currum inter captīvōs duo rēgis filiī et ipse Perseus ductī sunt.

The Third Punic War; Carthage is destroyed.

60. Tertium deinde bellum contrā Carthāginem susceptum est sescentēsīmō et alterō annō ab urbe conditā, annō
5 quīnquāgēsīmō primō postquam secundum bellum Pūnicum trānsāctum est. L. Mārcius Cēnsōrīnus et M'. Mānilius cōsulēs in Āfricam trāiēcērunt, et oppūgnāvērunt Carthāginem. Multa ibi praeclārē gesta sunt per Scīpiōnem, Scīpiōnis Āfricānī nepōtem, quī tribūnus in Āfricā militābat.
10 Hūius apud omnēs ingēns metus et reverentia erat, neque quidquam magis Carthāginiēnsium ducēs vitābant, quam contrā eum proelium committere.

61. Cum iam māgnū esset Scīpiōnis nōmen, tertiō annō postquam Rōmānī in Āfricam trāiēcīt, cōsul est creātus,
15 et contrā Carthāginem missus. Is hanc urbem ā cīvibus ācerrimē dēfēnsam cēpit ac diruit. Ingēns ibi praeda facta, plūrimaque inventa sunt, quae multārum cīvitātum excidiīs Carthāgō collēgerat. Haec omnia Scīpiō cīvitātibus Italiae, Siciliae, Āfricae reddidit, quae sua recognōscēbant. Ita
20 Carthāgō septingentēsīmō annō postquam condita est, dēlēta est. Scīpiō nōmen Āfricānī iūniōris accēpit.

Mummius destroys Corinth; three great triumphs celebrated.

62. Interim in Macedoniā quīdam Pseudophilippus arma mōvit, et P. Iuventium, Rōmānōrum ducem, ad interne-ciōnem vīcit. Post eum Q. Caecilius Metellus dux ā Rōmā-
25 nīs contrā Pseudophilippum missus est, et, vīgintī quīnque milibus ex militibus eius occīsīs, Macedoniam recēpit; ipsum etiam Pseudophilippum in potestātem suam redēgit. Corinthiīs quoque bellum indictum est, nōbilissimae Grae-

ciae civitatī, propter iniūriam Rōmānis lēgātis illātam. Hanc Mummius cōsul cēpit ac dīruit. Trēs igitur Rōmae simul celeberrimī triumphī fuērunt; Scīpiōnis ex Āfricā, ante cūius currum ductus est Hasdrubal; Metelli ex Macedoniā, cūius currum praecessit Āndriscus, quī et Pseudophilippus dīcitur; Mummiī ex Corinthō, ante quem signa aēnea et pictae tabulae et alia urbis clārissimae ōrnāmenta praelāta sunt.

Wars in Spain.

63. Annō sescentēsīmō decimō post urbem conditam Viriāthus in Lūsitāniā bellum contrā Rōmānōs excitāvit. 10 Pāstor primō fuit, mox latrōnum dux; postrēmō tantōs ad bellum populōs concitāvit, ut vindex libertātis Hispāniae existimārētur. Dēnique ā suis interfectus est. Cum interfectōrēs eius praemium ā Caepiōne cōsule peterent, repōnsum est, numquam Rōmānis placuisse, imperātorem ā 15 militibus suis interfici.

64. Deinde bellum exortum est cum Numantīnis, civitate Hispāniae. Victus ab hīs Q. Pompēius, et post eum C. Hostilius Mancīnus cōsul, quī pācem cum eis fecit infāmem, quam populus et senātus iussit infringī, atque ipsum 20 Mancīnum hostibus trādī. Tum P. Scīpiō Āfricānus in Hispāniam missus est. Is primum militem ignāvum et corruptum corrēxit; tum multās Hispāniae civitatēs partim bellō cēpit, partim in dēditionem accēpit. Postrēmō ipsam Numantiam famē ad dēditionem coēgit, urbemque ēvertit; 25 reliquam prōvinciam in fidem accēpit.

War with Jugurtha.

65. P. Scīpiōne Nāsicā et L. Calpurniō Bēstiā cōsulibus, Jugurthae, Numidārum rēgī, bellum illātum est, quod Adherbalem et Hiempsalem, Micipsae filiōs, patruēlēs suōs,

interēmisset. Missus adversus eum cōsul Calpurnius Bēstia corruptus rēgis pecūniā pācem cum eō flāgitiosissimam fēcit, quae ā senātū improbāta est. Dēnique Q. Caecilius Metellus cōsul Jugurtham variis proeliis vīcit, elephantōs eius occi-
 5 dit vel cēpit, multās cīvitātēs ipsius in dēditionem accēpit. Eī successit C. Marius, quī bellō terminum posuit, ipsumque Jugurtham cēpit. Ante currum triumphantis Marii Jugurtha cum duobus filiis ductus est vinctus, et mox iussū cōsulis in carcere strangulātus.

The Cimbri and Teutones defeated by C. Marius.

- 10 66. Dum bellum in Numidiā contrā Jugurtham geritur, Cimbrī et Teutonēs aliaeque Germānōrum et Gallōrum gentēs Italiae minābantur, plūrēsq̄e Rōmānōrum exercitūs fūdērunt. Ingēns fuit Rōmae timor, nē iterum Galli urbem occupārent. Ergō Marius cōsul creātus eīque bellum con-
 15 trā Cimbrōs et Teutonēs dēcrētum est; bellōque prōtrāctō, tertius eī et quārtus cōsulātus dēlātus est. In duobus proeliis cum Cimbris ducenta milia hostium cecidit, octō-
 20 gintā milia cēpit, eōrumque rēgem Teutobodum; propter quod meritum absēns quīntum cōsul creātus est. Intereā Cimbrī et Teutonēs, quōrum cōpia adhūc infinīta erat, in Italiam trāsiērunt. Iterum ā C. Mariō et Q. Catulō contrā eōs dīmicātum est ad Vērōnam. Centum et quadrā-
 gintā milia aut in pūgnā aut in fugā caesa sunt; sexāgintā milia capta. Tria et trīgintā Cimbris signa sublāta sunt.

The Social wars.

- 25 67. Sescentēsimō quīnquāgēsīmō nōnō annō ab urbe conditā in Italiā gravissimum bellum exārsit. Nam Picentēs, Marsī, Paelīgnīque, quī multōs annōs populō Rōmānō oboedierant, aequa cum illis iūra sibi dari postulābant. Perni-

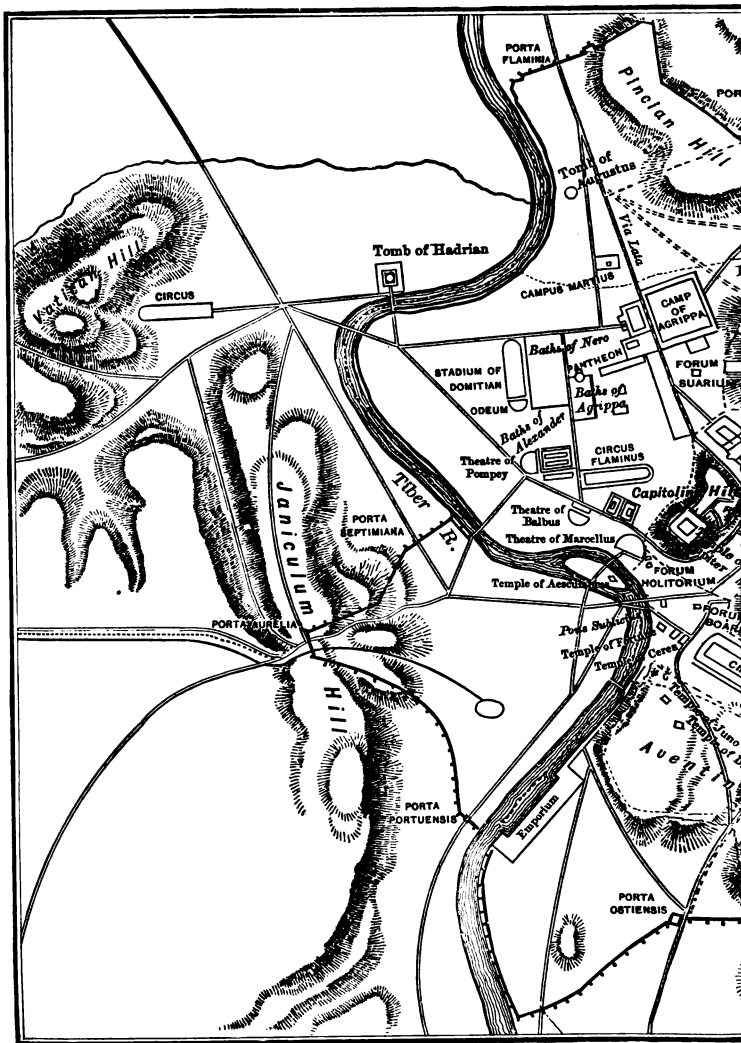
ciōsum admodum hōc bellum fuit. P. Rutīlius cōsul in eō occisus est; plūrēs exercitūs fūsi fugātique. Tandem L. Cornēlius Sulla cum alia ēgregiē gessit, tum Cluentium, hostium ducem, cum māgnis cōpīs, fūdit. Per quadriennium cum gravī utriusque pārtis calamitāte hōc bellum 5 trāctum est. Quīntō dēmum annō L. Cornēlius Sulla ei imposuit finem. Rōmāni tamen, id quod prius negāverant, iūs civitātis, bellō finitō, sociis tribuērunt.

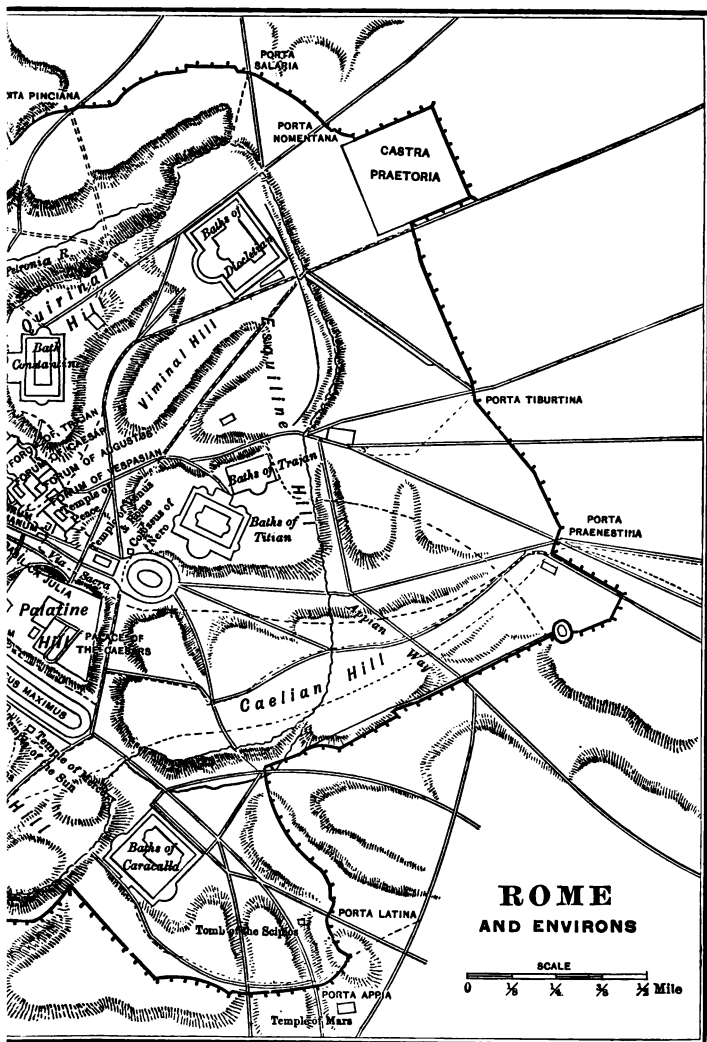
The civil war between Marius and Sulla.

68. Annō urbis conditae sescentēsimo sexāgēsimo sextō prīmum Rōmae bellum cīvile exortum est; eōdem annō 10 etiam Mithridāticum. Causam bellō cīvili C. Marius dedit. Nam cum Sullae bellum adversus Mithridātem rēgem Ponti dēcrētum esset, Marius ei hunc honōrem ēripere cōnātus est. Sed Sulla, quī adhūc cum legiōnibus suis in Italiā morābātur, cum exercitū Rōmam vēnit, et adversāriōs cum interfēcit, 15 tum fugāvit. Tum rēbus Rōmae utcumque compositis, in Asiam profectus est, plūribusque proeliis Mithridātem coēgit, ut pācem ā Rōmānis peteret, et Asiā, quam invāserat, relicta, rēgni sui finibus contentus esset.

69. Sed dum Sulla in Graeciā et Asiā Mithridātem vin- 20 cit, Marius, quī fugātus erat, et L. Cornēlius Cinna, ūnus ex cōsulibus, bellum in Italiā reparāvunt, et ingressi Rōmam nōbilissimōs ex senātū et cōsulārēs virōs interfēcērunt; multōs prōscripsērunt; ipsius Sullae domō ēversā, filiōs et uxōrem ad fugam compulērunt. Ūniversus reliquus 25 senātus ex urbe fugiēns ad Sullam in Graeciam vēnit, ōrāns ut patriae subveniret. Sulla in Italiam trāiēcit, hostium exercitūs vicit, mox etiam urbem ingressus est, quam caede et sanguine cīvium replēvit. Quattuor mīlia inermium, qui sē dēdiderant, interficī iussit; duo mīlia equitum et senā- 30

tōrum prōscripsit. Tum dē Mithridāte triumphāvit. Duo
haec bella fūnestissima, Italicum, quod et sociāle dictum
est, et cīvile, cōsūmpsērunt ultrā centum et quīnquāgintā
mīlia hominum, virōs cōsulārēs vīgintī quattuor, prae-
5 tōriōs septem, aediliciōs sexāgintā, senātōrēs ferē ducentōs.





R. D. Servoss, Eng'r, N. Y.

III. VIRI ROMAE.

I. GĀIUS IŪLIUS CAESAR.

Caesar defles Sulla.

C. Iūlius Caesar, nōbilissimā Iūliōrum genitus familiā, annum agēns sextum et decimum patrem āmisit. Cornēliam, Cinnae filiam, dūxit uxōrem; cūius pater cum esset Sullae inimīcissimus, is Caesarem voluit compellere, ut eam repudiāret; neque id potuit efficere. Quā rē Caesar, bonīs 5 spoliātus, cum etiam ad necem quaererētur, mūtātā veste nocte urbe ēlāpsus est, et quamquam tunc quārtānae morbō labōrābat, prope per singulās noctēs latebrās commūtāre cōgēbātur; et comprehēnsus ā Sullae libertō, nē ad Sullam perdūcerētur, vix datā pecūniā ēvāsit. Postrēmō per pro- 10 pinquōs et affīnēs suōs veniam impetrāvit. Satis cōnstat, Sullam, cum dēprecantibus amīcissimīs et ōrnatissimīs virīs aliquamdiū dēnegāssēt atque illi pertināciter contenderent, expūgnātum tandem prōclāmāsse, vincerent, dum modo scīrent, eum, quem incolumem tantopere cuperent, ali- 15 quandō optimātium partibus, quās sēcum simul dēfendissent, exitiō futūrum; nam Caesarī multōs Mariōs inesse.

He is captured by pirates; his revenge.

Stipendia prīma in Asiā fēcit. In expūgnatiōne Mitylēnārū coronā cīvīcā dōnātus est. Mortuō Sullā, Rhodum sēcēdere statuit, ut per ōtium Apollōniō Molōnī, tunc clāris- 20

simō dicendī magistrō, operam daret. Hūc dum trāicit, ā
 praedōnibus captus est mānsitque apud eōs prope quadrā-
 gintā diēs. Per omne autem illud spatium ita sē gessit, ut
 pīrātīs pariter terrōrī venerātiōnīque esset. Comitēs interim
 5 servōsque ad expediendās pecūniās, quibus redimerētur,
 dīmisit. Vigintī talenta pīrātae postulāverant; ille quinquā-
 gintā datūrum sē spondit. Quibus numerātīs, cum exposi-
 tus esset in lītore, cōfestim Milētum, quae urbs proximē
 aberat, properāvit ibique contrāctā classe, invectus in eum
 10 locum, in quō ipsī praedōnēs erant, partem classis fugāvit,
 partem mersit, aliquot nāvēs cēpit pīrātāsque in potestātem
 redāctōs eō suppliciō, quod illis saepe minātus inter iocum
 erat, affēcit crucīque suffixit.

Caesar's ambition; his extravagance.

Quaestōrī ulterior Hispānia obvēnit. Quō profectus cum
 15 Alpēs trānsiret et ad cōspectum pauperis cūiusdam vicī
 comitēs per iocum inter sē disputārent, num illīc etiam esset
 ambiōnī locus, seriō dīxit Caesar, malle sē ibi prīmum
 esse, quam Rōmae secundum. Dominātiōnis avidus ā primā
 aetāte rēgnum concupiscēbat semperque in ōre habēbat hōs
 20 Eurīpidis, Graecī poētae, versūs :

Nam si violandum est iūs, rēgnandī grātiā
 Violandum est, aliīs rēbus pietātem colās.

Cumque Gādēs, quod est Hispāniae oppidum, vēnisset,
 animadversā apud Herculis templum māgnī Alexandrī
 25 imāgine ingemuit et quasi ignāviae suae pertaederet, quod
 nihildum ā sē memorābile āctum esset in eā aetāte, quā iam
 Alexander orbem terrārum subēgisset, missiōnem continuō
 efflāgitāvit ad captandās quam prīmum māiōrum rērum oc-
 cāsionēs in urbe.

Aedīlis praeter Comitium ac Forum etiam Capitōlium
ornāvit porticibus. Vēnātiōnēs autem lūdōsque et cum
collēgā L. Bibulō et sēparātīm ēdidit; quō factum est, ut
commūnium quoque impēnsārum sōlus grātiām caperet.
His autem rēbus patrimonium effūdīt tantumque cōnflāvit 5
aes aliēnum, ut ipse dīceret, sibi opus esse mīliēns sēster-
tium, ut habēret nihil.

The consulship; Caesar's arbitrary conduct.

Cōsul deinde creatus cum L. Bibulō, societātem cum
Gnaeō Pompēiō et Mārcō Crassō iūnxit Caesar, nē quid
agerētur in rē pūblicā, quod displicuisset ūllī ex tribus. 10
Deinde lēgem tulit, ut ager Campānus plēbī dīviderētur.
Cui lēgī cum senātus repūgnāret, rem ad populum dētulit.
Bibulus collēga in Forum vēnit, ut lēgī obsisteret, sed tanta
in eum commōta est sēditiō, ut in caput ēius cophinus
stercore plēnus effunderētur fascēsque eī frangerentur atque 15
adeō ipse armīs Forō expellerētur. Quā rē cum Bibulus
per reliquum annī tempus domō abditus cūriā abstinēret,
ūnus ex eō tempore Caesar omnia in rē pūblicā ad arbitrium
administrābat, ut nōnnūllī urbānōrum, sī quid testandī grā-
tiā signārent, per iocum nōn, ut mōs erat, cōsulibus Caesare 20
et Bibulō āctum scriberent, sed Iūliō et Caesare, ūnum cōn-
sulem nōmine et cognōmine prō duōbus appellantes.

The conquest of Gaul; Caesar's valor.

Fūctus cōsulātū Caesar Galliam prōvinciām accēpit.
Gessit autem novem annīs, quibus in imperiō fuit, haec
ferē: Galliam in prōvinciae fōrmam redēgit; Germānōs, 25
quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, prīmus Rōmānōrum ponte fabri-
cātō aggressus māximīs affēcīt clādibus. Aggressus est

Britannōs, ignōtōs antea, superātisque pecūniās et obsidēs imperāvit. Hic cum multa Rōmānōrum militum insignia nārrantur, tum illud ēgregium ipsius Caesaris, quod nūtante in fugam exercitū, raptō fugientis ē manū scūtō, in primam
 5 volitāns aciem proelium restituit. Idem aliō proeliō legiōnis aquiliferum ineundae fugae causā iam conversum, faucibus comprehēsum, in contrāriam partem detrāxit dextramque ad hostem tendēns, “Quōrsū tū,” inquit, “abīs? Illic sunt, cum quibus dīmicāmus.” Quā adhortātiōne omnium
 10 legiōnum trepidātiōnem corrēxit vincīque parātās vincere docuit.

The civil war; Caesar crosses the Rubicon.

Interfectō intereā apud Parthōs Crassō et defūctā Iūliā, Caesaris filiā, quae, nūpta Pompēiō, generi socerique concordiam tenēbat, statim aemulātiō erūpit. Iam pridem
 15 Pompēiō suspectae Caesaris opēs et Caesarī Pompēiāna dignitās gravis, nec hīc ferēbat parem, nec ille superiōrem. Itaque cum Caesar in Galliā dētinerētur, et, nē imperfectō bellō discēderet, postulāset ut sibi liceret, quamvis absentī, alterum cōsulātum petere, ā senātū, suādentibus Pompēiō
 20 ēiusque amicis, negātum ei est. Hanc iniūriam acceptam vindicātūrus, in Italiam rediit et bellandum ratus cum exercitū Rubicōnem flūmen, quī prōvinciae eius fīnis erat, trānsiit. Hōc ad flūmen paulum cōstitisse fertur, ac reputāns, quantum mōlirētur, conversus ad proximōs, “Etiam
 25 nunc,” inquit, “regredi possumus; quod sī ponticulum trānsierimus, omnia armis agenda erunt.” Postrēmō autem, “Iacta ālea estō!” exclāmāns, exercitum trāicī iussit plūrimisque urbibus occupātis Brundisium contendit, quō Pompēius cōsulēsque cōnfūgerant.

The battle of Pharsalia; victories in Pontus and in Africa.

Quī cum inde in Ēpīrum trāiēcissent, Caesar eōs secūtus Brundisiō Dyrrhachium inter oppositās classēs gravissimā hieme trāsmisit; cōpiisque, quās subsequī iusserat, diūtius cessantibus, cum ad eās arcessendās frūstrā mīsisset, mīrae audāciae facinus ēdidit. Morae enim impatiēns castris 5 noctū ēgreditur, clam nāviculam cōnscendit, obvolūtō capite, nē agnōscerētur, et quamquam mare saevā tempestāte intumescēbat, in altum tamen prōtinus dīrigī nāvigium iubet et gubernātōre trepidante, “Quid timēs?” inquit, “Caesarem vehis!” neque prius gubernātōrem cēdere adversae tempe- 10 stātī passus est, quam paene obrutus esset fluctibus.

Deinde Caesar in Ēpīrum profectus, Pompēium Pharsālicō proeliō fūdit, et fugientem persecūtus, ut occīsum cognōvit, Ptolemaeō rēgī, Pompēiī interfectorī, ā quō sibi quoque insidiās tendī vidēret, bellum intulit; quō victō, in 15 Pontum trāsiit Pharnacemque, Mithridātis filium, rebel-lantem et multiplici successū praeferōcem intrā quīntum ab adventū diem, quattuor, quibus in cōnspectum vēnit, hōrīs unā prōfligāvit aciē, mōre fulminis, quod unō eōdemque mōmentō vēnit, percussit, abscessit. Nec vāna dē sē prae- 20 dicātiō est Caesaris, ante victum hostem esse quam vīsum. Ponticō postea triumphō trium verbōrum praetulit titulum: “Vēnī, vidī, vicī.” Deinde Scīpiōnem et Iubam, Numidiaē rēgem, reliquiās Pompēiānārum partium in Āfricā refoventēs, dēvicit.

25

Caesar defeats the Pompeians in Spain; his narrow escape.

Victōrem Āfricānī bellī Gāium Caesarem gravius excēpit Hispāniēse, quod Cn. Pompēius, Māgnī filius, adulēscēns fortissimus, ingēns ac terribile cōnflāverat, undique ad eum

- auxiliis paterni nominis magnitudinem sequentium ex toto orbe confluentibus. Sua Caesarem in Hispaniam comitata fortuna est; sed nullum umquam atrocius periculosiusque ab eo initum proelium; adeo ut, plus quam dubio Marte, 5 descenderet equo consistensque ante recedentem suorum aciem, increpans Fortunam, quod se in eum servasset exitum, denuntiaret militibus, vestigio se non recessurum; proinde viderent, quem et quo loco imperatorem deserturi essent. Verecundia magis quam virtute acies restituta est.
- 10 Cn. Pompeius victus et interemptus est. Caesar, omnium victor, regressus in urbem omnibus, qui contra se arma tulerant, ignovit et inquiringens triumphavit.

Caesar becomes ruler of Rome; the conspiracy.

- Bellis civilibus confectis, conversus iam ad ordinandum rei publicae statum, fastos corripuit annumque ad cursum 15 solis accommodavit, ut trecentorum sexaginta quinque dierum esset et, intercalario mense sublato, unus dies quarto quoque anno intercalaretur. Ius laboriosissimae ac severissimae dixit. Repetundarum convictos etiam ordine senatorio movit. Peregrinarum mercium portoria instituit; 20 legem praecipue sumptuariam exercuit. De ornanda instruendaque urbe, item de tuendo ampliandoque imperio plura ac maiora in dies destinabat; imprimis ius civile ad certum modum redigere atque ex immensa legum copia optima quaeque et necessaria in paucissimos conferre libros; bibli- 25 othecas Graecas et Latinas, quas maximas posset, publicare, siccare Pomptinas paludes; viam munitre a Mari Supero per Appennini dorsum ad Tiberim usque; Dacos qui se in Pontum effuderant, coercere; mox Parthis bellum inferre per Armeniam.
- 30 Haec et alia agentem et meditantem mors praevenit.

Dictator enim in perpetuum creatus agere Insolentius coepit; senatum ad se venientem sedens exceperit et quendam, ut adsurgeret, monentem Irato vultu respexit. Cum Antonius, Caesaris in omnibus bellis comes et tunc consulatus collega, capituli eius in sellam auream sedentis pro rostris dedema, insigne regium, imposuisset, id ita ab eo est repulsum ut non offensus videretur. Quam rem coniuratum in eum est a sexaginta amplius viris, Cassio et Bruto ducibus, decretumque eum Idibus Martiis in senatu confodere.

He is assassinated; Nemesis overtakes the conspirators.

Plurima indicia futuri periculi obtulerant dii immortales. 10 Uxor Calpurnia, territa nocturno visu, ut Idibus Martiis domi subsisteret orabat, et Spurinna haruspex praedixerat ut proximis dies triginta quasi fatales caveret, quorum ultimus erat Idus Martiae. Hoc igitur die Caesar Spurrinnae, "Ecquid scis," inquit, "Idus Martias iam venisse?" 15 et is, "Ecquid scis, illas nondum praeterisse?" Atque cum Caesar eo die in senatum venisset, adsidentem coniurati specie officii circumsteterunt illicoque unus, quasi aliquid rogaturus, propius accessit renuentique ab utroque umero togam apprehendit. Deinde clamantem, "Ista qui- 20 dem vis est," Casca, unus est coniuratoris, adversum vulnerat paulum infra iugulum. Caesar Cascae brachium arreptum graphio traiecit conatusque prosilire alio vulnere tardatus est. Dein ut animadvertit, undique se strictis pugionibus peti, togam caput obvolvit et ita tribus et viginti plagis confossus est. 25 Cum Marcum Brutum, quem filii loco habebat, in se irruentem vidisset, dixisse fertur: "Tu quoque, mi fili!"

Illud inter omnes ferre constitit, talem ei mortem paene ex sententia obtigisse. Nam et quondam cum apud Xeno- 30

phōntem lēgisset, Cŷrum ultimā valētūdine mandāsse quaedam dē fūnere suō, āspērnatūs tam lentum mortis genus, subitam sibi celeremque optāverat; et prīdiē quam occideretur, in sermōne nātō super cēnam, quisnam esset finis
 5 vitāe commodissimus, repentinum inopinātumque praetulerat. Percussōrum autem neque trienniō quisquam amplius supervīxit neque morte necessariā periit. Damnātī omnēs alius aliō cāsū periērunt, pars naufragiō, pars proeliō; nōnnullī sēmet eōdem illō pūgiōne, quō Caesarem violāvērunt,
 10 interēmērunt.

His personal characteristics.

Quō rārīor in rēgibus et principibus virīs moderātiō, hōc laudanda magis est. C. Iūlius Caesar victoriā cīvili clēmētissimē ūsus est; cum enim scrīnia dēprehendisset epistulārum ad Pompēiū missārum ab eīs, quī videbantur aut
 15 in dīversīs aut in neutrīs fuisse partibus, legere nōluit, sed combussit, nē forte in multōs gravius cōsulendī locum darent. Cicerō hanc laudem eximiam Caesarī tribuit, quod nihil oblivisci soleret nisi iniuriās. Simultātēs omnēs, occāsiōne oblātā, libēns dēposuit. Ultrō ac prior scripsit
 20 C. Calvō post fāmōsa ēius adversum sē epigrammata. Valerium Catullum, cūius versiculīs fāmam suam laceratam nōn ignōrābat, adhibuit cēnae. C. Memmiī suffragātor in petitiōne cōsulātūs fuit, etsī asperrimās fuisse ēius in sē orātiōnēs sciēbat.

25 Fuisse trāditur excelsā statūrā, ore paulō plēniore, nigrīs vegetisque oculīs, capite calvō; quam calvitii dēfōrmitātem, quod saepe obtrectātōrum iocīs obnoxia erat, aegrē ferēbat. Ideō ex omnibus dēcrētīs sibi ā senātū populōque honōribus nōn alium aut recēpit aut ūsūrpāvit libentius quam iūs
 30 laureae perpetuō gestandae. Vinī parcissimum eum fuisse

nē inimicī quidem negāvērunt. Verbum Catōnis est, ūnum ex omnibus Caesarem ad ēvertendam rem pūblicam sōbrium accessisse. Armōrum et equitandī peritissimus, labōris ultrā fidem patiēns; in āgmine nōnnumquam equō, saepius pedibus anteibat, capite dētēctō, seu sōl, seu imber erat. 5 Longissimās viās incrēdibilī celeritatē cōficiēbat, ut persaepe nūntiōs dē sē praevenīret; neque eum morābantur flūmina, quae vel nandō vel innīxus inflātis ūtribus trāiciēbat.

II. MĀRCUS TULLIUS CICERŌ.

Cicero's early life and education.

Mārcus Tullius Cicerō, equestrī genere, Arpīnī, quod est 10 Volscōrum oppidum, nātus est. Ex ēius avīs ūnus verrūcam in extrēmō nāsō sitam habuit, ciceris grānō similem; inde cognōmen Cicerōnis gentī inditum. Suādentibus quibusdam, ut id nōmen mūtāret, "Dabō operam," inquit, "ut istud cognōmen nōbilissimōrum nōminum splendōrem vincat." 15 Cum ā patre Rōmam missus, ubi celeberrimōrum magistrōrum scholīs interesset, eās artēs disceret, quibus aetās puerilis ad hūmānitātem solet infōrmārī, tantō successū tantāque cum praeceptōrum tum cēterōrum discipulōrum admirātiōne id fēcit, ut, cum fāma dē Cicerōnis ingenīō et 20 doctrīnā ad aliōs mānāset, nōn paucī, quī ēius videndī et audiendī grātiā scholās adīrent, repertī esse dīcantur.

Cum nullā rē magis ad summōs in rē pūblicā honōrēs viam mūnīrī posse intellexeret quam arte dicendī et eloquentiā, tōtō animō in ēius studium incubuit; in quō 25 quidem ita versātus est, ut nōn solum eōs, quī in Forō et iūdiciīs causās perōrārent, studiōsē sectārētur, sed prīvātīm quoque dīligentissimē sē exercēret.

He withdraws to Greece. The quaestorship.

Primum eloquentiam et libertatem adversus Sullanōs ostendit. Nam cum Rōscium quendam, parriēdi accūsātum, ob Chrēsogonī, Sullae libertī, quī in eius adversariis erat, potentiam nēmō dēfendere auderet, tantā eloquentiae
 5 vī eum dēfendit Cicerō, ut iam tum in arte dīcendī nullus eī pār esse vidērētur. Ex quō invidiam veritus, Athēnās studiōrum grātiā petiit, ubi Antiochum philosophum studiōsē audīvit. Inde eloquentiae causā Rhodum sē contulit, ubi Molōnem, Graecum rhētorem tum disertissimum, magis-
 10 trum habuit. Quī cum Cicerōnem dīcentem audīvisset, flēvisse dīcitur, quod per hunc Graecia eloquentiae laude privārētur.

Rōmam reversus quaestor Siciliam habuit. Nullius vērō quaestūra aut grātior aut clārior fuit; cum mājna tum esset
 15 annōnae difficultās, initiō molestus erat Siculīs, quōs cōgeret frūmenta in urbem mittere; postea vērō, diligētiā et iūstitiā et cōmitatem eius expertī, mājōrēs quaestōrī suō honōrēs quam ullī unquam praetōrī dētulerunt. E Siciliā reversus Rōmam, in causīs dīcendis ita floruit, ut inter
 20 omnēs causārum patrōnōs et esset et habērētur princeps.

Conspiracy of Catiline; brilliant career of Catiline's great-grandfather.

Cōsul deinde factus, L. Sergiī Catilīnae coniūratiōnem singulārī virtūte, cōstantiā, cūrā compressit. Catilīnae proavum, M. Sergium, incrēdibili fortitūdine fuisse Plīnius refert. Stīpendia is fēcit secundō bellō Pūnicō. Secundō
 25 stīpendiō dextram manum perdidit; stīpendiīs duōbus ter et viciēns vulnerātus est; ob id neutrā manū, neutrō pede satis ūtilis, plurimisque postea stīpendiīs dēbilis miles erat.

Bis ab Hannibale captus, bis vinculōrum eius profugus, vīgintī mēnsibus nūllō nōn diē in catēnis aut compedibus custōdītus. Sinistrā manū solā quāter pūgnāvit, duōbus equis insidente eō suffossīs. Dextram sibi ferream fecit eāque religātā, proeliātus Cremōnam obsidiōne exēmit, 5 Placentiam tūtātus est, duodēna castra hostium in Galliā cēpit. “Cēterī profectō,” Plīnius addit, “victōrēs hominum fuēre, Sergius vīcit etiam fortunam.”

Cicero drives Catiline from the city.

Singulārem hūius virī glōriam foedē dēhonestāvit pronepōtis scelus. Hīc enim rei familiāris, quam profūderat, 10 inopiā multōrumque scelerum cōscientiā in furōrem āctus et dominandī cupiditāte incēnsus indīgnātusque, quod in petitiōne cōsulātus repulsam passus esset, coniūrātiōne factā senātum cōnfodere, cōsulēs trucidāre, urbem incendere, diripere aerārium cōstituerat. Āctum erat dē pul- 15 cherrimō imperiō, nisi illa coniūrātiō in Cicerōnem et Antōnium cōsulēs incidisset, quōrum alter industriā rem patefecit, alter manū oppressit. Cum Cicerō habitō senātū in praesentem reum perōrāsset, Catilīna, incendium suum ruīnā sē restinctūrum esse minitāns, Rōmā profūgit et ad 20 exercitum, quem parāverat, proficiscitur, signa illāturus urbī. Sed socii eius, qui in urbe remāanserant, comprehēnsi, in carcere necātī sunt. A. Fulvius, vir senātorii ordinis filium, iuvenem et ingenio et formā inter aequālēs nitentem, prāvō cōsiliō Catilīnae amicitiam secūtum inque 25 castra eius ruentem, ex mediō itinere retrāctum supplicio mortis affēcit, praefātus, nōn sē Catilīnae illum adversus patriam, sed patriae adversus Catilīnam genuisse.

Defeat and death of Catiline; his desperate valor.

Neque eō magis ab inceptō Catilīna dēstitit, sed infestis
 signis Rōmam petēns Antōniī exercitū opprimitur. Quam
 atrōciter dīmicātum sit, exitus docuit; nēmō hostium bellō
 superfuit; quem quisque in pūgnandō cēperat locum, eum
 5 āmissā animā tegēbat. Catilīna longē ā suis inter hostium
 cadāvera repertus est; pulcherrimā morte, sī prō patriā
 sic concidisset! Senātus populusque Rōmānus Cicerōnem
 patrem patriae appellāvit. Cicerō ipse in orātiōne prō Sullā
 palam praedicat, cōsiliū patriae servandae fuisse iniectum
 10 sibi ā diīs, cum Catilīna coniūrāset adversus eam. “O diī
 immortalēs,” inquit, “vōs profectō incendistis tum animum
 meum cupiditāte cōservandae patriae. Vōs āvocāstis mē
 ā cōgitātiōnibus omnibus cēteris et convertistis ad salutē
 ūnam patriae. Vōs dēnique praetulistis mentī meae clāris-
 15 simum lūmen in tenebris tantis errōris et inscientiae. Tri-
 buam enim vōbīs, quae sunt vestra. Nec vērō possum tantum
 dare ingenio meō, ut dispexerim sponte meā in tempestāte
 illā turbulentissimā rei pūblīcae, quid esset optimum factū.”

Cicero's exile and recall.

Paucis post annis Cicerōnī diem dixit Clōdīus tribūnus
 20 plēbis, quod cīvēs Rōmānōs indictā causā necāvisset. Senā-
 tus maestus, tamquam in pūblicō lūctū, veste mūtātā prō eō
 dēprecābātur. Cicerō, cum posset armis salutē suam dē-
 fendere, māluit urbe cēdere, quam suā causā caedem fieri.
 Proficiscentem omnēs bonī flentēs prōsecūtī sunt. Dein
 25 Clōdīus ēdictum prōposuit, ut Mārcō Tulliō ignī et aquā
 interdicerētur; illius domum et villās incendit. Sed vis
 illa nōn diūturna fuit; mox enim tōtus ferē populus Rō-
 mānus ingentī dēsideriō Cicerōnis reditum flāgitāre coepit,

et m̄ximō omnium ōrdinum studiō Cicerō in patriam revocātus est. Nihil per tōtam vītam Cicerōnī itinere, quō in patriam rediit, accidit iūcundius. Obviam ei redeuntī ab ūniversīs itum est; domus eius publicā pecūniā restitūta est.

5

Cicero arraigns Antony. Murder of Cicero.

Gravissimae illā tempestāte inter Caesarem et Pompēium ortae sunt inimicitiae, ut rēs nisi bellō dirimī nōn posse vidērētur. Cicerō quidem summō studiō enītēbatur, ut eōs inter sē reconciliāret et ā bellī cīvīlis calamitatibus dēter-reret, sed cum neutrum ad pācem ineundam permovēre 10 posset, Pompēium secūtus est. Sed victō Pompēiō, ā Caesare victōre veniam ultrō accēpit. Quō interfectō, Octāviānum, Caesaris hērēdem, fōvit, Antōnium impūgnāvit effēcitque, ut ā senātū hostis iūdicārētur.

Sed Antōnius, initā cum Octāviānō societāte, Cicerōnem 15 iam diū sibi inimicum prōscripsit. Quā rē audītā, Cicerō trānsversīs itineribus in villam, quae ā marī proximē aberat, fūgit indeque nāvem cōnscendit, in Macedoniam trānsitūrus. Unde aliquotiēns in altum prōvectum cum modo ventī adversī rettulissent, modo ipse iactātiōnem maris patī nōn 20 posset, taedium tandem eum et fugae et vītae cēpit regres-susque ad villam, “Moriar,” inquit, “in patriā saepe servātā.” Satis cōnstat, adventantibus percussōribus, servōs fortiter fidēliterque parātōs fuisse ad dīmicandum, ipsum dēpōnī lectīcam et quietōs patī, quod sors inīqua cōgeret, 25 iussisse. Prōminentī ex lectīcā et immōtam cervicem prae-bentī caput praecīsum est. Manūs quoque abscīsae; caput relātum est ad Antōnium eiusque iussū cum dextrā manū in rōstrīs positum.

Cicero's patriotism; his philosophical works.

Quam diū rēs pūblica Rōmāna per eōs gerēbātur, quibus
 sē ipsa commiserat, in eam cūrās cōgitatīōnēsque ferē omnēs
 suās cōnferēbat Cicerō et plūs operae pōnēbat in agendō
 quam in scribendō. Cum autem dominātū ūnūs Iūlii
 5 Caesaris omnia tenērentur, nōn sē angōribus dēdidit nec
 indignīs homine doctō voluptātibus. Fugiēns cōnspectum
 Forī urbisque rūra peragrābat, abdēbatque sē quantum licē-
 bat, et sōlus erat. Nihil agere autem cum animus nōn posset,
 existimāvit honestissimē molestiās posse dēpōnī, sī sē ad
 10 philosophiam rettulisset, cui adulēscēns multum temporis
 tribuerat, et omne studium cūramque convertit ad scri-
 bendum; atque ut cīvibus etiam ōtiōsus aliquid prōdesse
 posset, ēlabōrāvit, ut doctiōrēs fierent et sapientiōrēs, plūra-
 que brevī tempore ēversā rē pūblicā scripsit, quam multis
 15 annīs eā stante scripserat. Sic faciundiae et Latīnārum lit-
 terārum parēns ēvāsīt pāruique virōrum sapientium prae-
 ceptō, quī docent nōn sōlum ex malīs ēligere minima oportēre,
 sed etiam excerpere ex hīs ipsīs, sī quid insit bonī.

Specimens of his wit.

Multa exstant facētē ab eō dicta. Cum Lentulum, gene-
 20 rum suum, exiguae statūrae hominem, vīdisset longō gladiō
 accinctum, "Quis," inquit, "generum meum ad gladium
 alligāvit?"

Mātrōna quaedam, iūniōrem sē quam erat simulāns, dic-
 titābat sē trīgintā tantum annōs habēre; cui Cicerō, "Verum
 25 est," inquit, "nam hōc vīginti annōs audiō."

Caesar, alterō cōsule mortuō diē Decembris ultimā, Cani-
 nium cōsulem hōrā septimā in reliquam diēi partem re-
 nūntiāverat; quem cum plērīque irent salūtātum dē mōre,

“Festinēmus,” inquit Cicerō, “priusquam abeat magistrātū.”
 Dē eōdem Caniniō scripsit Cicerō: “Fuit mirificā vigilantia
 Caninius, quī tōtō suō cōsulātū somnum nōn viderit.”

III. CAESAR OCTAVIĀNUS AUGUSTUS.

His parentage. The siege of Mutina.

Octaviānus, Iuliae, Gaii Caesaris sorōris, nepōs, quārtum
 annum agēs patrem amīsit. Ab avunculō adoptātus, pro- 5
 fectum eum in Hispāniās adversus Gnaei Pompēi liberōs
 secūtus est. Deinde ab eō Apollōniam missus studiis vacā-
 vit. Utque primum occisum Caesarem hērēdemque sē com-
 perit, in urbem regressus hērēditātem adiit, nōmen Caesaris
 sūmpsit collēctōque veterānōrum exercitū, opem Decimō 10
 Brūtō tulit, quī ab Antōniō Mutinae obsidēbatur. Cum
 autem urbis aditū prohibērētur, ut Brūtum dē omnibus
 rēbus certiōrem faceret, primō litterās mīsit plumbeis lāmi-
 nīs inscriptās, quās ad brachium religātās ūrinātōrēs Scul-
 tennam amnem trānantēs ad Brūtum dēferēbant. Quin et 15
 avibus internūntiis ūtēbatur. Columbīs enim, quās inclūsās
 ante famē affēcerat, epistulās ad collum religābat easque ā
 proximō moenibus locō ēmittēbat. Illae, lūcis cibique avi-
 dae, altissima aedificiōrum petentēs excipiēbantur ā Decimō
 Brūtō; quī eō modō dē omnibus rēbus certior fiēbat, utique 20
 postquam, dispositō quibusdam locis cibō, columbās illūc
 dēvolāre instituit.

The triumvirate; the merciless proscriptions.

Bellum Mutinēse Octaviānus duobus proeliis cōnfēcit;
 quōrum in alterō nōn ducis modo, sed mīlitis etiam fūctus
 est officiō atque in mediā dīmiciātiōne, aquiliferō legiōnis 25

suae graviter sauciō, aquilam umeris subisse diūque fertur portasse. Postea reconciliatā cum Antōniō grātiā iunctisque cum eō cōpiis, ut Gaī Caesaris necem ulcisceretur, ad urbem hostiliter accessit misitque, quī nōmine exercitūs sibi
 5 cōsulātum dēposcerent. Cunctante senātū, centuriō princeps lēgatiōnis reiectō sagulō, ostendēns gladii capulum nōn dubitavit in cūriā dicere: “Hic faciet, si vōs nōn fēceritis.”

Ita cum Octāviānus vicēsimo aetātis annō cōsulātum invāsisset, pācem fēcit cum Antōniō et Lepidō, ita ut trium-
 10 viri rei pūblicae cōstituendae per quīnquennium essent ipse et Lepidus et Antōnius, et ut suōs quisque inimicōs prōscriberent. Quae prōscriptiō Sullānā longē crudēlior fuit. Exstant autem ex eā multa vel extrēmae impietātis vel mīrae fidei ac cōstantiae exempla. T. Tōranus, trium-
 15 virōrum partēs secūtus, prōscripti patris suī, praetōrii et ōrnāti viri, latebrās, aetātem notāsque corporis, quibus agnōsci posset, centuriōnibus ēdidit, quī eum persecūtī sunt. Alius quīdam cum prōscriptum sē cognōvisset, ad clientem suum cōfūgit; sed filius eius, per ipsa vestigia patris mili-
 20 tibus ductis, occidendū eum in cōspectū suō obiēcit.

Cum C. Plōtius Plancus ā triumviris prōscriptus in regiōne Salernitānā latēret, servi eius comprehēnsi multumque ac diū torti negābant sē scīre, ubi dominus esset. Nōn sustinuit deinde Plancus tam fidēlēs tamque boni
 25 exempli servōs ulterius cruciārī; sed prōcessit in medium iugulumque gladiis militum obiēcit. Senātōris cūiusdam servus cum ad dominum prōscriptum occidendū militēs advēnisse cognōsset, commūtātā cum eō veste, permūtātō etiam anulō, illum posticō clam ēmisit, sē autem in cubi-
 30 culum ad lectulum recēpit et ut dominum occidī passus est. “Quantī viri est,” addit Seneca, “cum praemia prōditiōnis ingentia ostendantur, praemium fidei mortem concupiscere!”

The war against Brutus and Cassius.

Octaviānus deinde M. Brūtum, interfectōrem Caesaris, bellō persecūtus, id bellum, quamquam invalidus atque aeger, duplici proeliō trānsēgit; quōrum priore castris exūtus, vix fugā ēvāsit. Victor acerbissimē sē gessit; in nōbilissimum quemque captivum nōn sine verbōrum con- 5 tumeliā saeviit. Ūnī suppliciter sepultūram precantī respondisse dicitur, iam istam in volucrum fore potestāte. Aliōs, patrem et filium, prō vitā rogantēs, sortiri fertur iussisse, ut alterutrī concēderētur, ac cum, patre, quia sē obtulerat, occisō, filius quoque voluntariā occubisset nece, 10 spectāsse utrumque morientem. Ōrāre veniam vel excūsare sē cōnantibus ūnā vōce occurrēbat, moriendum esse. Scribunt quīdam, trecentōs ex dediticiis electōs ad aram dīvō Iuliō exstrūctam Idibus Mārtiis hostiārum mōre mactātōs.

Octavian defeats Antony and Cleopatra at Actium.

Abaliēnātus postea est ab Antōniō, quod is repudiātā 15 Octaviā sorōre Cleopatram, Aegypti rēginam, dūxisset uxōrem; quae quidem mulier cum Antōniō lūxū et deliciis certābat. Ūnā sē cēnā centiens sēstertium absūmptūram aliquandō dixerat. Cupiēbat discere Antōnius, sed fieri posse nōn arbitrābatur. Posterō igitur diē magnificam aliās 20 cēnam, sed cottidiānam Antōniō apposuit, irridenti, quod prōmissō stāre nōn potuisset. At illa inferri mēsam secundam iussit. Ex praeceptō ministrī ūnum tantum vās ante eam posuere acētī, cūius asperitās vīsque margaritās resolvit. Expectante igitur Antōniō, quidnam esset āctūra, 25 margaritam, quam auribus gerēbat, detrāxit et acētō liquefactam absorbuit. Victum Antōnium omnēs, quī aderant, prōnūntiāvērunt.

Octāviānus cum Antōniō apud Actium, quī locus est in Epīrō, nāvālī proeliō dīmicāvit. Victum et fugientem persecūtus Aegyptum petiit, et Alexandrēam, quō Antōnius cum Cleopatrá cōnfūgerat, obsēdit. Antōnius in ultimā
 5 rerum dēspērātiōne, cum habitū rēgis in soliō rēgālī sēdisset, mortem sibi ipse cōnscīvit. Cleopatra, quam Octāviānus, Alexandrēā in potestātem redāctā, māgnopere cupiēbat vīvam comprehendī triumphōque servārī, aspidem sibi afferendam cūrāvit eiusque morsū periit. Cleopatrae
 10 mortuae commūnem cum Antōniō sepultūrā tribuit.

Octavian becomes absolute ruler; he receives the title of Augustus.

Tandem Octāviānus, hostibus victis sōlus imperiō potītus, clēmentem sē exhibuit. Omnia posthac in eō plēna mānsuētūdinis et hūmānitātis. Multis ignōvit vel eis, quī saepe graviter eum offenderant. Reversus in Italiam trium-
 15 phāns Rōmam ingressus est. Tum bellis tōtō orbe compositis, Iānī geminī portās suā manū clausit, quae bis tantum antea clausae erant, prīmum sub Numā rēge, iterum post prīmum Pūnicum bellum. Tunc omnēs praeteritōrum malōrum obliviō cēpit populusque Rōmānus praesentis otiī
 20 laetitiā perfruēbātur. Octāviānō māximī honōrēs ā senātū delāti sunt. Ipsī Augustō cognōmen datum, et in honōrem eius mēnsis Sextilis eōdem nōmine appellātus est, quod illō mēse bellis cīvilibus finis esset impositus. Patris patriae cognōmen ūniversī māximō cōnsēnsū dētulērunt ei. Dē-
 25 ferentibus lacrimāns respondit Augustus hīs verbis: "Compos factus vōtōrum meōrum, patrēs cōnscriptī, quid habeo aliud, quod deōs immortalēs precer, quam ut hunc cōnsēnsū vestrum ad ultimum vītae finem mihi perferre liceat!"

His moderate use of his power; his simple habits.

Dictatūram magnā vī offerente populō dēprecātus est. Dominī appellatiōnem semper exhorruit eamque sibi tribui ēdictō vetuit. Immō dē restituendā rē publicā nōn semel cōgitāvit, sed reputāns et sē privātum nōn sine periculō fore, et rem publicam plūrium arbitriō commissum irī, sum- 5 mam retinuit potestātem, id vērō studuit, nē quem novī statūs paenitēret. Bene dē eis etiam, quōs adversāriōs expertus erat, et sentiēbat et loquēbātur. Legentem aliquandō ūnum ē nepōtibus invēnit; cumque puer territus volūmen Cicerōnis, quod manū tenēbat, veste tegeret, Augustus li- 10 brum cēpit eoque statim redditō, “Hic vir,” inquit, “fili mī, doctus fuit et patriae amāns.”

Pedibus saepe per urbem incēdēbat summāque cōmitāte adeuntēs excipiēbat. Convēnit aliquandō eum veterānus miles, quī vocātus in iūs periclitābātur, rogāvitque, ut sibi 15 adesset; statim Augustus ūnum ē comitātū suō ēlēgit advocātum, quī litigātorem commendāret. Tum veterānus exclāmāvit, “At nōn ego, tē periclitante bellō Actiacō, vicārium quaesivī, sed ipse prō tē pūgnāvī,” simulque detēxit cicātricēs. Ērubuit Augustus atque ipse vēnit in 20 advocatiōnem.

The talking birds.

Cum post Actiacam victōriam Octāviānus Rōmam rever- terētur, occurrit ei inter grātulantēs opifex quīdam corvum tenēns, quem instituerat haec dīcere: “Avē, Caesar, victor, imperātor!” Mirātus Caesar officiōsam avem vīginti mili- 25 bus nummōrum ēmit. Socius opificis, ad quem nihil ex illā liberālitate pervēnerat, affīrmāvit Caesarī habēre illum et alium corvum, quem ut afferre cōgerētur rogāvit. Allātus verba, quae didicerat, expressit: “Avē, Antōnī, victor, im-

perātor!" Nihil exasperātus Caesar satis dūxit, iubere illum dīvidere dōnātivum cum contubernālī. Salūtātus similiter ā pittacō emī eum iussit.

Exemplum sūtorem pauperem sollicitāvit, ut corvum
 5 institueret ad parem salūtatiōnem. Quī impendiō exhaustus saepe ad avem non respondentem dīcere solēbat: "Opera et impēsa periit!" Aliquandō tamen corvus coepit dīcere dictam salūtatiōnem. Hāc audītā, dum trānsit, Augustus respondit: "Satis domī tālium salūtātōrum habeo." Super-
 10 fuit corvō. memoria, ut et illa, quibus dominum querentem solēbat audīre, subtexeret, "Opera et impēsa periit." Ad quod Caesar rīsit emīque avem iussit, quantī nūllam ante ēmerat.

Further instances of clemency and good-nature.

Solēbat Graeculus quīdam dēscendentī ē palātiō Caesari
 15 honōrificum aliquod epigramma porrigere. Id cum frūstrā saepe fēcisset et tamen rūrsus eum idem facturum dūxisset Augustus, breve suā manū in chartā exarāvit Graecum epigramma et Graeculō advenientī obviam mīsīt. Ille inter legendum laudāre mīrārīque tam vōce quam vultū gestūque.
 20 Deinde cum accessisset ad sellam, quā Caesar vehēbātur, dēmissā in pauperum crumēnam manū, paucōs dēnāriōs prōtulit, quōs prīncipī daret, dīxitque, sē plūs datūrum fuisse, sī plūs habuisset. Secūtō omnium rīsū, dispēnsātorem Caesar vocāvit, et satis grandem pecūniae summam
 25 numerārī Graeculō iussit.

Augustus ferē nūllī sē invītanti negābat. Exceptus igitur ā quōdam cēnā satis parcā et paene cottidiānā, hōc tantum insusurrāvit, "Nōn putābam mē tibi esse tam famili-
 ārem." Cum aliquandō apud Pōlliōnem quendam cēnāret
 30 frēgissetque ūnus ē servīs vās crystallinum, rapī eum ad

mortem Pōlliō iussit et obici mūraenis, quās ingēns piscīna continēbat. Evāsit ē manibus puer et ad pedēs Caesaris cōnfūgit nihil aliud petīturus, quam ut aliter periret nec ēsca piscium fieret. Mōtus est novō crudelitātis genere Caesar et illum quidem mitti, crystallina autem omnia 5 cōram sē frangī iussit complērique piscinam.

Augustus in quādā villā aegrōtāns, noctēs inquitās agēbat, rumpente somnum eius crēbrō noctuae cantū. Quā molestiā cum liberārī sē vehementer cupere significāset, mīles quīdam, aucupii perītus, noctuamprehendendam cūrā- 10 vit, vīvamque Augustō attulit, spē ingentis praemiī. Cui cum Augustus mīlle nummōs darī iussisset, ille minus dignum praemium exīstimāns dicere ausus est, "Mālō ut vivat," et avem dīmīsit. Imperātōrī nec ad irāscendum causa deerat nec ad ulciscendum potestās; hanc tamen 15 iniūriam aequō animō tulit Augustus hominemque impūnitum abire passus est.

His personal characteristics.

Augustus amicitias neque facile admisit et cōstantissimē retinuit. Imprimis familiārem habuit Maecēnatem, equitem Rōmānum; quī eā, quā apud prīncipem valēbat, grātiā ita 20 semper ūsus est, ut prōdesset omnibus, quibus posset, noceret nēmīnī. Iūs aliquandō dicēbat Augustus et multōs capite damnātūros vidēbātur. Aderat tum Maecēnās, quī per circumstantium turbam perrumpere et ad tribūnal propius accēdere cōnābātur. Quod cum frūstrā tentāset, haec verba 25 in tabellā scripsit, "Surge tandem, carnifex!" eamque tabellam ad Augustum prōiecit. Quā lēctā, is statim surrēxit neque quisquam est morte multātus.

Habitāvīt Augustus in aedibus modicis, neque laxitāte neque cultū cōspiciūis, ac per annōs amplius quadrāgintā 30

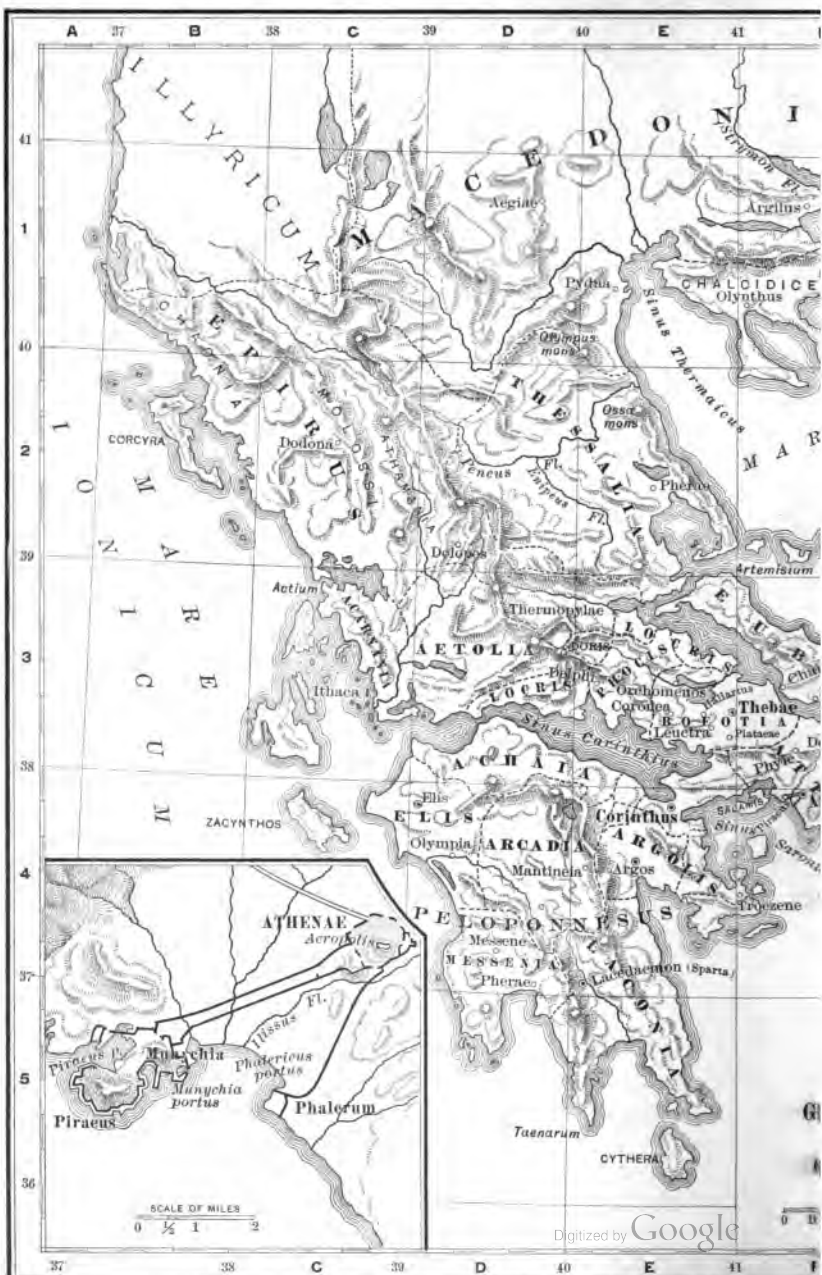
in eōdem cubiculō hieme et aestāte mānsit. Supellex quoque eius vix privātae elegantiae erat. Rārō veste aliā ūsus est quam cōfectā ab uxōre, sorōre, filiā neptibusque. Item tamen Rōmam, quam prō māiestāte imperiī nōn satis ōrnā-
 5 tam invēnerat, adeō excoluit, ut iūre glōriārētur, marmoream sē rēlinquere, quam laterīciam accēpisset.

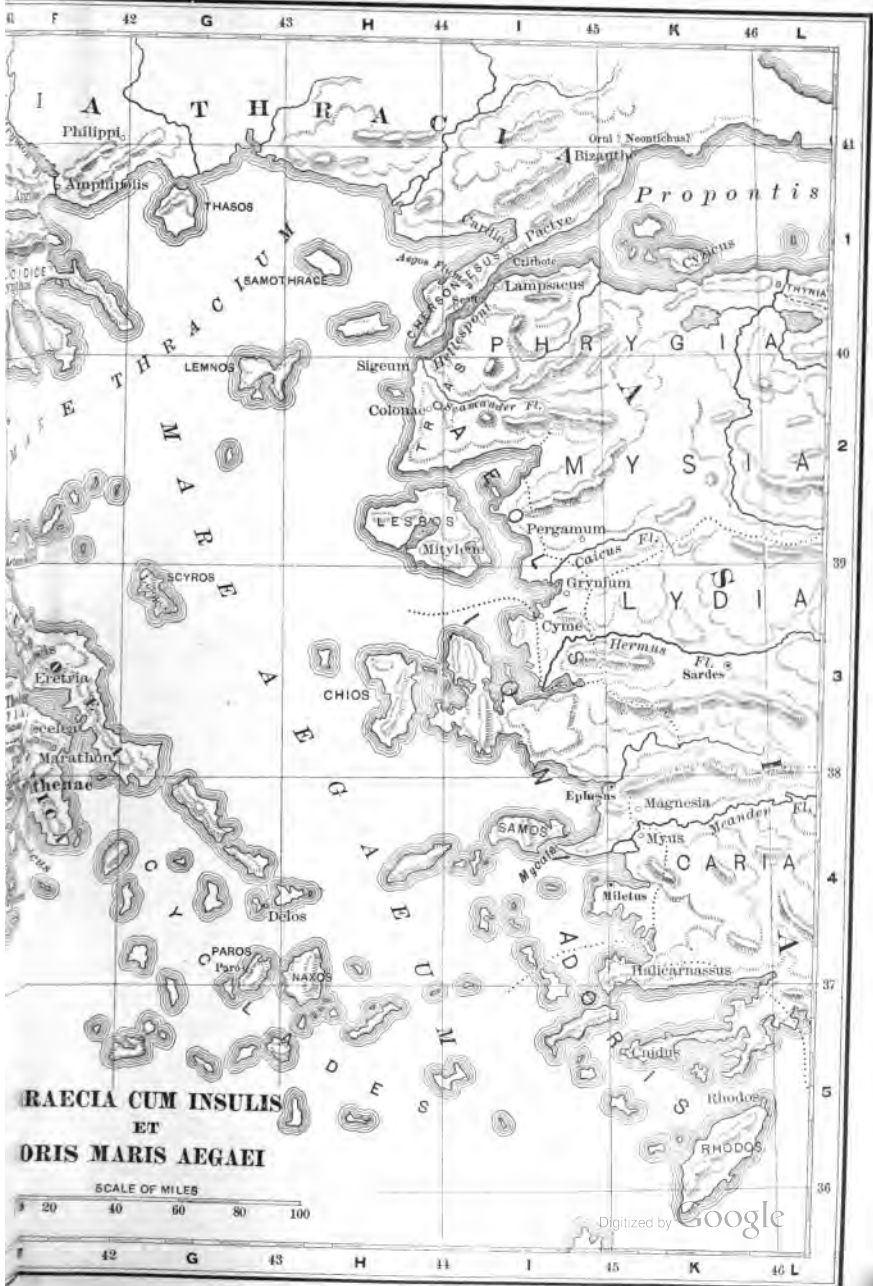
Fōrmā fuit Augustus eximiā et per omnēs aetātis gradūs venustissimā. Erat tamen omnis lēnōciniī negligēns, et in capite cōmendō tam incūriōsus, ut eō ipsō tempore, quō
 10 illud tōnsōribus committeret, aut legeret aliquid aut etiam scriberet.

The defeat of Varus. Death of Augustus.

Paucīs annīs antequam morerētur, gravissimam in Germāniā accēpit clādem, tribus legiōnibus cum duce Vārō lēgātisque et auxiliīs omnibus caesīs. Hāc nūntiātā excubiās
 15 per urbem indīxit, nē quis tumultus exsisteret, et māgnōs lūdōs Iovī optimō māximō vōvit, sī rēs pūblica in meliōrem statum vertisset. Adeō dēnique cōsternātum ferunt, ut, per continuōs mēnsēs barbā capillōque summissō, caput interdum foribus illīderet, vōciferāns, “Quīntilī Vāre, legiōnēs
 20 redde!” diemque clādis quotannīs maestum habuerit ac lūgubrem.

Tandem afflictā valētūdine in Campāniam concessit, ubi, remissō ad ōtium animō, nullō hilaritātis genere abstinuit. Suprēmō vītāe diē, petītō speculō, capillum sibi cōmī iussit
 25 et amīcōs circumstantēs percontātus, ecquid eis vidērētur mīmum vītāe commodē trānsēgisse, adiēcit solitam clausulam, “Ēdite strepitum vōsque omnēs cum gaudiō applaudite.” Obiit Nōlae sextum et septuāgēsimum annum agēns.





IV. CORNELIUS NEPOS.

I. MILTIADĒS.

The expedition to Chersonesus.

I. Miltiadēs, Cīmōnis filius, Athēniēnsis, cum et antiquitate generis et glōriā māiōrum et suā modestiā ūnus omnium māximē flōrēret eāque esset aetate ut nōn iam solum dē eō bene spērāre, sed etiam cōnfidere cīvēs possent suī, tālem eum futūrum quālem cognitum iūdicārunť, accidit ut Athēniēnsēs Chersonēsum colōnōs vellent mittere. Cūius generis cum māgnus numerus esset et multī ēius dēmigrātiōnis peterent societātem, ex eīs dēlēctī Delphōs dēliberātum missī sunt, quō potissimum duce ūterentur. Namque tum Thraecēs eās regiōnēs tenēbant, cum quibus armīs erat 10 dīmicandum. Hīs cōnsulentibus nōminātim Pŷthia praecepit, ut Miltiadem imperātōrem sibi sūmerent: id sī fecissent, incepta prōspera futūra. Hōc ōrāculi respōnsō Miltiadēs cum dēlēctā manū classe Chersonēsum profectus, cum accessisset Lēmnum et incolās ēius insulae sub potestate 15 redigere vellet Athēniēnsium, idque ut Lēmniī suā sponte facerent postulāset, illī irridētēs respondērunt tum id sē factūrōs, cum ille domō nāvis profectus ventō aquilōne vēnisset Lēmnum; hīc enim ventus, ab septentriōnibus oriēns, adversum tenet Athēnīs proficiscentibus. 20 Miltiadēs, morandī tempus nōn habēns, cursum dirēxit quō tendēbat, pervēnitque Chersonēsum.

II. Ibi brevī tempore barbarōrum cōpiīs disiectīs, tōtā regiōne quam petierat potītus, loca castellīs idōnea comūniit, multitudinem quam sēcum dūxerat in agrīs collocāvit crēbrisque excursiōnibus locuplētāvit. Neque minus
 5 in eā rē prūdentiā quam felicitāte adiūtus est; nam cum virtūte militum dēvīcisset hostium exercitūs, summā aequitāte rēs cōstituit atque ipse ibīdem manēre dēcrēvit. Erat enim inter eōs dignitāte regiā, quamquam carēbat nōmine, neque id magis imperiō quam iūstitiā cōsecūtus; neque
 10 eō sētius Athēniēnsibus, ā quibus erat profectus, officia praestābat. Quibus rēbus fiēbat ut nōn minus eōrum voluntāte perpetuum imperium obtinēret quī mīserant, quam illōrum cum quibus erat profectus. Chersonēsō tālī modō cōstitutā, Lēmnum revertitur et ex pactō postu-
 15 lat ut sibi urbem trādant — illī enim dīxerant, cum ventō boreā domō profectus eō pervēnisset, sēsē dēditūrōs — sē enim domum Chersonēsī habēre.

Cārēs, quī tum Lēmnum incolēbant, etsī praeter opīniōnem rēs ceciderat, tamen nōn dictō, sed secundā fortūnā
 20 adversāriōrum captī, resistere ausī nōn sunt atque ex insulā dēmigrārunt. Parī felicitāte cēterās insulās, quae Cŷclades nōminantur, sub Athēniēnsium redēgit potestātem.

Darius invades Scythia; Miltiades attempts his destruction.

III. Eīsdem temporibus Persārum rēx Dārēus, ex Asiā in Eurōpam exercitū trāiectō, Scythīs bellum inferre dē-
 25 crēvit. Pontem fēcit in Histrō flūmine, quā cōpiās trādūceret. Eius pontis, dum ipse abesset, custōdēs reliquit principēs quōs sēcum ex Iōniā et Aeolide dūxerat; quibus singulārū urbium perpetua dederat imperia. Sic enim facillimē putāvit sē Graecā linguā loquentēs quī Asiam
 30 incolerent sub suā retentūrum potestāte, sī amicīs suis

oppida tuenda tradidisset; quibus, se oppresso, nulla spes salutis relinqueretur. In hoc fuit tum numero Miltiadēs. Hic, cum crebri afferrent nuntii male rem gerere Dāreum premique a Scythiis, hortatus est pontis custodēs, ne a fortunā datam occāsiōnem liberandae Graeciae dimitterent. 5 Nam si cum eis copiis, quas secum transportarat, interisset Dārēus, nōn solum Eurōpam fore tūtam, sed etiam eos qui Asiam incolerent Graeci genere liberōs a Persarum futurōs dominātiōne et periculō. Id facile effici posse: ponte enim rescisso, regem vel hostium ferro vel inopiā paucis diebus 10 interiturum. Ad hoc cōsiliū cum plerique accederent, Histiaeus Milēsius ne res conficeretur obstitit, dicens nōn idem ipsi, qui summās imperii tenērent, expedire et multitudinē, quod Dārēi regnō ipsorum niteretur dominātiō; quō extincto, ipsos potestate expulsos civibus suis poenās 15 datūrōs. Itaque adeo se abhorrere a ceterorum cōsilio, ut nihil putet ipsi utilius quam confirmari regnum Persarum.

Huius cum sententiam plurimi essent secuti, Miltiadēs nōn dubitans tam multis consiliis ad regis aures consilia 20 sua perventura, Chersonesum reliquit ac rursus Athēnās demigravit. Cuius ratio etsi nōn valuit, tamen magnō opere est laudanda, cum amīcior omnium libertatī quam suae fuerit dominātiōnī.

Darius invades Greece; the battle of Marathon.

IV. Dārēus autem, cum ex Eurōpā in Asiam redisset, 25 hortantibus amicis ut Graeciam redigeret in suam potestatem, classem quingentarum navium comparavit eique Dātim praefecit et Artaphernem, eisque ducenta peditum, decem equitum milia dedit, causam interserens se hostem esse Athēniēnsibus, quod eorum auxilio Iōnes Sardis ex- 30

pūgnāssent suaque praesidia interfēcissent. Illi praefecti
rēgiī, classe ad Euboeam appulsā, celeriter Eretriam cēpē-
runt omnēsque eius gentis civēs abreptōs in Asiam ad
rēgem mīsērunt. Inde ad Atticam accessērunt ac suās
5 cōpiās in campum Marathōna dēdūxērunt; is abest ab
oppidō circiter mīlia passuum decem.

Hōc tumultū Athēniēnsēs tam propinquō tamque māgnō
permōtī, auxilium nūquam nisi ā Lacedaemoniīs petivē-
runt Phīdippumque, cursōrem eius generis, quī hēmero-
10 dromoe vocantur, Lacedaemonem mīsērunt, ut nūtiāret
quam celerrimō opus esse auxiliō. Domī autem creant
decem praetōrēs, quī exercituī praessent, in eis Miltia-
dem; inter quōs māgna fuit contentiō, utrum moenibus
sē dēfenderent, an obviam irent hostibus aciēque dē-
15 cernerent. Ūnus Miltiadēs māximē nitēbātur ut primō
quōque tempore castra fierent: id sī factum esset, et
civibus animum accessūrum, cum vidērent dē eōrum vir-
tūte nōn dēspērārī, et hostēs eādē rē fore tardiōrēs, sī
animadverterent audērī adversus sē tam exiguis cōpiīs
20 dīmīcārī.

V. Hōc in tempore nūlla civitās Athēniēnsibus auxiliō
fuit praeter Plataeēnsēs; ea mille mīsīt militum. Itaque
hōrum adventū decem mīlia armātōrum complēta sunt,
quae manus mirābilī flagrabat pūgnandī cupiditāte; quō
25 factum est ut plūs quam collēgae Miltiadēs valeret.

Eius ergō auctoritāte impulsī, Athēniēnsēs cōpiās ex
urbe ēdūxērunt locōque idōneō castra fēcērunt. Dein
posterō diē sub montis rādīcibus aciē regiōne instrūctā
nōn apertissimā — namque arborēs multis locis erant rārae
30 — proelium commīsērunt hōc cōnsiliō, ut et montium
altitūdine tegerentur et arborum trāctū equitātus hostium
impedīrētur, nē multitudīne clauderentur. Dātis etsī nōn

aequum locum vidēbat suīs, tamen frētus numerō cōpi-
 arum suarum cōfligere cupiēbat, eoque magis quod,
 priusquam Lacedaemoniī subsidiō venīrent, dīmicāre ūtile
 arbitrābātur. Itaque in aciem peditum centum, equitum
 decem milia prōdūxit proeliumque commisit. In quō 5
 tantō plūs virtūte valuērunt Athēniēnsēs, ut decemplicem
 numerum hostium prōfligārint, adeoque eōs perterruērunt,
 ut Persae nōn castra, sed nāvēs petierint. Quā pūgnā
 nihil adhūc exstitit nōbilius; nūlla enim umquam tam
 exigua manus tantās opēs prōstrāvit. 10

The honors conferred on Miltiades.

VI. Cūius victōriae nōn aliēnum vidētur quāle praemium
 Miltiadī sit tribūtum docēre, quō facilius intellegī possit
 eandem omnium cīvitatū esse nātūrā. Ut enim populī
 Rōmānī honōrēs quondam fuērunt rārī et tenuēs ob eamque
 causam glōriōsī, nunc autem effūsī atque obsoletī, sic olim 15
 apud Athēniēnsēs fuisse reperimus. Namque huic Miltiadī,
 quī Athēnās tōtamque Graeciam liberārat, tālis honōs tribū-
 tus est, in porticū quae Poecilē vocātur cum pūgna dēpinge-
 rētur Marathōnia, ut in decem praetōrum numerō prīna
 eius imāgō pōnerētur isque hortārētur milītēs proeliumque 20
 committeret. Idem ille populus, postea quam māius impe-
 rium est nactus et largitiōne magistrātuum corruptus est,
 trecentās statuās Dēmētriō Phalēreō dēcrevit.

His unsuccessful expedition in the Aegean; he is accused of treason.

VII. Post hōc proelium classem septuāgintā nāvium
 Athēniēnsēs eidem Miltiadī dedērunt, ut insulās quae bar- 25
 barōs adiūverant bellō persequerētur. Quō in imperiō
 plērāsque ad officium redīre coēgit, nōnnūllās vī expūgnā-
 vit. Ex hīs Parum insulam opibus elātā cum orātiōne

reconciliāre nōn posset, cōpiās ē nāvibus edūxit, urbem operibus clausit omnīque commeātū prīvavit; dein vineīs ac testūdīnibus cōstitūtīs, propius mūrōs accessit. Cum iam in eō esset ut oppidō potīrētur, procul in continentī
5 lūcus, quī ex Insulā cōspiciēbātur, nesciō quō cāsū nocturnō tempore incēsus est. Cūius flamma ut ab oppidānīs et oppūgnātōribus est vīsa, utrīsque vēnit in opīniōnem, sīgnum ā classiāriīs rēgiīs datum. Quō factum est ut et Pariī ā dēditione dēterrērentur et Miltiadēs, timēns nē
10 classis rēgia adventāret, incēnsīs operibus quae statuerat, cum totidem nāvibus atque erat profectus Athēnās magnā cum offēnsiōne cīvium suōrum redīret.

Accūsātus ergō est prōditionis, quod, cum Parum expūgnāre posset, ā rēge corruptus infectīs rēbus discessisset.
15 Eō tempore aeger erat vulneribus, quae in oppūgnandō oppidō accēperat. Itaque cum ipse prō sē dīcere nōn posset, verba fēcit frāter eius Stēsagorās.

Causā cognitā, capitis absolūtus pecūniā multātus est, eaque hīs quīnquāgintā talentīs aestimāta est, quantus in
20 classem sūmptus factus erat. Hanc pecūniam quod solvere in praesentia nōn poterat, in vincla pūblica coniectus est ibique diem obiit suprēmum.

VIII. Hīc etsī crimine Pariō est accūsātus, tamen alia causa fuit damnātiōnis. Namque Athēniēnsēs propter
25 Pīsistratī tyrannidem, quae paucīs annīs ante fuerat, nīmiā cīvium suōrum potentiam extimēscēbant. Miltiadēs, multum in imperiīs magistrātibusque versātus, nōn vidēbātur posse esse prīvātus, praesertim cum cōnsuetūdine ad imperiī cupiditatem trahī vidērētur. Nam in Chersonēsō
30 omnēs illōs quōs habitārat annōs perpetuam obtinuerat domīnātiōnem, tyrannusque fuerat appellātus, sed iustus. Nōn erat enim vī cōsecūtus, sed suōrum voluntāte, eamque

potestātem bonitāte retinēbat. Omnēs autem et dīcuntur et habentur tyrannī, quī potestāte sunt perpetuā in eā cīvitāte quae libertatē ūsa est. Sed in Miltiade erat cum summa hūmānitās tum mīra commūnitās, ut nēmō tam humilis esset, cui nōn ad eum aditus patēret; māgna auctō- 5 ritās apud omnēs cīvitātēs, nōbile nōmen, laus rei militāris māxima. Haec populus respiciēs māluit illum innoxium plectī quam sē diūtius esse in timōre.

II. THEMISTOCLES.

His parentage and early life.

I. Themistoclēs, Neoclī filius, Athēniēnsis. Hūius vitia ineuntis adulēscēntiae māgnīs sunt ēmendāta virtūtibus, 10 adeō ut anteferātur huic nēmō, paucī parēs putentur. Sed ab initio est ōrdiendus. Pater eius Neoclēs generōsus fuit. Is uxōrem Acarnānam cīvem dūxit, ex quā nātus est Themistoclēs. Quī cum minus esset probātus parentibus, quod et liberius vīvēbat et rem familiārem negligēbat, ā 15 patre exhērēdātus est. Quae contumēlia nōn frēgit eum, sed ērēxit; nam cum iūdicāset sine summā industriā nōn posse eam exstinguī, tōtum sē dēdidit rei pūblicae, dīligentius amīcīs fāmaeque serviēs. Multum in iūdiiciis prīvātīs versābātur, saepe in cōtīōnem populī prōdībat; nūlla 20 rēs māior sine eō gerēbātur; celeriter quae opus erant reperiēbat, facile eadem ōrātiōne explicābat, neque minus in rēbus gerendīs prōmptus quam excōgitandīs erat, quod et dē Instantibus, ut ait Thūcūdidēs, vērissimē iūdicābat et dē futurīs callidissimē coniciēbat. Quō factum est ut brevī tempore 25 illūstrārētur.

Xerxes invades Greece; the advice of Themistocles.

II. Primus autem gradus fuit capessendae rei publicae bellō Corcyræō; ad quod gerendum praetor ā populō factus, nōn solum praesenti bellō, sed etiam reliquō tempore ferociōrem reddidit civitatem. Nam cum pecūnia publica, quae
 5 ex metallis redibat, largitiōne magistrātuum quotannis interiret, ille persuāsit populō ut eā pecūniā classis centum nāvium aedificāretur. Quā celeriter effectā, primum Corcyræōs frēgit, deinde maritimōs praedōnēs cōsectandō mare tutum reddidit. In quō cum divitiis ornāvit, tum etiam
 10 peritissimōs belli nāvālis fecit Athēniēnsēs. Id quantae salutī fuerit ūniversae Graeciae, bellō cognitum est Persicō. Nam cum Xerxēs et marī et terrā bellum ūniversae inferret Eurōpae, cum tantis cōpiis eam invāsit, quantās neque ante nec postea habuit quisquam: hūius enim classis mille et
 15 ducentārum nāvium longārum fuit, quam duo mīlia onerāriarum sequēbantur; terrestris autem exercitus septingenta peditum, equitum quadringenta mīlia fuērunt.

Cūius dē adventū cum fāma in Graeciam esset perlāta et māximē Athēniēnsēs peti dicerentur propter pūgnam Marathonīam, mīsērunt Delphōs cōnsultum, quidnam facerent dē
 20 rēbus suis. Deliberantibus Pythia respondit, ut moenibus ligneis sē mūnīrent. Id respōnsum quō valeret cum intellegeret nēmō, Themistoclēs persuāsit cōnsilium esse Apollinis, ut in nāvēs sē suaque cōnferrent: eum enim ā deō significārī
 25 mūrum ligneum. Tali cōnsiliō probātō, addunt ad superiōrēs totidem nāvēs trirēmēs suaque omnia quae movērī poterant partim Salamīna, partim Troezēna dēportant; arcem sacerdotibus paucisque māiōribus nātū ad sacra prōcūrandā trādunt, reliquum oppidum relinquunt.

Battles at Thermopylae and off Artemisium.

III. Huius cōsiliū plērisque cīvitātibus displicēbat et in terrā dīmīcārī magis placēbat. Itaque missī sunt dēlēctī cum Leōnidā, Lacedaemoniōrum rēge, quī Thermopylās occupārent longiusque barbarōs prōgredi nōn paterentur. Iī vim hostium nōn sustinuērunt eoque locō omnēs interiērunt. At 5 classis commūnis Graeciae trecentārum nāvium, in quā ducentae erant Athēniēnsium, prīmum apud Artemīsium inter Euboeam continentemque terram cum classiariis rēgiis cōflīxit. Angustiās enim Themistoclēs quaerēbat, nē multitudīne circumīrētur. Hinc etsī parī proeliō discesserant, 10 tamen eodem locō nōn sunt ausī manēre, quod erat periculum, nē, si pars nāvium adversariōrum Euboeam superāset, ancipitī premerentur periculō. Quō factum est ut ab Artemīsio discēderent et exadversum Athēnās apud Salamīna classem suam cōstituerent.

15

Xerxes takes and burns Athens. The battle of Salamis.

IV. At Xerxēs, Thermopylīs expūgnātīs, prōtinus accessit astū idque nullīs dēfendentibus interfectīs sacerdotibus, quōs in arce invēnerat, incendiō dēlēvit. Cūius flammā perterritī classiariī cum manēre nōn audērent et plūrimī hortārentur ut domōs suās discēderent moenibusque sē 20 dēfenderent, Themistoclēs ūnus restitit et ūniversōs parēs esse posse aiēbat, dīpersōs testābātur peritūrōs; idque Eurybiadī, rēgī Lacedaemoniōrum, quī tum summae imperiī praeerat, fore affīrmābat. Quem cum minus quam vellet movēret, noctū dē servis suis quem habuit fidēlissi- 25 mum ad rēgem mīsīt, ut eī nūntiāret suis verbīs, adversariōs eius in fugā esse: quī si discessissent, māiōre cum labōre et longinquiōre tempore bellum cōfectūrum, cum singulōs cōnsectārī cōgerētur; quōs si statim aggredērētur, brevī

ūniversōs oppressūrum. Hōc eō valēbat, ut ingrātiis ad
dēpūgnandum omnēs cōgerentur. Hāc rē audītā, barbarus,
nihil dolī subesse crēdēns, postrīdiē aliēnissimō sibi locō,
contrā opportūnissimō hostibus, adeō angustō marī cōnflīxit,
5 ut ēius multitudō nāvium explicārī nōn potuerit. Victus
ergō est magis etiam cōnsiliō Themistoclī quam armīs
Graeciae.

V. Hīc etsī male rem gesserat, tamen tantās habēbat
reliquiās cōpiārum, ut etiam tum eīs opprimere posset
10 hostēs. Iterum ab eōdem gradū dēpulsus est. Nam The-
mistoclēs, verēns nē bellāre perseverāret, certiōrem eum
fēcit id agī, ut pōns, quem ille in Hellēspontō fēcerat,
dissolverētur ac reditū in Asiam exclūderētur, idque eī
persuāsit. Itaque quā sex mēnsibus iter fēcerat, eādem
15 minus diēbus trīgintā in Asiam reversus est, sēque ā The-
mistocle nōn superātum, sed cōservātum iūdicāvit. Sic
ūnū virī prūdentiā Graecia liberāta est Eurōpaeque succu-
buit Asia. Haec altera victōria, quae cum Marathōniō
possit comparārī tropaeō. Nam parī modō apud Salamīna
20 parvō numerō nāvium māxima post hominum memoriā
classis est dēvicta.

Themistocles outwits the Lacedaemonians, and fortifies Athens.

VI. Māgnus hōc bellō Themistoclēs fuit neque minor in
pāce. Cum enim Phalēricō portū neque māgnō neque bonō
Athēniēnsēs ūterentur, hūius cōnsiliō triplex Piraeī portus
25 cōstitūtus est eisque moenibus circumdatus, ut ipsam
urbem dīgnitāte aequiperāret, ūtilitāte superāret. Idem
mūrōs Athēniēnsium restituit praecipuō suō periculō.
Namque Lacedaemoniī causam idōneam nactī propter bar-
barōrum excursiōnēs, quā negārent oportēre extrā Pelopon-
30 nēsum ūllam urbem mūrōs habēre, nē essent loca mūnīta,

quae hostes possiderent, Athēniēnsēs aedificantēs prohibēre sunt cōnātī. Hōc longē aliō spectābat atque vidērī volēbant. Athēniēnsēs enim duābus victōriis, Marathōniā et Salamīniā, tantam glōriam apud omnēs gentēs erant cōnsecūtī, ut intellexerent Lacedaemoniī dē principātū sibi 5 cum eīs certāmen fore. Quā rē eōs quam infirmīssimōs esse volēbant. Postquam autem audiērunt mūrōs struī, lēgātōs Athēnās mīsērunt, quī id fierī vetārent. Hīs praesentibus dēsiērunt ac sē dē eā rē lēgātōs ad eōs missūrōs dixerunt. Hanc lēgātiōnem suscepit Themistoclēs et sōlus 10 primō profectus est; reliquī lēgātī ut tum exirent, cum satis altī tuendō mūrī exstrūctī vidērentur, praecēpit: interim omnēs, servī atque liberī, opus facerent neque ūllī locō parcerent, sive sacer sive privātus esset sive pūblicus, et undique, quod idōneum ad mūniendum putārent, congre- 15 rent. Quō factum est ut Athēniēnsium mūrī ex sacellis sepulcrisque cōstārent.

VII. Themistoclēs autem ut Lacedaemonem vēnit, adire ad magistrātūs nōluit et dedit operam ut quam longissimē tempus dūceret, causam interpōnēs sē collēgās exspectāre. 20 Cum Lacedaemoniī quererentur opus nihilō minus fierī eumque in eā rē cōnārī fallere, interim reliquī lēgātī sunt cōnsecūtī. Ā quibus cum audisset nōn multum superesse mūnitiōnis, ad ephorōs Lacedaemoniōrum accessit, penes quōs summum erat imperium, atque apud eōs contendit 25 falsa eīs esse dēlāta: quā rē aequum esse illōs virōs bonōs nōbilēsque mittere, quibus fidēs habērētur, quī rem explorārent; intereā sē obsidem retinērent. Gestus est ei mōs, trēsque lēgātī fūctī summīs honōribus Athēnās missī sunt. Cum hīs collēgās suōs Themistoclēs iussit proficīscī eīsque 30 praedixit, ut nē prius Lacedaemoniōrum lēgātōs dīmitterent quam ipse esset remissus.

Hōs postquam Athēnās pervēnisse ratus est, ad magistrātūs senātumque Lacedaemoniōrum adiit et apud eōs liberrimē professus est: Athēniēnsēs suō cōsiliō, quod commūnī iūre gentium facere possent, deōs pūblicōs suōs-
 5 que patriōs ac Penātēs, quō facilius ab hoste possent dēfendere, mūrīs saepsisse neque in eō quod inūtile esset Graeciae fēcisse. Nam illōrum urbem ut prōpugnāculum oppositum esse barbarīs, apud quam iam bis cōpiās rēgiās fēcisse naufragium. Lacedaemoniōs autem male et iniūstē
 10 facere, quī id potius intuērentur, quod ipsōrum dominātiōnī quam quod ūniversae Graeciae ūtile esset. Quā rē, sī suōs lēgātōs recipere vellent, quōs Athēnās miserant, sē remitterent, cum aliter illōs numquam in patriam essent receptūrī.

Themistocles is ostracized; his wanderings.

15 VIII. Tamen nōn effūgit cīvium suōrum invidiam. Namque ob eundem timōrem, quō damnātus erat Miltiadēs, tēstulārū suffrāgiīs ē cīvitate eiectus, Argōs habitātum concessit. Hīc cum propter multās virtūtēs magnā cum dignitatē vīveret, Lacedaemoniī lēgātōs Athēnās mīserunt,
 20 quī eum absentem accūsārent, quod societātem cum rēge Persē ad Graeciam opprimendam fēcisset. Hōc crimine absēns damnātus est.

Id ut audīvit, quod nōn satis tūtum sē Argīs vidēbat, Corcȳram dēmigrāvit. Ibi cum prīncipēs animadvertisset
 25 timēre, nē propter sē bellum eis Lacedaemoniī et Athēniēnsēs indicerent, ad Admētum, Molossum rēgem, cum quō eī hospitium nōn erat, cōnfūgit. Hūc cum vēnisset et in praesentia rēx abesset, quō māiōre religiōne sē receptum tuērētur, filium eius parvulum arripuit et cum eō sē in
 30 sacrārium quod summā colēbātur caerimōniā coniēcīt. Inde

nōn prius ēgressus est, quam rēx eum datā dextrā in fidem
 reciperet, quam praestitit. Nam cum ab Athēniēnsibus et
 Lacedaemoniīs exposcerētur publicē, supplicem nōn prō-
 didit monuitque ut cōsuleret sibi: difficile enim esse in
 tam propinquō locō tūtō eum versārī. Itaque Pyndam eum 5
 dēdūcī iussit et quod satis esset praesidiī dedit. Hic in
 nāvem omnibus ignōtus nautīs ēscendit. Quae cum tem-
 pestāte māximā Naxum ferrētur, ubi tum Athēniēnsium
 erat exercitus, sēnsit Themistoclēs, sī eō pervēnisset, sibi
 esse pereundum. 10

Hāc necessitatē coāctus, dominō nāvis quis sit aperit,
 multa pollicēns, sī sē cōservāset. At ille clārissimī virī
 captus misericordiā, diem noctemque procul ab insulā in
 salō nāvem tenuit in ancorīs, neque quemquam ex eā exīre
 passus est. Inde Ephesum pervēnit ibique Themistoclem 15
 expōnit. Cui ille prō meritīs postea grātiā rettulit.

Themistocles is received by Artaxerxes; he dies in Persia.

IX. Sciō plērōsque ita scrīpsisse, Themistoclem Xerxe
 rēgnante in Asiam trānsisse. Sed ego potissimum Thūcý-
 didī crēdō, quod aetate proximus dē eis, quī illōrum tem-
 porum historiam reliquērunt, et eiusdem civitātis fuit. Is 20
 autem ait ad Artaxerxēn eum vēnisse atque hīs verbīs epis-
 tulam mīsisse: "Themistoclēs vēnī ad tē, quī plūrima mala
 omnium Grāiōrum in domum tuam intulī, quam diū mihi
 necesse fuit adversum patrem tuum bellāre patriamque
 meam dēfendere. Idem multō plūra bona fēcī, postquam 25
 in tūtō ipse et ille in periculō esse coepit; nam cum in
 Asiam revertī vellet proeliō apud Salamīna factō, litterīs
 eum certiōrem fēcī id agī ut pōns, quem in Hellēspontō
 fēcērat, dissolverētur atque ab hostibus circumfrētur; quō
 nūntiō ille periculō est liberātus. Nunc autem cōnfūgī ad 30

tē exagitātus ā cūctā Graeciā, tuam petēns amīcitiam; quam sī erō adeptus, nōn minus mē bonum amīcum habēbis, quam fortem inimīcum ille expertus est. Tē autem rogō, ut dē eīs rēbus, quās tēcum colloquī volō, annum mihi
5 tempus dēs eōque trānsactō ad tē venīre patiāris.”

X. Hūius rēx animī māgnitūdinem admīrāns cupiēnsque tālem virum sibi conciliārī, veniam dedit. Ille omne illud tempus litterīs sermōnīque Persārum dedit; quibus adeō ērudītus est, ut multō commodius dicātur apud rēgem verba
10 fēcisse, quam iī poterant quī in Perside erant nātī. Hīc cum multa rēgī esset pollicitus grātissimumque illud, sī suis ūtī cōsiliīs vellet, illum Graeciam bellō oppressūrum, māgnīs mūneribus ab Artaxerxe dōnātus, in Asiam rediit domiciliūque Magnēsiae sibi cōstituit. Namque hanc
15 urbem eī rēx dōnārat, hīs quidem verbīs, quae eī pānem praebēret — ex quā regiōne quīnquāgēna talenta quotannis redībant — Lampsacum autem, unde vīnum sūmeret, Myunta, ex quā obsōnium habēret.

Hūius ad nostram memoriā monumenta mānsērunt duo:
20 sepulcrum prope oppidum, in quō est sepultus, statua in forō Māgnēsiae. Dē cūius morte multimodīs apud plērōsque scriptum est, sed nōs eundem potissimum Thūcūdīdem auctōrem probāmus, quī illum ait Māgnēsiae morbō mortuum, neque negat fuisse fāmam, venēnum suā sponte
25 sūmpsisse, cum sē quae rēgī dē Graeciā opprimendā pollicitus esset praestāre posse dēspērāret. Idem ossa eius clam in Atticā ab amīcīs sepulta, quoniam lēgibus nōn concederētur, quod prōditionis esset damnātus, mēmoriae prōdidit.

III. PAUSANIĀS.

The battle of Plataea; arrogance of Pausanias.

I. Pausaniās Lacedaemonius māgnus homō, sed varius in omnī genere vītae fuit; nam ut virtūtibus ēlūxit, sic vitiis est obrutus. Hūius illūstrissimum est proelium apud Plataeās. Namque illō duce Mardonius, satrapēs rēgius, nātiōne Mēdus, rēgis gener, in prīmīs omnium 5 Persārum et manū fortis et cōsiliī plēnus, cum ducentīs milibus peditum, quōs virītim lēgerat, et vīgintī equitum haud ita māgnā manū Graeciae fugātus est, eōque ipse dux cecidit proeliō. Quā victōriā ēlātus, plūrima miscēre coepit et māiōra concupiscere. Sed primum in eō est reprehēnsus, 10 quod ex praedā tripodem aureum Delphīs posuisset, epigrammate inscriptō, in quō haec erat sententia: suō ductū barbarōs apud Plataeās esse dēlētōs ēiusque victōriae ergō Apollinī id dōnum dedisse. Hōs versūs Lacedaemoniī exsculpsērunt, neque aliud scripsērunt quam nōmina eārum 15 cīvitātum, quārum auxiliō Persae erant victī.

He is sent to the Hellespont; treasonable correspondence with Artaxerxes.

II. Post id proelium eundem Pausaniam cum classe commūnī Cyprum atque Hellēspontum mīsērunt, ut ex eīs regiōnibus barbarōrum praesidia dēpelleret. Parī felicitāte in eā rē ūsus, ēlātius sē gerere coepit māiōrēsque appetere 20 rēs. Nam cum, Byzantiō expūgnātō, cēpisset complūrēs Persārum nōbīles atque in eīs nōnnūllōs rēgis propinquōs, hōs clam Xerxī remīsīt, simulāns ex vincīs publicīs effūgissee, et cum eīs Gongylum Eretriēnsem, quī litterās rēgī redderet, in quibus haec fuisse scriptā Thūcŷdidēs memo- 25

rae prōdidit: "Pausaniās, dux Spartae, quōs Byzantiī cēperat, postquam propinquōs tuōs cognōvit, tibi mūneri mīsit sēque tēcum affinitāte coniungī cupit; quā rē, sī tibi vidētur, dēs ei filiam tuam nūptum. Id sī fēceris, et Spar-
 5 tam et cēteram Graeciam sub tuam potestātem sē, adiuvante tē, redāctūrum pollicētur. Hīs dē rēbus sī quid agere vo-
 lueris, certum hominem ad eum mittās face, cum quō collo-
 quātur."

Rēx tot hominum salūte tam sibi necessariōrum māgnō
 10 opere gāvīsus, cōfestim cum epistolā Artabāzum ad Pau-
 saniam mittit, in quā eum collaudat ac petit, nē cui rei
 parcat ad ea efficienda, quae pollicērētur: sī perfēcerit,
 nullius rei ā sē repulsam lātūrum. Hūius Pausaniās vo-
 luntāte cognitā, alacrior ad rem gerendam factus, in suspī-
 15 ciōnem cecidit Lacedaemoniōrum. Quō factō domum
 revocātus, accūsātus capitis absolvitur, multātur tamen
 pecūniā; quam ob causam ad classem remissus nōn est.

His mad conduct; he is recalled to Sparta.

III. At ille post nōn multō suā sponte ad exercitum
 rediit et ibi nōn stolidā, sed dēmentī ratiōne cōgitāta pate-
 20 fēcit; nōn enim mōrēs patriōs solum, sed etiam cultum
 vestitumque mūtāvit. Apparātū rēgiō utēbātur, veste Mē-
 dicā; satellitēs Mēdi et Aegyptiī sequēbantur; epulābātur
 mōre Persārum lūxuriōsius quam quī aderant perpeti pos-
 sent; aditum petentibus nōn dabat, superbē respondēbat,
 25 crūdēliter imperābat. Spartam redirē nōlēbat; Colōnās,
 quī locus in agrō Trōade est, sē contulerat; ibi cōnsilia
 cum patriae tum sibi inimīca capiēbat. Id postquam Lace-
 daemoniī rescierunt, lēgātōs cum clāvā ad eum mīserunt, in
 quā mōre illōrum erat scriptum: nisi domum reverterētur,
 30 sē capitis eum damnātūrōs. Hōc nūntiō commōtus, spērāns

sē etiam tum pecūniā et potentiā instāns periculum posse depellere, domum rediit. Hūc ut vēnit, ab ephorīs in vincla pūblica est coniectus; licet enim lēgibus eōrum cuivīs ephorō hōc facere rēgī. Hinc tamen sē expēdīvit, neque eō magis carēbat suspiciōne; nam opīniō manēbat 5 eum cum rēge habēre societātem.

He incites the Helots to revolt; stratagem of the ephors.

Est genus quoddam hominum, quod Hīlōtae vocātur, quōrum māgna multitūdō agrōs Lacedaemoniōrum colit servōrumque mūnere fungitur. Hōs quoque sollicitāre spē libertātis existimābātur. Sed quod hārum rērum nūllum 10 erat apertum crīmen, quō coarguī posset, nōn putābant dē tālī tamque clārō virō suspiciōnibus oportēre iūdicārī et exspectandum, dum sē ipsa rēs aperīret.

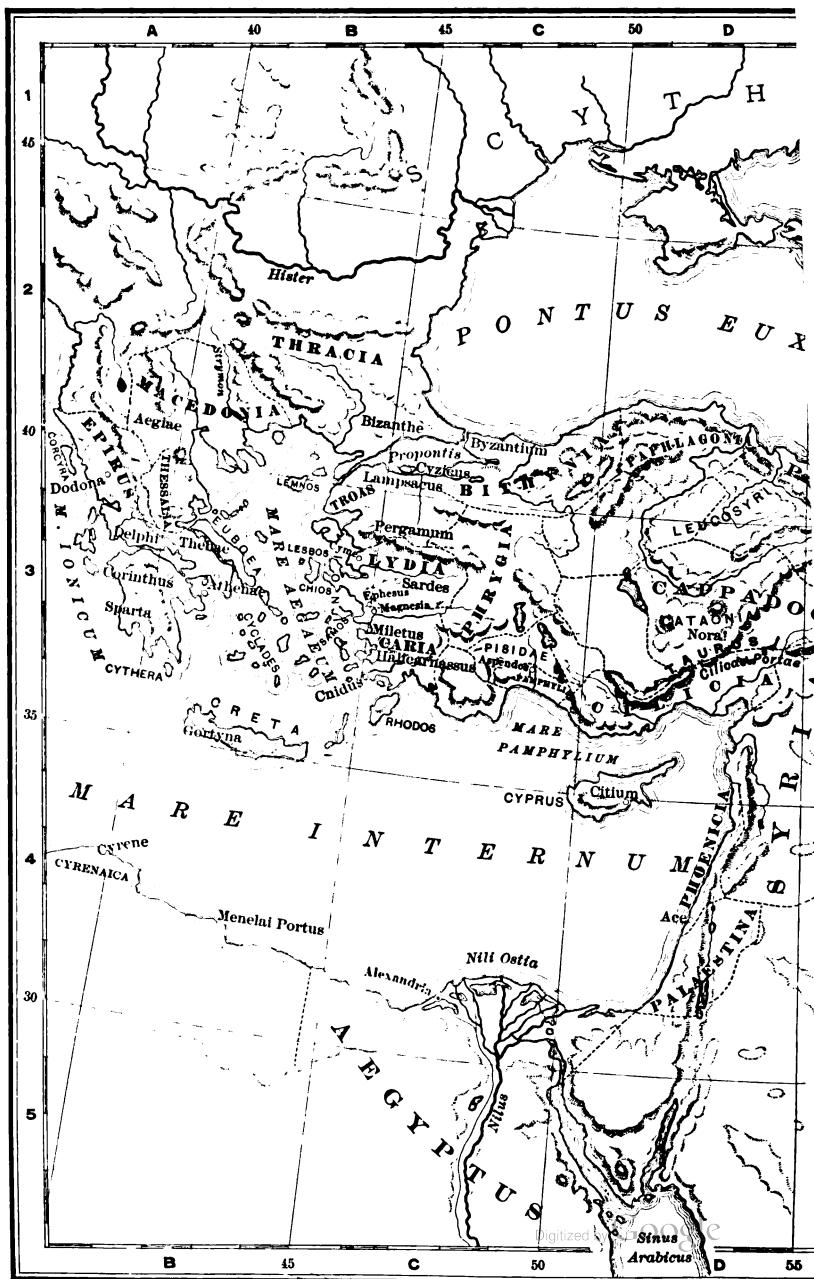
IV. Interim Argilius quīdam adulēscēntulus cum epistulam ab eō ad Artabāzum accēpisset eīque in suspiciōnem 15 vēnisset aliquid in eā de sē esse scriptum, quod nēmō eōrum redīset, quī eōdem missī erant, vincla epistolae laxāvit signōque dētrāctō cognōvit, sī pertulisset, sibi esse perendum. Erant in eādē epistolā quae ad ea pertinēbant, quae inter rēgem Pausaniāque convēnerant. Hās ille 20 litterās ephorīs trādīdit.

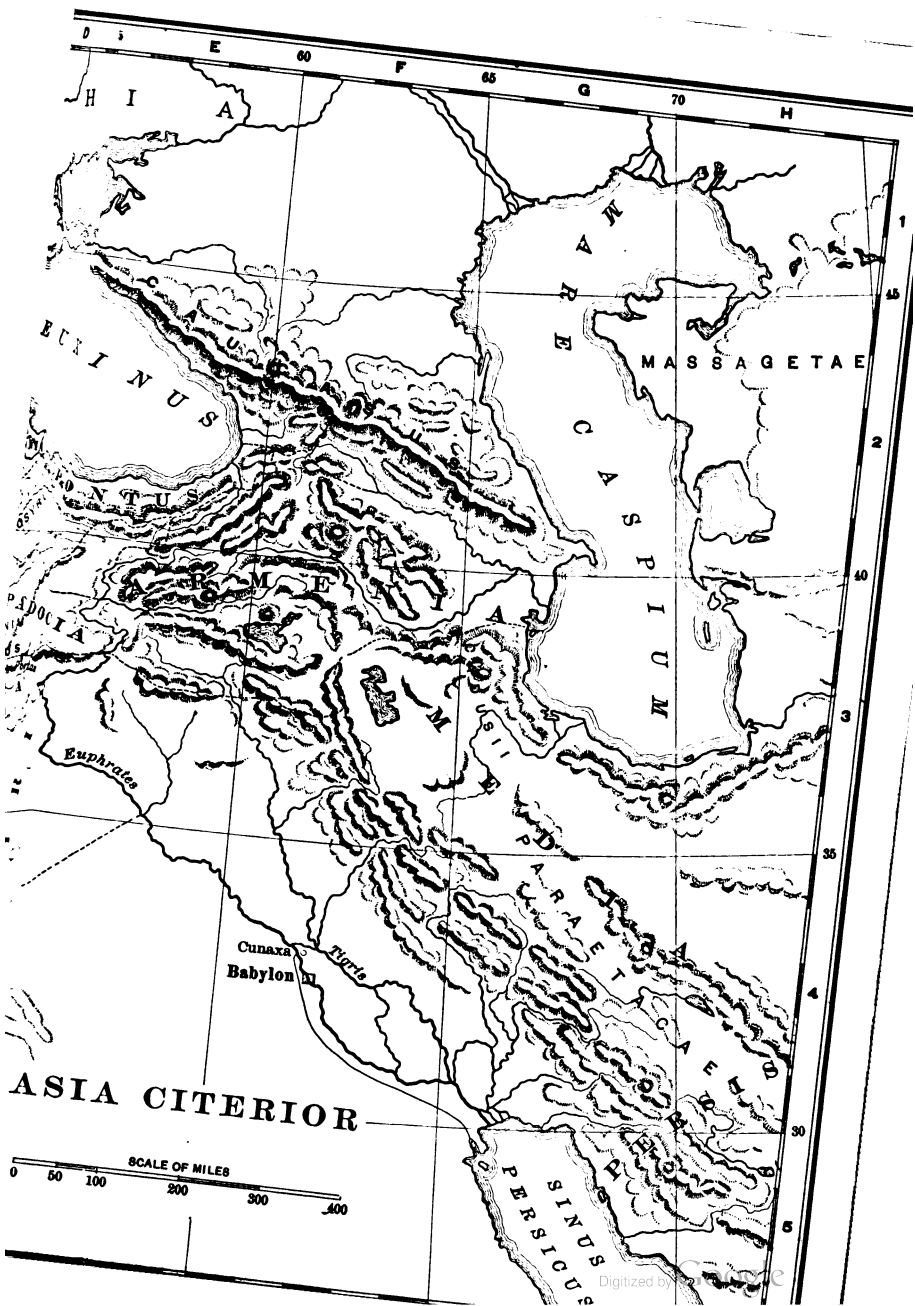
Nōn est praetereunda gravitās Lacedaemoniōrum hōc locō; nam nē hūius quidem indicīō impulsī sunt ut Pausaniā comprehenderent, neque prius vim adhibendam putāvērunt, quam sē ipse indicāsset. Itaque huic indicī, 25 quid fierī vellent, praecēpērunt. Fānum Neptūnī est Taenarī, quod violārī nefās putant Graeci. Eō ille cōnfūgit in ārāque cōnsēdit. Hanc iūxtā locum fēcērunt sub terrā, ex quō posset exaudīrī, sī quis quid loquerētur cum Argiliō. Hūc ex ephorīs quīdam dēscendērunt. Pausaniās, 30

ut audīvit Argilium cōnfūgisſe in āram, perturbātus vēnit
 eō. Quem cum supplicem deī vidēret in ārā ſedentem,
 quaerit cauſae quid ſit tam repentīnī cōſiliī. Huic ille,
 quid ex litterīs comperīſſet, aperit. Quō magis Pausaniās
 5 perturbātus ōrāre coepit, nē ēnūntiāret neu ſē meritum de
 illō optimē prōderet: quod ſī eam veniam ſibi dedīſſet
 tantīſque implicātum rēbus ſublevāſſet, māgnō eī praemiō
 futūrum.

The miserable death of Pausanias.

V. Hīs rēbus ephorī cognitīs ſatius putārunt in urbe
 10 eum comprehendī. Quō cum eſſent profectī et Pausaniās,
 plācātō Argiliō, ut putābat, Lacedaemonem reverterētur,
 in itinere, cum iam in eō eſſet ut comprehenderētur, ex
 vultū cūiusdam ephorī, quī eum admonērī cupiēbat, īn-
 ſidiās ſibi fierī intellēxit. Itaque paucīs ante gradibus
 15 quam quī eum ſequēbantur in aedem Minervae, quae
 Chalceioicos vocātur, cōnfūgit. Hinc nē exīre poſſet,
 ſtatim ephorī valvās ēius aedis obſtrūxērunt tēctumque
 ſunt dēmōlītī, quō celerius ſub dīvō interīret. Dīcitur eō
 tempore mātrem Pausaniae vīxiſſe eamque iam māgnō
 20 nātū, poſtquam dē ſcelere filiī comperit, in primīs ad
 filium claudendum lapidē ad introitum aedis attuliſſe.
 Hic cum ſēmianimis dē templō ēlātus eſſet, cōnfeſtim
 animam efflāvit. Sic Pausaniās māgnam bellī glōriam
 turpī morte maculāvit. Cūius mortuī corpus cum eōdem
 25 nōnnūllī dīcerent īferri oportēre quō ī quī ad ſupplicium
 eſſent datī, diſplicuit plūrībus, et procul ab eō locō īn-
 fōdērunt, quō erat mortuus. Inde poſterius deī Delphici
 reſpōnſō ērutus atque eōdem locō ſepultus eſt ubi vītā
 poſuerat.





IV. EPAMĪNŌNDĀS.

Preface: difference between Greek and Roman customs.

I. Epamīnōndās, Polymnī filius, Thēbānus. Dē hōc priusquam scribimus, haec praecipienda videntur lēctōribus, nē aliēnōs mōrēs ad suōs referant, nēve ea quae ipsīs leviōra sunt, parī modō apud cēterōs fuisse arbitrentur. Scīmus enim mūsicēn nostrīs mōribus abesse ā prīncipis 5 persōnā, saltāre vērō etiam in vitiīs pōnī; quae omnia apud Graecōs et grāta et laude dīgna dūcuntur. Cum autem exprimere imāginem cōnsuētūdinis atque vītāe velīmus Epamīnōndae, nihil vidēmur dēbere praetermittere, quod pertineat ad eam dēclārandam. Quā rē dīcēmus prīmum 10 dē genere ēius, deinde quibus disciplīnīs et ā quibus sit ērudītus, tum dē mōribus ingeniūque facultātibus et sī qua alia memoriā dīgna erunt, postrēmō dē rēbus gestīs, quae ā plūrimīs animī antepōnuntur virtūtibus.

The early life of Epaminondas; his personal characteristics.

II. Nātus igitur patre quō dīximus, genere honestō, 15 pauper iam ā māiōribus relictus est, ērudītus autem sīc ut nēmō Thēbānus magis. Nam et citharīzāre et cantāre ad chordārum sonum doctus est ā Dionȳsiō, quī nōn minōre fuit in mūsicīs glōriā quam Dāmōn aut Lamprus, quōrum pervulgāta sunt nōmina, cantāre tībiīs ab Olympiodōrō, 20 saltāre ā Calliphronē. At philosophiae praeceptōrem habuit Lȳsim Tarentīnum, Pȳthagorēum; cui quidem sīc fuit dēditus, ut adulēscēns trīstem ac sevērū senem omnibus aequālibus suīs in familiāritāte anteposuerit; neque prius eum ā sē dīmīsīt, quam in doctrīnīs tantō antecessit condiscipulōs, 25 ut facile intellegī posset parī modō superātūrū omnēs in

cēterīs artibus. Atque haec ad nostram cōsuētūdinem sunt levia et potius contemnenda; at in Graeciā, utique ōlim, māgnae laudī erant. Postquam ephēbus est factus et palaestrae dare operam coepit, nōn tam māgnitūdini vīrium
 5 servīvit quam vėlōcitātī; illam enim ad athlētārum ūsum, hanc ad bellī exīstimābat ūtilitātem pertinēre. Itaque exercebātur plūrimum currendō et luctandō ad eum finem, quoad stāns complectī posset atque contendere. In armīs vērō plūrimum studiī cōnsūmēbat.

- 10 III. Ad hanc corporis firmitātem plūra etiam animī bona accesserant. Erat enim modestus, prūdēns, gravis, temporibus sapienter ūtēns, perītus bellī, fortis manū, animō māximō, adeō vērītātis diligēns, ut nē iocō quidem mentīrētur. Īdem continēns, clēmēns patiēnsque admīrandum in modum, nōn
 15 sōlum populī, sed etiam amīcōrum ferēns iniuriās, in prīmīs commissa cēlāns, quodque interdum nōn minus prōdest quam disertē dīcere, studiōsus audiendī; ex hōc enim facilimē discī arbitrābātur. Itaque cum in circulum vēnisset, in quō aut dē rē pūblicā disputārētur aut dē philosophiā
 20 sermō habērētur, numquam inde prius discessit, quam ad finem sermō esset adductus.

His incorruptibility.

- Paupertātem adeō facile perpessus est, ut dē rē pūblicā nihil praeter glōriam cēperit. Amīcōrum in sē tuendō caruit facultātibus, fidē ad aliōs sublevandōs saepe sic ūsus est, ut
 25 iūdicārī possit omnia eī cum amīcīs fuisse commūnia. Nam cum aut cīvium suōrum aliquis ab hostibus esset captus, aut virgō nūbilis propter paupertātem collocārī nōn posset, amīcōrum concilium habēbat, et quantum quisque daret prō facultātibus imperābat. Eamque summam cum fēcerat,
 30 potius quam ipse acciperet pecūniam, addūcēbat eum quī

quaerēbat ad eōs quī cōferēbant, eīque ut ipsī numerārent faciēbat, ut ille ad quem ea rēs perveniēbat scīret quantum cuique dēberet.

IV. Temptāta autem ēius est abstinentia ā Diomedonte Cŷzicēnō : namque is rogātū Artaxerxis rēgis Epaminōndam 5 pecūniā corrupendum suscēperat. Hīc māgnō cum pondere aurī Thēbās vēnit et Mīcythum adulēscēntulum, quem tum Epaminōndas plūrimū dīligēbat, quīnque talentis ad suam perdūxit voluntātem. Mīcythus Epaminōndam cōvenit et causam adventūs Diomedontis ostendit. 10

At ille Diomedontī cōram “Nihil,” inquit, “opus pecūniā est; nam sī rēx ea vult quae Thēbānīs sunt ūtilia, grātiis facere sum parātus, sīn autem contrāria, nōn habet aurī atque argentī satis. Namque orbis terrārum dīvitias accipere nōlō prō patriae cārītate. Tū quod mē incogni- 15 tum temptāstī tuīque similem exīstimāstī, nōn mīror tibi que ignōscō; sed ēgredere properē, nē aliōs corrumpās, cum mē nōn potueris. Et tū, Mīcythe, argentum huic redde, aut, nisi id cōnfestim facis, ego tē trādam magistrātuī.” Hunc Diomedōn cum rogāret, ut tūtō exire suaue quae attulerat 20 licēret efferre, “Istud quidem,” inquit, “faciam, neque tuā causā, sed meā, nē, sī tibi sit pecūnia adēpta, aliquis dīcat id ad mē ēreptum pervēnisse, quod dēlātum accipere nōluissem.”

Ā quō cum quaesisset, quō sē dēdūcī vellet, et ille 25 Athēnās dīxisset, praesidium dedit, ut tūtō pervenīret. Neque vērō id satis habuit, sed etiam, ut inviolātus in nāvem ēscenderet, per Chabriām Athēniēnsem, dē quō suprā mentiōnem fēcimus, effēcit. Abstinentiae erit hōc satis testimoniū. Plūrima quidem prōferre possumus, 30 sed modus adhibendus est, quoniam ūnō hōc volūmine vītā excellentium virōrum complūrium conclūdere cōn-

stituimus, quōrum rēs sēparātīm multīs mīlibus versuum complūrēs scrīptōrēs ante nōs explicāvunt.

His eloquence and ready wit.

V. Fuit etiam disertus, ut nēmō ei Thēbānus pār esset
ēloquentiā, neque minus concinnus in brevitate respondendi
5 quam in perpetuā orātiōne ornātus. Habuit obtrectatōrem
Meneclīdēn quendam, indidem Thēbīs, et adversārium in
administrandā rē publica, satis exercitātum in dicendō, ut
Thēbānum scilicet; namque illi genti plūs inest vīrium
quam ingeniū. Is quod in rē militārī florēre Epaminōndam
10 vidēbat, hortārī solēbat Thēbānōs ut pācem bellō antefer-
rent, nē illius imperātōris opera dēsīderārētur. Huic ille
“Fallis,” inquit, “verbō civēs tuos, quod eos ā bellō āvocās;
otiū enim nōmine servitūtem conciliās; nam paritur pāx
bellō. Itaque quī eā diūtīnā volunt fruī, bellō exercitāti
15 esse dēbent. Quā rē sī principēs Graeciae vultis esse, cas-
tris est vōbīs ūtendum, nōn palaestrā.” Idem ille Mene-
clīdēs cum huic obiceret, quod liberōs nōn habēret neque
uxōrem dūxisset, māximēque Insolentiam, quod sibi Aga-
memnonis bellī glōriam vidērētur cōsecūtus: at ille “Dē-
20 sine,” inquit, “Meneclīda, dē uxōre mihi exprobrāre; nam
nullius in istā rē minus ūtī cōnsiliō volō.” Habēbat enim
Meneclīdēs suspiciōnem adulteriī. “Quod autem mē Aga-
memnonem aemulārī putās, falleris. Namque ille cum
ūniversā Graeciā vix decem annīs ūnam cēpit urbem, ego
25 contrā eā ūnā urbe nostrā diēque ūnō tōtam Graeciam Lacedaemoniīs fugātīs liberāvī.”

VI. Idem cum in conventum vēnisset Arcadum, petēns
ut societātem cum Thēbānis et Argivīs facerent, contrāque
Callistratus, Athēniēnsium lēgātus, quī eloquentiā omnēs
30 eō praestābat tempore, postulāret ut potius amicitiam se-

querentur Atticōrum, et in ōrātiōne suā multa invecus esset in Thēbānōs et Argīvōs in eisque hōc posuisset, animum advertere debēre Arcades quāles utraque civitas civēs prōcreāset, ex quibus dē cēteris possent iūdicāre: Argīvōs enim fuisse Orestem et Alcmaeōnem mātricidās, Thēbis 5 Oedipum nātum, quī, cum patrem suum interfēcisset, ex mātre liberōs prōcreāset; huic in respondendō Epaminōndās, cum dē cēteris perōrāset, postquam ad illa duo opprobria pervēnit, admirārī sē dīxit stultitiam rhētoris Attici, quī nōn animadverterit, innocentēs illōs nātōs domī, scelere 10 admissō cum patriā essent expulsī, receptōs esse ab Athēniēnsibus.

Sed māximē eius ēloquentia ēlūxit Spartae lēgātī ante pūgnam Leutricam. Quō cum omnium sociōrum convēnissent lēgātī, cōram frequentissimō conventū sic Lacedaemoniōrum tyrannidem coarguit, ut nōn minus illā ōrātiōne opēs eōrum concusserit quam Leutricā pūgnā. Tum enim perfēcit, quod post apparuit, ut auxiliō Lacedaemoniī sociōrum privārentur.

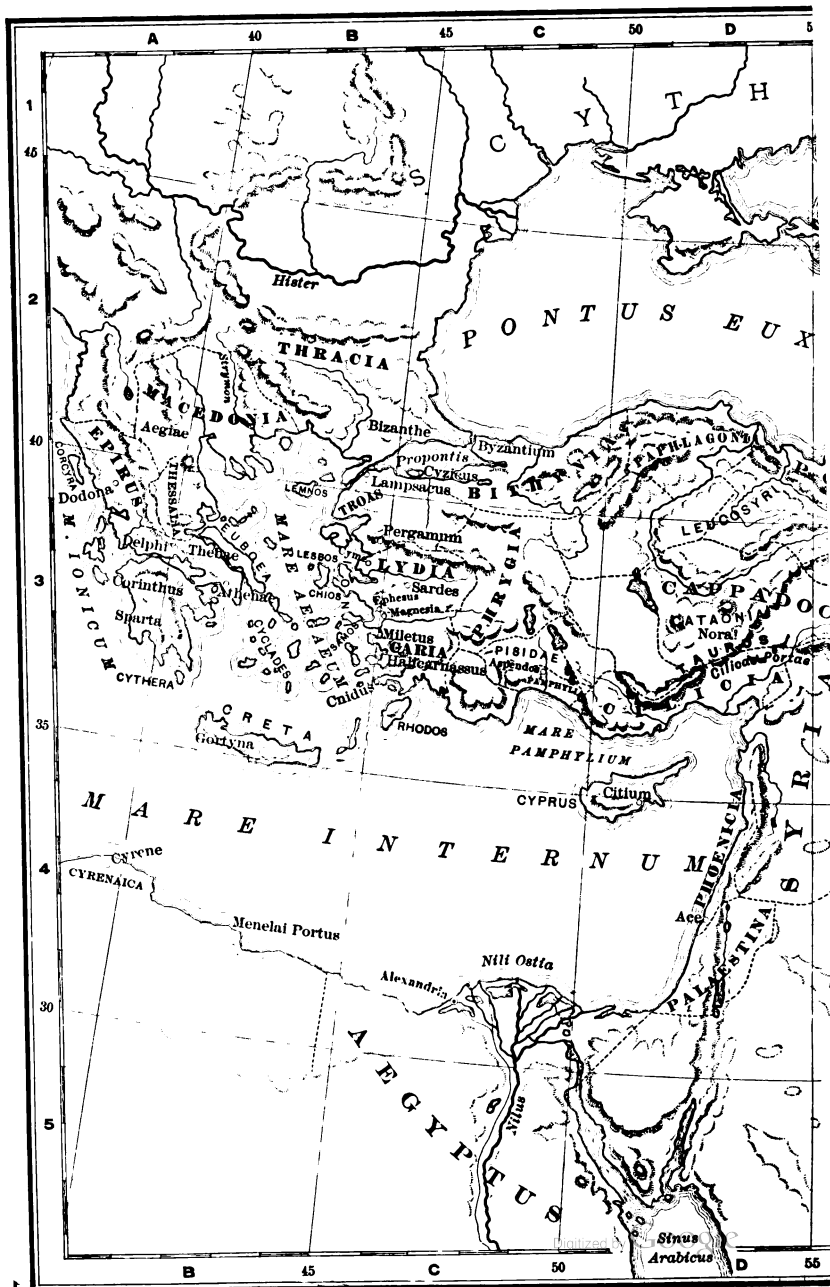
His patience and forgiveness of injuries.

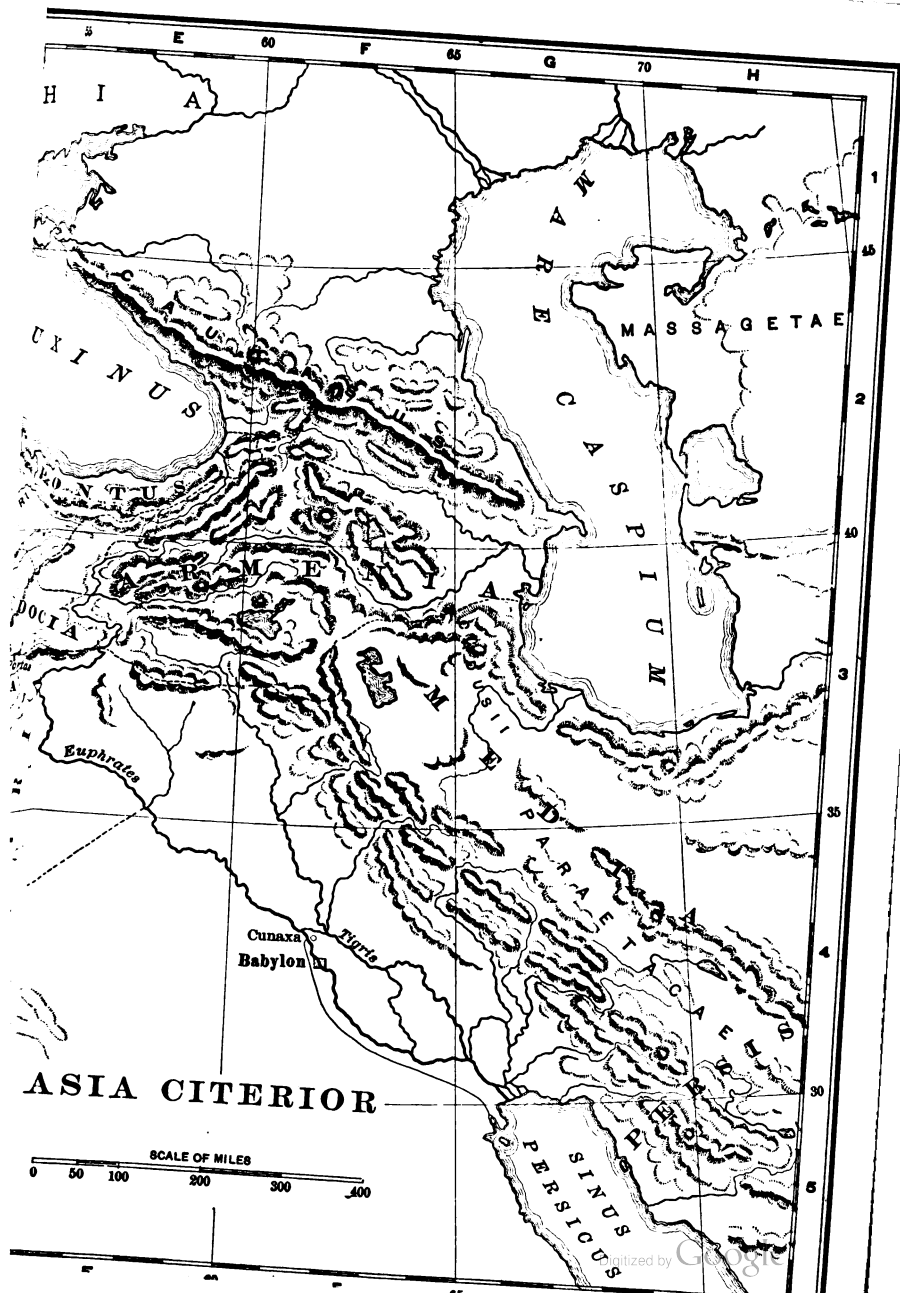
VII. Fuisse patientem suōrumque iniūriās ferentem 20 civium, quod sē patriae irāscī nefās esse dūceret, haec sunt testimōnia. Cum eum propter invidiam civēs suī praeficere exercituī nōlissent, duxque esset dēlectus bellī imperītus, cuius errōre rēs eō esset dēducta, ut omnēs dē salūte pertimēscerent, quod locōrum angustis clausī ab 25 hostibus obsidēbantur, dēsiderārī coepta est Epaminōndae diligentia; erat enim ibi privātus numerō militis. Ā quō cum peterent opem, nūllam adhibuit memoriam contumēliae et exercitum obsidiōne liberātum domum redūxit incolūmem. Nec vērō hōc semel fēcit, sed saepius. Māximē 30

ut audivit Argilium cōfūgissee in āram, perturbātus vēnit
 eō. Quem cum supplicem deī vidēret in ārā sedentem,
 quaerit causae quid sit tam repentinī cōsiliī. Huic ille,
 quid ex litteris comperisset, aperit. Quō magis Pausaniās
 5 perturbātus ōrāre coepit, nē ēnūntiāret neu sē meritum de
 illō optimē prōderet: quod sī eam veniam sibi dedisset
 tantisque implicātum rēbus sublevāsset, māgnō eī praemiō
 futūrum.

The miserable death of Pausanias.

V. His rēbus ephorī cognitīs satius putārunt in urbe
 10 eum comprehendī. Quō cum essent profectī et Pausaniās,
 plācātō Argiliō, ut putābat, Lacedaemonem reverterētur,
 in itinere, cum iam in eō esset ut comprehenderētur, ex
 vultū cūiusdam ephorī, quī eum admonērī cupiēbat, in-
 sidiās sibi fierī intellēxit. Itaque paucīs ante gradibus
 15 quam quī eum sequēbantur in aedem Minervae, quae
 Chalcoicos vocātur, cōfūgit. Hinc nē exīre posset,
 statim ephorī valvās eius aedis obstrūxērunt tēctumque
 sunt dēmōlītī, quō celerius sub divō interīret. Dicitur eō
 tempore mātrem Pausaniae vīxisse eamque iam māgnō
 20 nātū, postquam dē scelere filiī comperit, in primīs ad
 filium claudendum lapidē ad introitum aedis attulisse.
 Hic cum sēmianimis dē templō ēlātus esset, cōnfestim
 animam efflāvit. Sic Pausaniās māgnam bellī glōriam
 turpī morte maculāvit. Cūius mortuī corpus cum eōdem
 25 nōnnūllī dīcerent inferri oportēre quō iī quī ad supplicium
 essent datī, displicuit plūrībus, et procul ab eō locō in-
 fōdērunt, quō erat mortuus. Inde posterius deī Delphici
 respōnsō ērutus atque eōdem locō sepultus est ubi vītā
 posuerat.





IV. EPAMINONDĀS.

Preface: difference between Greek and Roman customs.

I. Epaminōndās, Polymnī filius, Thēbānus. Dē hōc priusquam scribimus, haec praecipienda videntur lēctōribus, nē aliēnōs mōrēs ad suōs referant, nēve ea quae ipsīs leviōra sunt, parī modō apud cēterōs fuisse arbitrentur. Scīmus enim mūsicēn nostrīs mōribus abesse ā princīpis 5 persōnā, saltāre vērō etiam in vitiīs pōnī; quae omnia apud Graecōs et grāta et laude dīgna dūcuntur. Cum autem exprimere imāginem cōsuētūdinis atque vītāe velīmus Epaminōndae, nihil vidēmur dēbere praetermittere, quod pertineat ad eam dēclārādam. Quā rē dīcēmus prīmum 10 dē genere ēius, deinde quibus disciplīnīs et ā quibus sit ērudītus, tum dē mōribus ingeniūque facultātibus et sī qua alia memoriā dīgna erunt, postrēmō dē rēbus gestīs, quae ā plūrimīs animī antepōnuntur virtūtibus.

The early life of Epaminondas; his personal characteristics.

II. Nātus igitur patre quō dīximus, genere honestō, 15 pauper iam ā māiōribus relictus est, ērudītus autem sic ut nēmō Thēbānus magis. Nam et citharīzāre et cantāre ad chordārum sonum doctus est ā Dionȳsiō, quī nōn minōre fuit in mūsicīs glōriā quam Dāmōn aut Lamprus, quōrum pervulgāta sunt nōmina, cantāre tibiīs ab Olympiodōrō, 20 saltāre ā Calliphronē. At philosophiae praeceptōrem habuit Lȳsim Tarentīnum, Pȳthagorēum; cui quidem sic fuit dēditus, ut adulēscēns trīstem ac sevērū senem omnibus aequālibus suīs in familiāritāte anteposuerit; neque prius eum ā sē dīmīsīt, quam in doctrīnīs tantō antecessit condiscipulōs, 25 ut facile intellegī posset parī modō superātūrū omnēs in

cēteris artibus. Atque haec ad nostram cōsuētūdinem sunt levia et potius contemnenda; at in Graeciā, utique ōlim, māgnae laudī erant. Postquam ephēbus est factus et palaestrae dare operam coepit, nōn tam māgnitūdinī vīrium
 5 servīvit quam vėlōcitātī; illam enim ad athlētārum ūsum, hanc ad bellī exīstimābat ūtilitātem pertinēre. Itaque exercēbātur plūrimum currendō et lūctandō ad eum finem, quoad stāns complectī posset atque contendere. In armīs vērō plūrimum studiī cōnsūmēbat.

10 III. Ad hanc corporis firmitātem plūra etiam animī bona accesserant. Erat enim modestus, prūdēns, gravis, temporibus sapienter ūtēns, perītus bellī, fortis manū, animō māximō, adeō vērītātis dīligēns, ut nē iocō quidem mentīrētur. Īdem continēns, clēmēns patiēnsque admīrandum in modum, nōn
 15 solum populī, sed etiam amīcōrum ferēns iniūriās, in primīs commissa cēlāns, quodque interdum nōn minus prōdest quam disertē dīcere, studiōsus audiendī; ex hōc enim facilimē discī arbitrābātur. Itaque cum in circulum vēnisset, in quō aut dē rē pūblicā disputārētur aut dē philosophiā
 20 sermō habērētur, numquam inde prius discessit, quam ad finem sermō esset adductus.

His incorruptibility.

Paupertātem adeō facile perpressus est, ut dē rē pūblicā nihil praeter glōriam cēperit. Amīcōrum in sē tuendō caruit facultātibus, fidē ad aliōs sublevandōs saepe sic ūsus est, ut
 25 iūdicārī possit omnia eī cum amīcīs fuisse commūnia. Nam cum aut cīvium suōrum aliquis ab hostibus esset captus, aut virgō nūbilis propter paupertātem collocārī nōn posset, amīcōrum concilium habēbat, et quantum quisque daret prō facultātibus imperābat. Eamque summam cum fēcerat,
 30 potius quam ipse acciperet pecūniam, addūcēbat eum qui

quaerēbat ad eōs quī cōferēbant, eīque ut ipsī numerārent faciēbat, ut ille ad quem ea rēs perveniēbat scīret quantum cuique dēberet.

IV. Temptāta autem ēius est abstinētia ā Diomedonte Cŷzicēnō : namque is rogātū Artaxerxis rēgis Epamīnōndam 5 pecūniā corrupendum suscēperat. Hīc māgnō cum pondere aurī Thēbās vēnit et Mīcythum adulēscēntulum, quem tum Epamīnōndas plūrimum dīligēbat, quīnque talentīs ad suam perdūxit voluntātem. Mīcythus Epamīnōndam cōvenīt et causam adventūs Diomedontis ostendit. 10

At ille Diomedontī cōram “Nihil,” inquit, “opus pecūniā est; nam sī rēx ea vult quae Thēbānīs sunt ūtilia, grātiīs facere sum parātus, sīn autem contrāria, nōn habet aurī atque argentī satis. Namque orbis terrārum dīvitīās accipere nōlō prō patriae cārītāte. Tū quod mē incogni- 15 tum temptāstī tuīque similem exīstimāstī, nōn mīror tibi que ignōscō; sed ēgredere properē, nē aliōs corrupās, cum mē nōn potueris. Et tū, Mīcythe, argentum huic redde, aut, nisi id cōfestim facis, ego tē trādam magistrātui.” Hunc Diomedōn cum rogāret, ut tūtō exire suaue quae attulerat 20 licēret efferre, “Istud quidem,” inquit, “faciam, neque tuā causā, sed meā, nē, sī tibi sit pecūnia adēpta, aliquis dīcat id ad mē ēreptum pervēnisse, quod dēlātum accipere nōluissem.”

Ā quō cum quaesisset, quō sē dēdūcī vellet, et ille 25 Athēnās dīxisset, praesidium dedit, ut tūtō pervenīret. Neque vērō id satis habuit, sed etiam, ut inviolātus in nāvem ēscenderet, per Chabriam Athēniēnsem, dē quō suprà mentiōnem fēcimus, effēcit. Abstinētia erit hōc satis testimōnium. Plūrima quidem prōferre possumus, 30 sed modus adhibendus est, quoniam ūnō hōc volūmine vītā excellentium virōrum complūrium conclūdere cō-

stituimus, quōrum rēs sēparātīm multīs mīlibus versuum complūrēs scriptōrēs ante nōs explicārunt.

His eloquence and ready wit.

V. Fuit etiam disertus, ut nēmō eī Thēbānus pār esset
 eloquentiā, neque minus concinnus in brevitate respondendi
 5 quam in perpetuā oratione ornatus. Habuit obtrectatorem
 Meneclidē quendam, indidem Thēbīs, et adversarium in
 administrandā rē publica, satis exercitatum in dicendō, ut
 Thēbānum scilicet; namque illi genti plūs inest virium
 quam ingenii. Is quod in rē militari florere Epaminōndam
 10 videbat, hortari solēbat Thēbānōs ut pacem bello antefere-
 rent, nē illius imperatoris opera desiderāretur. Huic ille
 “Fallis,” inquit, “verbō civēs tuos, quod eōs ā bellō advocās;
 otiū enim nōmine servitutem conciliās; nam paritur pax
 bellō. Itaque quī eā diutinā volunt fruī, bellō exercitati
 15 esse debent. Quā rē sī principēs Graeciae vultis esse, cas-
 tris est vobis utendum, nōn palaestra.” Idem ille Mene-
 clidēs cum huic obiceret, quod liberōs nōn haberet neque
 uxorem dūxisset, māximēque insolentiam, quod sibi Aga-
 memnonis bellī glōriam vidēretur cōsecutus: at ille “Dē-
 20 sine,” inquit, “Meneclīda, dē uxōre mihi exprobrāre; nam
 nullius in istā rē minus uti cōsiliō volō.” Habēbat enim
 Meneclidēs suspiciōnem adulteriī. “Quod autem mē Aga-
 memnonem aemulārī putās, falleris. Namque ille cum
 universā Graeciā vix decem annīs unam cēpit urbem, ego
 25 contrā eā unā urbe nostrā diēque unō tōtam Graeciam Lace-
 daemoniīs fugātis liberāvī.”

VI. Idem cum in conventum vēnisset Arcadum, petēns
 ut societatem cum Thēbānīs et Argivīs facerent, contrāque
 Callistratus, Athēniēnsium lēgātus, quī eloquentiā omnēs
 30 eō praestābat tempore, postulāret ut potius amicitiam se-

querentur Atticōrum, et in ōrātiōne suā multa invec-
 tisset in Thēbānōs et Argīvōs in eisque hōc posuisset, ani-
 mum advertere dēbere Arcades quālēs utraque civitās civēs
 prōcreāset, ex quibus dē cēteris possent iūdicāre: Argīvōs
 enim fuisse Orestem et Alemaeōnem māttricidās, Thēbis 5
 Oedipum nātum, quī, cum patrem suum interfēcisset, ex
 mātre liberōs prōcreāset; huic in respondendō Epaminōn-
 dās, cum dē cēteris perōrāset, postquam ad illa duo oppro-
 bria pervēnit, admirārī sē dixit stultitiam rhētoris Attici,
 quī nōn animadverterit, innocentēs illōs nātōs domī, scelere 10
 admissō cum patriā essent expulsī, receptōs esse ab Athē-
 niēnsibus.

Sed māximē eius ēloquentia elūxit Spartae lēgātī ante
 pūgnam Leutricam. Quō cum omnium sociōrum convē-
 nissent lēgātī, cōram frequentissimō conventū sic Lacedae- 15
 moniōrum tyrannidem coarguit, ut nōn minus illā ōrātiōne
 opēs eōrum concusserit quam Leutricā pūgnā. Tum enim
 perfēcit, quod post apparuit, ut auxiliō Lacedaemoniī sociō-
 rum privārentur.

His patience and forgiveness of injuries.

VII. Fuisse patientem suōrumque iniūriās ferentem 20
 civium, quod sē patriae irāscī nefās esse dūceret, haec
 sunt testimōnia. Cum eum propter invidiam civēs suī
 praeficere exercituī nōlissent, duxque esset dēlēctus bellī
 imperītus, cuius errōre rēs eō esset dēducta, ut omnēs dē
 salūte pertimēscerent, quod locōrum angustis clausī ab 25
 hostibus obsidēbantur, dēsiderārī coepta est Epaminōndae
 dīligentia; erat enim ibi privātus numerō militis. Ā quō
 cum peterent opem, nūllam adhibuit memoriam contumēliae
 et exercitum obsidiōne liberātum domum redūxit incolu-
 mem. Nec vērō hōc semel fēcit, sed saepius. Māximē 30

autem fuit illūstre, cum in Peloponnēsum exercitum dūxisset adversus Lacedaemoniōs habēretque collēgās duōs, quorum alter erat Pelopidās, vir fortis ac strēnuus.

He is condemned to death ; his ingenious defence.

Hī cum crīminibus adversāriōrum omnēs in invidiam
 5 vēnissent, ob eamque rem imperium eīs esset abrogātum, atque in eōrum locum aliī praetōrēs successissent, Epamīnōndās populī scītō nōn pārui idemque ut facerent persuāsit collēgīs, et bellum quod suscepērat gessit. Namque animadvertēbat, nisi id fēcisset, tōtum exercitum propter
 10 praetōrum imprūdentiam īscitiāque bellī peritūrum. Lēx erat Thēbis, quae morte multābat, sī quis imperium diūtius retinuisset quam lēge praefīnitum foret. Hanc Epamīnōndās cum rei pūblīcae cōnservandae causā lātā vidēret, ad perniciem civitātis cōferri nōluit, et quattuor
 15 mēnsibus diūtius quam populus iusserat gessit imperium.

VIII. Postquam domum reditum est, collēgae eius hōc crīmine accūsābantur. Quibus ille permīsit, ut omnem causam in sē trānsferrent suāque operā factum contendērent, ut lēgī nōn oboedīrent. Quā dēfēnsiōne illīs periculō
 20 liberātīs nēmō Epamīnōndam respōnsūrum putābat, quod quid dīceret nōn habēret. At ille in iūdicium vēnit, nihil eōrum negāvit quae adversārii crīmīnī dabant, omniaque quae collēgae dīxerant cōfessus est, neque recūsāvit quōminus lēgis poenam subīret, sed ūnum ab eīs petīvit, ut in
 25 sepulcrō suō īnscriberent :

“Epamīnōndās ā Thēbānīs morte multātus est, quod eōs coēgit apud Leuctra superāre Lacedaemoniōs, quōs ante sē imperātōrem nēmō Boeōtōrum ausus sit aspicere in aciē, quodque ūnō proeliō nōn solum Thēbās ab interitū retrāxit,
 30 sed etiam ūniversam Graeciam in libertātem vindicāvit

eoque rēs utrōrumque perdūxit, ut Thēbāni Spartam oppugnārent, Lacedaemoniī satis habērent, sī salvī esse possent, neque prius bellāre dēstitit quam Messēnē restitūtā urbem eōrum obsidiōne clausit.”

Haec cum dixisset, rīsus omnium cum hilaritāte coortus 5 est, neque quisquam iūdex ausus est dē eō ferre suffrāgium. Sic ā iūdiō capitis māximā discessit glōriā.

He is mortally wounded at Mantinea. Personal anecdotes.

IX. Hic extrēmō tempore imperātor apud Mantinēam cum aciē instrūctā audācius instāret hostibus, cognitus ā Lacedaemoniīs, quod in ūnūs perniciē ēius patriae sitam 10 putābant salūtem, ūniversī in ūnum impetum fēcērunt, neque prius abcessērunt, quam māgnā caede editā multisque occīsīs, fortissimē ipsum Epaminōndam pūgnantem, sparō ēminus percussum, concidere vīdērunt. Hūius cāsū aliquantum retardāti sunt Boeōtī, neque tamen prius pūgnā 15 excessērunt quam repūgnantēs prōfligārunt. At Epaminōndās, cum animadverteret mortiferum sē vulnus accēpisse simulque, sī ferrum, quod ex hastillī in corpore remānserat, extrāxisset, animam statim ēmissūrum, ūsque eō retinuit, quoad renūtiātum est vīcisse Boeōtōs. Id postquam audī- 20 vit, “Satis,” inquit, “vixī; invictus enim morior.” Tum ferrō extrāctō cōnfestim exanimātus est.

X. Hic uxōrem numquam dūxit. In quō cum reprehenderētur ā Pelopidā, quī filium habēbat infāmem, maleque eum in eō patriae cōnsulere dīceret, quod liberōs nōn 25 relinqueret, “Vidē,” inquit, “nē tū pēius cōnsulās, quī tālem ex tē nātum relictūrus sis. Neque vērō stirps potest mihi deesse; namque ex mē nātam relinquō pūgnam Leucetricam, quae nōn modo mihi superstes, sed etiam immortalis sit necesse est.” Quō tempore, duce Pelopidā, exsulēs 30

Thēbās occupārent et praesidium Lacedaemoniōrum ex arce expulērunt, Epamīnōndās, quam diū facta est caedēs cīvium, domō sē tenuit, quod neque dēfendere malōs volēbat neque impūgnāre, nē manūs suōrum sanguine cruentāret; namque omnem cīvilem victōriam fūnestam putābat. Idem, postquam apud Cadmēam cum Lacedaemoniīs pūgnārī coeptum est, in prīmīs stetit.

Hūius dē virtūtibus vitāque satis erit dictum, sī hōc ūnum adiūnxerō, quod nēmō ibit infitiās, Thēbās et ante
10 Epamīnōndam nātum et post eiusdem interitum perpetuō aliēnō pāruisse imperiō; contrā ea, quam diū ille praefuerit rei pūblīcae, caput fuisse tōtius Graeciae. Ex quō intellegī potest ūnum hominem plūris quam cīvitātem fuisse.

V. HAMILCAR.

The defence of Eryx; Catulus grants honorable terms.

I. Hamilcar, Hannibalis filius, cognōmine Barca, Carthāginiēnsis, prīmō Poenicō bellō, sed temporibus extrēmīs, admodum adulēscentulus in Siciliā praeesse coepit exercituī. Cum ante eius adventum et marī et terrā male rēs gererentur Carthāginiēnsium, ipse ubi affuit, numquam hostī cessit neque locum nocendī dedit, saepeque ē contrāriō, occāsione
20 datā, laccessīvit semperque superior discessit. Quō factō, cum paene omnia in Siciliā Poenī amīsissent, ille Erycem sic dēfendit, ut bellum eō locō gestum nōn vidērētur. Interim Carthāginiēnsēs, classe apud insulās Aegātēs ā C. Lutātiō, cōsule Rōmānōrum, superātī, statuērunt bellī
25 facere finem eamque rem arbitriō permīsērunt Hamilcaris. Ille etsī flagrābat bellandī cupiditāte, tamen pācī serviendum putāvit, quod patriam exhaustam sūmptibus diūtius calamitātēs bellī ferre nōn posse intellegēbat, sed ita ut statim

mente agitāret, sī paulum modo rēs essent refectae, bellum renovāre Rōmānōsque armīs persequī, dōnicum aut virtūte vīcissent aut victī manūs dedissent. Hōc cōsiliō pācem conciliāvit, in quō tantā fuit ferōciā, cum Catulus negāret bellum compositūrum, nisi ille cum suis, quī Erycem tenē- 5 rent, armīs relictīs, Siciliā dēcēderent, ut succumbente patriā ipse peritūrum sē potius dixerit, quam cum tantō flāgitio domum redīret: nōn enim suae esse virtūtis, arma ā patriā accepta adversus hostēs adversariis trādere. Hūius perti- nāciae cessit Catulus. 10

Hamilcar suppresses the revolt of the mercenaries.

II. At ille ut Carthāginem vēnit, multō aliter ac spērārat rem pūblicam sē habentem cognōvit. Namque diūturni- tāte externī malī tantum exārsit intestinum bellum, ut num- quam in parī periculō fuerit Carthāgō, nisi cum dēlēta est. Primō mercennariī militēs, quibus adversus Rōmānōs ūsī 15 erant, dēscīvērunt, quōrum numerus erat vīginti mīlium. Iī tōtam abaliēnārunt Āfricam, ipsam Carthāginem oppū- gnārunt. Quibus malīs adeō sunt Poenī perterritī, ut etiam auxilia ab Rōmānīs petierint; eaque impetrārunt. Sed extrēmō, cum prope iam ad dēspērātiōnem pervēnissent, 20 Hamilcarem imperātorem fēcērunt. Is nōn solum hostēs ā mūrīs Carthāginis remōvit, cum amplius centum mīlia facta essent armātōrum, sed etiam eō compulit, ut locōrum angu- stiis clausī plūrēs famē quam ferrō interīrent. Omnia op- pida abaliēnāta, in eīs Uticam atque Hippōnem, valentissima 25 tōtius Āfricae, restituit patriae. Neque eō fuit contentus, sed etiam finēs imperiī prōpāgāvit, tōtā Āfricā tantum otium reddidit, ut nūllum in eā bellum vidērētur multīs annis fuisse.

He wages war successfully in Spain; his death.

III. Rēbus hīs ex sententiā perāctīs, fidentī animō atque infestō Rōmānīs, quō facilius causam bellandī reperīret, effecit ut imperātor cum exercitū in Hispāniam mitterētur, eōque sēcum dūxit filium Hannibalem annōrum novem.
 5 Erat praetereā cum eō adulēscēns illūstris, fōrmōsus, Hasdrubal, cui ille filiam suam in mātirimōnium dedit. Dē hōc ideō mentiōnem fēcimus, quod, Hamilcare occīsō, ille exercituī praefuit rēsque māgnās gessit, et prīnceps largitiōne vetustōs pervertit mōrēs Carthāginiēnsium, eiusdemque post
 10 mortem Hannibal ab exercitū accēpit imperium.

IV. At Hamilcar, posteāquam mare trānsiit in Hispāniāque vēnit, māgnās rēs secundā gessit fortunā; māximās bellicōsissimāsque gentēs subēgit, equīs, armīs, virīs, pecūniā tōtam locuplētāvit Āfricā. Hīc cum in Italiā bellum
 15 inferre meditārētur, nōnō annō postquam in Hispāniam vēnerat, in proeliō pūgnāns adversus Vettonēs occīsus est. Hūius perpetuum odium ergā Rōmānōs māximē concitāsse vidētur secundum bellum Poenicum; namque Hannibal, filius eius, adsiduīs patris obtestātiōnibus eō est perductus,
 20 ut interīre quam Rōmānōs nōn experīrī mallet.

VI. HANNIBAL.

His military genius. His hatred of the Romans.

I. Hannibal, Hamilcaris filius, Carthāginiēnsis. Sī vērum est, quod nēmō dubitat, ut populus Rōmānus omnēs gentēs virtūte superārit, nōn est infitiandum Hannibalem tantō praestitisse cēterōs imperātōrēs prūdentiā, quantō
 25 populus Rōmānus antecēdat fortitudīne cūctās nātiōnēs; nam quotiēnsicumque cum eō congressus est in Italiā, semper

discessit superior. Quod nisi domī cīvium suōrum invidiā debilitātus esset, Rōmānōs vidētur superāre potuisse. Sed multōrum obtrectātiō dēvicit ūnīus virtūtem.

II. Hic autem velut hērēditātē relīctum odium paternum ergā Rōmānōs sic cōservāvit, ut prius animam quam id 5 dēposuerit, quī quidem, cum patriā pulsus esset et aliēnārū opum indigēret, numquam dēstiterit animō bellāre cum Rōmānīs. Nam ut omittam Philippum, quem absēns hostem reddidit Rōmānīs, omnium eīus temporibus potentissimus rēx Antiochus fuit. Hunc tantā cupiditatē incendit 10 bellandī, ut ūsque ā rubrō marī arma cōnātus sit inferre Italiae. Ad quem cum lēgātī vēnissent Rōmānī, quī dē eīus voluntātē explōrārent darentque operam cōsiliīs clandestīnīs, ut Hannibalem in suspiciōnem rēgī addūcerent, tamquam ab ipsīs corruptus alia atque antea sentīret, neque 15 id frūstrā fēcissent, idque Hannibal comperisset sēque ab interiōribus cōsiliīs sēgregārī vīdisset, tempore datō, adiit ad rēgem, eīque cum multa dē fidē suā et odiō in Rōmānōs commemorāset, hōc adiūnxit: "Pater meus," inquit, "Hamilcar puerulō mē, utpote nōn amplius novem annōs nātō, in 20 Hispāniam imperātor proficiscēns, Carthāgine Iovī optimō māximō hostiās immolāvit. Quae dīvīna rēs dum cōficiēbātur, quaesivit ā mē vellemne sēcum in castra proficiscī. Id cum libenter accēpisse atque ab eō petere coepissem nē dubitāret dūcere, tum ille, "Faciam," inquit, "sī mihi 25 fidem quam postulō dederis." Simul mē ad āram addūxit, apud quam sacrificāre instituerat, eamque, cēterīs remōtīs, tenentem iūrāre iussit, numquam mē in amicitīā cum Rōmānīs fore. Id ego iūsiūrandum patrī datum ūsque ad hanc aetātem ita cōservāvī, ut nēmīnī dubium esse dēbeat, 30 quīn reliquō tempore eādē mente sim futūrus. Quā rē sī quid amicē dē Rōmānīs cōgitābis, nōn imprūdenter fēcēris,

sī mē cēlāris; cum quidem bellum parābis, tē ipsum frūstrāberis, sī nōn mē in eō principem posueris.”

The war in Spain. Hannibal invades Italy.

III. Hāc igitur quā diximus aetāte cum patre in Hispāniam profectus est, cūius post obitum, Hasdrubale
 5 imperātōre suffectō, equitatuī omnī praefuit. Hōc quoque interfectō, exercitus summam imperiī ad eum dētulit. Id Carthāginem dēlātum publicē comprobātum est. Sic Hannibal minor quīnque et vīgintī annīs nātus imperātor factus, proximō trienniō omnēs gentēs Hispāniae bellō
 10 subēgit, Saguntum, foederātā cīvitātem, vī expūgnāvit, trēs exercitūs māximōs comparāvit. Ex hīs ūnum in Āfricam mīsīt, alterum cum Hasdrubale frātre in Hispāniā reliquit, tertium in Italiam sēcum dūxit. Ut saltum Pŷrēnaeum trānsiit, quācumque iter fēcīt, cum omnibus in
 15 colīs cōnflīxit; nēmīnem nisi victum dīmīsīt. Ad Alpēs postēā quam vēnit, quā Italiam ab Galliā seiungunt, quās nēmō umquam cum exercitū ante eum praeter Herculem Grāiū trānsierat—quō factō is hodiē saltus Grāius appellātur—Alpicōs cōnantēs prohibēre trānsitū concēdit, loca
 20 patefēcīt, itinera mūniit, effēcīt ut eā elephantus ōrnātus ire posset, quā antēā ūnus homō inermis vix poterat rēpere. Hāc cōpiās trādūxit in Italiamque pervēnit.

He defeats the Romans in many battles. He outwits Fabius.

IV. Cōnflīxerat apud Rhodanum cum P. Cornēliō Scipiōne cōsule eumque pepulerat. Cum hōc eōdem Clastidiī
 25 apud Padum dēcernit sauciumque inde ac fugātum dīmittit. Tertiō idem Scipiō cum collēgā Ti. Longō apud Trebiam adversus eum vēnit. Cum eis manum cōnseruit, utrōsque prōflīgāvit. Inde per Ligurēs Appennīnum trānsiit, petēns

Etrūriam. Hōc in itinere adeō gravī morbō afficitur oculōrum, ut postea numquam dextrō aequē bene ūsus sit. Quā valētūdine cum etiamnum premeretur lecticāque ferrētur, C. Flāminium cōsulem apud Trasumēnum cum exercitū insidiis circumventum occīdit, neque multō post C. 5 Centenium praetōrem cum dēlectā manū saltūs occupantem. Hinc in Āpūliam pervēnit. Ibi obviam ei vērunt duo cōsulēs, C. Terentius et L. Aemilius. Utriusque exercitūs ūnō proeliō fugāvit, Paulum cōsulem occīdit et aliquot praetereā cōsulārēs, in eis Cn. Seryilium Geminum, qui 10 superiōre annō fuerat cōsul.

V. Hāc pūgnā pūgnātā, Rōmam profectus nullō resistente in propinquis urbī montibus morātus est. Cum aliquot ibi diēs castra habuisset et Capuam reverteretur, Q. Fabius Māximus, dictātor Rōmānus, in agrō Falernō 15 ei sē obiēcit. Hīc clausus locōrum angustīs, noctū sine ūllō dētrimentō exercitūs sē expedit Fabiōque, callidissimō imperātōrī, dedit verba; namque obductā nocte sarmenta in cornibus iuencōrum dēligāta incendit, eiusque generis multitudinem māgnam dispālātā immisit. Quō 20 repentinō vīsū obiectō, tantum terrōrem iniēcit exercitū Rōmānōrum, ut ēgredi extrā vāllum nēmō sit ausus. Hanc post rem gestam nōn ita multis diēbus M. Minucium Rūfum, magistrum equitum parī ac dictātōrem imperiō, dolō prōductum in proelium fugāvit. Ti. Semprōnium Gracchum, 25 iterum cōsulem, in Lūcānis absēns in insidiās inductum sustulit. M. Claudium Mārcellum, quīnquiēns cōsulem, apud Venusiam parī modō interfēcit. Longum est omnia enumerāre proelia. Quā rē hōc ūnum satis erit dictum, ex quō intellegī possit quantus ille fuerit: quam diū in Italiā 30 fuit, nēmō ei in aciē restitit, nēmō adversus eum post Cannēensem pūgnam in campō castra posuit.

He is defeated by Scipio at Zama, and recalled to Carthage.

- VI. Hinc invictus patriam dēfensum revocātus, bellum gessit adversus P. Scīpiōnem, filium eius Scīpiōnis, quem ipse primō apud Rhodanum, iterum apud Padum, tertiō apud Trebiam fugārat. Cum hōc, exhaustis iam patriae
5 facultātibus, cupivit impraesentiārum bellum compōnere, quō valentior postea congredērētur. Inde colloquium convēnit, condiciōnēs nōn convēnērunt. Post id factum paucis diebus apud Zamam cum eōdem cōflīxit; pulsus — incredibile dictū — bīduō et duābus noctibus Hadrūnētum pervēnit, quod abest ab Zamā circiter milia passuum trecenta. In hac fugā Numidae, quī simul cum eō ex aciē excesserant, insidiātī sunt ei, quōs nōn solum effūgit, sed etiam ipsos oppressit. Hadrūmētī reliquos ē fugā collēgit, novis dilēctibus paucis diebus multos contrāxit.
- 15 VII. Cum in apparandō ācerrimē esset occupātus, Carthāginiēnsēs bellum cum Rōmānis composuērunt. Ille nihil sētius exercituī postea praefuit rēsque in Āfricā gessit usque ad P. Sulpiciū C. Aurēliū cōsulēs. His enim magistrātibus lēgātī Carthāginiēnsēs Rōmam vērunt, quī
20 senatuī populōque Rōmānō grātiās agerent, quod cum eis pācem fēcissent, ob eamque rem coronā aureā eos dōnārent simulque peterent, ut obsidēs eōrum Fregellis essent captivique redderentur. His ex senātūs cōsultō respōnsum est: mūnus eōrum grātum acceptumque esse; obsidēs, quō
25 locō rogārent, futūrōs; captīvōs nōn remissūrōs, quod Hannibalem, cūius operā susceptum bellum foret, inimicissimū nōminī Rōmānō, etiamnum cum imperiō apud exercitum habērent itemque frātre ēius Māgōnem. Hōc respōnsō Carthāginiēnsēs cognitō Hannibalem domum et Māgōnem
30 revocārunt. Hūc ut rediit, rēx factus est, postquam im-

perātor fuerat annō secundō et vicēsīmō — ut enim Rōmae cōsulēs, sic Carthāgine quotannis annuī bīnī rēgēs creābantur. In eō magistrātū parī diligentīā sē Hannibal praebuit ac fuerat in bellō. Namque effēcit ex novīs vectīgālibus nōn solum ut esset pecūnia, quae Rōmānīs ex foedere penderētur, sed etiam superesset, quae in aerāriō repōnerētur.

He flees to Antiochus and rouses him against the Romans.

Deinde, M. Claudiō L. Furiō cōsulibus, Rōmā lēgātī Carthāginem vērunt. Hōs Hannibal ratus suī exposcendī grātiā missōs, priusquam eīs senātus darētur, nāvem ascendit clam atque in Syriam ad Antiochum perfūgit. Hāc rē palam factā, Poenī nāvēs duās, quae eum comprehenderent, sī possent cōsequī, mīsērunt, bona eius publicārunt, domum ā fundāmentīs disiecērunt, ipsum exsulem iudicārunt.

15

VIII. At Hannibal annō quārtō postquam domō profūgerat, L. Corneliō Q. Minuciō cōsulibus, cum quīnque nāvibus Africam accessit in finibus Cŷrēnaeorum, sī forte Carthāginiēnsēs ad bellum inducere posset Antiochī spē fidūciāque, cui iam persuāserat ut cum exercitibus in Italiam proficiscerētur. Hūc Māgōnem frātre excīvit. Id ubi Poenī rescīvērunt, Māgōnem eādem, quā frātre, absentem affēcērunt poenā. Illī, dēspērātīs rēbus, cum solvisent nāvēs ac vēla ventīs dedissent, Hannibal ad Antiochum pervēnit. Dē Māgōnis interitū duplex memoria prōdita est: namque aliī naufragiō, aliī ā servulīs ipsius interfectum eum scriptum reliquērunt. Antiochus autem sī tam in gerendō bellō cōsiliīs eius pārere voluisset, quam in suscipiendō instituerat, propius Tiberī quam Thermopylīs dē summā imperiī dimicāset. Quem etsī multa stultē cōnārī vidēbat,

30

tamen nullā dēseruit in rē. Praefuit paucis nāvibus, quās ex Syriā iussus erat in Asiam dūcere, eisque adversus Rhodiōrum classem in Pamphylīo marī cōflīxit. In quō cum multitudīne adversāriōrum suī superārentur, ipse quō cornū
5 rem gessit fuit superior.

Hannibal outwits the Cretan priests; he flees to Prusias.

IX. Antiochō fugātō, verēns nē dēderētur, quod sine dubiō accidisset, sī suī fēcisset potestātem, Crētā ad Gortyniōs vēnit, ut ibi quō sē cōferret cōsiderāret. Vidit autem vir omnium callidissimus in māgnō sē fore periculō, nisi
10 quid prōvidisset, propter avāritiam Crētensium; māgnam enim sēcum pecūniam portābat, dē quā sciēbat exīsse fāmam. Itaque capit tāle cōsiliū. Amphorās complūrēs complet plumbō, summās operit aurō et argentō. Hās, praesentibus prīncipibus, dēpōnit in templō Diānae, simul
15 lāns sē suās fortūnās illōrum fidei crēdere. His in errōrem inductis, statuās aēneās, quās sēcum portābat, omni suā pecūniā complet easque in prōpatulō domi abicit. Gortyniī templum māgnā cūrā custōdiunt, nōn tam ā ceteris quam ab Hannibale, nē ille, inscientibus eis, tolleret sua sēcumque
20 dūceret.

X. Sic cōservātis suis rēbus omnibus Poenus, illūsis Crētensibus, ad Prūsiam in Pontum pervēnit. Apud quem eōdem animō fuit ergā Italiam neque aliud quicquam ēgit quam rēgem armāvit et exacuit adversus Rōmānōs. Quem
25 cum vidēret domesticis opibus minus esse rōbustum, cōciliābat ceterōs rēgēs, adiungēbat bellicōsās nātiōnēs. Dissidēbat ab eō Pergamēnus rēx Eumenēs, Rōmānis amīcissimus, bellumque inter eōs gerēbātur et marī et terrā; sed utrobique Eumenēs plūs valēbat propter Rōmānōrum societā-
30 tem. Quō magis cupiēbat eum Hannibal opprimī, quem sī

remōvisset, faciliōra sibi cētera fore arbitrābātur. Ad hunc interficiendum tālem iniit ratiōnem. Classe paucīs diēbus erant dēcrētūrī. Superābātur nāvium multitudīne; dolō erat pūgnandum, cum pār nōn esset armīs. Imperāvīt quam plūrimās venēnātās serpentēs vīvās colligī eāsque 5 in vāsa fictilia conicī. Hārum cum effēcisset māgnam multitudīnem, diē ipsō, quō factūrus erat nāvālē proelium, classiārīōs convocat eīsque praecipit, omnēs ut in ūnam Eumenis rēgis concurrant nāvem, ā cēterīs tantum satis habeant sē dēfendere. Id illōs facile serpentium multītūdine cōsecūtūrōs. Rēx autem in quā nāve veherētur, ut scīrent sē factūrum; quem sī aut cēpissent aut interfēcissent, māgnō eīs pollicētur praemiō fore.

Hannibal defeats Eumenes; his extraordinary tactics.

XI. Tālī cohortātiōne militum factā, classis ab utrīsque in proelium dēdūcitur. Quārum aciē cōstitūtā, priusquam 15 signum pūgnae darētur, Hannibal, ut palam faceret suīs quō locō Eumenēs esset, tabellārium in scaphā cum cādūceō mittit. Quī ubi ad nāvēs adversāriōrum pervēnit epistulamque ostendēs sē rēgem professus est quaerere, statim ad Eumenem dēductus est, quod nēmō dubitābat quīn 20 aliquid dē pāce esset scrīptum. Tabellārius, ducis nāve dēclārātā, suīs eōdem, unde erat ēgressus, sē recēpit. At Eumenēs, solūtā epistolā, nihil in eā repperit nisi quae ad irrīdendum eum pertinērent. Cūius rei etsī causam mirābātur neque reperiēbat, tamen proelium statim committere 25 nōn dubitāvit. Hōrum in concursū Bithŷnī Hannibalis praeceptō ūniversī nāvem Eumenis adoriuntur. Quōrum vim rēx cum sustinēre nōn posset, fugā salūtem petiit, quam cōsecūtus nōn esset, nisi intrā sua praesidia sē recēpisset, quae in proximō lītore erant collocāta. Reli- 30

quae Pergamēnae nāvēs cum adversāriōs premerent ācrius, repente in eās vāsa fictilia, dē quibus suprā mentiōnem fēcimus, conici coepta sunt. Quae iacta initiō rīsum pūgnantibus concitārunt, neque quā rē id fieret poterat intellegi.

5 Postquam autem nāvēs suās opplētās cōspēxērunt serpentibus, novā rē perterriti, cum quid potissimum vitārent nōn vidērent, puppēs vertērunt sēque ad sua castra nautica rettulērunt. Sic Hannibal cōsiliō arma Pergamēnōrum superāvit, neque tum solum, sed saepe aliās pedestribus

10 cōpiis parī prūdentiā pepulit adversāriōs.

The death of Hannibal. His literary works.

XII. Quae dum in Asiā geruntur, accidit cāsū ut lēgātī Prūsiae Rōmae apud T. Quīnetium Flāminīnum cōsulārem cēnārent, atque ibi dē Hannibale mentiōne factā, ex eīs ūnus diceret eum in Prūsiae rēgnō esse. Id posterō diē Flāminī-

15 nus senātui dētulit. Patrēs cōscripti, quī, Hannibale vivō, numquam sē sine insidiis futūrōs existimārent, lēgātōs in Bithyniam mīsērunt, in eīs Flāminīnum, quī ab rēge peterent, nē inimicissimum suum sēcum habēret sibi que dēderet. His Prūsia negāre ausus nōn est; illud recūsāvit, nē id ā

20 sē fieri postulārent, quod adversus iūs hospitii esset: ipsi, si possent, comprehenderent; locum, ubi esset, facile inventūrōs. Hannibal enim ūnō locō sē tenēbat, in castellō quod eī ā rēge datum erat mūneri, idque sic aedificārat, ut in omnibus partibus aedificiī exitūs habēret, scilicet verēns nē

25 ūsū venīret quod accidit.

Hūc cum lēgātī Rōmānōrum vēnissent ac multitudīne domum eius circumdedissent, puer, ab iānuā prōspiciēns, Hannibalī dixit plūrēs praeter cōsuētūdinem armātōs apparēre. Quī imperāvit eī, ut omnēs forēs aedificiī cir-

30 cumīret ac properē sibi nūntiāret num eōdem modō

undique obsidērētur. Puer cum celeriter, quid vīdisset, renūtiāset omnēque exitū occupātōs ostendisset, sēnsit id nōn fortuitō factum, sed sē petī neque sibi diūtius vitā esse retinendam. Quam nē aliēnō arbitriō dimitteret, memor pristinārum virtūtum, venēnum, quod semper 5 sēcum habēre cōsuērat, sūmpsit.

XIII. Sic vir fortissimus, multīs variisque perfūctus labōribus, annō acquiēvit septuāgēsīmō. Quibus cōsuli-
bus interierit nōn convenit. Namque Atticus M. Claudiō
Mārcellō Q. Fabiō Labeōne cōsulibus mortuum in annālī 10
suō scriptum reliquit, at Polybius L. Aemiliō Paulō Cn.
Baebiō Tamphilō, Sulpicius autem Blithō P. Cornēliō
Cethēgō M. Baebiō Tamphilō. Atque hīc tantus vir tan-
tisque bellis districtus nōn nihil temporis tribuit litteris.
Namque aliquot eius librī sunt, Graecō sermōne cōfectī, 15
in eis ad Rhodiōs dē Cn. Mānlii Volsōnis in Asiā rēbus
gestis. Hūius bellī gesta multī memoriae prōdidērunt,
sed ex eis duo, quī cum eō in castris fuērunt simulque
vixērunt, quam diū fortūna passa est, Silēnus et Sōsilus
Lacedaemonius. Atque hōc Sōsilō Hannibal litterārum 20
Graecārum ūsus est doctōre.

VII. CATŌ.

His early life.

I. M. Catō, ortus mūnicipiō Tusculō, adulēscentulus,
priusquam honōribus operam daret, versātus est in Sabi-
nīs, quod ibi hērēdium ā patre relīctum habēbat. Inde
hortātū L. Valeriī Flacci, quem in cōsulātū cēnsūrāque 25
habuit collēgam, ut M. Perpenna cēnsōrius nārrāre solitus
est, Rōmam dēmigrāvit in forōque esse coepit. Prīmum
stīpendium meruit annōrum decem septemque. Q. Fabiō

M. Claudiō cōsulibus, tribūnus mīlitum in Sicilia fuit. Inde ut rediit, castra secūtus est C. Claudiī Nerōnis, magnīque opera eius exīstimāta est in proeliō apud Sēnam, quō cecidit Hasdrubal, frāter Hannibalis. Quaestor
 5 obtigit P. Āfricānō cōsulī, cum quō nōn prō sortis necessitudīne vīxit; namque ab eō perpetuā dissēnsit vitā. Aedilis plēbēi factus est cum C. Helviō. Praetor prōvinciam obtinuit Sardiniam, ex quā quaestor superiōre tempore ex Āfricā dēcēdēns Q. Ennium poētā dēdūxerat,
 10 quod nōn minōris aestimāmus quam quemlibet amplissimum Sardiniēsem triumphum.

His consulship and censorship; his severity.

II. Cōsulātum gessit cum L. Valeriō Flaccō. Sorte prōvinciam nactus Hispāniam citeriōrem ex eā triumphum dēportāvit. Ibi cum diūtius morārētur, P. Scīpiō
 15 Āfricānus, cōsul iterum, cūius in priōre cōsulātū quaestor fuerat, voluit eum dē prōvinciā dēpellere et ipse eī succēdere; neque hōc per senātum efficere potuit, cum quidem Scīpiō prīncipātum in civitāte obtinēret, quod tum nōn potentiā, sed iūre rēs publica administrābātur.
 20 Quā ex rē irātus senātui, cōsulātū perāctō, prīvātus in urbe mānsit. At Catō, cēnsor cum eōdem Flaccō factus, sevērē praefuit eī potestāti; nam et in complūrēs nōbilēs animadvertit et multās rēs novās in ēdictum addidit, quā rē luxūria reprimerētur, quae iam tum incipiēbat pullulāre.
 25 Circiter annōs octōgintā, ūsque ad extrēmam aetātem ab adultēscientiā, rei publicae causā suscipere inimicitias nōn dēstitit. Ā multis temptātus, nōn modo nūllum dētrīmentum exīstimātiōnis fēcit, sed quoad vīxit virtūtum laude crēvit.

His energy and ability. His literary works.

III. In omnibus rēbus singulārī fuit industriā; nam et agricola sollers, et peritus iūris cōsultus, et māgnus imperātor, et probābilis ōrātor, et cupidissimus litterārum fuit. Quārum studium etsī senior arripuerat, tamen tantum prōgressum fēcīt, ut nōn facile reperīrī possit neque dē Graecīs 5 neque dē Italicīs rēbus, quod eī fuerit incognitum. Ab adulēscientiā cōnfēcīt ōrātiōnēs. Senex historiās scribere instituit. Eārum sunt librī septem. Prīmus continet rēs gestās rēgum populī Rōmānī, secundus et tertius unde quaeque cīvitas orta sit Italica; ob quam rem omnēs Orīginēs 10 vidētur appellāsse. In quārtō autem bellum Poenicum est prīmum, in quīntō secundum. Atque haec omnia capitulātīm sunt dicta. Reliqua quoque bella parī modō persecūtus est ūsque ad praetūrā Ser. Galbae, quī dīripuit Lūsītānōs; atque hōrum bellōrum ducēs nōn nōmināvit, 15 sed sine nōminibus rēs notāvit. In eīsdem exposuit quae in Italiā Hispāniisque vidērentur admīranda; in quibus multa industria et dīligentia compāret, nūlla doctrīna.

Hūius dē vitā et mōribus plūra in eō librō persecūtī sumus, quem sēparātīm dē eō fēcimus rogātū T. Pompōniī 20 Atticī. Quā rē studiōsōs Catōnis ad illud volūmen dēlēgāmus.

sī mē celāris; cum quidem bellum parābis, tē ipsum frūstrāberis, sī nōn mē in eō principem posueris.”

The war in Spain. Hannibal invades Italy.

III. Hāc igitur quā dīximus aetāte cum patre in Hispāniam profectus est, cūius post obitum, Hasdrubale
 5 imperātore suffectō, equitatuī omnī praefuit. Hōc quoque interfectō, exercitus summam imperiī ad eum dētulit. Id Carthāginem delātum publicē comprobātum est. Sic Hannibal minor quīnque et vīgintī annīs nātus imperātor factus, proximō trienniō omnēs gentēs Hispāniae bellō
 10 subēgit, Saguntum, foederatā cīvitātem, vī expūgnāvit, trēs exercitūs māximōs comparāvit. Ex hīs ūnum in Āfricam mīsīt, alterum cum Hasdrubale frātre in Hispāniā reliquit, tertium in Italiam sēcum dūxit. Ut saltum Pŷrēnaeum trānsiit, quācumque iter fēcīt, cum omnibus in-
 15 colīs cōflīxit; nēmīnem nisi victum dīmīsīt. Ad Alpēs postea quam vēnit, quā Italiam ab Galliā sēiungunt, quās nēmō umquam cum exercitū ante eum praeter Herculem Grāiū trānsierat—quō factō is hodiē saltus Grāius ap-
 20 patefēcīt, itinera mūniit, effēcīt ut eā elephantus ōrnātus ire posset, quā antea ūnus homō inermis vix poterat rēpere. Hāc cōpiās trādūxit in Italiamque pervēnit.

He defeats the Romans in many battles. He outwits Fabius.

IV. Cōflīxerat apud Rhodanum cum P. Cornēliō Scīpiōne cōsule eumque pepulerat. Cum hōc eōdem Clastidiī
 25 apud Padum dēcernit sauciumque inde ac fugātum dīmīttit. Tertiō idem Scīpiō cum collēgā Ti. Longō apud Trebiam adversus eum vēnit. Cum eīs manū cōnservuit, utrōsque prōflīgāvit. Inde per Ligurēs Appennīnum trānsiit, petēns

Etrūriam. Hōc in itinere adeō gravī morbo afficitur oculōrum, ut postea numquam dextrō aequē bene ūsus sit. Quā valētudine cum etiamnum premeretur lecticāque ferretur, C. Flāminium cōsulem apud Trasumēnum cum exercitū insidiis circumventum occidit, neque multo post C. 5 Centēnium praetorem cum dēlectā manū saltūs occupantem. Hinc in Āpuliam pervēnit. Ibi obviam ei vērunt duo cōsulēs, C. Terentius et L. Aemilius. Utriusque exercitūs unō proelio fugāvit, Paulum cōsulem occidit et aliquot praeterea cōsulārēs, in eis Cn. Seryīlium Geminum, qui 10 superiore annō fuerat cōsul.

V. Hāc pūgnā pūgnātā, Rōmam profectus nullō resistente in propinquis urbī montibus morātus est. Cum aliquot ibi diēs castra habuisset et Capuam reverteretur, Q. Fabius Māximus, dictātor Rōmānus, in agrō Falernō 15 ei sē obiēcit. Hic clausus locōrum angustīs, noctū sine ullō detrīmentō exercitūs sē expeditivit Fabiōque, callidissimō imperātōrī, dedit verba; namque obductā nocte sarmēta in cornibus iuvencōrum dēligāta incendit, eiusque generis multitudinem māgnam dispālātā immisit. Quō 20 repentinō vīsū obiectō, tantum terrōrem iniēcit exercitū Rōmānōrum, ut ēgredi extrā vāllum nēmō sit ausus. Hanc post rem gestam nōn ita multis diēbus M. Minucium Rūfum, magistrum equitum parī ac dictātorem imperiō, dolō productum in proelium fugāvit. Ti. Semprōnium Gracchum, 25 iterum cōsulem, in Lūcānis absēns in insidiās inductum sustulit. M. Claudium Mārcellum, quīnquiēns cōsulem, apud Venusiam parī modō interfēcit. Longum est omnia enumerāre proelia. Quā rē hōc unum satis erit dictum, ex quō intellegī possit quantus ille fuerit: quam diū in Italiā 30 fuit, nēmō ei in aciē restitit, nēmō adversus eum post Cannēsem pūgnam in campō castra posuit.

He is defeated by Scipio at Zama, and recalled to Carthage.

- VI. Hinc invictus patriam dēfēsum revocātus, bellum gessit adversus P. Scīpiōnem, filium eius Scīpiōnis, quem ipse primō apud Rhodanum, iterum apud Padum, tertio apud Trebiam fugārat. Cum hōc, exhaustis iam patriae
 5 facultātibus, cupīvit impraesentiārum bellum compōnere, quō valentior postea congredērētur. Inde colloquium convēnit, condiōnēs nōn convēnērunt. Post id factum paucis diēbus apud Zamam cum eōdem cōflīxit; pulsus — incredibile dictū — bīduō et duābus noctibus Hadrūnētum per
 10 vēnit, quod abest ab Zamā circiter mīlia passuum trecenta. In hāc fugā Numidae, quī simul cum eō ex aciē excesserant, insidiātī sunt ei, quōs nōn solum effūgit, sed etiam ipsōs oppressit. Hadrūnētī reliquōs ē fugā collēgit, novīs dilēctibus paucis diēbus multōs contrāxit.
- 15 VII. Cum in apparandō ācerrimē esset occupātus, Carthāginiēnsēs bellum cum Rōmānis composuērunt. Ille nihilō sētius exercitū postea praefuit rēsque in Āfricā gessit usque ad P. Sulpiciū C. Aurēliū cōsulēs. Hīs enim magistrātibus lēgātī Carthāginiēnsēs Rōmam vērunt, quī
 20 senatū populōque Rōmānō grātiās agerent, quod cum eis pācem fēcissent, ob eamque rem corōnā aureā eōs dōnārent simulque peterent, ut obsidēs eōrum Fregellis essent captivīque redderentur. Hīs ex senātūs cōsultō respōnsum est: mūnus eōrum grātum acceptumque esse; obsidēs, quō
 25 locō rogārent, futūrōs; captīvōs nōn remissūrōs, quod Hannibalem, cūius operā susceptum bellum foret, inimicissimum nōminī Rōmānō, etiamnum cum imperiō apud exercitum habērent itemque frātrem eius Māgōnem. Hōc respōnsō Carthāginiēnsēs cognitō Hannibalem domum et Māgōnem
 30 revocārunt. Hūc ut rediit, rēx factus est, postquam im-

perātor fuerat annō secundō et vicēsīmō — ut enim Rōmae cōsulēs, sic Carthāgine quotannis annuī bīnī rēgēs creābantur. In eō magistrātū parī dīlīgentiā sē Hannibal praebuit ac fuerat in bellō. Namque effēcit ex novīs vectīgālibus nōn solum ut esset pecūnia, quae Rōmānīs ex foedere penderētur, sed etiam superesset, quae in aerārīo repōnerētur.

He flees to Antiochus and rouses him against the Romans.

Deinde, M. Claudiō L. Furiō cōsulibus, Rōmā lēgātī Carthāginem vērunt. Hōs Hannibal ratus suī exposcendī grātiā missōs, priusquam eīs senātus darētur, nāvem ascendit clam atque in Syriam ad Antiochum perfūgit. Hāc rē palam factā, Poenī nāvēs duās, quae eum comprehenderent, sī possent cōsequī, mīserunt, bona eius pūblicārunt, domum ā fundāmentīs disiēcērunt, ipsum exsulem iūdicārunt.

15

VIII. At Hannibal annō quārtō postquam domō profūgerat, L. Corneliō Q. Minuciō cōsulibus, cum quīnque nāvibus Āfricam accessit in finibus Cŷrēnaeorum, sī forte Carthāginiēnsēs ad bellum indūcere posset Antiochī spē fidūciāque, cui iam persuāserat ut cum exercitibus in Itāliam proficīscerētur. Hūc Māgōnem frātre excīvit. Id ubi Poenī rescīverunt, Māgōnem eādem, quā frātre, absentem affēcērunt poenā. Illī, dēspērātīs rēbus, cum solvisent nāvēs ac vēla ventīs dedissent, Hannibal ad Antiochum pervēnit. Dē Māgōnis interitū duplex memoria prōdita est: namque aliī naufragiō, aliī ā servulīs ipsius interfectum eum scriptum reliquērunt. Antiochus autem sī tam in gerendō bellō cōsiliis eius pārere voluisset, quam in suscipiendō instituerat, propius Tiberī quam Thermopylīs dē summā imperiī dīmicāset. Quem etsī multa stultē cōnārī vidēbat,

25

30

tamen nullā dēseruit in rē. Praefuit paucīs nāvibus, quās ex Syriā iussus erat in Asiam dūcere, eisque adversus Rhodiōrum classem in Pamphylīō marī cōflīxit. In quō cum multitudīne adversāriōrum suī superārentur, ipse quō cornū
 5 rem gessit fuit superior.

Hannibal outwits the Cretan priests; he flees to Prusias.

IX. Antiochō fugātō, verēns nē dēderētur, quod sine dubiō accidisset, sī suī fēcisset potestātem, Crētā ad Gortyniōs vēnit, ut ibi quō sē cōferret cōsiderāret. Vidit autem vir omnium callidissimus in māgnō sē fore periculō, nisi
 10 quid prōvīdisset, propter avāritiam Crētēnsium; māgnam enim sēcum pecūniam portābat, dē quā sciēbat exīsse famam. Itaque capit tāle cōsiliū. Amphorās complūrēs complet plumbō, summās operit aurō et argentō. Hās, praesentibus prīncipibus, depōnit in templō Diānae, simul
 15 lāns sē suās fortunās illōrum fidei crēdere. Hīs in errōrem inductīs, statuās aēneās, quās sēcum portābat, omni suā pecūniā complet easque in prōpatulō domī abicit. Gortyniī templum māgnā cūrā custōdiunt, nōn tam ā ceteris quam ab Hannibale, nē ille, inscientibus eis, tolleret sua sēcumque
 20 dūceret.

X. Sic cōservātis suis rēbus omnibus Poenus, illūsis Crētēnsibus, ad Prūsiam in Pontum pervēnit. Apud quem eōdem animō fuit ergā Italiam neque aliud quicquam ēgit quam rēgem armāvit et exacuit adversus Rōmānōs. Quem
 25 cum vidēret domesticis opibus minus esse rōbustum, conciliābat ceterōs rēgēs, adiungēbat bellicōsās nātiōnēs. Dissidēbat ab eō Pergamēnus rēx Eumenēs, Rōmānis amīcissimus, bellumque inter eōs gerēbātur et marī et terrā; sed utrobique Eumenēs plūs valēbat propter Rōmānōrum societā-
 30 tem. Quō magis cupiēbat eum Hannibal opprimī, quem si

remōvisset, faciliōra sibi cētera fore arbitrābātur. Ad hunc interficiendum tālem iniit ratiōnem. Classe paucīs diēbus erant dēcrētūrī. Superābātur nāvium multitudīne; dolō erat pūgnandum, cum pār nōn esset armīs. Imperāvit quam plūrimās venēnātās serpentēs vīvās colligī eāsque 5 in vāsa fictilia conicī. Hārum cum effēcisset māgnam multitudīnem, diē ipsō, quō factūrus erat nāvalē proelium, classiārīōs convocat eisque praecipit, omnēs ut in ūnam Eumenis rēgis concurrant nāvem, ā cēterīs tantum satis habeant sē dēfendere. Id illōs facile serpentium multītū- 10 dine cōsecūtūrōs. Rēx autem in quā nāve veherētur, ut scīrent sē factūrum; quem sī aut cēpissent aut interfēcissent, māgnō eis pollicētur praemiō fore.

Hannibal defeats Eumenes; his extraordinary tactics.

XI. Tālī cohortātiōne militum factā, classis ab utrīsq̄ue in proelium dēdūcitur. Quārum aciē cōstitūtā, priusquam 15 sīgnū pūgnae darētur, Hannibal, ut palam faceret suīs quō locō Eumenēs esset, tabellārium in scaphā cum cādūceō mittit. Quī ubi ad nāvēs adversāriōrum pervēnit epistulamque ostendēs sē rēgem professus est quaerere, statim ad Eumenem dēductus est, quod nēmō dubitābat quīn 20 aliquid dē pāce esset scrīptum. Tabellārius, ducis nāve dēclārātā, suīs eōdem, unde erat ēgressus, sē recēpit. At Eumenēs, solūtā epistolā, nihil in eā repperit nisi quae ad irridendum eum pertinērent. Cūius rei etsī causam mīrābātur neque repēiebāt, tamen proelium statim committere 25 nōn dubitāvit. Hōrum in concursū Bithynī Hannibalis praeceptō ūniversī nāvem Eumenis adoriuntur. Quōrum vim rēx cum sustinēre nōn posset, fugā salūtem petiit, quam cōsecūtus nōn esset, nisi intrā sua praesidia sē recēpisset, quae in proximō litore erant collocāta. Reli- 30

quae Pergamēnae nāvēs cum adversāriōs premerent ācrius, repente in eās vāsa fictilia, dē quibus suprā mentiōem fēcimus, conici coepta sunt. Quae iacta initiō rīsum pūgnantibus concitārent, neque quā rē id fieret poterat intellegī.

5 Postquam autem nāvēs suās opplētās cōspēxērunt serpentibus, novā rē perterriti, cum quid potissimum vitārent nōn vidērent, puppēs vertērunt sēque ad sua castra nautica rettulērunt. Sic Hannibal cōsiliō arma Pergamēnōrum superāvit, neque tum solum, sed saepe aliās pedestribus

10 cōpiis parī prūdentiā pepulit adversāriōs.

The death of Hannibal. His literary works.

XII. Quae dum in Asiā geruntur, accidit cāsū ut lēgātī Prūsiae Rōmae apud T. Quīnctium Flāminīnum cōsulārem cēnārent, atque ibi dē Hannibale mentiōe factā, ex eīs ūnus diceret eum in Prūsiae rēgnō esse. Id posterō diē Flāminī-

15 nus senātuī dētulit. Patrēs cōscripti, quī, Hannibale vivō, numquam sē sine insidiis futūrōs existimārent, lēgātōs in Bithyniam mīsērunt, in eīs Flāminīnum, quī ab rēge peterent, nē inimicissimum suum sēcum habēret sibiue dēderet. Hīs Prūsia negāre ausus nōn est; illud recūsāvit, nē id ā

20 sē fieri postulārent, quod adversus iūs hospitii esset: ipsi, si possent, comprehenderent; locum, ubi esset, facile inventūrōs. Hannibal enim ūnō locō sē tenēbat, in castellō quod eī ā rēge datum erat mūneri, idque sic aedificārat, ut in omnibus partibus aedificiī exitūs habēret, scilicet verēns nē

25 ūsū venīret quod accidit.

Hūc cum lēgātī Rōmānōrum vēnissent ac multitūdine domum eius circumdedissent, puer, ab iānuā prōspiciēns, Hannibalī dixit plūrēs praeter cōsuētūdinem armātōs appārere. Quī imperāvit eī, ut omnēs forēs aedificiī cir-

30 cumīret ac properē sibi nūntiāret num eōdem modō

undique obsidērētur. Puer cum celeriter, quid vīdisset, renūtiāasset omnēque exitū occupātōs ostendisset, sēnsit id nōn fortuitō factum, sed sē petī neque sibi diūtius vītā esse retinendam. Quam nē aliēnō arbitriō dīmitteret, memor pristinārum virtūtum, venēnum, quod semper 5 sēcum habēre cōsuērat, sūmpsit.

XIII. Sic vir fortissimus, multīs variisque perfūctus labōribus, annō acquiēvit septuāgēsīmō. Quibus cōsuli-
bus interierit nōn convenit. Namque Atticus M. Claudio
Mārcellō Q. Fabio Labeōne cōsulibus mortuum in annālī 10
suō scriptum reliquit, at Polybius L. Aemiliō Paulō Cn.
Baebiō Tamphilō, Sulpicius autem Blithō P. Cornēliō
Cethēgō M. Baebiō Tamphilō. Atque hīc tantus vir tan-
tisque bellis districtus nōn nihil temporis tribuit litteris.
Namque aliquot eius librī sunt, Graecō sermōne cōfectī, 15
in eis ad Rhodiōs dē Cn. Mānlii Volsōnis in Asiā rēbus
gestis. Hūius bellī gesta multī memoriae prōdidērunt,
sed ex eis duo, quī cum eō in castris fuērunt simulque
vixērunt, quam diū fortūna passa est, Silēnus et Sōsilus
Lacedaemonius. Atque hōc Sōsilō Hannibal litterārum 20
Graecārum ūsus est doctōre.

VII. CATO.

His early life.

I. M. Catō, ortus mūnicipiō Tusculō, adulēscentulus,
priusquam honōribus operam daret, versātus est in Sabī-
nīs, quod ibi hērēdiū ā patre relīctum habēbat. Inde
hortātū L. Valeriī Flacci, quem in cōsulātū cēnsūrāque 25
habuit collēgam, ut M. Perpenna cēnsōrius nārrāre solitus
est, Rōmam dēmigrāvit in forōque esse coepit. Prīmum
stīpendium meruit annōrum decem septemque. Q. Fabio

M. Claudiō cōsulibus, tribūnus mīlitum in Siciliā fuit. Inde ut rediit, castra secūtus est C. Claudiī Nerōnis, māgnique opera ēius exīstimāta est in proeliō apud Sēnam, quō cecidit Hasdrubal, frāter Hannibalis. Quaestor
 5 obtigit P. Āfricānō cōsulī, cum quō nōn prō sortis necessitudīne vīxit; namque ab eō perpetuā dissēnsit vitā. Aedilis plēbēī factus est cum C. Helviō. Praetor prōvinciam obtinuit Sardiniam, ex quā quaestor superiōre tempore ex Āfricā dēcēdēns Q. Ennium poētam dēdūxerat,
 10 quod nōn minōris aestimāmus quam quemlibet amplissimum Sardiniēsem triumphum.

His consulship and censorship; his severity.

II. Cōsulātum gessit cum L. Valeriō Flaccō. Sorte prōvinciam nactus Hispāniam citeriōrem ex eā triumphum dēportāvit. Ibi cum diūtius morārētur, P. Scīpiō
 15 Āfricānus, cōsul iterum, cūius in priōre cōsulātū quaestor fuerat, voluit eum dē prōvinciā dēpellere et ipse eī succēdere; neque hōc per senātum efficere potuit, cum quidem Scīpiō principātum in cīvitāte obtinēret, quod tum nōn potentiā, sed iūre rēs pūblica administrābātur.
 20 Quā ex rē irātus senātūī, cōsulātū peractō, prīvātus in urbe mānsit. At Catō, cēnsor cum eōdem Flaccō factus, sevērē praefuit eī potestātī; nam et in complūrēs nōbilēs animadvertit et multās rēs novās in ēdictum addidit, quā rē luxūria reprimerētur, quae iam tum incipiēbat pullulāre.
 25 Circiter annōs octōgintā, ūsque ad extrēmam aetātem ab adulescentiā, rei pūblīcae causā suscipere inimicitias nōn dēstitit. Ā multīs temptātus, nōn modo nūllum dētrīmentum exīstimātiōnis fēcit, sed quoad vīxit virtūtum laude crēvit.

His energy and ability. His literary works.

III. In omnibus rebus singulārī fuit industriā; nam et agricola sollers, et perītus iūris cōsultus, et māgnus imperātor, et probābilis orātor, et cupidissimus litterārum fuit. Quārum studium etsī senior arripuerat, tamen tantum prōgressum fēcīt, ut nōn facile reperiri possit neque dē Graecis 5 neque dē Italicis rebus, quod ei fuerit incognitum. Ab adulēscientiā cōnfēcīt orātiōnēs. Senex historiās scribere instituit. Eārum sunt librī septem. Prīmus continet rēs gestās rēgum populī Rōmānī, secundus et tertius unde quaeque civitās orta sit Italica; ob quam rem omnēs Originēs 10 vidētur appellāsse. In quārtō autem bellum Poenicum est prīmum, in quīntō secundum. Atque haec omnia capitulātīm sunt dicta. Reliqua quoque bella parī modō persecūtus est usque ad praetūrā Ser. Galbae, quī diripuit Lūsītānōs; atque hōrum bellōrum ducēs nōn nōmināvit, 15 sed sine nōminibus rēs notāvit. In eīsdem exposuit quae in Italiā Hispāniisque vidērentur admīranda; in quibus multa industria et diligentia compāret, nūlla doctrīna.

Hūius dē vitā et mōribus plūra in eō librō persecūtī sumus, quem sēparātīm dē eō fēcimus rogātū T. Pompōnii 20 Atticī. Quā rē studiōsōs Catōnis ad illud volūmen dēlēgāmus.

C. IULI CAESARIS
DE BELLO GALLICO
COMMENTARIUS PRIMUS.

Gaul and its peoples.

I. Gallia est omnis divisa in partēs trēs, quarum unam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitani, tertiam, quī ipsorum linguā Celtae, nostrā Gallī appellantur. Hī omnes linguā, institutis, legibus inter se differunt. Gallōs ab Aquitanis
5 Garumna flūmen, ā Belgis Matrona et Sequana dividit.

Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, propterea quod ā cultū atque hūmānitāte prōvinciae longissimē absunt, minimeque ad eos mercatōrēs saepe commeant, atque ea, quae ad effeminandōs animōs pertinent, important; proximique
10 sunt Germānis, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt. Quā de causā Helvētiī quoque reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecedunt, quod ferē cotidianis proeliis cum Germānis contendunt, cum aut suis finibus eos prohibent, aut ipsī in eorum finibus bellum gerunt.

15 Eōrum una pars, quam Gallōs obtinere dictum est, initium capit ā flūmine Rhodanō; continetur Garumnā flūmine, Oceanō, finibus Belgārum; attingit etiam ab Sequanis et Helvētiis flūmen Rhēnum; vergit ad septentrionēs. Belgae ab extrēmīs Galliae finibus oriuntur; perti-





nent ad inferiorem partem fluminis Rhēnī; spectant in septentrionem et orientem solem. Aquitania a Garumnā flumine ad Pyrēnaeos montes et eam partem Oceanī, quae est ad Hispaniam, pertinet; spectat inter occasum solis et septentriones.

5

Orgetorix, a Helvetian, persuades his countrymen to migrate.

II. Apud Helvētiōs longē nōbilissimus fuit et dītissimus Orgetorix. Is, M. Messālā et M. Pisōne cōsulibus, rēgnī cupiditate inductus coniūratiōnem nōbilitātis fēcit, et civitātī persuāsit, ut dē finibus suis cum omnibus cōpiīs exirent; perfacile esse, cum virtute omnibus praestarent, 10 tōtius Galliae imperiō potiri.

Id hoc facilius eis persuāsit, quod undique loci nātūrā Helvētiī continentur: unā ex parte flumine Rhēnō, lātissimō atque altissimō, quī agrum Helvētium a Germānis dividit; alterā ex parte monte Iūrā altissimō, quī est inter 15 Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs; tertiā, lacū Lemannō et flumine Rhodanō, quī prōvinciam nostram ab Helvētiīs dividit. His rēbus fiēbat, ut et minus latē vagārentur et minus facile finitimis bellum inferre possent; quā ex parte hominēs bellandī cupidī magnō dolōre afficiēbantur. Prō multitudine autem hominum et prō gloriā belli atque fortitudinis angustōs sē finēs habere arbitrābantur, quī in longitudinem 20 milia passuum CCXL, in latitudinem CLXXX patēbant.

They make preparations; Orgetorix plots, is caught, dies.

III. His rēbus adductī et auctoritate Orgetorigis permōtī cōstituērunt ea, quae ad proficiscendum pertinērent, 25 comparāre, iumentōrum et carrōrum quam māximum numerum coēmere, sēmentēs quam māximās facere, ut in itinere cōpia frūmentī suppeteret, cum proximis civitatibus pacem

et amicitiam cōfirmāre. Ad eas rēs cōficiendās biennium sibi satis esse dūxerunt; in tertium annum profectiōnem lēge cōfirmant.

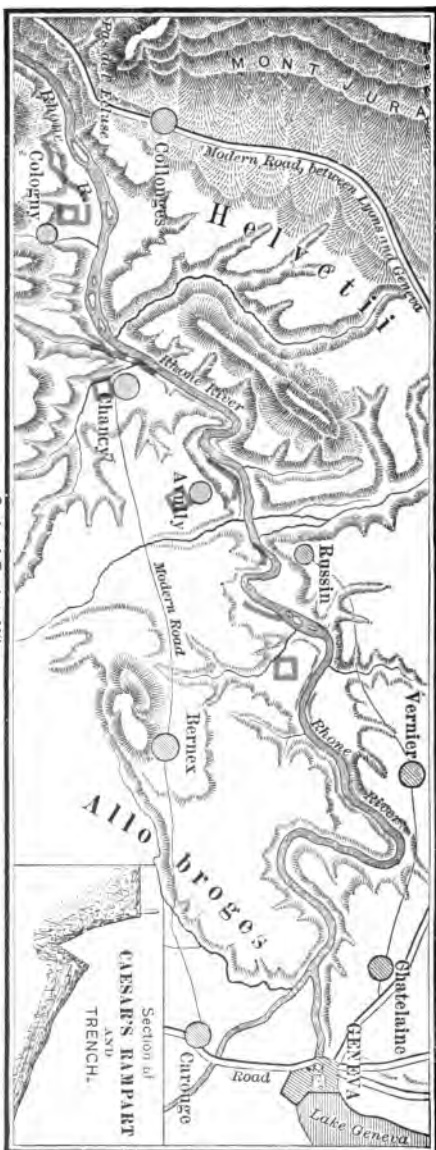
Ad eas rēs cōficiendās Orgetorix dēligitur. Is sibi lēgā-
5 tiōnem ad cīvitātēs suscēpit. In eō itinere persuādet Casticō,
Catamantāloedis filiō, Sēquanō, cūius pater rēgnū in Sē-
quanīs multōs annōs obtinuerat et ā senātū populī Rōmānī
amicus appellātus erat, ut rēgnū in cīvitāte suā occupāret,
quod pater ante habuerat; itemque Dumnorīgī Aeduō, frātrī
10 Diviciācī, quī eō tempore principātum in cīvitāte obtinēbat
ac māximē plēbī acceptus erat, ut idem cōnārētur, persuādet,
eīque filiam suam in mātirimōnium dat.



Perfacile factū esse illis probat cōnāta perficere, propterea
quod ipse suae cīvitātis imperium obtentūrus esset; nōn esse
15 dubium, quān tōtīus Galliae plūrimū Helvētiī possent; sē
suīs cōpiīs suōque exercitū illis rēgna conciliātūrum cōn-
firmat. Hāc ōrātiōne adductī inter sē fidem et iūs iūran-
dum dant, et rēgnō occupātō per trēs potentissimōs ac
firmissimōs populōs tōtīus Galliae sēsē potīrī posse spērant.

20 IV. Ea rēs est Helvētiīs per indicium ēnūntiāta. Mōri-
bus suīs Orgetorigem ex vinculis causam dīcere coēgērunt;
damnātum poenam sequī oportēbat, ut ignī cremārētur. Diē
cōnstitūtā causae dictiōnis Orgetorix ad iūdicium omnem
suam familiam, ad hominū milia decem, undique coēgit, et
25 omnēs clientēs obaerātōsque suōs, quōrum māgnū nume-
rum habēbat, eōdem condūxit; per eōs, nē causam dīceret,
sē ēripuit. Cum cīvitās ob eam rem incitāta armīs iūs
suum exsequī cōnārētur, multitudinemque hominū ex
agrīs magistrātūs cōgerent, Orgetorix mortuus est; neque
30 abest suspiciō, ut Helvētiī arbitrantur, quān ipse sibi mortem
cōnsciverit.

CAESAR'S LINE OF WORKS ALONG THE RHONE FROM GENEVA
TO PAS DE L'ÉCLUSE.
To face p. 117.
Lib. I. 8.

PLAN I.



EXPLANATION.  Caesar's Intrenchment, *murus fossaque*.  Redoubts, *castrilla*.
The Rhone is represented as widened in certain parts, as it is supposed to have been in the time of Caesar.

The Helvetii get ready; they plan to go through the province.

V. Post eius mortem nihilō minus Helvētiī id, quod cōnstituerant, facere cōnantur, ut ē finibus suis exeant. Ubi iam sē ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt, oppida sua omnia, numerō ad duodecim, vīcōs ad quadringentōs, reliqua privāta aedificia incendunt, frūmentum omne, praeter quod 5 sēcum portātūrī erant, combūrunt, ut domum reditiōnis spā sublātā parātiōrēs ad omnia perīcula subeunda essent; trium mēnsium molita cibāria sibi quemque domō efferre iubent. Persuādent Rauracīs et Tulingīs et Latobrigīs finitimīs, utī eōdem ūsī cōnsiliō, oppidīs suis vīcisque 10 exūstīs, ūnā cum eīs proficiscantur; Bōiōsque, quī trāns Rhēnum incoluerant et in agrum Nōricum trānsierant Nōrēiamque oppugnārant, receptōs ad sē sociōs sibi asciscunt.

VI. Erant omnīnō itinera duo, quibus itineribus domō exīre possent: ūnum per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile, 15 inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum, vix quā singulī carrī dūcerentur; mōns autem altissimus impendēbat, ut facile perpaucī prohibēre possent; alterum per prōvinciam nostram, multō facilius atque expeditius, proptereā quod inter finēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum, quī nūper pācātī 20 erant, Rhodanus fluit, isque nōn nullīs locīs vadō trānsitur.

Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum est proximumque Helvētiōrum finibus Genava. Ex eō oppidō pōns ad Helvētiōs pertinet. Allobrogibus sēsē vel persuāsūrōs, quod nōndum bonō animō in populum Rōmānum vidērentur, existimābant, 25 vel vī coāctūrōs, ut per suōs finēs eōs ire paterentur. Omnibus rēbus ad profectiōnem comparātīs diem dicunt, quā diē ad rīpam Rhodanī omnēs conveniant. Is diēs erat a. d. v. Kal. Apr., L. Pīsōne, A. Gabīniō cōsulibus.

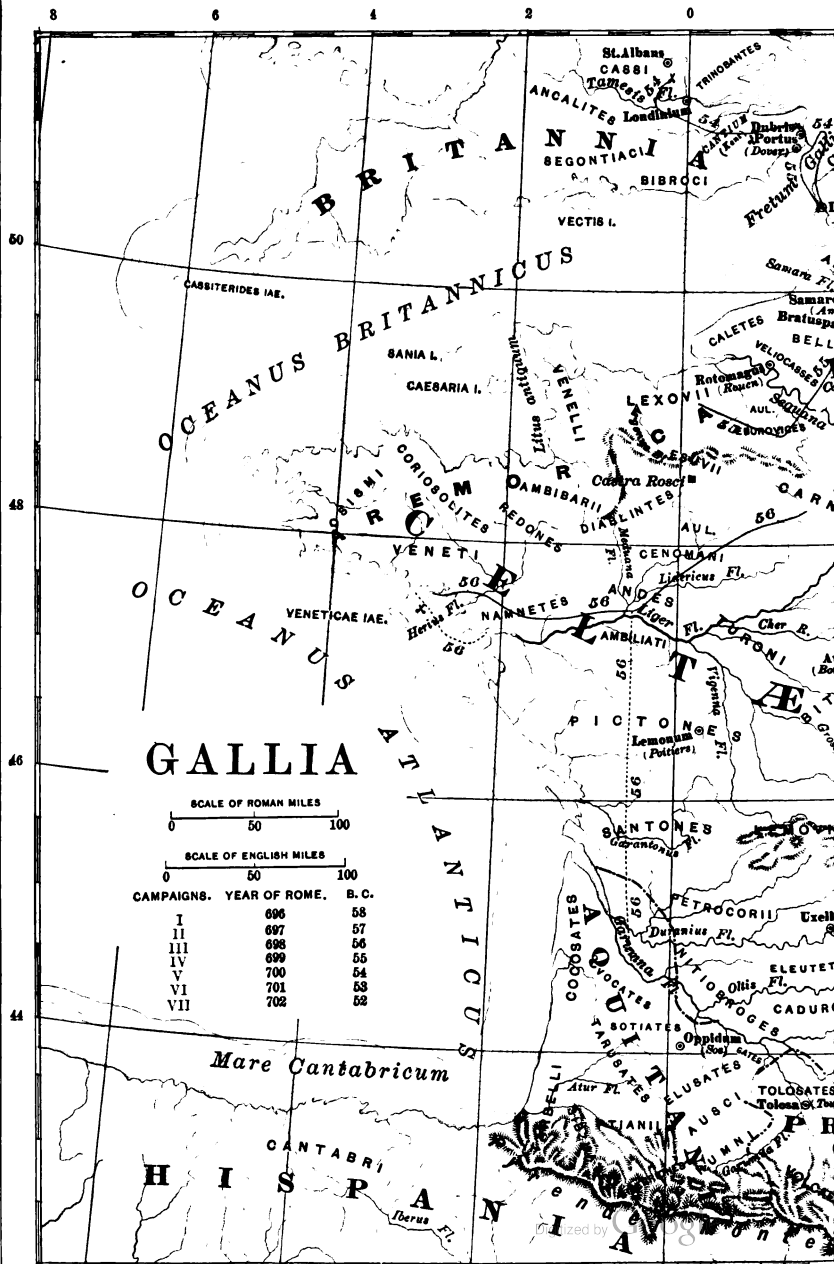
C. IULI CAESARIS
DE BELLO GALLICO
COMMENTARIUS PRIMUS.

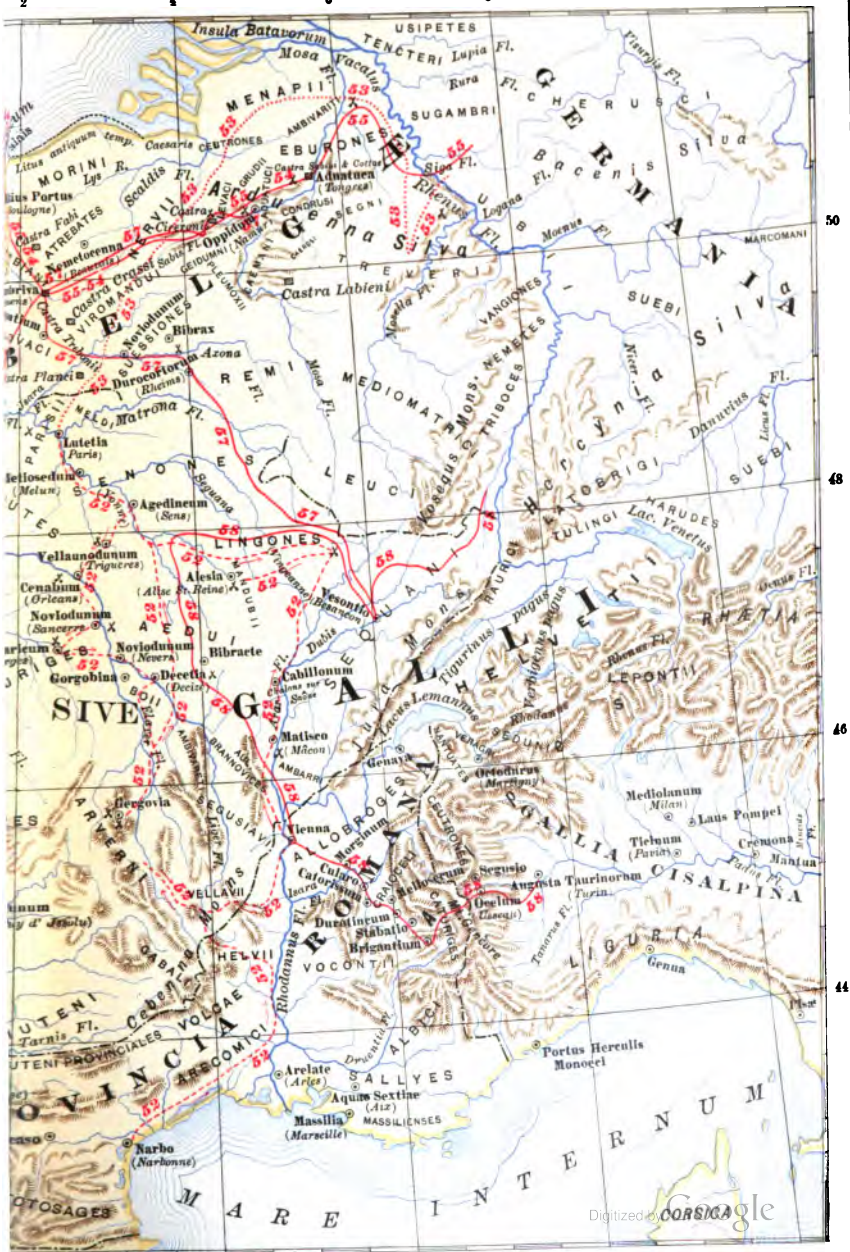
Gaul and its peoples.

I. Gallia est omnis dīvisā in partēs trēs, quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquītānī, tertiam, quī ipsōrum linguā Celtae, nostrā Gallī appellantur. Hī omnēs linguā, institūtis, lēgibus inter sē differunt. Gallōs ab Aquītānis
5 Garumna flūmen, ā Belgīs Matrona et Sēquana dīvidit.

Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, propterea quod ā cultū atque hūmānitāte prōvinciae longissimē absunt, minimeque ad eōs mercātōrēs saepe commeant, atque ea, quae ad effēminandōs animōs pertinent, important; proximique
10 sunt Germānis, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt. Quā dē causā Helvētiī quoque reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecedunt, quod ferē cotīdiānis proeliis cum Germānis contendunt, cum aut suis fīnibus eōs prohibent, aut ipsī in eōrum fīnibus bellum gerunt.

15 Eōrum ūna pars, quam Gallōs obtinēre dictum est, initium capit ā flūmine Rhodanō; continētur Garumnā flūmine, Ōceanō, fīnibus Belgārum; attingit etiam ab Sēquanīs et Helvētiīs flūmen Rhēnum; vergit ad septentrionēs. Belgae ab extrēmīs Galliae fīnibus oriuntur; perti-





nent ad inferiorem partem fluminis Rhēni; spectant in septentrionem et orientem solem. Aquitania à Garumnā flumine ad Pyrēnaeos montēs et eam partem Oceanī, quae est ad Hispaniam, pertinet; spectat inter occāsum solis et septentrionēs.

5

Orgetorix, a Helvetian, persuades his countrymen to migrate.

II. Apud Helvētiōs longē nōbilissimus fuit et dītissimus Orgetorix. Is, M. Messālā et M. Pisōne cōsulibus, rēgnī cupiditāte inductus coniūratiōnem nōbilitātis fēcit, et cīvitātī persuāsit, ut dē finibus suis cum omnibus cōpiis exirent; perfacile esse, cum virtūte omnibus praestarent, 10 tōtius Galliae imperiō potiri.

Id hōc facilius eis persuāsit, quod undique loci nātūrā Helvētiī continentur: unā ex parte flumine Rhēnō, lātissimō atque altissimō, quī agrum Helvētium à Germānīs dividit; alterā ex parte monte Iūrā altissimō, quī est inter 15 Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs; tertiā, lacū Lemannō et flumine Rhodanō, quī prōvinciam nostram ab Helvētiīs dividit. Hīs rēbus fiēbat, ut et minus lātē vagārentur et minus facile finitimīs bellum inferre possent; quā ex parte hominēs bellandī cupidī māgnō dolōre afficiēbantur. Prō multitudine autem hominum et prō glōriā bellī atque fortitudinis angustōs sē finēs habēre arbitrābantur, quī in longitudinem milia passuum CCXL, in lātitudinem CLXXX patēbant. 20

They make preparations; Orgetorix plots, is caught, dies.

III. Hīs rēbus adductī et auctōritāte Orgetorigis permōtī cōstituērunt ea, quae ad proficiēscendum pertinērent, 25 comparāre, iūmentōrum et carrōrum quam māximum numerum coēmere, sēmentēs quam māximās facere, ut in itinere cōpia frūmentī suppeteret, cum proximīs cīvitātibus pācem

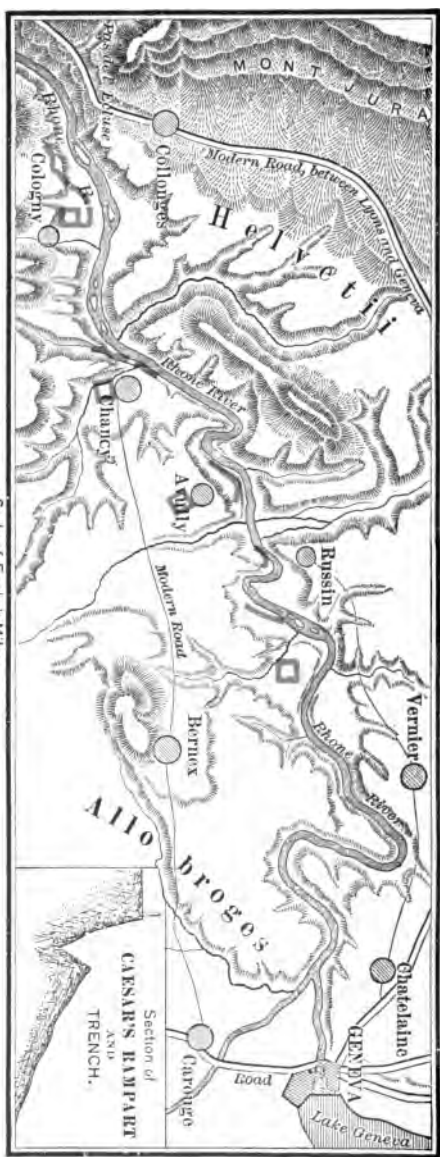
et amicitiam cōfirmāre. Ad eas rēs cōficiendās biennium sibi satis esse dūxērunt; in tertium annum profectiōnem lēge cōfirmant.

Ad eas rēs cōficiendās Orgetorix dēligitur. Is sibi lēgā-
5 tiōnem ad cīvitātēs suscepit. In eō itinere persuādet Casticō,
Catamantaloedis filiō, Sēquanō, cūius pater rēgnum in Sē-
quanis multōs annōs obtinuerat et ā senātū populī Rōmānī
amicus appellātus erat, ut rēgnum in cīvitāte suā occupāret,
quod pater ante habuerat; itemque Dumnorigi Aeduō, frātri
10 Diviciaci, quī eō tempore principātum in cīvitāte obtinēbat
ac māximē plēbi acceptus erat, ut idem cōnārētur, persuādet,
eīque filiam suam in mātrimonium dat.

Perfacile factū esse illis probat cōnāta perficere, propterea
quod ipse suae cīvitātis imperium obtentūrus esset; nōn esse
15 dubium, quīn tōtius Galliae plūrimum Helvētiī possent; sē
suīs cōpiīs suōque exercitū illis rēgna conciliātūrum cōn-
firmat. Hāc orātiōne adducti inter sē fidem et iūs iūran-
dum dant, et rēgnō occupātō per trēs potentissimōs ac
firmissimōs populōs tōtius Galliae sēsē potiri posse spērant.

20 IV. Ea rēs est Helvētiīs per indicium ēnūtiāta. Mōri-
bus suis Orgetorigem ex vinculis causam dīcere coēgērunt;
damnātum poenam sequi oportēbat, ut igni cremārētur. Diē
cōstitutā causae dictiōnis Orgetorix ad iūdicium omnem
suam familiam, ad hominum mīlia decem, undique coēgit, et
25 omnēs clientēs obaerātōsque suōs, quōrum māgnum nume-
rum habēbat, eōdem condūxit; per eōs, nē causam dīceret,
sē ēripuit. Cum cīvitās ob eam rem incitāta armīs iūs
suum exsequi cōnārētur, multitudinemque hominum ex
agrīs magistrātūs cōgerent, Orgetorix mortuus est; neque
30 abest suspiciō, ut Helvētiī arbitrantur, quīn ipse sibi mortem
cōnsciverit.

CAESAR'S LINE OF WORKS ALONG THE RHONE FROM GENEVA
TO PAS DE L'ÉCLUSE.
To face p. 117.
Lib. I., 8.
PLAN I.



EXPLANATION.
 { — — — — — } Caesar's Intrenchment, *murus fossaque*.
 { □ } Redoubts, *castella*.
 { The Rhone is represented as widened in certain parts, as it is supposed to have been in the time of Caesar.

The Helvetii get ready; they plan to go through the province.

V. Post eius mortem nihilō minus Helvētiī id, quod cōstituerant, facere cōnantur, ut ē finibus suis exeant. Ubi iam sē ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt, oppida sua omnia, numerō ad duodecim, vicōs ad quadringentōs, reliqua privāta aedificia incendunt, frūmentum omne, praeter quod 5 sēcum portātūrī erant, combūrunt, ut domum reditiōnis spā sublātā parātiōrēs ad omnia perīcula subeunda essent; trium mēnsium molita cibāria sibi quemque domō efferre iubent. Persuādent Rauracīs et Tulingīs et Latobrigīs finitimīs, utī eōdem ūsī cōnsiliō, oppidīs suis vicīsque 10 exūstīs, ūnā cum eis proficiscantur; Bōiōsque, quī trāns Rhēnum incoluerant et in agrum Nōricum trānsierant Nōrēiamque oppugnārant, receptōs ad sē sociōs sibi asciscunt.

VI. Erant omnīnō itinera duo, quibus itineribus domō exīre possent: ūnum per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile, 15 inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum, vix quā singulī carrī dūcerentur; mōns autem altissimus impendēbat, ut facile perpaucī prohibēre possent; alterum per prōvinciam nostram, multō facilius atque expeditius, proptereā quod inter finēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum, quī nūper pācātī 20 erant, Rhodanus fluit, isque nōn nullīs locīs vadō trānsīt.

Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum est proximumque Helvētiōrum finibus Genava. Ex eō oppidō pōns ad Helvētiōs pertinet. Allobrogibus sēsē vel persuāsūrōs, quod nōndum bonō animō in populum Rōmānum vidērentur, exīstimābant, 25 vel vī coāctūrōs, ut per suōs finēs eōs ire paterentur. Omnibus rēbus ad profectiōnem comparātīs diem dīcunt, quā diē ad rīpam Rhodanī omnēs conveniant. Is diēs erat a. d. v. Kal. Apr., L. Pisōne, A. Gabiniō cōsulibus.

Caesar hastens to Geneva; he keeps the Helvetii out of the province.

VII. Caesarī cum id nūtiātum esset, eōs per prōvinciam nostram iter facere cōnārī, mātūrat ab urbe proficīscī et, quam māximīs potest itineribus, in Galliam ulteriōrem contendit et ad Genavam pervenit. Prōvinciae tōtī quam
 5 māximum potest militum numerum imperat (erat omnīnō in Galliā ulteriōre legiō ūna), pontem, quī erat ad Genavam, iubet rescindī.

Ubi dē ēius adventū Helvētiī certiōrēs facti sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt nōbilissimōs cīvitātis, cūius lēgātiōnis Nam-
 10 mēius et Verucloetius prīncipem locum obtinēbant, quī dicerent, sibi esse in animō sine ūllō maleficiō iter per prōvinciam facere, proptereā quod aliud iter habērent nūllum; rogāre, ut ēius voluntāte id sibi facere liceat. Caesar, quod memoriā tenēbat, L. Cassium cōnsulem occīsum ex-
 15 ercitumque ēius ab Helvētiīs pulsum et sub iugum missum, concēdendum nōn putābat; neque hominēs inimicō animō, datā facultāte per prōvinciam itineris faciundī, temperātūrōs ab iniuriā et maleficiō exīstimābat. Tamen, ut spatium intercēdere posset, dum militēs, quōs imperāverat,
 20 convenīrent, lēgātīs respondit, diem sē ad dēliberandum sūmptūrum; si quid vellent, ad Īd. Aprīl. reverterentur.

VIII. Intereā eā legiōne, quam sēcum habēbat, militibusque, quī ex prōvincia convēnerant, ā lacū Lemannō, quī in flūmen Rhodanum influit, ad montem Iūram, quī finēs
 25 Sēquanōrum ab Helvētiīs dīvidit, mīlia passuum XVIII mūrū in altitudinem pedum sēdecim fossamque perdūcit. Eō opere perfectō praesidia dispōnit, castella commūnit, quō facilius, sī sē invitō trānsīre cōnārentur, prohibēre possit.

Ubi ea diēs, quam cōstituerat cum lēgātīs, vēnit, et lēgātī ad eum revertērunt, negat, sē mōre et exemplō populī Rōmānī posse iter ulli per prōvinciam dare; et, sī vim facere cōnentur, prohibētūrum ostendit. Helvētiī, eā spē dēiectī, nāvibus iūctīs ratibusque complūribus factīs, alii vadīs 5 Rhodanī, quā minima altitūdō flūminis erat, nōn numquam interdiū, saepius noctū, sī perrumpere possent, cōnātī, operis mūnitiōne et militum concursū et tēlīs repulsī hōc cōnātū dēstitērunt.

They get leave to go through the country of the Sequani.

IX. Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs via, quā Sēquanīs 10 invītīs propter angustias ire nōn poterant. Hīs cum suā sponte persuādere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Dumnorīgē Aeduum mittunt, ut eō dēprecātōre ā Sēquanīs impetrārent. Dumnorīx grātiā et largitiōne apud Sēquanōs plūrimum poterat, et Helvētiīs erat amīcus, quod ex eā civitāte Orgeto- 15 rigis filiam in mātrimonium dūxerat, et cupiditāte regnī adductus novīs rēbus studēbat, et quam plūrimās civitatēs suō beneficiō habēre obstrictās volēbat. Itaque rem suscipit, et ā Sēquanīs impetrat, ut per finēs suōs Helvētiōs ire patiantur, obsidēsque utī inter sēsē dent, perficit: Sē- 20 quanī, nē itinere Helvētiōs prohibeant; Helvētiī, ut sine maleficiō et iniuriā trānseant.

Caesar fetches five legions from Italy; the Aedui and others entreat his aid against the Helvetii.

X. Caesarī renūntiātur, Helvētiīs esse in animō per agrum Sēquanōrum et Aeduōrum iter in Santonum finēs facere, quī nōn longē ā Tolōsātium finibus absunt, quae 25 civitās est in prōvinciā. Id sī fieret, intellegebat māgnō cum periculō prōvinciae futūrum, ut hominēs bellicōsōs,

populī Rōmānī inimicōs, locīs patentibus māximēque frū-
mentāriīs finitimōs habēret. Ob eās causās eī mūnitiōnī,
quam fēcerat, T. Labiēnum lēgātum praefēcit; ipse in
Italiam māgnīs itineribus contendit duāsque ibi legiōnēs
5 cōnscrībit, et trēs, quae circum Aquilēiam hiemābant, ex
hībernīs ēdūcit et, quā proximum iter in ulteriōrem Galliam
per Alpēs erat, cum hīs quīnque legiōnibus ire contendit.
Ibi Ceutronēs et Graiocelī et Caturīgēs locīs superiōribus
occupātīs itinere exercitum prohibēre cōnantur. Com-
10 plūribus hīs proeliīs pulsīs, ab Ocelō, quod est citeriōris
prōvinciae extrēmum, in finēs Vocontiōrum ulteriōris prō-
vinciae diē septimō pervenit; inde in Allobrogum finēs,
ab Allobrogibus in Segūsiāvōs exercitum dūcit. Hī sunt
extrā prōvinciam trāns Rhodanum primī.

15 XI. Helvētīi iam per angustias et finēs Sēquanōrum
suās cōpiās trādūxerant, et in Aeduōrum finēs pervēnerant
eōrumque agrōs populābantur. Aeduī, cum sē suaeque ab
eīs dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt
rogātum auxilium: Ita sē omnī tempore dē populō Rōmānō
20 meritōs esse, ut, paene in cōspectū exercitūs nostrī, agrī
vāstārī, liberī eōrum in servitūtem abdūcī, oppida expū-
gnārī nōn dēbuerint. Eōdem tempore, quō Aeduī, Ambarri,
necessārii et cōsanguinei Aeduōrum, Caesarem certiōrem
faciunt, sēsē dēpopulātīs agrīs nōn facile ab oppidīs vim
25 hostium prohibēre. Item Allobrogēs, quī trāns Rhodanum
vicōs possessiōnēsque habēbant, fugā sē ad Caesarem reci-
piunt, et dēmōstrant, sibi praeter agrī solum nihil esse
reliquī. Quibus rēbus adductus Caesar nōn exspectandum
sibi statuit, dum omnibus fortūnīs sociōrum cōsumptīs in
30 Santonōs Helvētīi pervenīrent.

Caesar cuts to pieces one division of the Helvetii at the Arar.

The rest send deputies to treat with him.

XII. Flūmen est Arar, quod per finēs Aeduōrum et Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum influit, incredibili lenitāte, ita ut oculīs, in utram partem fluat, iudicārī nōn possit. Id Helvētiī ratibus ac lintribus iūctis trānsibant. Ubi per explōrātōrēs Caesar certior factus est, trēs iam partēs 5 cōpiārum Helvētiōs id flūmen trādūxisse, quārtam ferē partem citrā flūmen Ararim reliquam esse, dē tertiā vigiliā cum legiōnibus tribus ē castris profectus ad eam partem pervēnit, quae nōndum flūmen trānsierat. Eōs impeditōs et inopināntēs aggressus māgnam partem eōrum concidit; 10 reliquī sēsē fugae mandārunt atque in proximās silvās abdidērunt. Is pāgus appellābatur Tigurinus; nam omnis civitās Helvētia in quattuor pāgōs divīsa est.

Hic pāgus ūnus, cum domō exisset, patrum nostrōrum memoriā L. Cassium cōsulem interfēcerat et eius exerci- 15 tum sub iugum mīserat. Ita sive cāsū sive cōsiliō deōrum immortālium, quae pars civitātis Helvētiae insignem calamitātem populō Rōmānō intulerat, ea princeps poenās persolvit. Quā in rē Caesar nōn solum publicās, sed etiam privātās iniūriās ultus est, quod eius socerī L. 20 Pisōnis avum, L. Pisōnem lēgātum, Tigurinī eōdem proeliō, quō Cassium, interfēcerant.

XIII. Hōc proeliō factō, reliquās cōpiās Helvētiōrum ut cōsequi posset, pontem in Arare faciendum cūrat atque ita exercitum trādūcit. Helvētiī repentinō eius adventū 25 commōti, cum id, quod ipsī diēbus xx aegerrimē cōfēcerant, ut flūmen trānsirent, illum ūnō diē fēcisse intellegerent, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt; cūius lēgatiōnis Divicō princeps fuit, quī bellō Cassiānō dux Helvētiōrum fuerat. Is ita cum Caesare ēgit:

Sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiīs faceret, in eam partem itūrōs atque ibi futūrōs Helvētiōs, ubi eōs Caesar cōstituisset atque esse voluisset; sīn bellō persequī perseverāret, reminiscerētur et veteris incommodi
5 populi Rōmānī et prīstinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum. Quod imprōvisō ūnum pāgum adortus esset, cum ei, quī flūmen trānsissent, suīs auxilium ferre nōn possent, nē ob eam rem aut suae māgnopere virtūtī tribueret aut ipsōs dēspiceret; sē ita ā patribus māiōribusque suīs didicisse, ut
10 magis virtūte contenderent, quam dolō aut insidiīs nīterentur. Quā rē nē committeret, ut is locus, ubi cōstitissent, ex calamitāte populi Rōmānī et interneciōne exercitūs nōmen caperet aut memoriam prōderet.

They reject Caesar's conditions, and march on; Caesar follows.

XIV. His Caesar ita respondit:

15 Eō sibi minus dubitātiōnis darī, quod eās rēs, quās lēgātī Helvētiī commemorāssent, memoriā tenēret, atque eō gravius ferre, quō minus meritō populi Rōmānī accidissent; quī sī alicūius iniūriae sibi cōscius fuisset, nōn fuisse difficile cavēre; sed eō dēceptum, quod neque commissum ā sē
20 intellexeret, quā rē timēret, neque sine causā timendum putāret. Quod sī veteris contumēliae oblīvīscī vellet, num etiam recentium iniūriārum, quod eō invītō iter per prōvinciam per vim temptāssent, quod Aeduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogas vexāssent, memoriam dēpōnere posse?
25 Quod suā victoriā tam insolenter glōriārentur, quodque tam diū sē impūnē iniūriās tulisse admīrārentur, eōdem pertinēre. Cōsuēsse enim deōs immortālēs, quō gravius hominēs ex commūtātiōne rērum doleant, quōs prō scelere eōrum ulcīscī velint, hīs secundiōrēs interdum rēs et diūturniōrem
30 impūnitātem concēdere. Cum ea ita sint, tamen, sī obsidēs

ab eis sibi dentur, uti ea, quae polliceantur, factūrōs intellegat, et si Aeduīs dē iniuriīs, quās ipsīs sociīsque eōrum intulerint, item si Allobrogibus satis faciant, sēsē cum eis pācem esse factūrum.

Divicō respondit: Ita Helvētiōs ā māiōribus suis institū- 5 tōs esse, uti obsidēs accipere, nōn dare, cōsuērint; eius rei populum Rōmānum esse testem. Hōc respōnsō datō discessit.

XV. Posterō diē castra ex eō locō movent. Idem facit Caesar equitātumque omnem, ad numerum quattuor mīlium, 10 quem ex omnī prōvinciā et Aeduīs atque eōrum sociīs co-āctum habēbat, praemittit, quī videant, quās in partēs hostēs iter faciant. Quī cupidius novissimum agmen insecūtī aliēnō locō cum equitātū Helvētiōrum proelium committunt; et paucī dē nostrīs cadunt. Quō proeliō sublātī Helvētiī, 15 quod quīngentīs equitibus tantam multitudinem equitum prōpulerant, audācius subsistere nōn numquam et novissimō agmine proeliō nostrōs lacessere coepērunt. Caesar suōs ā proeliō continēbat, ac satis habēbat in praesentia hostem rapīnīs, pābulātiōnibus populātiōnibusque prohibēre. 20 Ita diēs circiter quīndecim iter fēcērunt, uti inter novissimum hostium agmen et nostrum primum non amplius quīnīs aut sēnīs mīlibus passuum interesset.

The Aedui neglect to bring grain; Caesar learns of disloyalty.

XVI. Interim cotīdiē Caesar Aeduōs frūmentum, quod essent pūblicē pollicitī, flāgitāre. Nam propter frīgora, 25 quod Gallia sub septentrionibus, ut ante dictum est, posita est, nōn modo frūmenta in agrīs mātūra nōn erant sed nē pābulī quidem satis māgna cōpia suppetēbat; eō autem frūmentō, quod flūmine Arare nāvibus subvexerat, propterea minus uti poterat, quod iter ab Arare Helvētiī āverterant, ā 30

quibus discēdere nōlēbat. Diem ex diē dūcere Aeduī; cōnferri, comportārī, adesse dīcere.

Ubi sē diūtius dūcī intellēxit et diem instāre, quō diē frūmentum militibus mētīri oportēret, convocātis eōrum
 5 prīncipibus, quōrum māgnam cōpiam in castrīs habēbat, in hīs Diviciācō et Liscō, quī summō magistrātūī praeerat, quem ‘vergobretum’ appellant Aeduī, quī creātur annuus et vītae necisque in suōs habet potestātem, graviter eōs accūsāt, quod, cum neque emī neque ex agrīs sūmī posset,
 10 tam necessariō tempore, tam propinquīs hostibus, ab eis nōn sublevētur, praesertim cum māgnā ex parte eōrum precibus adductus bellum suscepit; multō etiam gravius, quod sit dēstitūtus, queritur.

XVII. Tum dēmum Liscus ōrātiōne Caesaris adductus,
 15 quod antea tacuerat, prōpōnit:

Esse nōn nullōs, quōrum auctōritās apud plēbem plūrimum valeat, quī privātīm plūs possint quam ipsī magistrātūs. Hōs sēditiōsā atque improbā ōrātiōne multitudinem dēterrēre, nē frūmentum cōferant, quod dēbeant: prae-
 20 stāre, sī iam prīncipātum Galliae obtinēre nōn possint, Gallōrum quam Rōmānōrum imperia perferre; neque dubitāre dēbere, quīn, sī Helvētiōs superāverint Rōmānī, unā cum reliquā Galliā Aeduīs libertātem sint ēreptūrī. Ab eīsdem nostra cōnsilia, quaeque in castrīs gerantur,
 25 hostibus ēnūtiārī; hōs ā sē coercērī nōn posse. Quīn etiam, quod necessariam rem coactus Caesarī ēnūtiārīt, intellegere sēsē, quantō id cum periculō fēcerit, et ob eam causam, quam diū potuerit, tacuisse.

The treachery of Dumnorix is proved.

XVIII. Caesar hāc ōrātiōne Liscī Dumnorīgem, Divi-
 30 ciācī frātrem, dēsīgnārī sentiēbat; sed, quod plūribus

praesentibus eās rēs iactārī nōlēbat, celeriter concilium dīmittit, Liscum retinet. Quaerit ex sōlō ea, quae in conventū dīxerat; dīcit liberius atque audācius.

Eadem sēcrētō ab aliis quaerit, reperit esse vēra: Ipsum esse Dumnorīgem, summā audāciā, māgnā apud plēbem 5 propter liberālītātem grātiā, cupidum rērum novārum. Complūrēs annōs portōria reliquaque omnia Aeduōrum vectīgālīa parvō pretiō redēmta habēre, proptereā quod illō licente contrā licērī audeat nēmō. Hīs rēbus et suam rem familiārem auxisse et facultātēs ad largiendum māgnās 10 comparāsse; māgnū numerum equitātūs suō sūmptū semper alere et circum sē habēre, neque solum domī, sed etiam apud finitimās cīvitatēs largiter posse, atque hūius potentiae causā mātrem in Biturīgibus hominī illīc nōbilissimō ac potentissimō collocāsse; ipsum ex Helvētiīs uxōrem 15 habēre, sorōrem ex mātre et propinquās suās nūptum in aliās cīvitatēs collocāsse. Favēre et cupere Helvētiīs propter eam affinitātem, ōdisse etiam suō nōmine Caesarem et Rōmānōs, quod eōrum adventū potentia eius dēminūta et Dīviciācus frāter in antīquū locū grātiae atque ho- 20 nōris sit restitūtus. Sī quid accidat Rōmānīs, summam in spem per Helvētiōs rēgnī obtinendī venīre; imperiō populī Rōmānī nōn modo dē rēgnō, sed etiam dē eā, quam habeat, grātiā dēspērāre.

Reperiēbat etiam in quaerendō Caesar, quod proelium 25 equestre adversum paucīs ante diēbus esset factum, initium eius fugae factum ā Dumnorīge atque eius equitibus (nam equitātuī, quem auxiliō Caesarī Aeduī mīserant, Dumnorīx praeerat), eōrum fugā reliquū esse equitātū perterritū.

Caesar consults Diviciacus, for whose sake Dumnorix is pardoned.

XIX. Quibus rēbus cognitīs, cum ad hās suspiciōnēs certissimae rēs accēderent, quod per finēs Sēquanōrum Helvētiōs trādūxisset, quod obsidēs inter eōs dandōs curāset, quod ea omnia nōn modo iniussū suō et cīvitātis, sed
 5 etiam Inscientibus ipsīs fēcisset, quod ā magistrātū Aeduōrum accūsārētur, satis esse causae arbitrābātur, quā rē in eum aut ipse animadverteret, aut cīvitātem animadvertere iubēret.

His omnibus rēbus ūnum repugnābat, quod Diviciāci
 10 frātris summum in populum Rōmānum studium, summam in sē voluntātem, ēgregiam fidem, iūstitiam, temperantiam cognōverat; nam, nē ēius suppliciō Diviciāci animum offenderet, verēbātur. Itaque prius, quam quicquam cōnārētur, Diviciācum ad sē vocārī iubet et, cotidiānis inter-
 15 pretibus remōtis, per C. Valerium Troucillum, prīncipem Galliae prōvinciae, familiārem suum, cui summam omnium rērum fidem habēbat, cum eō colloquitur; simul commonefacit, quae ipsō praesente in conciliō Gallōrum dē Dumnorīge sint dicta, et ostendit, quae sēparātīm quisque dē eō
 20 apud sē dīxerit. Petit atque hortātur, ut sine ēius offēnsiōne animī vel ipse dē eō causā cognitā statuāt, vel cīvitātem statuere iubeat.

XX. Diviciācus multīs cum lacrimīs Caesarem complexus obsecrāre coepit, nē quid gravius in frātrem statueret:

25 Scīre sē, illa esse vēra, nec quemquam ex eō plūs quam sē dolōris capere, proptēreā quod, cum ipse grātiā plūrimum domī atque in reliquā Galliā, ille minimum propter adulescentiam posset, per sē crēvisset; quibus opibus ac nervīs nōn solum ad minuendam grātiā, sed paene ad perniciem
 30 suam ūterētur. Sēsē tamen et amōre frāternō et exīstimā-

tiōne vulgī commovērī. Quod sī quid eī ā Caesare gravius accidisset, cum ipse eum locum amicitiae apud eum tenēret, nēminem exīstimātūrum, nōn suā voluntāte factum; quā ex rē futūrum, utī tōtīus Galliae animī ā sē āverterentur.

Haec cum plūribus verbīs flēns ā Caesare peteret, Caesar 5
eius dextram prēndit; cōsōlātus rogat, finem ōrandī faciat; tantī eius apud sē grātiā esse ostendit, utī et rei pūblīcae iniūriā et suum dolōrem eius voluntātī ac precibus condōnet. Dumnorīgē ad sē vocat, frātrem adhibet; quae in eō reprehendat, ostendit; quae ipse intellegat, quae civitās 10
querātur, prōpōnit; monet, ut in reliquum tempus omnēs suspīciōnēs vitet; praeterita sē Diviciācō frātrī condōnāre dīcit. Dumnorīgī cūstōdēs pōnit, ut, quae agat, quibuscum loquātur, scīre possit.

Caesar plans an attack on the Helvetii; he is misled by a false report.

XXI. Eōdem diē ab explōrātōribus certior factus, hostēs 15
sub monte cōsēdisse mīlia passuum ab ipsius castrīs octō, quālis esset nātūra montis et quālis in circuitū ascēnsus, quī cognōscerent, mīsīt. Renūtiātum est, facilem esse. Dē tertiā vigiliā Titum Labiēnum, lēgātum prō praetōre, cum duābus legiōnibus et eīs ducibus, quī iter cognōverant, sum- 20
mum iugum montis ascendere iubet; quid suī cōsiliī sit, ostendit. Ipse dē quārtā vigiliā eōdem itinere, quō hostēs ierant, ad eōs contendit equitātumque omnem ante sē mittit. P. Cōsīdīus, quī rei militāris perītissimus habēbātur et in exercitū L. Sullae et postea in M. Crassī fuerat, cum explō- 25
rātōribus praemittitur.

XXII. Primā lūce, cum summus mōns ā Labiēnō tenērē-
tur, ipse ab hostium castrīs nōn longius mīlle et quīngentīs passibus abesset, neque, ut postea ex captīvīs comperit, aut

ipsius adventus aut Labiēni cognitus esset, Cōnsidius equō admissō ad eum accurrit, dīcit montem, quem ā Labiēnō occupārī voluerit, ab hostibus tenērī; id sē ā Gallicīs armīs atque Insignibus cognōvisse. Caesar suās cōpiās in proximo collem subducit, aciem instruit.

Labiēnus, ut erat eī praeceptum ā Caesare, nē proelium committeret, nisi ipsius cōpiae prope hostium castra vīsae essent, ut undique ūnō tempore in hostēs impetus fieret, monte occupātō nostrōs expectābat proeliōque abstinēbat.

10 Multō dēnique diē per explorātōrēs Caesar cognōvit, et montem ā suis tenērī et Helvētiōs castra mōvisse et Cōnsidium timōre perterritum, quod nōn vīdisset, prō vīsō sibi renūntiāsse. Eō diē, quō cōnsuērat intervāllō, hostēs sequitur et milia passuum tria ab eōrum castrīs castra pōnit.

Caesar turns to go to Bibracte; the Helvetii follow.

15 XXIII. Postrīdiē eius diē, quod omnīnō bīduum supererat, cum exercituī frūmentum mētīrī oportēret, et quod ā Bibracte, oppidō Aeduōrum longē māximō et cōpiōsissimō, nōn amplius milibus passuum XVIII aberat, rei frūmentāriae prōspiciendum existimāvit; iter ab Helvētiīs āvertit ac

20 Bibracte ire contendit.

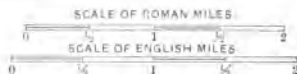
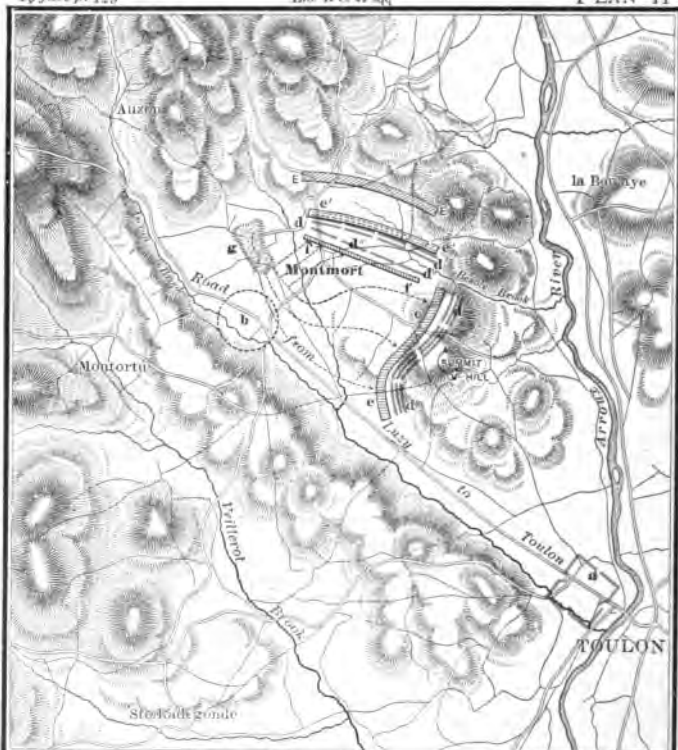
Ea rēs per fugitivōs L. Aemilī, decuriōnis equitum Gallōrum, hostibus nūntiātur. Helvētiī, seu quod timōre perterritōs Rōmānōs discēdere ā sē existimārent, eō magis quod prīdiē superiōribus locīs occupātīs proelium nōn commīsissent, sive eō, quod rē frūmentāriā interclūdī posse cōnfiderent, commūtātō cōnsiliō atque itinere conversō nostrōs ā novissimō agmine Insequī ac lacescere coepērunt.

BATTLE BETWEEN CAESAR AND THE HELVETII



To face p. 129

Lib. I. c. 24 sqq

PLAN II



EXPLANATION.

- | | |
|--|---|
| a Camp of Caesar the night before the battle. | ee Second position of the Helvetii, having returned to the attack (<i>p. 129, 30</i>). |
| b Camp of the Helvetii. | ff The Boii and Tulingi, having approached from the left side, attacking the rear of the Roman force (<i>p. 129, 28</i>). |
| c Intrenchment made to protect the two Legions of recruits, the Auxiliaries and the baggage, on the summit of the hill (<i>p. 129, 31</i>). | dd First and second Roman lines, facing the Helvetii (<i>p. 130, 2</i>). |
| dd The four old Legions in line of battle (<i>p. 129, 4</i>). | d'd Third Roman line, facing the Boii and Tulingi (<i>p. 130, 3</i>). |
| ee The Helvetii in line of battle (<i>p. 129, 11</i>). | g Enclosure formed by the carts of the Helvetii (<i>p. 129, 10; p. 130, 12</i>). |
| EE The Helvetii thrown back upon the heights a mile from the first position (<i>p. 129, 24</i>). | Romans =  Helvetii =  |

BRADLEY & WATKES, CHOPIN & CO.

Both prepare for battle. There is sharp fighting.

XXIV. Postquam id animum advertit, cōpiās suās Caesar in proximum collem subducit equitātumque, quī sustinēret hostium impetum, mīsit. Ipse interim in colle mediō triplicem aciem instrūxit legiōnum quattuor veterānārum; atque suprā sē in summō iugō duās legiōnēs, quās in Galliā 5 citeriōre proximē cōscripserat, et omnia auxilia collocārī ac tōtum montem hominibus complērī, et intereā sarcinās in ūnum locum cōferri et eum ab hīs, quī in superioriōre aciē cōstitērant, mūniri iussit. Helvētiī cum omnibus suis carrīs secūti impedimenta in ūnum locum contulērunt; ipsī, 10 cōnfertissimā aciē rēiectō nostrō equitātū, phalange factā sub prīmam nostram aciem successērunt.

XXV. Caesar, prīmum suō, deinde omnium ex cōspectū remōtis equīs, ut aequātō omnium periculō spem fugae tolleret, cohortātus suōs proelium commisit. Militēs ē locō 15 superioriōre pilīs missis facile hostium phalangem perfrēgērunt. Eā disiectā, gladiīs dēstrictis in eōs impetum fecērunt.

Gallis māgnō ad pūgnam erat impedimentō, quod plūribus eōrum scūtis ūnō ictū pilōrum trānsfixis et colligātis, cum ferrum sē inflexisset, neque ēvellere neque sinistrā impeditā 20 satis commodē pūgnāre poterant, multī ut diū iactātō brachiō praeoptārent scūtum manū ēmittere et nūdō corpore pūgnāre. Tandem vulneribus dēfessi et pedem referre et, quod mōns suberat circiter mille passuum spatiō, eō sē recipere coepērunt. 25

Captō monte et succēdentibus nostris, Bōii et Tulingi, quī hominum milibus circiter xv agmen hostium claudēbant et novissimis praesidiō erant, ex itinere nostrōs ab latere apertō aggressi circumvenire, et id cōspicātī Helvētiī, quī in montem sēsē recēperant, rūsus instāre et proelium 30

redintegrāre coepērunt. Rōmānī conversa sīgna bipertitō intulērunt; prīma et secunda aciēs, ut victīs ac summōtīs resisteret, tertia, ut venientēs sustinēret.

The Helvetii are totally defeated. Those who escape surrender.

XXVI. Ita ancipitī proeliō diū atque ācriter pūgnātum
 5 est. Diūtius cum sustinēre nostrōrum impetūs nōn possent, alterī sē, ut coeperant, in montem recēpērunt, alterī ad impedīmenta et carrōs suōs sē contulērunt. Nam hōc tōtō proeliō, cum ab hōrā septimā ad vesperum pūgnātum sit, āversum hostem vidēre nēmō potuit. Ad multam noctem,
 10 etiam ad impedīmenta pūgnātum est, proptereā quod prō vāllō carrōs obiēcērant et ē locō superiōre in nostrōs venientēs tēla coniciēbant, et nōn nullī inter carrōs rotāsque matarās ac trāgulās subiciēbant nostrōsque vulnerābant. Diū cum esset pūgnātum, impedīmentīs castrisque nostrī
 15 potītī sunt. Ibi Orgetorigis filia atque ūnus ē filiīs captus est.

Ex eō proeliō circiter hominum mīlia cxxx superfuērunt eāque tōtā nocte continenter iērunt; nūllam partem noctis itinere intermissō, in finēs Lingonum diē quārtō pervēnē-
 20 runt, cum et propter vulnera mīlitum et propter sepultūram occīsōrum nostrī trīduum morātī eōs sequī nōn potuissent. Caesar ad Lingonas litterās nūntiōsque mīsīt, nē eōs frumentō nēve aliā rē iuvārent; quī sī iūvissent, sē eōdem locō, quō Helvētiōs, habitūrum. Ipse trīduō intermissō
 25 cum omnibus cōpiīs eōs sequī coepit.

XXVII. Helvētiī omnium rērum inopiā adductī lēgātōs dē dēditionē ad eum mīsērunt. Quī cum eum in itinere convēnissent sēque ad pedēs prōiēcissent suppliciterque locūtī flentēs pācem petissent, atque eōs in eō locō, quō
 30 tum essent, suum adventum exspectāre iussisset, pāruērunt.

Eō postquam Caesar pervēnit, obsidēs, arma, servōs, qui ad eōs perfūgissent, poposcit.

Dum ea conquīruntur et cōferuntur, nocte intermissā, circiter hominum milia vi eius pāgī, qui Verbigenus appellātur, sive timōre perterriti, nē armīs trāditīs supplicio afficerentur, sive spē salūtis inducti, quod in tantā multitudīne deditīciōrum suam fugam aut occultārī aut omnīnō ignōrārī posse existimārent, primā nocte ē castris Helvētiōrum ēgressi ad Rhēnum finēsque Germānōrum contendērunt.

Caesar states the terms of submission. The number of the Helvetii.

XXVIII. Quod ubi Caesar rescit, quōrum per finēs 10 ierant, hīs uti conquīrerent et reducerent, sī sibi pūrgāti esse vellent, imperāvit; reductōs in hostium numerō habuit; reliquōs omnēs obsidibus, armīs, perfugis trāditīs in deditiōnem accēpit. Helvētiōs, Tulingōs, Latobrigōs in finēs suōs, unde erant profecti, reverti iussit; et, quod omnibus 15 frūgibus āmissis domi nihil erat, quō famem tolerārent, Allobrogibus imperāvit, ut eīs frūmentī cōpiam facerent; ipsōs oppida vicōsque, quōs incenderant, restituere iussit.

Id eā māximē ratiōne fēcit, quod nōluit, eum locum, unde Helvētiī discesserant, vacāre, nē propter bonitātem agrōrum 20 Germānī, qui trāns Rhēnum incolunt, ē suis finibus in Helvētiōrum finēs trānsīrent et finitimī Galliae prōvinciae Allobrogibusque essent. Bōiōs, petentibus Aeduīs, quod egregiā virtūte erant cognitī, ut in finibus suis collocārent, concessit; quibus illi agrōs dedērunt, quōsque postea in 25 parem iūris libertātisque condiōnem, atque ipsi erant, recēpērunt.

XXIX. In castris Helvētiōrum tabulae repertae sunt litteris Graecis cōfectae et ad Caesarem relatae, quibus in tabulis nōminātīm ratiō cōfecta erat, qui numerus domō 30

exisset eorum, quī arma ferre possent, et item sēparātīm
 puerī, senēs mulierēsque. Quārum omnium rērum summa
 erat capitum Helvētiōrum mīlia cclxiii, Tulingōrum mīlia
 xxxvi, Latobrigōrum xiiii, Rauracōrum xxiii, Bōiōrum
 5 xxxii; ex hīs, quī arma ferre possent, ad mīlia nōnāgintā duo.

Summa omnium fuērunt ad mīlia cclxviii. Eōrum,
 quī domum rediērunt, cēnsū habitō, ut Caesar imperāverat,
 repertus est numerus mīlium c et x.

The chiefs of Gaul gather to congratulate Caesar.

XXX. Bellō Helvētiōrum cōfectō tōtīus ferē Galliae
 10 lēgātī, prīncipēs cīvitatū, ad Caesarem grātulātum con-
 vērunt:

Intellegere sēsē, tametsī prō veteribus Helvētiōrum iniū-
 riis populī Rōmānī ab hīs poenās bellō repetisset, tamen
 eam rem nōn minus ex ūsū terrae Galliae quam populī
 15 Rōmānī accidissee, propterea quod eō cōnsiliō flōrentissimīs
 rēbus domōs suās Helvētiī reliquissent, utī tōtī Galliae
 bellum inferrent imperiōque potirentur locumque dōmici-
 liō ex māgnā cōpiā dēligerent, quem ex omnī Galliā opportū-
 nissimum ac fructuosissimum iūdicassent, reliquāsque cīvi-
 20 tātēs stīpendiāriās habērent.

Petiērunt, utī sibi concilium tōtīus Galliae in diem certam
 indicere idque Caesaris voluntāte facere liceret; sēsē habēre
 quāsdam rēs, quās ex commūnī cōsensū ab eō petere vel-
 lent. Eā rē permissā diem conciliō cōstituērunt et iūre
 25 iūrandō, nē quis ēnūntiāret, nisi quibus commūnī cōnsiliō
 mandātum esset, inter sē sānxērunt.

He is asked to defend Gaul against Ariovistus.

XXXI. Eō conciliō dīmissō idem prīncipēs cīvitatū,
 quī ante fuerant, ad Caesarem revertērunt petiēruntque, ut

sibi sēcrētō dē suā omniumque salūte cum eō agere licēret. Eā rē impetrātā sēsē omnēs flentēs Caesarī ad pedēs prōiēcērunt: Nōn minus sē id contendere et labōrāre, nē ea, quae dīxissent, ēnūtiārentur, quam utī ea, quae vellent, impetrārent, proptereā quod, sī ēnūtiātum esset, summum 5 in cruciātum sē ventūrōs vidērent. Locūtus est prō hīs Dīviciācus Aeduus:

Galliae tōtīus factiōnēs esse duās; hārum alterius prīncipātum tenēre Aeduōs, alterius Arvernōs. Hī cum tantopere dē potentātū inter sē multōs annōs contenderent, 10 factum esse, utī ab Arvernīs Sēquanīsque Germānī mercēde arcesserentur. Hōrum prīmō circiter milia xv Rhēnum trānsisse; postea quam agrōs et cultum et cōpiās Gallōrum hominēs ferī ac barbarī adamāssent, trāductōs plūrēs; nunc esse in Galliā ad centum et xx milium numerum. 15

Cum hīs Aeduōs eōrumque clientēs semel atque iterum armīs contendisse; māgnam calamitātem pulsōs accēpisse, omnem nōbilitātem, omnem senātum, omnem equitātum amīsisse. Quibus proeliīs calamitātibusque frāctōs, quī et suā virtūte et populī Rōmānī hospitio atque amīcitiā plū- 20 rimum ante in Galliā potuissent, coāctōs esse Sēquanīs obsidēs dare nōbilissimōs cīvītātis et iūre iūrāndō cīvītātem obstringere, sēsē neque obsidēs repetitūrōs neque auxilium ā populō Rōmānō implōrātūrōs, neque recūsātūrōs, quō minus perpetuō sub illōrum diciōne atque imperiō 25 essent. Ūnum sē esse ex omnī cīvītate Aeduōrum, quī addūcī nōn potuerit, ut iūrāret aut liberōs suōs obsidēs daret. Ob eam rem sē ex cīvītate profūgissee et Rōmam ad senātum vēnissee auxilium postulātum, quod sōlus neque iūre iūrāndō neque obsidibus tenērētur. 30

Sed pēius victōribus Sēquanīs quam Aeduīs victīs accidissee, proptereā quod Ariovistus, rēx Germānōrum, in

- eōrum finibus cōsēdisset tertiamque partem agrī Sēquanī, quī esset optimus tōtius Galliae, occupāvisset, et nunc dē alterā parte tertiā Sēquanōs dēcēdere iubēret, proptereā quod paucīs mēnsibus ante Harūdum mīlia hominum **xxiiii** 5 ad eum vēnissent, quibus locus ac sēdēs parārentur. Futūrum esse paucīs annīs, utī omnēs ex Galliae finibus pellerentur atque omnēs Germānī Rhēnum trānsīrent; neque enim cōferendum esse Gallicum cum Germānōrum agrō, neque hanc cōsuētūdinem victūs cum illā comparandam.
- 10 Ariovistum autem, ut semel Gallōrum cōpiās proeliō vicerit, quod proelium factum sit Admagetobrigae, superbē et crudēliter imperāre, obsidēs nōbilissimī cūiusque liberōs poscere et in eōs omnia exempla cruciātūsque ēdere, sī qua rēs nōn ad nūtum aut ad voluntātem ēius facta sit. Homi-
- 15 nem esse barbarum, irācundum, temerārium; nōn posse ēius imperia diūtius sustinēre. Nisi quid in Caesare populōque Rōmānō sit auxiliī, omnibus Gallīs idem esse faciendum, quod Helvētiī fēcerint, ut domō ēmigrent, aliud domicilium, aliās sēdēs, remōtās ā Germānīs, petant fortū-
- 20 namque, quaecumque accidat, experiantur.

Haec sī ēnūntiāta Ariovistō sint, nōn dubitāre, quīn dē omnibus obsidibus, quī apud eum sint, gravissimum supplicium sūmat. Caesarem vel auctōritāte suā atque exercitūs vel recentī victōriā vel nōmine populī Rōmānī dēterrere

25 posse, nē māior multitūdō Germānōrum Rhēnum trādūcātur, Galliamque omnem ab Ariovistī iniūriā posse dēfendere.

Being much entreated, he espouses the cause of the Gauls.

XXXII. Hāc orātiōne ab Dīviciācō habitā, omnēs, quī aderant, māgnō flētū auxilium ā Caesare petere coepērunt.

30 Animadvertit Caesar, ūnōs ex omnibus Sēquanōs nihil

eārum rērum facere, quās cēterī facerent, sed tristēs capite dēmissō terram intuērī. Eius rei quae causa esset, mirātus ex ipsīs quaesiit. Nihil Sēquanī respondēre, sed in eādē tristitiā tacitī permanēre. Cum ab hīs saepius quaereret neque ūllam omnīnō vōcem exprimere posset, idem Divici- 5 ācus Aeduus respondit:

Hōc esse miserīorem et graviōrem fortūnam Sēquanōrum quam reliquōrum, quod sōlī nē in occultō quidem querī neque auxilium implōrāre audērent absentisque Ariovistī crudelitātē, velut sī cōram adesset, horrērent, proptereā 10 quod reliquīs tamen fugae facultās darētur, Sēquanīs vērō, quī intrā finēs suōs Ariovistum recēpissent, quōrum oppida omnia in potestātē eius essent, omnēs cruciātūs essent perferendī.

XXXIII. His rēbus cognitīs Caesar Gallōrum animōs 15 verbīs cōfirmāvit pollicitusque est, sibi eam rem cūrae futūram; māgnam sē habēre spem, et beneficiō suō et auctōritātē adductum Ariovistum finem iniūriīs factūrum. Hāc orātiōne habitā concilium dīmīsit.

Et secundum ea multae rēs eum hortābantur, quā rē 20 sibi eam rem cōgitandam et suscipiendam putāret, in prīmīs, quod Aeduōs, frātrēs cōsanguineōsque saepe numerō ā senātū appellātōs, in servitūte atque in diciōne vidēbat Germānōrum tenērī, eōrumque obsidēs esse apud Ariovistum ac Sēquanōs intellegēbat; quod in tantō imperiō 25 populī Rōmānī turpissimum sibi et rei pūblicae esse arbitrabātur.

Paulātim autem Germānōs cōsuēscere Rhēnum transire, et in Galliam māgnam eōrum multitūdinem venīre, populō Rōmānō periculōsum vidēbat; neque sibi hominēs 30 ferōs ac barbarōs temperātūrōs exīstimābat, quīn, cum omnem Galliam occupāvissent, ut ante Cimbrī Teutonīque

fēcissent, in prōvinciam exīrent atque inde in Italiam contenderent, praesertim cum Sēquanōs ā prōvinciā nostrā Rhodanus dīvideret; quibus rēbus quam mātūrrimē occurrendum putābat. Ipse autem Ariovistus tantōs sibi spīritūs, tantam arrogantiam sūmpserat, ut ferendus nōn vidērētur.

He invites Ariovistus to a conference; Ariovistus declines, and to Caesar's demands sends back a haughty reply.

XXXIV. Quam ob rem placuit eī, ut ad Ariovistum lēgātōs mitteret, quī ab eō postulārent, utī aliquem locum medium utriusque colloquiō dēligeret; velle sēsē dē rē
10 publicā et summīs utriusque rēbus cum eō agere. Eī lēgātiōnī Ariovistus respondit:

Sī quid ipsī ā Caesare opus esset, sēsē ad eum ventūrum fuisse; sī quid ille sē velit, illum ad sē venīre oportēre. Praetereā sē neque sine exercitū in eās partēs Galliae
15 venīre audēre, quās Caesar possidēret, neque exercitum sine māgnō commeātū atque mōlimentō in ūnum locum contrahere posse. Sibi autem mīrum vidērī, quid in suā Galliā, quam bellō vīcisset, aut Caesarī aut omnīnō populō Rōmānō negōtī esset.

20 XXXV. Hīs respōnsīs ad Caesarem relātīs, iterum ad eum Caesar lēgātōs cum hīs mandātīs mittit:

Quoniam tantō suō populique Rōmānī beneficiō affectus, cum in cōsulātū suō rēx atque amīcus ā senātū appellātus esset, hanc sibi populōque Rōmānō grātiā referret, ut in
25 colloquium venīre invītātus gravārētur neque dē commūnī rē dīcendum sibi et cognōscendum putāret, haec esse, quae ab eō postulāret: prīmum, nē quam multitudinem hominum amplius trāns Rhēnum in Galliam trādūceret; deinde, obsidēs, quōs habēret ab Aeduīs, redderet, Sēquanisque permit-

teret, ut, quōs illi habērent, voluntāte eius reddere illis liceret; nēve Aeduōs iniuriā lacesseret, nēve his sociisque eōrum bellum inferret.

Si id ita fecisset, sibi populōque Rōmānō perpetuam grātiā atque amicitiam cum eō futūram; si nōn impetrāret, sēsē, quoniam M. Messālā, M. Pisōne cōsulibus senātūs cēnsuisset, utī, quicumque Galliam prōvinciam obtinēret, quod commodō rei pūblicae facere posset, Aeduōs cēterōsque amīcōs populī Rōmānī dēfenderet, sē Aeduōrum iniuriās nōn neglētūrum. 10

XXXVI. Ad haec Ariovistus respondit:

Iūs esse bellī, ut, quī vicissent, eis, quōs vicissent, quem ad modum vellent, imperārent; item populum Rōmānum victis nōn ad alterius praescriptum, sed ad suum arbitrium imperāre cōsuēsse. Si ipse populō Rōmānō nōn praescriberet, quem ad modum suō iūre ūterētur, nōn oportere sēsē ā populō Rōmānō in suō iūre impediri. 15

Aeduōs sibi, quoniam bellī fortunam temptāssent et armīs congressī ac superātī essent, stīpendiariōs esse factōs. Magnam Caesarem iniuriā facere, quī suō adventū vectīgālīa sibi dēteriōra faceret. Aeduīs sē obsidēs redditūrum nōn esse, neque his neque eōrum sociis iniuriā bellum illātūrum, si in eō manērent, quod convēnisset, stīpendiumque quotannis penderent; si id nōn fecissent, longē eis frāternum nōmen populī Rōmānī āfutūrum. 25

Quod sibi Caesar dēnūtiāret, sē Aeduōrum iniuriās nōn neglētūrum, nēmīnem sēcū sine suā perniciē contendisse. Cum vellet, congredērētur; intellētūrum, quid invictī Germānī, exercitātissimī in armīs, quī inter annōs XIII tēctum nōn subīssent, virtūte possent. 30

Caesar hastens. He reaches Vesontio before Ariovistus.

XXXVII. Haec eodem tempore Caesarī mandāta referēbantur, et lēgātī ab Aeduīs et ā Trēverīs veniēbant: Aeduī questum, quod Harūdēs, quī nūper in Galliam trānsportātī essent, finēs eōrum populārentur; sēsē nē obsidibus quidem
 5 datīs pācem Ariovistī redimere potuisse; Trēverī autem, pāgōs centum Suēbōrum ad rīpās Rhēnī cōnsēdisse, quī Rhēnum trānsīre cōnārentur; hīs praeesse Nasuam et Cimmerium frātrēs. Quibus rēbus Caesar vehementer commōtus mātūrandum sibi exīstimāvit, nē, sī nova manus Suēbōrum
 10 cum veteribus cōpiīs Ariovistī sēsē coniūnxisset, minus facile resistī posset. Itaque rē frūmentāriā, quam celerrimē potuit, comparātā, magnīs itineribus ad Ariovistum contendit.

XXXVIII. Cum trīduī viam prōcessisset, nūntiātum est
 15 eī, Ariovistum cum suis omnibus cōpiīs ad occupandum Vesontionem, quod est oppidum māximum Sēquanōrum, contendere, trīduīque viam ā suis finibus prōcessisse. Id nē accideret, māgnopere sibi praecavendum Caesar exīstimābat. Namque omnium rerum, quae ad bellum ūsuī erant,
 20 summa erat in eō oppidō facultās, idque nātūrā locī sic mūniēbātur, ut māgnam ad dūcendum bellum daret facultātem, proptereā quod flūmen Dubis ut circinō circumductum paene tōtum oppidum cingit; reliquum spatium, quod est nōn amplius pedum sexcentōrum, quā flūmen intermittit, mōns con-
 25 tinet māgnā altitūdine, ita, ut rādīcēs montis ex utrāque parte rīpae flūminis contingant. Hunc mūrus circumdatus arcem efficit et cum oppidō coniungit. Hūc Caesar māgnīs nocturnīs diurnīsque itineribus contendit occupātōque oppidō ibi praesidium collocat.

His soldiers fear the Germans. He addresses them.

XXXIX. Dum paucōs diēs ad Vesontiōnem rei frūmentāriae commeātūque causā morātur, ex percontātiōne nostrōrum vōcibusque Gallōrum ac mercātōrum, quī ingenti magnitūdine corporum Germānōs, incredibilī virtūte atque exercitātiōne in armīs esse praedicābant (saepe numerō 5 sēsē cum hīs congressōs nē vultum quidem atque aciem oculōrum dicēbant ferre potuisse), tantus subitō timor omnem exercitum occupāvit, ut nōn mediocriter omnium mentēs animōsque perturbāret. Hic primum ortus est ā tribūnīs militum, praefectīs reliquīsque, quī ex urbe amī- 10 citiae causā Caesarem secūtī nōn māgnū in rē militārī ūsum habēbant; quōrum alius aliā causā illātā, quam sibi ad proficiscendum necessariam esse diceret, petēbat, ut eius voluntāte discēdere liceret; nōn nullī pudōre adductī, ut timōris suspiciōnem vitārent, remanēbant. Hī neque 15 vultum fingere neque interdum lacrimās tenēre poterant; abditī in tabernāculīs aut suum fātum querēbantur aut cum familiāribus suis commūne periculum miserābantur. Vulgō tōtīs castrīs testāmenta obsignābantur.

Hōrum vōcibus ac timōre paulātim etiam eī, quī māgnū 20 in castrīs ūsum habēbant, militēs centuriōnēsque, quīque equitātū praeerant, perturbābantur. Quī sē ex hīs minus timidōs existimārī volēbant, nōn sē hostem verērī, sed angustias itineris et magnitūdinem silvārum, quae intercederent inter ipsōs atque Ariovistum, aut rem frūmentā- 25 riam, ut satis commodē supportārī posset, timēre dicēbant. Nōn nullī etiam Caesarī nūntiābant, cum castra movērī ac signa ferri iussisset, nōn fore dictō audientēs militēs neque propter timōrem signa lātūrōs.

XL. Haec cum animadvertisset, convocātō cōnsiliō omni- 30

umque ordinum ad id cōsiliū adhibitīs centuriōnibus, vehementer eōs incūsāvit:

Prīmum, quod, aut quam in partem aut quō cōsiliō dūcerentur, sibi quaerendum aut cōgitandum putārent. Ariovistum sē cōsule cupidissimē populī Rōmānī amicitiam appetisse; cūr hunc tam temerē quisquam ab officiō discessurum iudicāret? Sibi quidem persuādērī, cognitīs suīs postulātīs atque aequitāte condiciōnum perspectā, eum neque suam neque populī Rōmānī grātiā repudiātūrum.

10 Quod sī furōre atque āmentia impulsus bellum intulisset, quid tandem verērentur? aut cūr dē suā virtūte aut dē ipsius diligentiā dēspērārent? Factum ēius hostis periculum patrum nostrōrum memoriā, cum Cimbrīs et Teutonīs ā Gāio Mariō pulsīs nōn minōrem laudem exercitus quam
15 ipse imperātor meritis vidēbātur; factum etiam nūper in Italiā servīli tumultū, quōs tamen aliquid ūsus ac disciplīna, quae ā nobīs accēpissent, sublevārent. Ex quō iudicārī posse, quantum habēret in sē bonī cōstantia, proptereā quod, quōs aliquam diū inermōs sine causā timuissent, hōs
20 postea armātōs ac victōrēs superāssent.

Dēnique hōs esse eōsdem Germānōs, quibuscum saepe numerō Helvētiī congressī nōn solum in suīs, sed etiam in illōrum finibus, plērumque superārint, quī tamen parēs esse nostrō exercitui nōn potuerint. Sī quōs adversum proelium
25 et fuga Gallōrum commovēret, hōs, sī quaerent, reperīre posse, diūturnitate bellī defatigātīs Gallīs, Ariovistum, cum multōs mēnsēs castrīs sē ac palūdibus tenuisset neque suī potestātem fēcisset, dēspērāntēs iam dē pūgnā et dispersōs subitō adortum, magis ratiōne et cōsiliō quam virtūte
30 vīcisse. Cui ratiōnī contrā hominēs barbarōs atque imperītōs locus fuisset, hāc nē ipsum quidem spērāre nostrōs exercitūs capī posse.

Quī suum timōrem in rei frūmentāriae simulātiōnem angustiasque itineris cōferrent, facere arroganter, cum aut dē officiō imperātōris dēspērāre aut praescribere vidērentur. Haec sibi esse cūrae; frūmentum Sēquanōs, Leucōs, Lingonēs sumministrāre, iamque esse in agrīs frūmenta mātūra; 5 dē itinere ipsōs brevī tempore iūdicātūrōs.

Quod nōn fore dictō audientēs neque sīgna lātūrī dīcantur, nihil sē eā rē commovērī; scīre enim, quibuscumque exercitus dictō audiēns nōn fuerit, aut male rē gestā fortunam dēfuisse, aut aliquō facinore compertō avāritiam esse 10 convictam; suam innocentiam perpetuā vitā, felicitātem Helvētiōrum bellō esse perspectam.

Itaque sē, quod in longiōrem diem collātūrus fuisset, repraesentātūrum et proximā nocte dē quārtā vigiliā castra mōtūrum, ut quam prīmum intellegere posset, utrum apud 15 eōs pudor atque officiū an timor valeret. Quod sī praetereā nēmō sequātur, tamen sē cum solā decimā legiōne itūrum, dē quā nōn dubitāret, sibique eam praetōriam cohortem futūram. Huic legiōnī Caesar et indulserat praecipuē et propter virtūtem cōfidēbat māximē. 20

Caesar marches after Ariovistus, who requests an interview.

XLI. Hāc ōrātiōne habitā mīrum in modum conversae sunt omnium mentēs, summaque alacritās et cupiditās bellī gerendī innāta est, princepsque decima legiō per tribūnōs militum eī grātiās ēgit, quod dē sē optimum iūdicium fēcisset, sēque esse ad bellum gerendum parātissimam cōnfir- 25 māvīt. Deinde reliquae legiōnēs cum tribūnīs militum et primōrum ōrdinum centuriōnibus ēgērunt, utī Caesarī satis facerent; sē neque umquam dubitāsse neque timuisse, neque dē summā bellī suum iūdicium, sed imperātōris esse existi- māvīsse. 30

Eōrum satisfactiōne acceptā et itinere exquisitō per Diviciacum, quod ex Gallīs eī māximam fidem habēbat, ut mīlium amplius quīnquāgintā circuitū locīs apertīs exercitum dūceret, dē quārtā vigiliā, ut dīxerat, profectus est.

5 Septimō diē, cum iter nōn intermitteret, ab explorātōribus certior factus est, Ariovistī cōpiās ā nostrīs mīlibus passuum quattuor et xx abesse.

XLII. Cognitō Caesaris adventū Ariovistus lēgātōs ad eum mittit: quod antea dē colloquiō postulāset, id per sē

10 fierī licēre, quoniam propius accessisset, sēque id sine periculō facere posse existimāre. Nōn respuit condiōnem Caesar, iamque eum ad sānitātem revertī arbitrābātur, cum id, quod antea petentī dēnegāset, ultrō pollicērētur, māgnamque in spem veniēbat, prō suis tantīs populique Ro-

15 mānī in eum beneficiīs, cognitīs suis postulātīs, fore, utī pertināciā dēsisteret. Diēs colloquiō dictus est ex eō diē quīntus.

Interim saepe cum lēgātī ultrō citrōque inter eōs mitterentur, Ariovistus postulāvit, nē quem peditem ad collo-

20 quium Caesar addūceret: Verērī sē, nē per īnsidiās ab eō circumvenīrētur; uterque cum equitātū venīret; aliā ratiōne sēsē nōn esse ventūrum. Caesar, quod neque colloquium interpositā causā tollī volēbat neque salūtem suam Gallōrum equitātūī committere audēbat, commodissimum

25 esse statuit, omnibus equīs Gallīs equitibus detrāctīs, eō legiōnāriōs mīlītēs legiōnis decimae, cui quam māximē cōnfidēbat, impōnere, ut praesidium quam amīcissimum, sī quid opus factō esset, habēret. Quod cum fieret, nōn irrīdiculē quīdam ex mīlitibus decimae legiōnis dīxit: Plūs, quam pol-

30 licitus esset, Caesarem facere; pollicitum, sē in cohortis praetōriae locō decimam legiōnem habitūrum, ad equum rescribere.

They meet; Caesar speaks. Ariovistus replies.

XLIII. Plānitīēs erat māgna et in eā tumulus terrēnus satis grandis. Hīc locus aequō ferē spatiō ā castrīs Ariovistī et Caesaris aberat. Eō, ut erat dictum, ad colloquium vērunt. Legiōnem Caesar, quam equīs dēvexerat, passibus ducentīs ab eō tumulō cōstituit. Item equitēs Ariovistī parī intervāllō cōstitērunt. Ariovistus, ex equīs ut colloquerentur et praeter sē dēnōs ut ad colloquium addūcerent, postulāvit.

Ubi eō ventum est, Caesar initio ōrātiōnis sua senātūsque in eum beneficia commemorāvit, quod rēx appellātus esset ā senātū, quod amīcus, quod mūnera amplissimē missa; quam rem et paucīs contigisse et prō māgnīs hominum officiīs cōsuēsse tribuī docēbat; illum, cum neque aditum neque causam postulandī iūstam habēret, beneficiō ac liberālitate suā ac senātūs ea praemia cōsecūtum.

Docēbat etiam, quam veterēs quamque iūstae causae necessitudinis ipsīs cum Aeduīs intercēderent, quae senātūs cōsulta quotiēns quamque honōrifca in eōs facta essent, ut omni tempore tōtius Galliae prīncipātum Aeduī tenuissent, prius etiam, quam nostram amīcitiam appetīssent. Populī Rōmānī hanc esse cōsuētūdinem, ut sociōs atque amīcōs nōn modo suī nihil dēperdere, sed grātiā, dignitāte, honōre auctiōrēs velīt esse; quod vērō ad amīcitiam populī Rōmānī attulissent, id eīs ēripī quis pati posset?

Postulāvit deinde eadem, quae lēgātīs in mandātīs dederat: nē aut Aeduīs aut eōrum sociīs bellum īferret; obīdēs redderet; sī nūllam partem Germānōrum domum remittere posset, at nē quōs amplius Rhēnum trānsīre paterētur.

XLIV. Ariovistus ad postulāta Caesaris pauca respondit, dē suis virtūtibus multa praedicāvit:

Trānsisse Rhēnum sēsē nōn suā sponte, sed rogātum et
arcessitum ā Gallis; nōn sine magnā spē magnisque prae-
5 miis domum propinquosque reliquisse; sēdēs habēre in
Galliā ab ipsis concessās, obsidēs ipsōrum voluntāte datōs;
stipendium capere iūre bellī, quod victōrēs victis impōnere
cōnsuerint. Nōn sēsē Gallis, sed Gallōs sibi bellum intulisse;
omnēs Galliae civitatēs ad sē oppugnandum vēnisse
10 ac contrā sē castra habuisse; eas omnēs cōpiās ā sē unō
proeliō pulsās ac superātās esse. Sī iterum experiri velint,
sē iterum parātum esse dēcertāre; sī pāce uti velint, iniquum
esse dē stipendiō recūsāre, quod suā voluntāte ad id
tempus pependerint.

15 Amicitiam populī Rōmānī sibi ornāmētō et praesidiō,
nōn detrīmentō esse oportēre, atque sē hāc spē petisse. Sī
per populum Rōmānum stipendium remittātur et dediticiī
subtrahantur, nōn minus libenter sēsē recūsātūrum populī
Rōmānī amicitiam, quam appetierit.

20 Quod multitudinem Germānōrum in Galliam trādūcat, id
sē sui mūniendī, nōn Galliae impugnandae causā facere;
ēius rei testimōnium esse, quod nisi rogātus nōn vēnerit,
et quod bellum nōn intulerit, sed dēfenderit. Sē prius in
Galliam vēnisse quam populum Rōmānum. Numquam
25 ante hōc tempus exercitum populī Rōmānī Galliae prō-
vinciae finibus ēgressum. Quid sibi vellet? Cūr in suās
possessiōnēs venīret? Prōvinciam suam hanc esse Galliam.
sicut illam nostram. Ut ipsī concēdi nōn oportēret, sī in
nostrōs finēs impetum faceret, sic item nōs esse inīquos,
30 quod in suō iūre sē interpellārēmus.

Quod frātres Aeduos appellātōs diceret, nōn sē tam
barbarum neque tam imperitum esse rerum, ut nōn scīret,

neque bellō Allobrogum proximō Aeduōs Rōmānīs auxilium tulisse, neque ipsōs in hīs contentiōnibus, quās Aeduī sēcum et cum Sēquanīs habuissent, auxiliō populī Rōmānī ūsōs esse.

Dēbēre sē suspicārī, simulātā Caesarem amīcitiā, quod 5 exercitum in Galliā habeat, suī opprimendī causā habēre. Quī nisi dēcēdat atque exercitum dēducāt ex hīs regiōnibus, sēsē illum nōn prō amīcō, sed hoste habitūrum. Quod sī eum interfēcerit, multīs sēsē nōbilibus prīncipibusque populī Rōmānī grātum esse factūrum (id sē ab 10 ipsis per eōrum nūntiōs compertum habēre), quōrum omnium grātiā atque amīcitiā eius morte redimere posset. Quod sī dēcēssisset et liberā possessiōnem Galliae sibi trādidisset, māgnō sē illum praemiō remūnerātūrum et, quaecumque bella gerī vellet, sine ūllō eius labōre et 15 periculō cōfectūrum.

Caesar remains firm, and escapes from the snares set by Ariovistus.

XLV. Multa ab Caesare in eam sententiam dicta sunt, quā rē negōtiō dēsistere nōn posset:

Neque suam neque populī Rōmānī cōsuētūdinem patī, utī optimē merentēs sociōs dēsereret, neque sē iūdicāre, 20 Galliam potius esse Ariovistī quam populī Rōmānī. Bellō superātōs esse Arvernōs et Rutēnōs ab Quīntō Fabiō Māximō, quibus populus Rōmānus ignōvisset neque in prōvinciam redēgisset neque stīpendium imposuisset. Quod sī antīquissimum quodque tempus spectārī oportēret, po- 25 pulī Rōmānī iūstissimum esse in Galliā imperium; sī iūdicium senātūs observārī oportēret, liberā dēbēre esse Galliam, quam bellō victā suīs lēgibus utī voluisset.

XLVI. Dum haec in colloquiō geruntur, Caesarī nūn-

tiatum est, equitēs Ariovistī propius tumulum accēdere et ad nostrōs adequitāre, lapidēs tēlaque in nostrōs conicere. Caesar loquendī finem facit sēque ad suōs recēpit suisque imperāvit, nē quod omnīnō tēlum in hostēs rēicerent. Nam
 5 etsī sine ūllō periculō legiōnis dēlēctae cum equitātū proelium fore vidēbat, tamen committendum nōn putābat, ut pulsīs hostibus dīcī posset, eōs ab sē per fidem in colloquiō circumventōs. Postea quam in vulgus mīlitum elātum est, quā arrogantīā in colloquiō Ariovistus ūsus omnī Galliā
 10 Rōmānīs interdixisset, impetumque ut in nostrōs eiūs equitēs fēcissent, eaque rēs colloquium ut dirēmisset, multō māior alacritās studiumque pūgnandī māius exercitū in-
 iectum est.

Ariovistus throws into chains two envoys of Caesar, but avoids battle.

XLVII. Bīduō post Ariovistus ad Caesarem lēgātōs
 15 mittit: Velle sē dē hīs rēbus, quae inter eōs agī coeptae neque perfectae essent, agere cum eō; utī aut iterum colloquiō diem cōstitueret aut, sī id minus vellet, ē suis lēgātīs aliquem ad sē mitteret.

Colloquendī Caesarī causa vīsa nōn est, et eō magis, quod
 20 prīdiē eiūs diēi Germānī retinērī nōn potuerant, quīn in nostrōs tēla conicerent. Lēgātum ē suis sēsē māgnō cum periculō ad eum missūrum et hominibus ferīs obiectūrum existimābat. Commodissimum vīsum est Gāium Valerium Procillum, C. Valerī Cabūrī filium, summā virtūte et hū-
 25 mānitāte adulēscētem, cūius pater ā Gāiō Valeriō Flaccō cīvitāte dōnātus erat, et propter fidem et propter linguae Gallicae scientiam, quā multā iam Ariovistus longinquā cōsuētūdine ūtēbatur, et quod in eō peccandī Germānīs causa nōn esset, ad eum mittere, et ūnā Mārcum Metium,

qui hospitio Ariovisti utebatur. His mandavit, ut, quae diceret Ariovistus, cognoscerent et ad se referrent. Quos cum apud se in castris Ariovistus conspexisset, exercitum suo praesente conclamavit: Quid ad se venirent? an speculandi causa? Conantes dicere prohibuit et in catenas 5 coniecit.

XLVIII. Eodem die castra promovit et milibus passuum sex a Caesaris castris sub monte consedit. Postridie eius diei praeter castra Caesaris suas copias traduxit et milibus passuum duobus ultra eum castra fecit eo consilio, 10 uti frumentum commeatumque, qui ex Sequanis et Aeduus supportarentur, Caesarem intercluderet. Ex eo die dies continuos quinque Caesar pro castris suas copias produxit et aciem instructam habuit, ut, si vellet Ariovistus proelio contendere, ei potestas non deesset. 15

Ariovistus his omnibus diebus exercitum castris continuit, equestri proelio cotidie contendit. Genus hoc erat pugnae, quo se Germani exercuerant. Equitum milia erant sex, totidem numero pedites velocissimi ac fortissimi, quos ex omni copia singuli singulos suae salutis causa delerant; cum his in proeliis versabantur. Ad eos se equites recipiebant; hi, si quid erat durius, concurrabant, si qui, graviore vulnere accepto, equo deciderat, circumstabant; si quo erat longius praeiudicandum aut celerius recipiendum, tanta erat horum exercitatione celeritas, ut iubeis equorum 25 sublevati cursum adaequarent.

Caesar fortifies another camp beyond Ariovistus.

XLIX. Ubi eum castris se tenere Caesar intellexit, ne diutius commeatum prohiberetur, ultra eum locum, quo in loco Germani consederant, circiter passus sexcentos ab his, castris idoneum locum deligit acieque triplici instructa ad 30

eum locum vēnit. Prīmam et secundam aciem in armīs esse, tertiam castra mūnīre iussit. Hic locus ab hoste circiter passūs sexcentōs, utī dictum est, aberat. Eō circiter hominum numerō sēdecim milia expedita cum omnī
 5 equitātū Ariovistus mīsīt, quae cōpiāe nostrōs perterrērent et mūnitiōne prohibērent. Nihilō sētius Caesar, ut ante cōstituerat, duās aciēs hostem prōpulsāre, tertiam opus perficere iussit. Mūnītis castrīs duās ibi legiōnēs reliquit et partem auxiliōrum, quattuor reliquās in castra māiōra redūxit.

The Germans are afraid to fight before the new moon. Caesar forces an engagement.

10 L. Proximō diē institūtō suō Caesar ē castrīs utrīsque cōpiās suās ēdūxit paulumque ā māiōribus castrīs prōgressus aciem instrūxit, hostibus pūgnandī potestātem fēcīt. Ubi nē tum quidem eōs prōdīre intellēxit, circiter merīdiem exercitum in castra redūxit. Tum dēmum
 15 Ariovistus partem suārum cōpiārum, quae castra minōra oppūgnāret, mīsīt. Ācriter utrimque ūsque ad vesperum pūgnātum est. Sōlis occāsū suās cōpiās Ariovistus multīs et illātīs et acceptīs vulneribus in castra redūxit.

Cum ex captīvīs quaereret Caesar, quam ob rem Ariovistus proeliō nōn dēcertāret, hanc reperiēbat causam, quod
 20 apud Germānōs ea cōsuētūdō esset, ut matrēs familiae eōrum sortibus et vāticinātiōnibus dēclārārent, utrum proelium committī ex ūsū esset necne; eās ita dīcere, Nōn esse fās Germānōs superāre, sī ante novam lūnam proeliō contendissent.

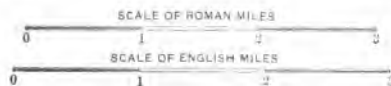
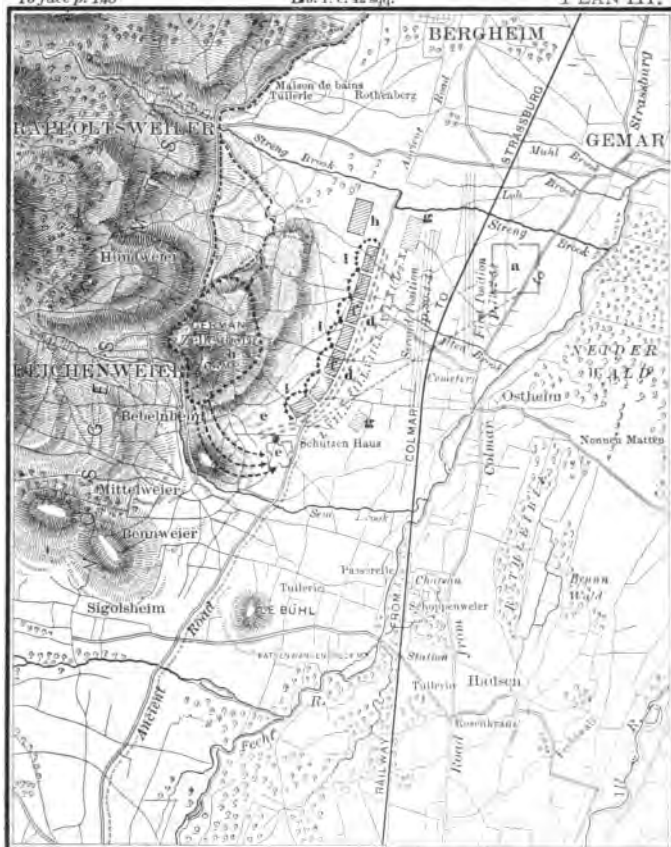
LI. Postridiē eiūs diēi Caesar praesidiō utrīsque castrīs, quod satis esse vīsum est, reliquit, omnēs ālārīōs in cōspectū hostium prō castrīs minōribus cōstituīt, quod minus multitūdine militum legiōnāriōrum prō hostium

BATTLE BETWEEN CAESAR AND ARIOVISTUS

To face p. 148

Lib. I. c. 42 sqq.

PLAN III.



EXPLANATION.

- a** Main camp of Caesar (*p. 147, 8*).
 - b** Camp of Ariovistus (*p. 147, 19*).
 - c** Caesar's small camp (*p. 148, 2*).
 - dd** The Six Legions in line of battle, in the order assigned them by Colonel Stoffel (*p. 149, 2*).
 - e** The Auxiliaries in line of battle (*p. 149, 1*).
 - ff** The line of battle of the Germans (*p. 149, 3*).
 - gg** Caesar's Cavalry in two detachments.
 - h** The German Cavalry.
 - iii** Wagons of the Germans (*p. 149, 6*).
- Romans — Germans

numerō valēbat, ut ad speciem ālārīs ūterētur; ipse triplici instrūctā aciē ūsque ad castra hostium accessit. Tum dēmum necessāriō Germānī suās cōpiās castris ēdūxērunt generātimque cōstituērunt paribus intervāllis, Harūdēs, Marcomanōs, Tribocēs, Vangionēs, Nemetēs, Sedusiōs, 5 Suēbōs, omnemque aciem suam raedīs et carrīs circumdēdērunt, nē qua spēs in fugā relinquerētur. Eō mulierēs imposuērunt, quae in proelium proficiscentēs passīs manibus flentēs implorābant, nē sē in servitūtem Rōmānīs trāderent.

There is a desperate battle ; the Germans are routed.

LII. Caesar singulīs legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs et quae- 10 stōrem praefēcit, utī eōs testēs suae quisque virtūtis haberet; ipse ā dextrō cornū, quod eam partem minimē firmam hostium esse animadverterat, proelium commisit. Ita nostrī ācritē in hostēs signō datō impetum fēcērunt, itaque hostēs repente celeriterque prōcurrērunt, ut spatium pīla in hostēs 15 coniciendī nōn darētur. Rēiectīs pīlis cominus gladiīs pūgnātum est. At Germānī celeriter ex cōsuētūdine suā phalange factā impetūs gladiōrum excēpērunt. Repertī sunt complūrēs nostrī, quī in phalanga insilirent et scūta manibus revellerent et dēsuper vulnerārent. Cum hostium 20 aciēs ā sinistrō cornū pulsa atque in fugam conversa esset, ā dextrō cornū vehementer multitūdine suōrum nostram aciem premēbant. Id cum animadvertisset Pūblius Crassus adulēscēs, quī equitātū praeerat, quod expeditior erat quam eī, quī inter aciem versābantur, tertiam aciem labō- 25 rantibus nostrīs subsidiō mīsit.

LIII. Ita proelium restitūtum est, atque omnēs hostēs terga vertērunt neque prius fugere dēstitērunt, quam ad flūmen Rhēnum, mīlia passuum ex eō locō circiter quīn- quāgintā, pervēnērunt. Ibi perpaucī aut vīribus cōnfīsī 30

trānāre contendērunt aut lintribus inventis sibi salūtem repperērunt. In hīs fuit Ariovistus, quī nāviculam dēligātam ad rīpam nactus eā profūgit; reliquōs omnes cōnsecūtī equitēs nostrī interfēcērunt.

- 5 Duae fuērunt Ariovistī uxōrēs, ūna Suēba nātiōne, quam domō sēcum dūxerat, altera Nōrica, rēgis Vocciōnis soror, quam in Galliā dūxerat, ā frātre missam; utraeque in eā fugā periērunt. Duae filiae; hārum altera occīsa, altera capta est.

- C. Valerius Procillus, cum ā cūstōdibus in fugā trīnīs
10 catēnīs vinctus traherētur, in ipsum Caesarem hostēs equitātū insequentem incidit. Quae quidem rēs Caesarī nōn minōrem quam ipsa victōria voluptātem attulit, quod hominem honestissimum prōvinciae Galliae, suum familiārem et hospitem, ēreptum ē manibus hostium, sibi restitūtum
15 vidēbat, neque eius calamitāte dē tantā voluptāte et grātulātiōne quicquam fortūna dēminuerat. Is sē praesente dē sē ter sortibus cōnsultum dīcēbat, utrum ignī statim necārētur an in aliud tempus reservārētur; sortium beneficiō sē esse incolumem. Item M. Metius repertus et ad eum
20 reductus est.

Caesar places his army in winter quarters; he himself goes to North Italy.

LIV. Hōc proeliō trāns Rhēnum nūntiatō Suēbī, quī ad rīpās Rhēnī vēnerant, domum revertī coepērunt; quōs, ubi quī proximī Rhēnum incolunt, perterritōs sēnsērunt, insecūtī māgnūm ex hīs numerum occidērunt.

- 25 Caesar, ūnā aestāte duōbus mājimīs bellīs cōnfectis, mātūrius paulō, quam tempus annī postulābat, in hiberna in Sēquanōs exercitum dēdūxit; hibernīs Labiēnum praeponuit; ipse in citeriōrem Galliam ad conventūs agendōs profectus est.

COMMENTARIUS SECUNDUS.

All the Belgae rise against Caesar.

I. Cum esset Caesar in citeriōre Galliā, ita utī suprā
dēmōnstrāvimus, crebrī ad eum rŭmōrēs afferēbantur, lit-
terisque item Labiēnī certior fiēbat, omnēs Belgās, quam
tertiā esse Galliae partem dixerāmus, contrā populum
Rōmānum coniūrāre obsidēsque inter sē dare. Coniū- 5
randī hās esse causās: primum, quod verērentur, nē omni
pācātā Galliā ad eōs exercitus noster addūcerētur; deinde,
quod ab nōn nullīs Gallīs sollicitārentur, partim quī, ut
Germānōs diūtius in Galliā versārī nōluerant, ita populi
Rōmānī exercitum hiemāre atque inveterāscere in Galliā 10
molestē ferēbant, partim quī mōbilitāte et levitāte animī
novīs imperiīs studēbant; ab nōn nullīs etiam, quod in
Galliā ā potentiōribus atque eīs, quī ad condūcendōs homi-
nēs facultātēs habēbant, vulgō rēgna occupābantur, quī
minus facile eam rem imperiō nostrō cōsequī poterant. 15

He marches quickly to their territory; the Remi surrender.

II. Hīs nūntiīs litterisque commōtus Caesar duās legi-
ōnēs in citeriōre Galliā novās cōscripsit et initā aestāte,
in ulteriōrem Galliam quī dēdūceret, Quīntum Pedium lēgā-
tum mīsīt. Ipse, cum primum pābulī cōpia esse inciperet,
ad exercitum vēnit. Dat negōtium Senonibus reliquisque 20
Gallīs, quī finitimī Belgīs erant, utī ea, quae apud eōs
gerantur, cognōscant sēque dē hīs rēbus certiōrem faciant.

Hī cōstanter omnēs nūntiāvērunt, manūs cōgī, exercitum in ūnum locum condūcī. Tum vērō dubitandum nōn exīstimāvit, quīn ad eōs proficīscerētur. Rē frūmentāriā comparātā castra movet diēbusque circiter quīndecim ad finēs
5 Belgārum pervēnit.

III. Eō cum dē imprōvisō celeriusque omnī opīniōne vēnisset, Rēmī, quī proximī Galliae ex Belgīs sunt, ad eum lēgātōs Iccium et Andecumborium, prīmōs cīvitātis, mīsērunt, quī dicerent, sē suaque omnia in fidem atque in potestatem populi Rōmānī permittere, neque sē cum Belgīs
10 reliquīs cōnsēnsisse neque contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāsse, parātōsque esse et obsidēs dare et imperāta facere et oppidīs recipere et frūmentō cēterisque rēbus iuvāre; reliquōs omnēs Belgās in armīs esse, Germānōsque, quī cis
15 Rhēnum incolant, sēsē cum hīs coniūnxisse, tantumque esse eōrum omnium furōrem, ut nē Suessionēs quidem, frātrēs cōsanguineōsque suōs, quī eōdem iūre et isdem lēgibus ūtantur, ūnum imperium ūnumque magistrātum cum ipsīs habeant, dēterrere potuerint, quīn cum hīs cōsentīrent.

The origin and forces of the Belgae.

20 IV. Cum ab hīs quaereret, quae cīvitātēs quantaeque in armīs essent et quid in bellō possent, sic reperībat:

Plērōsque Belgās esse ortōs ā Germānīs Rhēnumque antiquitus trāductōs propter locī fertilitātem ibi cōnsēdisse, Gallōsque, quī ea loca incolerent, expulisse, sōlōsque esse,
25 quī patrum nostrōrum memoriā omnī Galliā vexātā Teutonōs Cimbrōsque intrā suōs finēs ingredi prohibuerint; quā ex rē fierī, utī eārum rērum memoriā māgnam sibi auctōritātem māgnōsque spīritūs in rē militārī sūmerent.

Dē numerō eōrum omnia sē habēre explorāta Rēmī dīcēbant, proptereā quod, propinquitātibus affinitātibusque.

coniūctī, quantam quisque multitudinem in commūnī Belgārum conciliō ad id bellum pollicitus sit, cognōverint. Plūrimum inter eōs Bellovacōs et virtūte et auctōritāte et hominum numerō valēre; hōs posse cōficere armāta mīlia centum, pollicitōs ex eō numerō ēlēcta sexāgintā, tōtīusque 5 bellī imperium sibi postulāre. Suessiōnēs suōs esse finitimōs; finēs lātissimōs ferācissimōsque agrōs possidēre. Apud eōs fuissē rēgem nostrā etiam memoriā Diviciācum, tōtīus Galliae potentissimum, quī cum māgnae partis hārum regiōnum, tum etiam Britanniae imperium obtinuerit; nunc 10 esse rēgem Galbam; ad hunc propter iūstitiam prūdentiāque suam summam tōtīus bellī omnium voluntāte dēferri; oppida habēre numerō XII, pollicērī mīlia armāta quīnquāgintā; totidem Nervīōs, quī māximē ferī inter ipsōs habeantur longissimēque absint; quīndecim mīlia Atrebātēs, 15 Ambiānōs decem mīlia, Morinōs xxv mīlia, Menapiōs vii mīlia, Caletōs x mīlia, Veliocassēs et Viromanduōs totidem, Aduatucōs decem et novem mīlia; Condrūsōs, Eburōnēs, Caerōsōs, Caemanōs, quī ūnō nōmine Germānī appellantur, arbitrārī ad xl mīlia.

20

Caesar marches to the Axona; the Belgae attack Bibrax.

V. Caesar Rēmōs cohortātus liberāliterque orātiōne prōsecūtus omnem senātum ad sē convenīre prīncipumque liberōs obsidēs ad sē addūcī iussit. Quae omnia ab hīs diligenter ad diem facta sunt. Ipse Diviciācum Aeduum māgnopere cohortātus docet, quantō opere rei pūblīcae com- 25 mūnisque salūtis intersit, manūs hostium distīnērī, nē cum tantā multitudine ūnō tempore cōnflīgendum sit. Id fierī posse, sī suās cōpiās Aeduī in finēs Bellovacōrum intrōdūxerint et eōrum agrōs populārī coeperint. Hīs mandātis eum ab sē dīmittit.

30

Postquam omnēs Belgārum cōpiās in ūnum locum coāctās ad sē venīre vīdit, neque iam longē abesse, ab eīs, quōs mīserat, explōrātōribus et ab Rēmīs cognōvit, flūmen Axonam, quod est in extrēmīs Rēmōrum finibus, exercitum
 5 trādūcere mātūrāvit atque ibi castra posuit. Quae rēs et latus ūnum castrōrum rīpīs flūminis mūniēbat et, post eum quae erant, tūta ab hostibus reddēbat et, commeātūs ab Rēmīs reliquīsque cīvitatibus ut sine periculō ad eum portārī possent, efficiēbat. In eō flūmine pōns erat. Ibi
 10 praesidium pōnit et in alterā parte flūminis Quīntum Titūrium Sabīnum lēgātum cum sex cohortibus relinquit; castra in altitudinem pedum duodecim vāllō fossāque duodēviginti pedum mūnīre iubet.

VI. Ab hīs castrīs oppidum Rēmōrum nōmine Bibrax
 15 aberat milia passuum octō. Id ex itinere māgnō impetū Belgae oppūgnāre coepērunt. Aegrē eō diē sustentātum est. Gallōrum eadem atque Belgārum oppūgnātiō est haec. Ubi, circumiectā multitudīne hominum tōtīs moenibus, undique in mūrum lapidēs iaci coeptī sunt, mūrusque
 20 dēfēnsōribus nūdātus est, testūdīne factā portās succendunt mūrumque subruunt. Quod tum facile frēbat. Nam cum tanta multitudō lapidēs ac tēla conicerent, in mūrō cōsistendī potestās erat nullī. Cum finem oppūgnandī nox fecisset, Iccius Rēmus, summā nobilitāte et grātiā inter suōs,
 25 quī tum oppidō praefuerat, ūnus ex eīs, quī lēgātī dē pāce ad Caesarem vēnerant, nūntium ad eum mittit, nisi subsidium sibi summittātur, sēsē diūtius sustinēre nōn posse.

Caesar relieves the town, and strongly fortifies a camp.

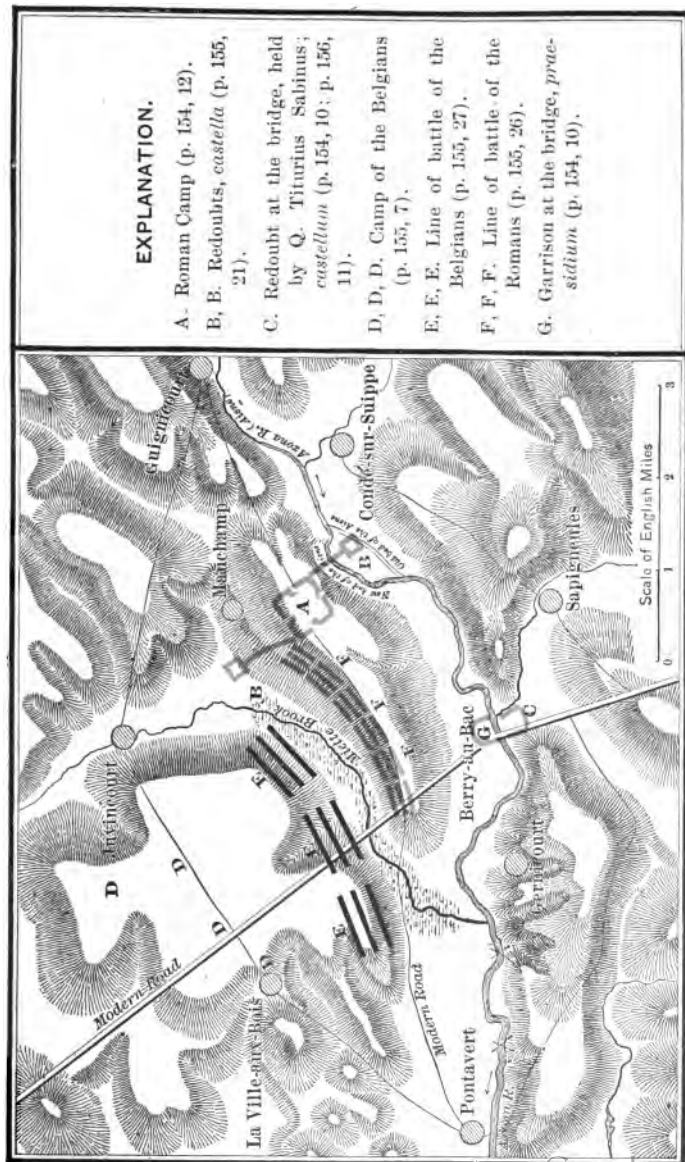
VII. Eō dē mediā nocte Caesar isdem ducibus ūsus, quī nūntiī ab Icciō vēnerant, Numidās et Crētās sagittariōs et
 30 funditōrēs Baleārēs subsidiō oppidānis mittit; quōrum ad-

THE BATTLE AT THE AISNE (AXONA).

To face p. 154.

Lib. II., 8-10.

PLAN IV.



ventū et Rēmīs cum spē dēfēnsiōnis studium prōpugnandi accessit, et hostibus eādem dē causā spēs potiundī oppidi discessit. Itaque paulisper apud oppidum morātī agrōsque Rēmōrum dēpopulātī, omnibus vicīs aedificiīsque, quōs adire potuerant, incēnsīs, ad castra Caesaris omnibus cōpiīs con- 5 tendērunt et ā milibus passuum minus duōbus castra posuerunt; quae castra, ut fūmō atque ignibus significābātur, amplius milibus passuum octō in lātitudinem patēbant.

VIII. Caesar primō et propter multitudinem hostium et propter eximiam opīniōnem virtūtis proeliō supersedēre sta- 10 tuit; cotīdiē tamen equestribus proeliīs, quid hostis virtūte posset et quid nostrī audērent, periclitābātur. Ubi nostrōs nōn esse infērīorēs intellēxit, locō prō castrīs ad aciem instruendam nātūrā opportūnō atque idōneō, quod is collis, ubi castra posita erant, paululum ex plānitīē ēditus tantum 15 adversus in lātitudinem patēbat, quantum locī aciēs instrūcta occupāre poterat, atque ex utrāque parte lateris dēiectūs habēbat et in frontem lēniter fastigātus paulatim ad plānitiem redībat, ab utrōque latere eius collis trānsversam fossam obdūxit circiter passuum quadringentōrum 20 et ad extrēmās fossās castella cōstituit ibique tormenta collocāvit, nē, cum aciem instrūxisset, hostēs, quod tantum multitudine poterant, ab lateribus pūgnantēs suōs circumvenīre possent. Hōc factō duābus legiōnibus, quās proximē cōscripserat, in castrīs relīctīs, ut, sī quō opus esset, sub- 25 sidiō dūcī possent, reliquās sex legiōnēs prō castrīs in aciē cōstituit. Hostēs item suās cōpiās ex castrīs ēductās instrūxerant.

The Belgae attack the position of Titurius, are repulsed, and disperse.

- IX. Palūs erat nōn m̃agna inter nostrum atque hostium exercitum. Hanc sī nostrī trānsīrent, hostēs exspectābant; nostrī autem, sī ab illis initium trānseundī fieret, ut impedītōs aggrederentur, parātī in armīs erant. Interim proeliō
 5 equestri inter duās aciēs contendēbātur. Ubi neutri trānseundī initium faciunt, secundjōre equitum proeliō nostrīs, Caesar suōs in castra redūxit. Hostēs prōtinus ex eō locō ad flūmen Axonam contendērunt, quod esse post nostra castra dēmōnstrātum est. Ibi vadīs repertīs partem suārum
 10 cōpiārum trādūcere cōnātī sunt, eō cōnsiliō, ut, sī possent, castellum, cui praeerat Quīntus Titūrius lēgātus, expūgnārent pontemque interscinderent; sī minus potuissent, agrōs Rēmōrum populārentur, quī m̃agnō nōbīs ūsuī ad bellum gerendum erant, commeātūque nostrōs prohibērent.
- 15 X. Caesar certior factus ab Titūriō omnem equitātum et levis armātūrae Numidās, funditōrēs sagittāriōsque pontem trādūcit atque ad eōs contendit. Ācriter in eō locō pūgnātum est. Hostēs impedītōs nostrī in flūmine aggressī m̃agnum eōrum numerum occidērunt; per eōrum corpora
 20 reliquōs audācissimē trānsīre cōnantēs multitudīne tēlōrum reppulērunt; prīmōs, quī trānsierant, equitātū circumventōs interfēcērunt.

Hostēs, ubi et dē expūgnandō oppidō et dē flūmine trānseundō spem sē fefellisse intellēxērunt neque nostrōs in
 25 locum inīquiōrem prōgredi pūgnandī causā vīdērunt, atque ipsōs rēs frūmentāria dēficere coepit, cōnsiliō convocātō cōstituērunt, optimum esse, domum suam quemque revertī, et, quōrum in finēs prīmum Rōmānī exercitum intrōdūxissent, ad eōs dēfendendōs undique convenīrent, ut potius in
 30 suis quam in aliēnis finibus dēcertārent et domesticīs cōpiīs

rei frumentariae uterentur. Ad eam sententiam cum reliquis causis haec quoque ratio eos deduxit, quod Diviciacum atque Aeduos finibus Bellovacorum appropinquare cognoverant. His persuaderi, ut diutius morarentur neque suis auxilium ferrent, non poterat.

5

XI. Ea re constituta, secunda vigilia magno cum strepitu ac tumultu castris egressi nullo certo ordine neque imperio, cum sibi quisque primum itineris locum peteret et domum pervenire properaret, fecerunt, ut consimilis fugae profectio videretur. Hac re statim Caesar per speculatores cognita, insidias veritus, quod, qua de causa discederent, nondum perspexerat, exercitum equitatumque castris continuit. Prima luce confirmata re ab exploratoribus, omnem equitatum, qui novissimum agmen moraretur, praemisit.

His Quintum Pedium et Lucium Aurunculium Cottam legatos praefecit; Titum Labienum legatum cum legionibus tribus subsequi iussit. Hi novissimos adorti et multa milia passuum prosecuti magnam multitudinem eorum fugientium conciderunt, cum ab extremo agmine, ad quos ventum erat, consisterent fortiterque impetum nostrorum militum sustinerent, priores, quod abesse a periculo viderentur, neque ullam necessitate neque imperio continerentur, exaudito clamore perturbatis ordinibus omnes in fugam sibi praesidium ponerent. Ita sine ullo periculo tantam eorum multitudinem nostri interfecerunt, quantum fuit diei spatium; sub occasum solis destiterunt seque in castra, ut erat imperatum, receperunt.

The Suessiones, Bellovaci, and Ambiani submit to Caesar. He learns about the Nervii.

XII. Postridie eius diei Caesar, prius quam se hostes ex terrore ac fuga recipere, in fines Suessionum, qui proximi

Rēmīs erant, exercitum dūxit et māgnō itinere cōfectō ad oppidum Noviodūnum contendit. Id ex itinere oppūgnāre cōnātus, quod vacuum ab dēfēnsōribus esse audiēbat, propter lātitudinem fossae mūrīque altitudinem, paucīs dēfens
5 dentibus, expūgnāre nōn potuit. Castrīs mūnītīs vīneās agere, quaeque ad oppūgnandum ūsuī erant, comparāre coepit. Interim omnis ex fugā Suessiōnum multitūdō in oppidum proximā nocte convēnit. Celeriter vīneīs ad oppidum āctīs, aggere iactō turribusque cōstitūtīs, mā
10 gnitudine operum, quae neque viderant ante Gallī neque audierant, et celeritāte Rōmānōrum permōtī lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē dēditionē mittunt et, petentibus Rēmīs, ut cōservārentur, impetrant.

XIII. Caesar obsidibus acceptīs prīmīs cīvītātis atque
15 ipsius Galbae rēgis duōbus filiīs, armīsque omnibus ex oppidō trāditīs, in dēditionem Suessiōnēs accēpit exercitumque in Bellovacōs dūcit. Quī cum sē suaque omnia in oppidum Brātuspantium contulissent, atque ab eō oppidō Caesar cum exercitū circiter milia passuum quīnque abesset,
20 omnēs māiōrēs nātū ex oppidō ēgressī manūs ad Caesarem tendere et vōce sīgnificāre coepērunt, sēsē in eius fidem ac potestātem venīre neque contrā populum Rōmānum armīs contendere. Item, cum ad oppidum accessisset castraque ibi pōneret, puerī mulierēsque ex mūrō passīs mani
25 bus suō mōre pācem ab Rōmānīs petiērunt.

XIV. Prō hīs Dīviciācus (nam post discessum Belgārum dīmissīs Aeduōrum cōpiīs ad eum reverterat) facit verba :

Bellovacōs omnī tempore in fidē atque amīcitiā cīvītātis
30 Aeduae fuisse; impulsōs ab suis prīncipibus, quī dīcerent, Aeduōs ā Caesare in servitūtem redāctōs omnēs indīgnitātēs contumēliāsque perferre, et ab Aeduīs dēfēcisse et populō

Rōmānō bellum intulisse. Quī ēius cōnsilī prīncipēs fuissent, quod intellexerent, quantam calamitātem civitatī intulissent, in Britanniam profūgisse. Petere nōn solum Bellovacōs, sed etiam prō hīs Aeduōs, ut suā clēmētiā ac mānsuetūdine in eōs utātur. Quod sī fēcērit, Aeduōrum auctōritātem apud omnēs Belgās amplificātūrum, quōrum auxiliis atque opibus, sī qua bella inciderint, sustentāre cōnsuerint.

XV. Caesar honōris Diviciācī atque Aeduōrum causā sēsē eōs in fidem receptūrum et cōservātūrum dixit; et quod erat civitās magnā inter Belgās auctōritāte atque hominum multitudīne praestābat, sexcentōs obsidēs poposcit. Hīs trāditis omnibusque armīs ex oppidō collātis, ab eō locō in finēs Ambianōrum pervēnit; quī sē suaque omnia sine morā dēdidērunt.

Eōrum finēs Nervii attingēbant; quōrum dē nātūrā mōribusque Caesar cum quaereret, sic reperiēbat: Nullum aditum esse ad eōs mercātōribus; nihil patī vinī reliquārumque rērum ad lūxuriā pertinentium inferri, quod hīs rēbus relanguēscere animōs eōrum et remitti virtutem existimarent; esse hominēs ferōs magnaeque virtūtis; increpitāre atque incūsāre reliquōs Belgās, quī sē populō Rōmānō dēdidissent patriamque virtutem prōiēcissent; cōfirmāre, sēsē neque lēgātōs missūrōs neque ūllam condiciōnem pācis acceptūrōs.

He marches against the Nervii, who attack him while encamping.

XVI. Cum per eōrum finēs trīduum iter fēcisset, inve-niēbat ex captivīs, Sabim flūmen ā castrīs suis nōn amplius milia passuum x abesse; trāns id flūmen omnēs Nervios cōnsēdisse adventumque ibi Rōmānōrum exspectāre ūnā cum Atrebātibus et Viromanduis, finitimīs suis

(nam hīs utrīsq̄ persuāserant, utī eandem bellī fortūnam experīrentur); exspectārī etiam ab hīs Aduatucōrum cōpiās atque esse in itinere; mulierēs, quīque per aetātem ad pūgnam inūtīlēs vidērentur, in eum locum conīēcisse, quō
 5 propter palūdēs exercituī aditus nōn esset.

XVII. Hīs rēbus cognitīs explōrātōrēs centuriōnēsque praemittit, quī locum idōneum castrīs dēligant. Cum ex dēditiciīs Belgīs reliquīsque Gallīs complūrēs Caesarem secūtī unā iter facerent, quīdam ex hīs, ut postea ex capti-
 10 vīs cognitum est, eōrum diērum cōsuētūdine itineris nostrī exercitūs perspectā, nocte ad Nervios pervēnērunt atque hīs dēmōnstrārunt, inter singulās legiōnēs impedimētōrum māgnūm numerum intercēdere, neque esse quicquam negōtī, cum prīma legiō in castra vēnisset reliquaeque
 15 legiōnēs māgnūm spatium abessent, hanc sub sarcinīs adorīrī; quā pulsā impedimētīsque dīreptīs futūrum, ut reliquae contrā cōsistere nōn audērent.

Adiuvābat etiam eōrum cōnsilium, quī rem dēferēbant, quod Nervii antīquitus, cum equitatū nihil possent (neque
 20 enim ad hōc tempus eī rei student, sed, quicquid possunt, pedestribus valent cōpiīs), quō facilius finitimōrum equitātum, sī praedandī causā ad eōs vēnissent, impedīrent, tenerīs arboribus incīsīs atque inflexīs crēbrisque in lātitudinem rāmīs enātīs et rubīs sentibusque interiectīs effēcerant, ut
 25 instar mūrī hae saepēs mūnimentum praeberent, quō nōn modo nōn intrārī, sed nē perspicī quidem posset. Hīs rēbus cum iter agminis nostrī impedīrētur, nōn omittendum sibi cōnsilium Nervii exīstimāvērunt.

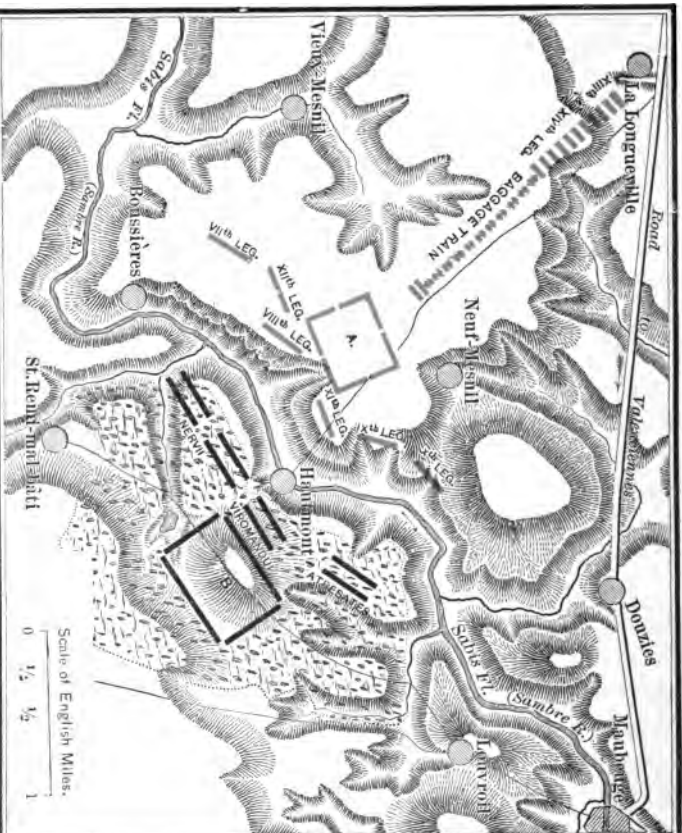
XVIII. Locī nātūra erat haec, quem locum nostrī castrīs
 30 dēlēgerant. Collis ab summō aequaliter declīvis ad flūmen Sabim, quod suprā nōmināvimus, vergēbat. Ab eō flūmine parī acclīvitāte collis nāscēbātur adversus huic et contrārius,

To face p. 161.

BATTLE AT THE SAMBRE (SABIS).

Lib. II., 19-27.

PLAN V.



EXPLANATION.

A. Roman Camp (p. 160, 29).

Leg. The Roman Legions, arranged as indicated in the text (p. 161, 9, 11; p. 163, 10, 19-23).

B. Camp of the Belgians. The dotted lines around it on all sides indicate the extent of the forest that covered the ground at the time of the battle (p. 161, 3; p. 163, 16).

Opposite the left of the Roman line stood the Atrebat; opposite the centre, the Viromandui; and opposite the right, the Nervii.

passūs circiter ducentōs infimus apertus, ab superiōre parte silvestris, ut nōn facile intrōsus perspicī posset. Intrā eās silvās hostēs in occultō sēsē continēbant; in apertō locō secundum flūmen paucae statiónēs equitum vidēbantur. Flūminis erat altitūdō pedum circiter trium. 5

XIX. Caesar equitātū praemissō subsequēbātur omnibus cōpiīs; sed ratiō ōrdōque agminis aliter sē habēbat, ac Belgae ad Nervios dētulerant. Nam quod hostibus appropinquābat, cōsuētūdine suā Caesar sex legiōnēs expeditās dūcēbat; post eās tōtius exercitūs impedimenta collocārat; 10 inde duae legiōnēs, quae proximē cōscriptae erant, tōtum agmen claudēbant praesidiōque impedimentis erant. Equitēs nostrī cum funditōribus sagittāriisque flūmen trāsgressī cum hostium equitātū proelium commiserunt. Cum sē illi identidem in silvās ad suos reciperent ac rūsus ex 15 silvā in nostrōs impetum facerent neque nostrī longius, quam quem ad finem porrēcta loca aperta pertinēbant, cēdentēs insequī audērent, interim legiōnēs sex, quae primae vēnerant, opere dīmēnsō castra mūnīre coepērunt.

Ubi prima impedimenta nostrī exercitūs ab eis, quī in 20 silvis abditī latēbant, vīsa sunt, quod tempus inter eos committendī proelī convēnerat, ut intrā silvās aciem ōrdinēsque cōstituerant atque ipsī sēsē cōfirmāverant, subitō omnibus cōpiīs prōvolāvērunt impetumque in nostrōs equitēs fēcērunt. His facile pulsīs ac prōturbātis, incredibīlī 25 celeritāte ad flūmen dēcucurrērunt, ut paene ūnō tempore et ad silvās et in flūmine et iam in manibus nostrīs hostēs vidērentur. Eādem autem celeritāte adversō colle ad nostra castra atque eos, quī in opere occupātī erant, contēdērunt. 30

His troops, taken unawares, are on one side victorious, on the other routed.

XX. Caesarī omnia unō tempore erant agenda: vēxillum prōpōnendum, quod erat insigne, cum ad arma concurrī oportēret, sīgnum tubā dandum, ab opere revocandī milītēs, quī paulō longius aggeris petendī causā prōcesse-
 5 rant, arcessendī, aciēs instruenda, milītēs cohortandī, sīgnum dandum. Quārum rerum māgnam partem temporis brevitas et incursus hostium impediēbat. Hīs difficultātibus duae res erant subsidiō, scientia atque ūsus militum, quod superioribus proeliis exercitātī, quid fierī oportēret, nō minus
 10 commodē ipsī sibi praescribere, quam ab aliīs docērī poterant, et quod ab opere singulisque legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs Caesar discēdere nisi munitis castris vetuerat. Hī propter propinquitatem et celeritatem hostium nihil iam Caesaris imperium expectābant, sed per se, quae vidē-
 15 bantur, administrābant.

XXI. Caesar necessariis rebus imperātis ad cohortandōs milītēs, quam in partem fors obtulit, decucurrit et ad legiōnem decimam dēvenit. Milītēs nōn longiōre orātiōne cohortātus, quam utī suae pristināe virtutis memoriam retinērent neu perturbārentur animō, hostiumque impetum
 20 fortiter sustinērent, quod nōn longius hostēs aberant, quam quō tēlum adigī posset, proeli committendī sīgnum dedit. Atque in alteram partem item cohortandī causā profectus pūgnantibus occurrit. Temporis tanta fuit exiguitās hostiumque tam parātus ad dīmicandum animus, ut nōn modo
 25 ad insīgnia accommodanda, sed etiam ad galeās induendās scūtisque tegimenta dētrahenda tempus dēfuerit. Quam quisque ab opere in partem cāsū dēvenit quaeque prima sīgna cōspexit, ad haec cōstitit, nē in quaerendīs suis
 30 pūgnandī tempus dīmitteret.

XXII. Instrūctō exercitū, magis ut loci nātūra dēiectusque collis et necessitās temporis, quam ut rei militāris ratiō atque ordō postulābat, cum dīversae legiōnēs aliae aliā in parte hostibus resisterent, saepibusque dēnsissimīs, ut ante dēmōstrāvimus, interiectīs prōspectus impedīrētur, 5 neque certa subsidia collocārī neque, quid in quāque parte opus esset, prōvidērī, neque ab ūnō omnia imperia administrārī poterant. Itaque in tantā rērum inīquitāte fortūnae quoque ēventūs variī sequēbantur.

XXIII. Legiōnis nōnae et decimae militēs, ut in sini- 10 strā parte aciē cōstiterant, pilīs ēmissīs cursū ac lassitudīne exanimātōs vulneribusque cōfectōs Atrebātēs (nam hīs ea pars obvēnerat) celeriter ex locō superiōre in flūmen compulērunt et trānsire cōnantēs īsecūtī gladiīs māgnam partem eōrum impedītā interfēcērunt. Ipsī trānsire 15 flūmen nōn dubitāvērunt et in locum inīquum prōgressī rūsus resistentēs hostēs redintegrātō proeliō in fugam cōiēcērunt. Item aliā in parte dīversae duae legiōnēs, ūndecima et octāva, prōfligātīs Viromanduis, quibuscum erant congressī, ex locō superiōre, in ipsīs flūminis rīpīs 20 proeliābantur. At tōtīs ferē castrīs ā fronte et ā sinistrā parte nūdātīs, cum in dextrō cornū legiō duodecima et nōn māgnō ab eā intervāllō septima cōstitisset, omnēs Nervī cōnfertissimō agmine duce Boduognātō, quī summam imperī tenēbat, ad eum locum contendērunt; quōrum pars 25 apertō latere legiōnēs circumvenīre, pars summum castrōrum locum petere coepit.

XXIV. Eōdem tempore equitēs nostrī levisque armātūrae peditēs, quī cum eis ūnā fuerant, quōs primō hostium impetū pulsōs dīxeram, cum sē in castra reciperent, adversīs 30 hostibus occurrēbant ac rūsus aliam in partem fugam petēbant, et cālōnēs, quī ab decumānā portā ac summō iugō

collis nostrōs victōrēs flūmen trānsisse cōspexerant, prae-
dandī causā ēgressī, cum respexissent et hostēs in nostrīs
castrīs versārī vīdissent, praecipitēs fugae sēsē mandābant.
Simul eōrum, quī cum impedimentīs veniebant, clāmor
5 fremitusque oriēbātur, aliique aliam in partem perterriti
ferēbantur.

Quibus omnibus rēbus permōti equitēs Trēverī, quōrum
inter Gallōs virtūtis opīniō est singulārīs, quī auxiliī causā
ā cīvitāte ad Caesarem missī vēnerant, cum multitudine
10 hostium castra nostra complērī, legiōnēs premī et paene
circumventās tenērī, cālōnēs, equitēs, funditōrēs, Numidās
diversōs dissipātōsque in omnēs partēs fugere vīdissent,
dēsperātīs nostrīs rēbus domum contendērunt; Rōmānōs
pulsōs superātōsque, castrīs impedimentisque eōrum hostēs
15 potītōs cīvitātī renūntiāvērunt.

At length the Nervii are defeated; the few not slain surrender.

XXV. Caesar ab decimae legiōnis cohortātiōne ad dex-
trum cornū profectus, ubi suōs urgērī signisque in ūnum
locum collātīs duodecimae legiōnis cōnfertōs mīlitēs sibi
ipsōs ad pūgnam esse impedimentō vīdit, quārtae cohortis
20 omnibus centuriōnibus occīsīs signiferōque interfectō, signō
āmissō, reliquārum cohortium omnibus ferē centuriōnibus
aut vulnerātīs aut occīsīs, in hīs prīcipilō P. Sextiō Baculō,
fortissimō virō, multīs gravibusque vulneribus cōnfectō, ut
iam sē sustinēre nōn posset, reliquōs esse tardiōrēs et nōn
25 nullōs ab novissimis dēsertō proeliō excēdere ac tēla vitāre,
hostēs neque ā fronte ex inferiōre locō subeuntēs intermit-
tere et ab utrōque latere instāre et rem esse in angustō
vīdit, neque ūllum esse subsidium, quod summittī posset;
scūtō ab novissimis ūnī mīlitī detrāctō, quod ipse eō sine
30 scūtō vēnerat, in prīmam aciem prōcessit centuriōnibusque

nōminātim appellātis reliquōs cohortātus milites signa inferre et manipulōs laxāre iussit, quō facilius gladiis ūti possent. Cūius adventū spēs illātā militibus ac redintegrātō animō, cum prō sē quisque in cōspectū imperātōris etiam in extrēmīs suis rēbus operam nāvare cuperet, paulum 5 hostium impetus tardātus est.

XXVI. Caesar, cum septimam legiōnem, quae iūxtā cōstiterat, item urgērī ab hoste vīdisset, tribūnōs militum monuit, ut paulātim sēsē legiōnēs coniungerent et conversa signa in hostēs inferrent. Quō factō cum aliīs aliī sub- 10 sidium ferrent, neque timērent, nē āversī ab hoste circumvenīrentur, audācius resistere ac fortius pūgnāre coepērunt.

Interim milites legiōnum duārum, quae in novissimō agmine praesidiō impedimentis fuerant, proeliō nūntiātō cursū incitātō in summō colle ab hostibus cōspiciēbantur, 15 et Titus Labiēnus castris hostium potitus et ex locō superiorē, quae rēs in nostris castris gererentur, cōspiciātus, decimam legiōnem subsidiō nostris misit. Quī cum ex equitum et cālōnum fugā, quō in locō rēs esset, quantōque in periculō et castra et legiōnēs et imperātor versārētur, 20 cognōvissent, nihil ad celeritātem sibi reliquī fēcērunt.

XXVII. Hōrum adventū tanta rērum commūtātiō est facta, ut nostrī, etiam quī vulneribus cōfectī prōcubuissent, scūtis innixī proelium redintegrārent, cālōnēs perterritōs hostēs cōspiciātī etiam inermēs armātis occurrerent, equi- 25 tēs vērō, ut turpitūdinem fugae virtūte dēlērent, omnibus in locis pūgnandō sē legiōnāriīs militibus praeferrent. At hostēs etiam in extrēmā spēs salutis tantam virtūtem praestitērunt, ut, cum primī eōrum cecidissent, proximī iacentibus insisterent atque ex eōrum corporibus pūgnārent; hīs 30 dēiectis et coacervātis cadāveribus, quī superessent, ut ex tumultō tēla in nostrōs conicerent et pila intercepta remit-

terent; ut nōn nēquiquam tantae virtūtis hominēs iudicārī dēbēret ausōs esse trānsīre lātissimum flūmen, ascendere altissimās rīpās, subīre inīquissimum locum, quae facilia ex difficillimīs animī māgnitūdō redēgerat.

- 5 XXVIII. Hōc proeliō factō et prope ad interneciōnem gente ac nōmine Nerviorum redāctō, māiōrēs nātū, quōs ūnā cum puerīs mulieribusque in aestuāria ac palūdēs coniectōs dīxerāmus, hāc pūgnā nūntiātā, cum victōribus nihil impeditum, victīs nihil tūtum arbitrārentur, omnium, quī
10 supererant, cōnsensū lēgātōs ad Caesarem mīserunt sēque eī dēdidērunt, et in commemorandā cīvitātis calamitāte ex sexcentīs ad trēs senātōrēs, ex hominum milibus LX vix ad quīngentōs, quī arma ferre possent, sēsē redāctōs esse dīxērunt. Quōs Caesar, ut in miserōs ac supplicēs ūsus miseri-
15 cordiā vidērētur, diligētissimē cōservāvit suisque finibus atque oppidīs ūtī iussit et finitimīs imperāvit, ut ab iniuriā et maleficiō sē suōsque prohibērent.

The Aduatuci gather in one stronghold, which Caesar besieges.

- XXIX. Aduatucī, dē quibus suprā scripsimus, cum omnibus cōpiīs auxiliō Nervīis venīrent, hāc pūgnā nūntiātā
20 ex itinere domum revertērunt; cūctīs oppidīs castellisque dēsertīs sua omnia in ūnum oppidum ēgregiē nātūrā mūnitum contulērunt. Quod cum ex omnibus in circuitū partibus altissimās rūpēs dēiectūsque habēret, ūnā ex parte lēniter acclīvis aditus in lātitudinem nōn amplius ducentō-
25 rum pedum relinquēbātur; quem locum duplicī altissimō mūrō mūnierant; tum māgnī ponderis saxa et praeacūtās trabēs in mūrō collocābant.

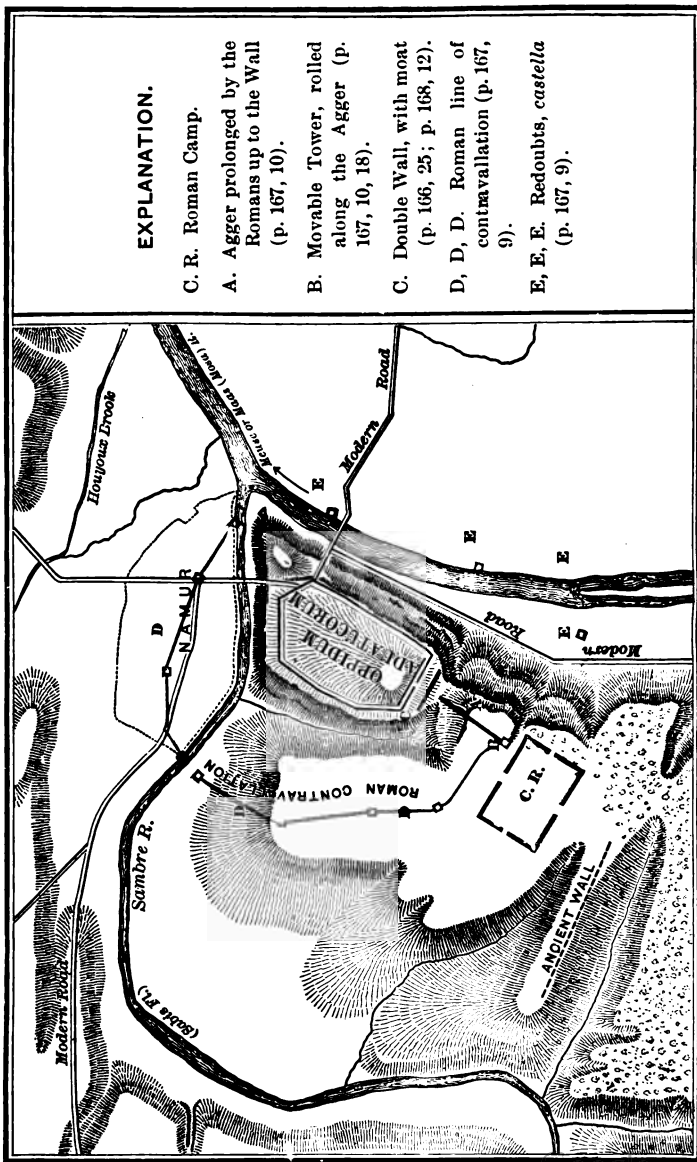
- Ipsī erant ex Cimbris Teutonisque prōgnāti, quī, cum iter in prōvinciam nostram atque Italiam facerent, eīs impedi-
30 mentīs, quae sēcum agere ac portāre nōn poterant, citrā

SIEGE OF THE STRONGHOLD OF THE ADUATUCI.

To face p. 166.

Lib. II., 28-33.

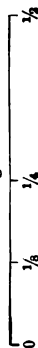
PLAN VI.



EXPLANATION.

- C. R. Roman Camp.
- A. Agger prolonged by the Romans up to the Wall (p. 167, 10).
- B. Movable Tower, rolled along the Agger (p. 167, 10, 18).
- C. Double Wall, with moat (p. 166, 25; p. 168, 12).
- D, D, D. Roman line of contravallation (p. 167, 9).
- E, E, E. Redoubts, *castella* (p. 167, 9).

Scale of English Miles.



Scale of Roman Miles.



flūmen Rhēnum dēpositis cūstōdiam ex suis ac praesidium sex milia hominum ūnā reliquērunt. Hī post eōrum obitum multōs annōs ā finitimis exagitātī, cum aliās bellum Inferrent, aliās illātum dēfenderent, cōnsensū eōrum omnium pāce factā, hunc sibi domiciliō locum dēlēgērunt. 5

XXX. Ac primō adventū exercitūs nostrī crebrās ex oppidō excursiōnēs faciēbant parvulisque proeliis cum nostris contendēbant; postea vāllō pedum XII, in circuitū xv milium crebrisque castellis circummūnītī oppidō sēsē continēbant. Ubi vineis actis aggere extructō turrim procul 10 cōstituī vidērunt, primum irrīdēre ex mūrō atque increpitāre vōcibus, quod tanta machinātiō ā tantō spatiō Institueretur: Quibusnam manibus aut quibus vīribus praesertim hominēs tantulae statūrae (nam plērumque omnibus Gallis prae māgnitūdine corporum suōrum brevitas nostra con- 15 temptuī est) tantī oneris turrim in mūrō sēsē collocāre posse cōfiderent?

They surrender, attempt treachery, are sold into slavery.

XXXI. Ubi vērō movērī et appropinquāre moenibus vidērunt, novā atque inūsitatā speciē commōtī lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē pāce mīsērunt, quī ad hunc modum 20 locūtī:

Nōn sē exīstimāre, Rōmānōs sine ope deōrum bellum gerere, quī tantae altitudinis machinātiōnēs tantā celeritāte prōmovēre possent, sē suaque omnia eōrum potestātī permittere dīxērunt. Ūnum petere ac dēprecārī: sī forte prō 25 suā clēmētiā ac mānsuētūdine, quam ipsī ab aliīs audīrent, statuisset, Aduatucōs esse cōservandōs, nē sē armīs dēspoliāret. Sibi omnēs ferē finitimōs esse inimicōs ac suae virtūtī invidēre; ā quibus sē dēfendere trāditis armīs nōn possent. Sibi praestāre, sī in eum cāsum dēdūcerentur, 30

quamvis fortunam a populo Rōmānō patī, quam ab hīs per cruciatum interficī, inter quōs dominārī cōsuēssent.

XXXII. Ad haec Caesar respondit:

Sē magis cōsuētūdine suā quam meritō eōrum civitatem
5 cōservātūrum, sī prius, quam mūrū ariēs attigisset, sē
dēdidissent; sed dēditionis nullam esse condiōnem nisi
armīs trāditīs. Sē id, quod in Nervii fēcisset, factūrum
finitimisque imperātūrum, nē quam dēditiciis populī Rō-
mānī iniūriam inferrent.

10 Rē nūntiātā ad suōs, quae imperārentur, facere dixērunt.
Armōrum magnā multitudīne dē mūrō in fossam, quae erat
ante oppidum, iactā, sic ut prope summam mūrī aggerisque
altitudinē acervi armōrum adaequārent, et tamen circiter
15 pidō retentā, portīs patefactis eō diē pāce sunt ūsī.

XXXIII. Sub vesperum Caesar portās claudī militēsque
ex oppidō exīre iussit, nē quam noctū oppidānī a militibus
iniūriam acciperent. Illī, ante initō, ut intellēctum est,
cōnsiliō, quod dēditione factā nostrōs praesidia dēductūrōs
20 aut dēnique indiligentius servātūrōs crēdiderant, partim
cum eis, quae retinuerant et cēlāverant, armīs, partim scūtīs
ex cortice factīs aut vīminibus intextīs, quae subitō, ut
temporis exiguitās postulābat, pellibus indūxerant, tertiā
vigiliā, quā minimē arduus ad nostrās mūnitiōnēs ascēnsus
25 vidēbātur, omnibus cōpiis repente ex oppidō ēruptionem
fēcērunt.

Celeriter, ut ante Caesar imperāverat, ignibus significā-
tiōne factā, ex proximīs castellīs eō concursus est, pūgnā-
tumque ab hostibus ita ācriter est, ut a virīs fortibus in
30 extrēmā spē salutis iniquō locō contrā eōs, quī ex vāllō tur-
ribusque tēla iacerent, pūgnārī dēbuit, cum in ūnā virtūte
omnis spēs salutis cōsisteret. Occīsīs ad hominū mili-

bus quattuor, reliquī in oppidum rēiectī sunt. Postridiē eius diēi refrāctīs portīs, cum iam dēfenderet nēmō, atque intrōmissīs militibus nostrīs, sectiōnem eius oppidi ūniversam Caesar vēdidit. Ab eīs, quī ēmerant, caputū numerus ad eum relātus est mīlium quīnquāgintā trium.

5

Several states along the coast are subdued by P. Crassus.

XXXIV. Eōdem tempore ā Pūbliō Crassō, quem cum legiōne ūnā miserat ad Venetōs, Venellōs, Osismōs, Coriosolitas, Esuviōs, Aulercōs, Redonēs, quae sunt maritimae cīvitātēs Ōceanumque attingunt, certior factus est, omnēs eas cīvitātēs in diciōnem potestātemque populī Rōmānī esse 10 redāctās.

The German tribes are impressed by Caesar's victories; the army goes into winter quarters; a thanksgiving is decreed at Rome.

XXXV. Hīs rēbus gestīs omnī Galliā pācātā, tanta hūius bellī ad barbarōs opīniō perlāta est utī ab eīs nātiōnibus, quae trāns Rhēnum incolerent, lēgātī ad Caesarem mitterentur, quī sē obsidēs datūrās, imperāta factūrās polli- 15 cērentur. Quās lēgātiōnēs Caesar, quod in Italiam Īllyricumque properābat, initā proximā aestāte ad sē revertī iussit. Ipse, in Carnutēs, Andēs, Turonōs, quaeque cīvitātēs propinquae hīs locīs erant, ubi bellum gesserat, legiōnibus in hīberna dēductīs, in Italiam profectus est. Ob 20 easque rēs ex litterīs Caesaris in diēs quīndecim supplicatiō dēcrēta est, quod ante id tempus accidit nullī.

RULES FOR PRONUNCIATION OF GREEK AND LATIN PROPER NAMES.¹

Accent.

1. A word may have two, or even three or four, accents; *e.g.* Flám-i-ní-nus, Cáp-pa-dó-ci-a.
2. If only two syllables precede the primary accent, the secondary accent is on the first; *e.g.* Ár-ta-xér-xes.
3. In words of two syllables, accent the first; *e.g.* Ré-mus, Lém-nus.
4. In words of more than two syllables, accent the penult, if long, otherwise the antepenult; *e.g.* Col-lā-tf-nus, Lā-vín-i-a, Co-rín-thus.

Syllabication.

1. Two vowels coming together, and not forming a diphthong, must be divided; *e.g.* Dē'us.
2. A single consonant, or mute with *l* or *r*, between the last two vowels of a word, or between the vowels of any two unaccented syllables, must be joined to the latter vowel; *e.g.* Có-clēs, Pél-o-pon-nē'-sus.
3. A single consonant, or mute with *l* or *r*, before an accented vowel must be joined to that vowel, so also a single consonant after it, except in the penult; *e.g.* Trás-u-mē-nus.

EXCEPTIONS.

1. A single consonant, or mute with *l* or *r*, after an accented *a*, *e*, or *o*, and before two vowels the first of which is *e*, *i*, or *y*, must be joined to the following vowel; *e.g.* Pau-sā'-ni-as.
2. A single consonant, or mute with *l* or *r*, after an accented *u*, must be joined to the following vowel; *e.g.* Fú-ri-us, Ú-ti-ca, except Púb-li-us.

Sounds of the Letters.

VOWELS.

1. A vowel ending an accented syllable has its *long English* sound; *e.g.* Tor-quá-tus, Gor-tý-na.

¹ These rules were prepared by Professor A. H. Pattengill, of the University of Michigan, and have been used by him for several years. They are given without change, except that the examples have been taken as far as possible from the Text.

The marks of quantity are intended to indicate the sound of the vowels in *English*.

- (a) But *a* at the end of an unaccented syllable has the sound of *a* in *America* ; *e.g.* *Va-lér-i-us*, *Lámp-sa-cus*.
 - (b) *E*, *o*, and *u* at the end of an unaccented syllable have nearly the same sound as when accented, only not so distinct ; *e.g.* *Lác-e-dé-mon*.
 - (c)
 - (1) *I* final has its long sound ; *e.g.* *Dél-phī*.
 - (2) *I* at the end of unaccented syllable, not final, has an obscure sound much like *e* ; *e.g.* *Át-ti-ca*.
 - (3) *I* has its long sound in the first syllable of a word, the second of which is accented, when it either stands alone before a consonant ; *e.g.* *I-bé-rus* ; or ends a syllable before a vowel ; *e.g.* *Dĩ-á-na*.
 - (d) *Y* = *I* in all cases.
 - 2. A vowel has its *short* English sound when followed by a consonant in the same syllable ; *e.g.* *Scíp-i-o*, *Or-chóm-e-nos*.
- Exception. — *Es* at the end of a word is pronounced like the English word *ease* ; *e.g.* *Mil-tĩ-a-des*.

Diphthongs.

- 1. *Ae* and *æ* = *e* in all cases ; *e.g.* *Læ-ví-nus*, *Bæ-ó-ti-a*.
- 2. When *ai*, *ei*, *oi*, and *yi* are accented and followed by another vowel, the *i* = initial *y*, as in *your*, and the vowel before it has its long sound ; *e.g.* *A-chá-i-a* (pronounced *A-chá-ya*).
- 3. *Au* = *aw*, in *law* ; *e.g.* *Clau-di-us*, *Tau-rus*.
- 4. *Eu* = *u* long ; *e.g.* *Eu-boé-a*.

Consonants.

The consonants have in general the same sounds as in English.

- 1. *C* and *g* are soft before *e*, *i*, *y*, *æ* and *œ* ; *e.g.* *A-gés-i-lá-us*, *Cor-cý-ra*.
- 2. *Ch* always has the sound of *k* ; *e.g.* *Chi-os*, *Chá-bri-as*.
- 3. *C*, *s*, and *t* before *i* preceded by an accented syllable and followed by a vowel have the sound of *sh* ; *e.g.*, *Stic-y-on* (*Sfsh-e-on*), *Bæ-ó-ti-a*.
- 4. After *s*, *t*, or *x*, *t* keeps its hard sound ; *e.g.* *Clas-tíd-i-um*. So also in the termination, *-tion*.

NOTE. — These rules are not intended to be complete, but they are complete enough for all practical purposes. The most important rules are those for syllabication, and without a correct knowledge of these, accuracy is impossible.

HINTS TO THE PUPIL.¹

I. *Pronunciation and Reading of the Latin.* — First read the assigned lesson through, aloud if possible, in the original, taking care to pronounce correctly, and to indicate clearly the distinction between long and short vowels. Read the directions for pronunciation in your grammar.² Observe that the pronunciation of *u* is like that in English *rude*, not as in *tune*, *unite*, etc. Notice also that the *ē*, *ī*, *ō*, *ū* differ from *e*, *i*, *o*, *u* not only in quantity, but in *quality* as well, the latter being *close*, and the former *open* vowels. Be careful about the pronunciation of consonant *i*, of *v*, of *bs* and *bt*, of *c*, *g*, *s*, and *x*, and of the aspirates (*ph*, *ch*, *th*). Of two doubled consonants each is distinctly sounded; e.g. *il-le*, *Metēl-lus*. This is not the case in English; e.g. in *wholly*.

Be careful to place the accent correctly.³ Remember that the accent depends not on the quantity of the *vowels*, but of the *syllables*; e.g. *Metēl-lus*, *profēc-tus*.

As you read, try to divide the sentences into parts, according to the grammatical relations of the words to one another. These will often correspond to the marks of punctuation, but not always: e.g. *Post hunc | Servius Tullius suscepit imperium, | genitus ex nobili femina | captivā tamen et famulā.* |

Try to understand the meaning of the Text as far as possible, before translating it into English. Look up in the *Vocabulary* the words whose meaning you do not know, and try to fix their signification permanently in your mind. It will help the memory, if you notice the derivation of the words, or if you associate them with English words which are descended from them. **Do not look up the same word day after day, but learn its meaning the first time you meet it.**

II. *Translation into English.* — When you have read the lesson carefully in Latin, translate it into the best possible English. Remember that Latin and English are different languages with different idioms, and

¹ These *Hints* are the result of practical experience in the class-room, and an attempt has been made to warn the pupil against the errors which he is constantly liable to make.

² B. 3; A. 16; H. 5-7.

³ B. 6; A. 19; H. 17-18.

that the one cannot be translated word for word into the other. Keep as close as possible to the original; but *do not attempt to translate literally*, when the Latin idiom differs from the English. *E.g. pollicitus est sē hōc facturum esse*, 'he promised that he would do this'; *eā rē cognitā*, 'when this was known,' 'since this was known,' etc., according to the context.

Observe that many Latin words cannot be translated by the corresponding English word: for example *generōsus*. Note the Latin derivation and the exact meaning of such words.

Avoid such stereotyped translations as *ille*, 'that one'; *quīdam*, 'a certain one'; *quidem*, 'indeed'; *ipse*, 'self' or 'very.' Find out what the exact force of the word is in each instance, and render it accordingly.

III. *History, Geography, Mythology, and Antiquities.* — In order to read the Latin authors easily and appreciatively, it is necessary not only to have the ability to understand and to translate the text, but to gain as well a knowledge of the historical environment, and of the conditions of Roman life. This may be acquired gradually, by carefully noticing all references of that nature. The necessary information is given in the *Notes* and *Vocabulary*. In the case of geographical names, do not be content to be told the location of a place, but find its exact position on the map. If the *Vocabulary*, for example, tells you that Sparta was the capital of Laconia, turn to the map of Greece, and find out where Laconia was situated, and in what part of the state Sparta was located.

IV. *Grammatical Drill.* — The study of constructions is valuable and necessary, not for its own sake, but as a means of translating and of writing Latin¹ correctly. For both purposes it is necessary to understand the meaning of the cases, and of the moods and tenses. Look up all grammatical references.

¹ See the *Exercises for Translation into Latin*, p. 315.

NOTES.

I. FABLES.

1. *The Hawk and the Doves.*

Page 27. 1. Columbæ: nom. pl., subject of *rogāvērunt*. For the agreement see B.¹ 254, 1; A. 204; H. 460. **mīlvi:** objective gen., depending on *metū*. See B. 200; A. 217; H. 396, III. **metū:** 'because of fear,' 'through fear'; abl. of cause. See B. 219; A. 245; H. 413. **accipitrem:** notice that the nom. case appears in the title of the fable. **rogāvērunt:** this verb may take two objects; see B. 178, 1, *a*; A. 239, 2, *c*; H. 374. In this instance *accipitrem* is one of the objects, while the other is the purpose-clause *ut . . . dēfenderet*, which is therefore called a substantive clause; see B. 282, 1; 295, 1; A. 331; H. 497; 498, 1. Trans. 'asked a hawk to defend them.' **eās:** 'them'; the dem. pron. is often used as a third personal pron.

2. Ille: 'he': *i.e.* *accipiter*. Cf. *eās* above. **annuit:** note the deriv. and lit. meaning. See Vocab. **in columbārium:** note the meaning of *in* with the acc. See B. 143; A. 152, *c*; 153; H. 435, *n.* 1; 435, 1. **receptus:** 'when he had been received.' Do not trans. the perf. pass. part. literally; in this case see B. 337, 2, *a*; A. 292; H. 549, 1. **ūnō diē:** 'in a single day.' For the case see B. 231; A. 256, 1; H. 429. **3. quam:** 'than.' **longō tempore:** see note on *ūnō diē*, l. 2, above. **4. potuisset:** B. 304, 1; A. 308; H. 510. The condition is implied in

¹ B. = Bennett's Latin Grammar; A. = Allen and Greenough's, Revised edition; H. = Harkness's, the 'Standard' edition. References like this, p. 10, l. 8, are to the pages of this book. Translations of Latin words or phrases are in single quotation marks. The explanations of proper names, and the location of places, are given mainly in the Vocabulary.

abl. = "ablative"; abs. = "absolute"; cf. (*cōnfer*) = "compare"; sc. (*scilicet*) = "supply," "understood"; n. = "note"; Rem. = "remark"; Vocab. = "Vocabulary," at the end of the book; dir. disc. = "direct discourse"; ind. disc. = "indirect discourse" (*ōrātiō obliqua*); constr. = "construction"; l. = "line"; p. = "page"; pp. = "pages"; lit. = "literal," "literally"; trans. = "translate" or "translation"; deriv. = "derivation."

For other abbreviations, see the list preceding the Vocabulary.

longō tempore, which = 'if he had tried for a long time.' See B. 305, 1; A. 310, a. **ēdere**: a so-called complementary inf., depending upon *potuisset*. B. 328, 1; A. 271; H. 533, 1, 2. **5. malōrum**: 'of the wicked.' The adj. is here used as a noun; see Vocab. and B. 236, 1; A. 188; H. 441. **patrōcinium . . . vitandum esse**: ind. disc. Study carefully B. 313; 314, 1; A. 335; 336, 1, 2; H. 522; 523, 1. Trans. by a clause introduced by 'that.' For the meaning of *vitandum* see B. 337, 7; A. 294; H. 543; 466, n.

2. The Mouse and the Kite.

6. laqueis: for the case see B. 218; A. 248, c, 1; H. 420. **irrētītus**: 'that had become entangled.' See note on *acceptus*, l. 2. **mūsculum**: a dimin. of *mūs*. On the meaning of the suffix *-culus* see B. 148; A. 164, a; H. 321. **exōrāvit**: note the force of the prep. *ex-*. Cf. *exōrāre* with *ōrāre*; see Vocab. **ut . . . liberāret**: 'to free.' See note on *ut . . . defenderet*, l. 1 above. **eum**: i.e. *mīlvum*. **corrōsis plagis**: 'by gnawing the nets.' See B. 227; A. 255; H. 431. Do not trans. the abl. abs. literally. **7. Quō factō**: 'when this had been done,' i.e. when the mouse had gnawed the nets. See note on *corrōsis plagis* above. Note the trans. of *quō*; we have here, as is often the case, a rel. pron. introducing a sentence in which in Eng. we should have a dem. pron. **9. ostendit**: what is the object of this verb; i.e. what does the fable show? **quam**: 'what,' the interrog. pron. used as an adj. **malī**: see note on *malōrum*, l. 5 above. **prō**: 'in return for.' **beneficiis**: deriv.; see Vocab. **10. reddere**: see note on *ēdere*, l. 4 above. **soleant**: a semi-deponent verb; see B. 114, 1; A. 136; H. 268, 3; 465, 2, n. 2. For the mood see B. 300, 1; A. 334 and prefatory n.; H. 529, 1.

3. The Crane and the Peacock.

11. grue: for the declension see B. 41, 2; A. 60, a; H. 66, 2. **suās**: B. 85; A. 196; H. 448; 449. **explicāns**: 'that was spreading out.' **Quanta**: takes its gen. and number from *fōrmōsitās*. **12. inquit**: a defective verb; see B. 134; A. 144, b; H. 297, 11, 2. **fōrmōsitās**: this word, with *dēfōrmitās*, *levitās*, and *tarditās*, is a predicate noun; see B. 167; 168; A. 176; H. 362. **14. Monet . . . nē . . . contemnāmus**: 'warns us not to look down on.' See note on *ut . . . defenderet*, l. 1 above. **bonum**: 'good thing,' 'blessing.' **quod**: antecedent? see B. 250, 1; A. 198; H. 445, n. **nōbīs**: for the constr. see B. 187, 1; A. 225; H. 384, 11. **15. alia**: for the trans. cf. *bonum*, in l. 14. **16. māiōra**: see note on *alia*, l. 15 above.

4. *The Peacock.*

Page 28. 1. **graviter** : for the formation of this adv. see B. 76, 1; A. 148, b; H. 304, iv. **apud** : 'in the presence of.' The peacock was sacred to Juno. **dominam** : for the constr. see B. 169, 1, 2; A. 184; H. 363. 2. **quod . . . negāta esset** : the subj. because the reason is given as that of the peacock, not of the writer of the fable. See B. 286, 1; A. 321; H. 516. **sibi** : see note on *suās*, p. 27, l. 11 above. **dum** : 'while.' 3. **avis** : see note on *dominam*, l. 1. **tam parum** : 'not very'; lit. 'so little.' **cantū** : for the case see B. 226; A. 253; H. 424. **Cui** : for the use of the rel. as a connective see note on *quō factō*, p. 27, l. 7 above. **et meritō** : sc. *hōc ita est*, i.e. that the peacock excels in beauty but not in song, while the reverse is true of the nightingale. 4. **bona** : for the trans. see note on *bonum*, p. 27, l. 14 above. **in ūnum** : 'upon one (creature).' **cōnferri oportuit** : 'ought not to have been bestowed.' On *oportuit* see B. 138, 11; A. 146, c; H. 298; 299; and on its use with the pres. inf., B. 270, 2; A. 288, a; H. 537, 1.

5. *The Geese and the Cranes.*

6. **eōdem** : notice that only the first part of the word is declined. **quondam** : 'once upon a time.' Note the order, which is a common one in Latin. 7. **Adveniente dominō** : abl. abs. expressing time. How should it be translated? When does the abl. sing. of the pres. part. end in -e, and when in -i? See B. 70, 3; A. 87, a; H. 157, n. **facile** : adv.; see Vocab. and B. 77, 3; A. 148, d; H. 304, 1, 3, 1). **āvolābant** : 'flew away'; note the deriv. 8. **impeditī** : B. 337, f; A. 292; H. 549, 1. **gravitātē** : for the case see B. 219; A. 245; H. 413. **dēprehēnsī** : sc. *sunt*. 10. **pauperēs** : used substantively; cf. *malōrum*, p. 27, l. 5. **cum potentiōribus** : see B. 222; A. 248, a; H. 419, 1. 11. **illī** : i.e. *potentiōrēs*. **salvī** : a pred. adj.; see B. 233, 2; A. 186, b, 1; H. 438, 2.

6. *The She-goat and the Wolf.*

12. **in** : 'upon.' 13. **inquit** : what is the subject? **loca** : note that *locus* has two forms for the n. pl.; for the difference in meaning see B. 60, 2; A. 78, 2, b; H. 141. **hūc** : what is the difference in meaning between *hic*, *hūc*, and *hinc*? See Vocab. 14. **in campōs** : see note on *in columbārium*, p. 27, l. 2. 15. **Cui** : see note on *Cui*, l. 3 above. **Mihī nōn est in animō** : 'I do not intend'; note the lit. meaning. On *mihi* see B. 190; A. 231; H. 387. 16. **dulcia tūtis**

praepōnere: this phrase is the subject of *est*. On *dulcia* and *tūtis* see B. 236, 2; A. 188; H. 441, 1. On *tūtis*, B. 187, III; A. 228; H. 386. *dulcia* is the object of *-pōnere*, while *tūtis* is governed by *prae-*.

7. The Dog and the Oxen.

17. iacēbat: distinguish in meaning between *iaceō* and *iaciō*. **bovēs**: for the declension see B. 41; A. 60, b; H. 66. **lātrandō**: 'by barking,' a gerund expressing means; see B. 338, 4; A. 301; H. 541; 542, IV. **18. boum**: for the constr. see B. 201; A. 216, a, 2; H. 397, 2. **Quanta**: see note on *Quanta*, p. 27, l. 11. **ista**: carries with it an idea of contempt. See B. 246, 4; A. 102, c; H. 450, 1, N. **19. quod nōn pateris**: cf. *quod . . . negāta esset*, p. 28, l. 2. What mood and tense is *pateris*? What does the mood denote? **ut . . . vescāmur**: see note on *ut . . . dēfenderet*, p. 27, l. 1. **cibō**: for the case see B. 218, 1; A. 249; H. 421, 1. **ipse**: intensive; 'yourself.' **20. velis . . . possis**: why subj.? See B. 283; A. 320; H. 503. For the conjugation of *velis* see B. 130; A. 138; H. 293.

8. The Oxen.

22. In . . . pāscēbantur: cf. the beginning of Fable 5. **concordiā**: deriv.? See Vocab. **23. sic**: 'so,' 'therefore,' *i.e.* because of the *māximā concordiā*. **ab . . . incursiōne**: see B. 214; A. 243; H. 413. Note the position of *ferārum*; for the case see B. 199; A. 213, 1; H. 396, II.

Page 29. **1. discidiō . . . ortō**: what does the abl. abs. denote? How should it be translated? Note the position of *inter eōs*. . . **petiti**: sc. *sunt*. **3. quantum boni**: 'how much good.' See note on *boum*, p. 28, l. 18. **sit**: for the mood see note on *soleant*, p. 27, l. 10.

9. The Ass.

4. pelle: see note on *laqueis*, p. 27, l. 6 above. **indūtus**: 'clad.' **5. tamquam**: 'just as if.' **esset**: for the mood and tense see B. 307, 1; A. 312; H. 513, II. **dum . . . movet**: for the mood and tense see B. 293, 1; A. 276, e; H. 519, 1. **celerius**: 'rather quickly'; see B. 240, 1; A. 93, a; H. 444, 1. **6. unde**: 'for this reason,' *i.e.* because *aurēs ēminēbant*. **agnitus . . . abductus est**: 'was recognized and taken away.' **7. petulantiae**: gen. case modifying *poenās*. **poenās dedit**: see Vocab. under *poenās*. **8. honoribus**: abl. of cause.

10. *The Woman and the Hen.*

10. mulier quaedam: 'a woman.' Notice that *quidam* (see Vocab.) is very frequently equivalent to the Eng. indef. article. **11. pariēbat:** principal parts? Cf. *parō* and *pāreō*. **Hinc:** 'from this circumstance,' 'for this reason,' *i.e.* because *collidē ovum pariēbat aureum* (gallina). **coepit:** sc. *mulier*. **illam . . . cēlāre:** in ind. disc. after *suspiciārī*; see note on *patrōcinium . . . vitandum esse*, p. 27, l. 5. *illam = gallinam*. **12. repperit:** from *reperiō*. Notice the spelling of the perfect, which was originally *-peperi*; hence the *pp.* **13. nisi:** 'except.' **quod:** = *id quod*. **14. divitiis:** for the case see note on *tūtis*, p. 28, l. 16 above. **minōrēs:** sc. *divitiās*.

11. *The Fox and the Grapes.*

15. in: 'upon.' **cōspicāta:** note the gender, and see B. 15, b, n. 2; A. 30, b; H. 43, 3. **16. sī . . . posset:** 'to see whether it could.' See B. 300, 3, a; A. 334, f; H. 529, II, 1, n. 1. **17. defatigāta:** sc. *vulpēs*. **18. etiam:** 'also,' *i.e.* sour as well as hard to get. **acerbae:** sc. *eae = uvae*. **reperās . . . tollerem:** cf. *longō tempore . . . potuisset*, p. 27, l. 3. 'I would not pick them up (*tollerem*), if I found them (*reperās*) in the road.' **19. multōs . . . contemnere:** ind. disc. with *docet*. **20. sē . . . posse:** ind. disc. with *dēspērent*.

12. *The Wolf and the Crane.*

21. os: what two words of different meanings have this same form? Note the difference in quantity. See Vocab. **inhaeserat:** notice the tense. **Mercēde:** for the case see B. 225; A. 252; H. 422. **condūcit:** for the tense see B. 259, 3; A. 276, d; H. 467, III. **22. quī . . . extrahat:** 'to remove it'; a rel. clause of purpose. See B. 282, 2; A. 317, 2; H. 497, I. **Hōc:** *i.e.* the removal of the bone. **longitūdine:** abl. of cause. **facile:** see note on *facile*, p. 28, l. 7. **23. Cum . . . postulāret:** for the mood see B. 288, I, b; A. 325; H. 521, II, 2. **24. dentibus infrendēns:** 'gnashing his teeth.' Observe that in Latin the abl. of means is used; lit. 'gnashing *with* his teeth.' **Num:** learn the force of *num*, *nōne*, and *-ne* in interrog. sentences. See B. 162, 2, a-c; A. 210, a, c; H. 351, I, n. 1 and n. 3. **mercēs:** a pred. noun. What is the subject of *vidētur*? **25. vidētur:** for the special meaning of *videō* in the pass. see Vocab. **quod:** 'that.'

II. ROMAN HISTORY.

§ 1. Page 30. 1. **Antiquissimis**: 'very early.' See B. 240, 2; A. 93, b; H. 444, 1. **temporibus**: for the case see B. 230; A. 256, 1; H. 429. **in Italiam**: for the meaning of *in* with the acc. see B. 143; A. 152, c; 153; H. 435, n. 1; 435, 1. **vēnisse dicitur**: 'is said to have come,' the pass. personal constr. See B. 332, c; A. 330, a, 1 and b, 1; H. 534, 1. Notice that the action of the verb *vēnisse* takes place before that of *dicitur*. See B. 270, 1; A. 288; H. 537. What would be the meaning of *venire dicitur*; of *ventūrus esse dicitur*?

2. **Iāniculō**: 'the Janiculum,' a hill on the west side of the river Tiber. See Vocab. **eamque Sāturniam**: two accusatives, objects of *appellāvit*, both referring to the same thing, the latter being a pred. acc. See B. 177, 1; A. 239, 1, a; H. 373, 1. 3. **Italōs . . . cultūram**: two accusatives, objects of *docuit*, one referring to the person affected, the other to the result produced. See B. 178, 1, b; A. 239, 2, c; H. 374. **prīmus . . . docuit**: 'was the first to teach.' See B. 241, 2; A. 191; H. 442, n. **Prīmum**, in place of *prīmus*, would mean 'the first thing he did was to teach.'

§ 2. 5. **in illis regiōnibus**: for the constr. see B. 228; A. 258, c, 1; H. 425. **imperāvit**: here used intransitively, or absolutely. See B. 174, a; A. 175, b, n. 2; H. 371, III, n. 2, 4. **Sub**: 'under the rule of.' 6. **Trōia**: Troy was captured and destroyed by the allied forces of the Greeks, under the lead of Agamemnon, king of Mycenae. The event is supposed to have taken place at the beginning of the twelfth century B.C. **in Asiā**: on the meaning of *in* with the abl. see B. 143; A. 152, c; 153; H. 435, n. 1; 435, 1. Cf. *in Italiam*, l. 1 above. **Hinc**: 'from this place,' 'thence,' i.e. from Troy. Learn from the Vocab. the meanings of *hic*, *hūc*, *hinc*. **Aenēās, Anchīsae**: see Vocab. For the declension of these Greek nouns see B. 22; A. 37; H. 50. **filius**: for the constr. see B. 169, 1, 2; A. 184; H. 363.

7. **cum multis Trōiānīs**: abl. of accompaniment. See B. 222; A. 248, a; H. 419, 1. **quibus**: for the case see B. 187, II, a; A. 227; H. 385, II, n. 3. **Graecōrum**: see note on *Trōia*, l. 6 above. 8. **aufūgit**: meaning of *au-*? What is the length of the root vowel in the present tense? See Vocab. **pervēnit**: force of *per-*. What is the quantity of the root vowel in the pres.? **eī benignē receptō . . . dedit**: 'received him kindly and gave to him.' Note the lit. trans., and see B. 336, 3; A. 290; H. 550. For the case of *eī* see B. 187, 1; A. 225;

H. 384, II. 9. **Lāvīniam**: see note on *filius*, l. 6 above. 10. **con-**
iugis: objective gen. with *honōrem*. See B. 200; A. 217; H. 396, III.
quam . . . **Lāvīnium**: see note on *eamque Sāturniam*, l. 2 above.

§ 3. 12. **post**: governs what word? See B. 350, 7, a; H. 569, II, 3.
13. **sēdem rēgnī**: 'seat of government.' 14. **in**: 'on,' 'upon.'
Monte Albānō: see Vocab. **Albam Longam**: the city was so called
because it stretched in a long line along the *mōns Albānus*: **nūncu-**
pāvit: derivation? See Vocab. 15. **eum**: 'him.' For this use of
the dem. pron. see B. 247, 2; A. 102, d; H. 186, IV. 16. **ā Lāvīniā**:
abl. of source. See B. 215; A. 244, a, r.; H. 415, II. **ad Rōmam**
conditam: 'until the founding of Rome.' Note the lit. trans. and see
B. 337, 5; A. 292, a; H. 549, 5, n. 2. The traditional date of the found-
ing of Rome is 753 B.C. 17. **Albae**: locative case. How translated?
See B. 232, 1; A. 258, c, 2; H. 425, II.

§ 4. 18. **hōrum**: i.e. of those who ruled at Alba. **rēgum**: what
use of the gen.? See B. 201; A. 216, a, 2; H. 397, 2. **sē** . . .
esse: inf. with subject acc. in ind. disc. introduced by *dīcēbat*. Study
carefully B. 313; 314, 1; A. 335; 336, 1, 2; H. 522; 523, II. Trans.
'that he was.' Notice that *esse* represents time contemporaneous with
that of *dīcēbat*. *sē* is a reflexive pron. See B. 85; A. 196; H. 448; 449.
Iove: the nom. case is *Iuppiter*. See B. 41; A. 60, b; H. 66, 3. For
the case see B. 217, 1; A. 247; H. 417. 19. **dīcēbat**: 'was wont to
say.' See B. 260, 2; A. 277; H. 469, II. **cum** . . . **tonāret**: on
the mood see B. 288, 1, b; A. 325; H. 521, II, 2. *tonāret* is an imper-
sonal verb. See B. 138; A. 145; 146, a; H. 298; 300. **mīlitibus**
imperāvit: see note on *quibus*, l. 7 above. **ut** . . . **percuterent**:
'to strike,' a subst. clause of purpose. See B. 295, 1; A. 331; H. 497;
498, I.

20. **hastīs**: abl. of means or instrument; B. 218; A. 248, c, 1; H.
420. **multō clārīōrem**: 'much louder.' For the case of *multō* see
B. 223; A. 250; H. 423. **hunc sonum** . . . **esse**: 'that this sound
was'; see note on *sē* . . . *esse*, l. 18 above. 21. **quam tonitrum**:
tonitrum is in the same case as the thing with which it is compared
(*sonum*); see B. 217, 2; A. 247, a; H. 417, 1. What other way of ex-
pressing comparison? cf. *Iove*, l. 18 above. **ictus**: sc. *est*.

§ 5. 23. **Proca**: the twelfth in the series of the Alban kings. See B.
21, 1; A. 35 exc.; H. 48, 5. 24. **Hōrum**: see note on *rēgum*, l. 18
above. **minor nātū**: 'the younger.' For the case of *nātū* see B. 226;
A. 253; H. 424.

Page 31. 1. utrum . . . vellet, an bona : sc. *habēre* ; a double ind. question, depending on *optiōnem dedit*. See B. 162, 4 ; A. 211 ; II. 353 ; and for the mood of *vellet*, B. 300, 4 ; A. 334 ; H. 529, 1, and 11, 3. **2. reliquisset :** the plup. and not the perf. is used because the action of the verb is prior to that of *vellet*, upon which it depends. The subj. is used because *quae . . . reliquisset* is a part of the ind. quest. This use is sometimes called subj. *by attraction* ; see B. 324, 1 ; A. 342 ; H. 529, 11.

§ 6. 4. ut . . . possidēret : a purpose clause, expressing the design of Amulius in killing the son of Numitor. See B. 282 ; A. 317 ; H. 497. **5. frātris :** i.e. of whom ? **filiam . . . Vestālem virginem fēcit :** see note on *eamque Sātūrniam*, p. 30, l. 2. The Vestal Virgins were priestesses of Vesta, the goddess of the hearth. They were bound by a vow of chastity, a violation of which was punished by burial alive. **6. sacerdotibus :** dat. case with *licet*.

7. virō nūbere : 'to marry,' lit. 'to veil oneself (as a bride) for the bridegroom.' For the case of *virō* see B. 187, 11 ; A. 227, e, 3 ; H. 385, 11, n. 3. *nūbere* is the subject of *licet* ; see B. 327, 1 ; A. 270, b ; H. 538. **haec :** i.e. who ? **8. cum . . . comperisset :** cf. *cum . . . tonāret*, p. 30, l. 19. Observe that the time of *comperisset* is prior to that of the verb on which it depends, i.e. *coniēcit*. **9. mātrem :** sc. *puerōrum* ; i.e. Rhea Silvia. **10. abicī iussit :** 'commanded to be cast away.' *abicī* is a so-called complementary inf. depending on *iussit*. See B. 331, 11 ; A. 271, b ; 331, a ; II. 535, 11.

§ 7. 11. Tiberis : gen. case limiting *aqua*. **ultrā rīpam :** inundations, caused by the Tiber's overflowing its banks, were a common occurrence in the historical period as well. **sē :** see note on *sē*, p. 30, l. 18. **12. essent positī :** for the mood see B. 286, 2 ; A. 326 ; H. 517. **refluēns :** 'by flowing back,' a pres. act. part., expressing the manner of *reliquit*. See B. 337, 2, c ; A. 292 ; H. 549, 1. **siccō :** sc. *locō*, 'on dry land.' **13. ad eōrum vagitum :** 'attracted by their crying,' lit. 'towards their crying.' **accurrit :** perf. tense.

14. Quod : in Latin a rel. pron. very often introduces a sentence, where in Eng. we use a dem. or pers. pron. See B. 251, 6 ; A. 180, f ; H. 453. Trans. 'one Faustulus, seeing this.' **illius :** what case ? B. 87 ; A. 101 ; H. 186, 111. **15. Accae Lārentiae :** see note on *filius*, p. 30, l. 6. **nūtriendōs :** 'to be nourished' ; the gerundive (fut. pass. part.) agrees with *puerōs*, and expresses the purpose of *dedit*. B. 337, 7, b, 2 ; A. 204, d ; II. 544, n. 2.

§ 8. 17. **trānsēgērunt**: for the agreement see B. 255, 1; A. 205; H. 463, 11. 18. **cum adolēvissent** . . . **comperissent**: see note on *comperisset*, l. 8 above. **Quis** . . . **avus**: sc. *fuisse* from the following clause. *quis* and *quae* are subjects, each of its own clause, while *avus* and *māter* are pred. nouns. 19. **ipsōrum**: i.e. of Romulus and Remus, the subjects understood of *adolēvissent* and *comperissent*. The word is here equivalent to a reflexive pron. See B. 249, 3; A. 196, a, 2, x; H. 452, 5. **fuisse**: subj. in an ind. question, dependent on *comperissent*. See B. 300, 1; A. 334, x; H. 528, 2; 529, 1. What would be the direct form of the question, *quis* . . . *fuisse*.

21. **monte Aventīnō**: it is believed by modern scholars that the city of Romulus was built rather on the Palatine Hill, situated at the south corner of the depression where the *Forum Rōmānum* was afterwards built. See map, opp. p. 53. 22. **haec**, i.e. *urbs*. **moenibus**: abl. of means. See note on *hastis*, p. 30, l. 20 above. **circumdarētur**: 'was being surrounded.' 23. **dum** . . . **trānsilit**: on the mood and tense see B. 293, 1; A. 276, e; H. 519, 1. **irridēns**: the pres. part. expressing the attendant circumstances of *trānsilit*. Cf. *refluēns*, l. 12 above, and the note.

§ 9. 24. **ut** . . . **augēret**: cf. *ut* . . . *possidēret*, l. 4 above. **asylum**: the asylum is supposed to have been opened in the natural depression lying between the northeastern and southwestern summits of the Capitoline Hill. See map, opp. p. 53. 25. **pulsī**: 'who had been expelled'; the part. is often equivalent to a rel. clause. 26. **coniugēs**: deriv.? See Vocab. 27. **hōs**: sc. *lūdōs*. **cum** . . . **vēnisent**: see note on *comperisset*, l. 8, above. Page 32. 1. **populīs**: 'peoples,' in the sense of 'nations,' 'tribes.' **cum mulieribus et liberis**: see note on *cum Trōiānīs*, p. 30, l. 7. **inter ipsōs lūdōs**: 'in the very midst of the games.' Note the trans. of *ipsōs*. 2. **speculantēs**: modifies *virginēs*. See note on *pulsī*, p. 31, l. 25 above.

§ 10. 3. **quōrum**: 'whose.' **adversus**: prep. See Vocab. 4. **Rōmae**: on the case see B. 187, 111; A. 228; H. 386. **appropinquārent**: note the tense. What time does it denote? 5. **forte** . . . **incidērunt**: 'they happened to meet.' **in arce** . . . **prōcūrābat**: 'was conducting sacred rites in the citadel.' 6. **ut mōnstrāret**: 'to show the way.' 7. **ut** . . . **posceret**: 'to ask for herself.' On the tense of *posceret* and *mōnstrāret* (l. 6) see B. 267; A. 285; 286; H. 491; 493. **ut** . . . **darent**: cf. *ut* . . . *mōnstrāret*, l. 6 above.

8. gererent: the subj. because the clause of which *gererent* is the verb is a part of the purpose clause. See note on *reliquisset*, p. 31, l. 2.

9. ab eā: i.e. *Tarpeiā*. The abl. of the agent requires the prep. *a*, *ab*. See B. 216; A. 246; H. 415, 1.

10. perductī: expresses time. How should it be translated? **scūtīs**: see note on *hastīs*, p. 30, l. 20.

et: 'also,' i.e. as well as what?

§ **11. 12. hoste**: i.e. *Sabinīs*. **montem Tarpēiam**: the famous 'Tarpeian Rock,' probably on the south side of the Capitoline Hill. From this rock traitors and criminals were hurled. Cf. Byron, *Childe Harold*, iv, 112:

"Where is the rock of Triumph, the high place
Where Rome embraced her heroes? where the steep
Tarpeian — fittest goal of Treason's race,
The promontory whence the Traitor's Leap
Cured all ambition?"

13. forum Rōmānum: see note on *monte Aventinō*, p. 31, l. 21 above.

14. in mediā caede: 'in the midst of the slaughter.' **raptae**: sc. *mulierēs*, and trans. by a rel. clause. **hinc . . . hinc**: 'on this side . . . on that.'

15. patrēs: i.e. *Sabinōs*, while *coniugēs et socerōs* are the Romans.

16. ut . . . facerent: cf. *ut . . . mōnstrarent*, l. 6. **utrīque**: from *uterque*. **17. foedus icit**: 'made a treaty.' In early Rome, when a treaty was made, a victim was killed ('struck') as part of the ceremony.

§ **12. 19. dēscripsit**: 'divided' the citizens into classes. **lēgit**: note the quantity of the penult. How does it determine the tense of the word? **20. cum . . . tum**: 'not only . . . but also.' See Vocab.

ob aetātem: *senātōrēs* is connected etymologically with *senex* 'old man' **dēbitam**: see note on *pulsī*, p. 31, l. 25. **22. raptārum**: sc. *mulierum Sabinārum*. See note on *raptae*, l. 14.

23. cum . . . lūstrāret: 'When he was reviewing the army.' The time is contemporaneous with that of *subductus est*. See note on *appropinquārent*, l. 4. Every five years a review (*cēnsus*) of the citizens was made, after which a purifying sacrifice (*lūstrum*) was offered. Thus *lūstrārī*, which originally meant to perform such a sacrifice, came to mean 'review.' **inter**: cf. *inter*, l. 1.

24. ortam: trans. by a rel. clause. **oculīs**: for the case see B. 187, III; A. 228; H. 386. **Hinc**: 'hence,' i.e. in consequence of what is related in the preceding sentence.

alii . . . alii: 'some . . . others.' See B. 253, 1; A. 203; H. 459. **25. ā senātōribus**: see note on *ab eā*, l. 9 above. **interfectum**: sc. *esse*.

§ 13. 27. **ūnus**: on the form see B. 66 ; A. 83 ; H. 151, 175. What other adjectives are declined in the same way ? **annī**: gen. of measure. See B. 203, 2 ; A. 215, *b* ; H. 396, *v*. **interrēgnum**: determine the meaning from the derivation. 28. **quō exāctō**: 'when this had come to an end.' Cf. note on *quod*, p. 31, l. 14. **Curibus**: 'at Cures.' See note on *Albae*, p. 30, l. 17. 29. **rēx creātus est**: see B. 177, 3 ; A. 239, 1, *a*, *n*. 2 ; H. 373, 2. **quidem**: Numa carried on wars 'to be sure,' but he was helpful to the citizens in other ways as well. Page 33. 1. **cīvitātī**: see note on *Rōmae*, p. 32, l. 4. **et . . . et**: correlative. For the meaning see Vocab. 2. **ut . . . molliret**: see note on *ut* . . . *possidēret*, p. 31, l. 4. 3. **bellicōsī**: note the deriv. See B. 151, 3 ; A. 164, *k* ; H. 328. **omnia**: 'everything.' **sē**: subject of *facere*. To whom does it refer ? 4. **nymphae**: with *iussū*. For the case of *iussū* see B. 219, 2 ; H. 416, foot-note 2. **dīcēbat**: see note on *dīcēbat*, p. 30, l. 20. 5. **morbō dēcessit**: sc. *dē vitā*, 'he died a natural death.' **quadrāgēsīmō tertiō**: see B. 79 ; A. 94 ; H. 174.

§ 14. 6. **Numae**: see note on *Rōmae*, p. 32, l. 4. **cūius**: 'whose.' **sē . . . praestiterat**: 'had shown himself.' 7. **adversus**: cf. *adversus*, p. 32, l. 3 above. 8. **creātus**: trans. by a temporal clause. **Albānis**: cf. *Numae*, l. 6. **idque**: *i.e. bellum*. **trigeminōrum . . . Curiātiōrum**: *i.e.* there were three Horatii and three Curiatii. 10. **perfidiam**: after the combat ended in favor of the Romans, Mettius Fufetius, though bound by a treaty of allegiance to the Romans, raised a revolution of the inhabitants of Veii and of Fidenae against them. **cum . . . rēgnāasset**: see note on *comperisset*, p. 31, l. 8. *rēgnāset* = *rēgnāvisset*. See B. 116, 1 ; A. 128, 1 ; H. 235. 11. **domō**: note the gender.

§ 15. 12. **ex filiā**: explanatory of *Numae . . . nepōs*. Note the order. 13. **aequitāte et religiōne**: abl. of specification. See note on *nātū*, p. 30, l. 24 above. **avō**: dat. governed by the adj. *similis*; see B. 192, 1 ; A. 234, *a* ; H. 391, *i*. 14. **nova eī moenia circumdedit**: the thought might also be expressed in Latin thus: *novīs eam moenibus circumdedit*. For the case of *eī* see B. 187, 1 ; A. 225, *d* ; H. 384, *ii*, 2, *n*. 15. **primus**: see note on *primus*, p. 30, l. 3. **ad**: 'at,' in the sense of 'by,' 'near to.'

§ 16. 18. **Deīnde**: *i.e.* after the death of Ancus Marcius. 19. **quī**: the antecedent is *Dēmarātī*. **Corinthī**: in apposition with *patriae*. For the location of Corinth see Vocab. **fugiēns**: what is the time of

the action of the part. with reference to that of the main verb, *venerat*? Cf. *receptō*, p. 30, l. 8. **20. nōmen**: what name?

21. Tarquinii: what constr.? The Eng. idiom is 'of Tarquinii.' **aliquandō**: 'on one occasion,' 'once.' **Rōmam**: 'to Rome,' acc. expressing limit of motion. Why is the prep. omitted? See B. 182, 1, *a*; A. 258, 2, *a*; H. 380, 11. **Advenienti**: sc. *eī* = *Tarquinio*, sometimes called dat. of separation. See B. 188, 2, *d*; A. 229; H. 386, 2. Trans. 'as he was approaching Rome, an eagle carried off *his* hat.' **22. pileum**: a simple skull-cap of felt. **23. reposuit**: trans. *re*- 'on his head again,' **Hinc**: 'because of this.' **auguriōrum**: for the case see B. 204, 1; A. 218, *a*; H. 399, 1, 2.

§ 17. **25. cum**: 'while.' **Rōmae**: see note on *Albae*, p. 30, l. 17. **commorārētur**: what is the force of the tense? Cf. *lūstrāret*, p. 32, l. 23. **Page 34. 1. eum**: *i.e.* *Tarquinium*. **suōrum**: notice that although this word refers to but one person, *i.e.* the subject of *reliquit*, it is pl. in form, in agreement with its noun. **2. pūpillis**: see note on *advenienti*, p. 33, l. 21. **3. aliōs**: sc. *senātōrēs*. **minōrum gentium**: sc. *senātōrēs*. **4. nec paucōs**: 'and not a few.' Litotes; see B. 375, 1; A. 209, *c*; H. 637, VIII. **5. hostibus**: 'from the enemy.' For the case cf. *pūpillis*, l. 2 above. **adēmtōs**: for the trans. see note on *pulsī*, p. 31, l. 25. **Primus**: see note on *primus*, p. 30, l. 3.

6. triumphāns: the triumph was a solemn procession in which a victorious general entered the city in a four-horse chariot, preceded by the captives and spoils taken in war, and followed by his troops. For a vivid description of a triumph, see Macaulay, *Lays of Ancient Rome, Prophecy of Capys*, 224-268. **cloācās**: extensive remains of the 'sewers,' said by tradition to have been built by Tarquinius Priscus, are still in existence, and until very recently were still in use. **Capitōlium**: *i.e.* the temple of Jupiter, on the Capitoline Hill. **7. per filiōs**: 'through the agency of the sons.' **8. quibus**: see note on *advenienti*, p. 33, l. 21.

§ 18. **10. ex nōbili fēminā**: see note on *ā Lāvīniā*, p. 30, l. 16. **cum**: for the meaning cf. p. 33, l. 25. **ēducārētur**: what Eng. word is derived from this verb? **11. in**: 'upon.' **12. prōdigio**: abl. of cause. See B. 219; A. 245; H. 413. **eī**: stands for whom? **13. coniugī**: see note on *quibus*, p. 30, l. 7. **ut ēducāret**: 'to educate.'

§ 19. **17. domūs**: gen. case. For the decl. see B. 49, 4; A. 70, *f*; H. 119, 1. Note the quantity. **dīcēns**: what she said is stated *indirectly* in *rēgem* . . . *oboediret*. See note on *sē* . . . *esse*, p. 30, l. 18.

Give Tanaquil's words in dir. disc. **18. quidem**: see note on *quidem*, p. 32, l. 29. **eum**: i.e. *rēgem*. **19. dum . . . convaluisse**: 'until he got well again,' representing the fut. perf. ind. of the dir. disc. See B. 319, B, a; A. 286, R.; H. 496, 11; 525, 2. **oboediret**: deriv. See Vocab. **Sic**: i.e. by the device employed by Tanaquil. **20. rēgnāre**: cf. *imperāre*, p. 30, l. 5.

21. montēs trēs: inasmuch as the Palatine, Capitoline, Quirinal, and Aventine hills had already been occupied, the hills referred to are probably the remaining three of the original seven, namely the Viminal, Esquiline, and Caelian. **cēnsus**: a division of the whole body of Roman citizens, for military and political purposes, into six classes, according to the amount of their property. They were divided into 193 centuries, each of which cast one vote, the classes voting in order, beginning with the first. As the first class contained 80 centuries, this with the 18 centuries of knights, which voted before the first class, cast a majority of the votes. Thus the political power was in the hands of the rich. See note on *lūstrāret*, p. 32, l. 23. **22. sub eō**: cf. *sub hōc rēge*, p. 30, l. 5. **capitum**: 'of lives' or 'individuals,' depending on *mīlia*, while *civium* is governed by *capitum*. The last-named word need not be translated into Eng. **mīlia**: for the declension see B. 80, 5; A. 94, e; H. 178. **23. cum**: 'together with.' **in agrīs**: i.e. in the country about Rome.

§ 20. **24. filiae**: the poss. pron. is not always used in Latin, as in Eng. See B. 243, 1; A. 197, c; H. 447. **26. ab ipsō Tarquiniō**: for the constr. see note on *ab eā*, p. 32, l. 9. **dēiectus . . . interfectus est**: 'he was thrown down . . . and killed.' **27. domum**: cf. *Rōmam*, p. 33, l. 21, and see B. 182, b; A. 258, 1, b; H. 380, 11, 2. **forum**: the senate-house (*cūrīa*) was situated near the forum; see note to p. 32, l. 13 above. **29. aurīgam agere iussit**: see note to p. 31, l. 10 above. **iacēns**: modifies *corpus*. **carpentum**: a richly decorated carriage, two-wheeled, and provided with an awning.

Page 35, § 21. **1. cognōmen**: i.e. *Superbus*. **mōribus**: abl. of cause; see note on *prōdigio*, p. 34, l. 12. **2. bellō**: see note on *temporibus*, p. 30, l. 1. **populōrum**: partitive gen., or gen. of the whole. Note the number, and cf. *populis*, p. 32, l. 1. **3. templum**: it was begun by Tarquinius Priscus; see p. 34, l. 6 fol. **in**: 'on.' **dum . . . oppūgnat**: 'while he was besieging.' For the mood and tense, see B. 293, 1; A. 276, e; H. 519, 1. **5. ēius**: i.e. of Tarquinius. **Lu-crētiae**: dat. governed by *vim fēcisset*. **6. occīdit**: what is the difference in meaning between *occidit* and *occidit*? See Vocab.

§ 22. 9. **hanc ob causam** : a very common order. See B. 350, 7, b ; A. 346, a, 2 ; H. 565, 3. **Collātīnus** : *i.e.* *Tarquinius Collātīnus*. **nōnnulli** : deriv.? See Vocab. 10. **in** : 'for.' **conīūrārunt** : = *coniūrāvērunt*. **populōque . . . clauderet** : cf. *coniugī persuāsīt, ut . . . educāret*, p. 34, l. 13. 11. **eī** : against him. Cf. *Lucretīae*, l. 5 above. **cīvitātem Ardeam** : *i.e.* the citizens of the town of Ardea, and of the adjacent tributary land (*agrī*). 13. **itaque** : *i.e.* because he was deserted by the army. **Ita** : sums up the rule of the kings. **Rōmae** : locative. **rēgnātum est** : 'the government was administered,' impersonal ; note the lit. meaning. 14. **annōs** : for the case see B. 181, 1 ; A. 256, 2 ; H. 379.

§ 23. 15. **coepēre** : what other ending for this tense and person ? The traditional date of the first consulship is 509 B.C. 16. **duo** : modifies *cōsulēs*. Its position contrasts it with *prō ūnō rēge*. **ūnus** : sc. *cōsul*. **malus** : pred. adj. **ut . . . coerceret** : cf. *ut . . . possideret*, p. 31, l. 4. 17. **Annum** : 'for one year.' What part of speech ? **nē . . . redderetur** : neg. clause of purpose. 18. **insolentiōrēs** : 'too overbearing.' See B. 240, 1 ; A. 93, a ; H. 444, 1. **annō** : abl. of time. See B. 230, 1 ; A. 256, 1 ; H. 429. 21. **Collātīnō** : see note on *pūpillis*, p. 34, l. 2 above. **paulō post** : 'a little while afterward' ; *post* is an adv. ; for the case of *paulō* see B. 223 ; A. 250 ; H. 423.

22. **Placuerat** : 'it had been resolved.' For the lit. meaning see Vocab. **nē . . . maneret** : cf. *nē . . . redderetur*, l. 17 above. **quis** : 'anyone.' See B. 91, 5 ; 252, 1 ; A. 105, d ; H. 455, 1. 24. **in eius locum** : 'in his place.' Note that in Latin *in* with the acc. is used, lit. 'into.' **cōsul factus est** : see note on *rēx creātus est*, p. 32, l. 29.

§ 24. 25. **urbī** : dat. governed by *commōvit bellum*. 26. **sēsē invicem** : 'each other.' 28. **Brūtum** : direct object of *lūxērunt*. Note the position of the word, as the logical subject of the sentence. The pass. is less commonly used in Latin than in Eng. **quasi** : they mourned for Brutus 'as if' for, *i.e.* just as they would for, their own fathers. Page 36. 2. **quī** : 'and when he.' See note on *quod*, p. 31, l. 14. 4. **quīnque cōsulēs** : name them.

§ 25. 5. **Secundō annō** : *i.e.* 508 B.C. On the Roman method of reckoning dates, see B. 371, 4 ; A. 376, d ; H. 642, III, 1. **Porsenā ferente** : 'with the help of Porsena' ; abl. abs. expressing manner. 7. **pontem ligneum** : called also *Pōns Sublīcius*, from the piles (*sublīcae*) on which it was built. 8. **ā tergō** : 'at his back.' Notice the

peculiar form of expression, which is the usual one in such cases. The Romans had in mind the place *from which* the action proceeded. **dōnec**: 'until'; with the subj. because the action of the verb is viewed as anticipated or contemplated. See B. 293, III, 2; A. 328, 1; H. 519, II, 2. **9. ad suōs**: 'to his friends,' *i.e.* to the Romans. Read the story of *Horatius* in Macaulāy's *Lays of Ancient Rome*. The victory of the Horatii was commemorated by the *pīla Horātia* in the Forum, a pillar which bore the spoils taken from the Curiatii. See Macaulay, *Lays of Ancient Rome*, *Virginia*, 177:

" And sprang upon that column,
By many a minstrel sung,
Whereon three mouldering helmets,
Three rusting swords are hung."

§ 26. 11. Dum . . . obsidet: see note on *dum* . . . *oppūgnat*, p. 35, l. 3. **12. fortis animī**: gen. of quality. See B. 203, 1; A. 215; H. 396, v. **hostis**: gen. case with *castra*. The *hostis* was *Porsena*, since Scaevola was a Roman. **eō cōnsiliō ut . . . occideret**: 'with the purpose of killing the king'; *ut* . . . *occideret* is a subst. clause of purpose in apposition with *cōnsiliō*. **13. ibi**: where? **prō**: 'instead of,' *i.e.* 'mistaking him for.' **14. comprehēnsus . . . dēductus**: cf. *dēiectus* . . . *interfectus est*, p. 34, l. 26. The time of the action of these participles is *prior* to, and of *terrēret*, *contemporaneous* with, the action of the main verb *imposuit*.

15. terrēret: Porsena did not *succeed* in terrifying Scaevola, he '*attempted* to terrify.' See B. 260, 3; A. 277, c; H. 469, II, 1. **allātis**: what is the preposition in composition? why does the preposition take the form *af-* in its present tense and *al-* in the participle? See B. 8, 4; A. 11, f, 3; H. 344, 5, under *ad*. The abl. abs. expresses *means*, 'by bringing fire.' **16. ārae**: see note on *Rōmae*, p. 32, l. 4. **accēnsae**: trans. by the English past participle in *-ed* or by a rel. clause. **cōnsūmpta esset**: see note on *dōnec*, l. 8. **17. facinus**: 'deed.' **incolumem**: adjective used as a predicate accusative. See B. 177, 2; A. 239, 1, a, n. 1; H. 373, 1, n. 2.

18. hīc: *i.e. iuvenis*. **ait**: a defective verb. See B. 135; A. 144, a; H. 297, II, 1. **19. aliōs**: 'other' than whom? **confūrāsse**: = *confūrāvisse*. **Hac re**: abl. of cause. Cf. *prōdigiō*, p. 34, l. 12. **territus**: trans. by the past participle in *-ed*. **20. Tusculum**: see note on *Rōmam*, p. 33, l. 21. For the location of *Tusculum* see Vocab. **21. privātus**: in contrast with his former position of *rēx*.

§ 27. 22. **Sextō decimō annō**: *i.e.* 494 B.C. **post rēgēs exāctōs**: 'after the expulsion of the kings'; cf. *ad Rōmam conditam*, p. 30, l. 16. **questus**: 'complaining.' The meaning of the perfect participle shades off into that of the present. See B. 336, 5; A. 290, *b*; H. 550, *n.* 1. The English expression is 'complaining that,' the Latin always, 'complaining because.' 24. **exhaurīrētur**: the subjunctive, because the reason given is viewed as that of the *populus*. See B. 286, 1; A. 321; H. 516. 25. **Aniēnem**: the nom. case is *Aniō*. **Sēcessit**: what English words are derived from the present and from the perfect stem? **patrēs**: *i.e.* *senātōrēs*. See p. 32, l. 19 fol. 26. **quī conciliāret**: relative clause of purpose, *quī* being used instead of *ut eī*. See B. 282, 2; A. 319, 2; II. 497, 1. 27. **alia**: 'other things.'

28. **quā**: sc. *rē*. Page 37. 1. **ut . . . redīret**: cf. *ut educāret*, p. 34, l. 13. The expression is equivalent to *populō persuāsum est ut . . . redīret*. **prīmum**: 'for the first time.' See note on *primus*, p. 30, l. 3. **Tribūnī plēbis**: these plebeian magistrates were clothed with extraordinary power, since by their *vetō* they could check the whole machinery of state. See Vocab. 2. **quī dēfenderent**: cf. *quī . . . conciliārent*, p. 36, l. 26 above. **adversum**: preposition.

§ 28. 4. **Octāvō decimō annō**: *i.e.* 492 B.C. **post exāctōs rēgēs**: cf. p. 36, l. 22. 5. **dictus**: 'called.' **quam**: antecedent? 6. **invisus**: agrees with the subject of *coepit*. See B. 328, 2; A. 271, *c*; H. 536, 2. 8. **Exercitūs**: gen. case. Note the quantity of the final syllable. 9. **mīliārium Urbis**: the principal Roman roads were provided with milestones, the distances being reckoned 'from the city.' **Nec** = *et nōn*. The coördinate conjunction and a negative are regularly expressed in this manner in Latin. 10. **ut . . . parceret**: see note on *ut . . . redīret*, l. 1. 12. **ut . . . removēret**: cf. *ut . . . redīret*, l. 1. 13. **Quō factō**: 'for this act.' See note on *quod*, p. 31, l. 14. **occīsus esse**: see note on *rēnisse*, p. 30, l. 1. **ut**: 'as,' and cf. *invisus*, l. 6.

§ 29. 15. **Rōmānī**: subject of *gererent*; the order is a very common one in Latin. **Vēientēs**: 'the people of Vēii.' See Vocab. 16. **sōla**: 'alone.' **suscēpit**: translating each part of the compound, = 'undertook.' 17. **duce Fabiō**: 'under the leadership of Fabius,' lit. 'Fabius, being leader,' abl. abs., with a noun, *duce*, instead of a participle. See B. 227, 1; A. 255, *a*; II. 431, 4. 19. **dolō**: what case? See B. 218, 1; A. 249; H. 421, 1. 22. **potuerat**: note the tense. What is the difference in spelling between this form and the corresponding form of

the imperfect tense? **genus:** *i.e. Fabiōrum.* **ad:** 'down to.'
23. illum: on the meaning of the demonstrative, see B. 246, 3; A. 102, b; H. 450, 4. **Hannibalem:** *i.e. in the second Punic War.*

§ **30. 25. Annō . . . alterō:** *i.e. 452 B.C.* **ab urbe conditā:** cf. *ad Rōmam conditam*, p. 30, l. 16. **decemvir:** derivation?
26. quī . . . scriberent: a rel. clause of purpose. **27. secundō:** sc. *annō.* **28. Appius Claudius:** in apposition with *ūnus.* **virginem:** object of *corrumpere.* **Page 38. 2. vellet:** cf. *rellet*, p. 31, l. 1. **3. Sublāta est:** notice the emphatic position.

§ **31. 5. Vēientānōs = Vēientēs,** p. 37, l. 15 above. **6. Falēriōs:** a town just a little to the east of Veii. **lūdī litterārī:** 'of a school.' **8. hōc dōnum:** *i.e. principum filiōs.* **9. hominem . . . pueris . . . redūcendum trādidit:** cf. *puerōs . . . uxōri . . . nūtriendōs dedit*, p. 31, l. 15 fol. **manibus . . . vinctis:** 'with his hands bound,' abl. abs. expressing the attendant circumstances of *redūcendum.* **post:** 'behind.' **quibus . . . agerent:** 'with which to drive,' relative clause of purpose. Cf. *quī . . . scriberent*, p. 37, l. 26.

§ **32. 12. Hāc . . . nōbilitāte:** note the order. **Falisci:** 'the inhabitants of Falerii,' 'the Faliscans.' **13. Camillō:** indirect object with the passive verb, **datum est.** **apud:** 'among.' **crīmīni:** dat. of purpose. See B. 191, 2; A. 233, a; H. 390, 1. **14. quod . . . triumphāset . . . dīvisisset:** the logical subject of *datum est.* See B. 166, 1, c; A. 174, 1; H. 540, iv, n. On the use of the subjunctive in causal clauses, see note on *quod . . . exhauriētur*, p. 36, l. 23. **quod = 'that.'** **albīs equīs:** *i.e. he triumphed in a chariot drawn by 'white horses.'* Abl. of attendant circumstances, see B. 221. **15. iniquē:** derivation? Why is the penult long? **damnātusque:** sc. *est.* **cīvitāte:** abl. of separation. See B. 214, 2; A. 243, a; H. 414. **Paulō post:** cf. p. 35, l. 21. **17. occupārunť = occupāvērunť.** **18. nihil:** subject of *potuit.* **19. famē labōrābat:** 'was suffering with hunger'; *famē* is abl. of cause. **in eō erant, ut . . . emerent:** 'they were on the point of buying.' The subject of *erant* is *praesidium*, a collective noun. See B. 254, 4; A. 205, c, 1; H. 461, 1.

§ **33. 22. Annō . . . quārtō:** *i.e. 360 B.C.* **post urbem conditam:** cf. *ad Rōmam conditam*, p. 30, l. 16. **23. iterum:** 'a second time.' **26. eximiā . . . māgnitūdine:** see B. 224; A. 251; H. 419, 11. Note that the abl. of quality, unlike the gen. of quality, must regularly have a modifier. **fortissimum:** sc. *virum.* **ad certāmen singulāre prōvocāvit:** 'challenged to a single combat.' **28. torque:**

see note on *civitate*, l. 15. 29. *ornatus erat*: sc. *Gallus*. *Hinc*: i.e. from the circumstance just described. 30. *Torquati*: derived of course from *torquis*.

Page 39. § 34. 1. *bellō . . . exortō*: trans. by a temporal clause. *annō . . . sextō*: i.e. 348 B.C. 2. *rōbre atque armīs*: see note on *nātū*, p. 30, l. 24. 3. *ex Rōmānis = Rōmānōrum*. See B. 201, 1, *a*; A. 216, *c*; H. 397, 3, *n*. 3. *sēcum*: see B. 142, 4; A. 99, *e*; H. 184, 6. 4. *dēcerneret*: 'fight,' i.e. 'decide' the contest. *tribūnus mīlitum*: an officer in the Roman army. See INTRO., p. 13. *sē . . . obtulit*: 'presented himself,' i.e. 'volunteered.' 5. *ei*: trans. by the possessive 'his' with *bracchium*. See B. 188, 1, and *n*.; A. 235, *a*; H. 384, 4, *n*. 2. *suprā*: 'upon.' 7. *factum est*: 'it happened'; the subject is *ut interficeretur*, a substantive clause of result. See B. 297, 2; A. 332, *a*, 2; H. 501, 1, 1. 8. *facili negotiō*: 'with little trouble'; abl. of manner. *hinc*: 'from this circumstance.' *Corvini*: derived, of course, from *corvus*.

§ 35. 10. *Samnitibus*: 'the inhabitants of Samnium,' 'the Samnites.' 11. *Quod*: antecedent? *honore*: 'office'; not to be translated by the corresponding English word. *dictatōris*: see Vocab. 12. *Qui*: 'when he.' Note the order. *causā*: B. 198, 1; A. 223, *e*, 245, *c*; H. 416, footnote 2. 13. *magistrō equitum*: see Vocab. 14. *nē . . . committeret*: cf. *nē . . . redderetur*, p. 35, l. 17. 16. *capitis damnatus est*: 'he was condemned to death.' For the case of *capitis* see B. 208, 2, *a*; A. 220, *a*; H. 410, 11, 1. *ille*: i.e. *Fabius*. 18. *in*: 'against.'

§ 36. 20. *Duobus annis post*: 'Two years after.' Cf. *paulō post*, p. 35, l. 21. 21. *Hi*: i.e. the consuls. *Furculas Caudinas*: 'the Caudine Forks,' narrow passes in the mountains, near the town of Caudium, in Samnium. See Vocab. 23. *angustias*: notice that this word, as well as *insidias* (l. 22), is plural in form in Latin, but is to be translated into English by the singular. *unde = a quibus*, sc. *angustias*. *sēsē*: reduplicated form of *sē*. See B. 85; A. 98, 2, *b*; H. 184, 4. *expedire*: derivation? See Vocab. 24. *Ibi*: 'thereupon.' 25. *putaret*: see note on *fuisset*, p. 31, l. 19. What was the direct question Pontius asked of his father? *faciendum*: sc. *esse*, 'ought to be done.' *Ille*: i.e. *pater*. *occidendōs . . . dimittendōs*: sc. *esse*. 27. *beneficiō*: this would consist in letting the Romans go (*dimittere*). *utrumque*: how does the meaning 'each of two' apply here? *sub iugum*: see note on p. 118, l. 15. 29. *dēnique*: 'finally.' *undēquingentā*: literal meaning?

Page 40. § 37. 1. Tarentīnīs : 'inhabitants of Tarentum.' For the location of the city see Vocab. **2. fēcissent** : the subjunctive mood, because the reason given for declaring war is one alleged by somebody else than the narrator. See note on *exhaurirētur*, p. 36, l. 24. **HI** : *i.e. Tarentīnī*. **3. Ēpīrī** : a country northwest of Greece. See Vocab. **4. primum** : see note on *primus*, p. 30, l. 3. **trāsmarinō** : derivation? **7. dūcī . . . dīmīttī** : see note on p. 31, l. 10.

§ 38. 9. auxiliō : abl. of cause. **10. per noctem** : 'during the night.' **13. adversis vulneribus** : 'wounds received in front'; these indicated brave soldiers; only cowardly runaways would be wounded in the back. Abl. of attendant circumstances. See B. 221. **truci vultū** : abl. of attendant circumstances. Cf. *adversis vulneribus* above. **etiam mortuōs** : 'even when dead,' or 'even in death.' **14. tulisse** : 'to have raised.' **manūs** : note the quantity of the final syllable. **15. cum hāc vōce** : 'with this remark,' or 'with these words.' **Ego . . . subigerem** : condition contrary to fact in present time, the condition being expressed by *cum tālibus virīs*, *i.e.* 'if I commanded such men, I would subdue,' etc. See B. 304, 1; 305, 1; A. 308; 310, a; H. 510. **brevī** : *sc. tempore*.

§ 39. 17. Rōmam : the meaning is 'towards Rome,' not 'to Rome.' **18. Campāniam** : see Vocab. **Praeneste** : see Vocab. **ad** : 'toward,' 'to the neighborhood of.' Why is the preposition used with the name of this town? See B. 182, 3; A. 258, b, n. 2; H. 380, II, 1. Cf. *Rōmam*, l. 17 above. **20. exercitūs** : object.gen. **cum cōsule** : cf. *cum multis Trōiānīs*, p. 30, l. 7. **sē recēpit** : *sc. Pyrrhus*. Notice the force of the prefix *re-*, 'he went back.' **21. dē captivīs redimēdis** : 'concerning the ransoming of prisoners.' The gerundive, *redimēdis*, is really an adjective (= future passive participle), and, as such, limits the noun *captivīs*. **22. reddidit** : 'he gave back'; cf. *recēpit*, l. 21 above. **23. ex lēgātīs** : see note on *ex Rōmānīs*, p. 39, l. 3. Why is there no ambiguity in Latin about the persons to whom *ei*, *sui*, and *sē* refer? See note on *sē*, p. 30, l. 18. **24. si . . . trānsiret** : *i.e.* if he would desert the Romans, and own allegiance to him (Pyrrhus).

§ 40. 26. Cum : 'since.' **Rōmānōrum** : objective genitive. **27. Cīneam** : in apposition with *lēgātum*. **virum** : in apposition with *Cīneam*. **28. quī . . . peteret** : see note on *quī . . . scrībērent*, p. 37, l. 26. **eā condiciōne ut . . . obtinēret** : 'on condition that Pyrrhus should hold.' Cf. *eō cōsiliō . . . ut occideret*, p. 36, l. 12. **30. eum** : refers to whom? **Page 41. 1. recessisset** : the Romans said '*nisi ex Italiā*

recesseris (fut. perf.). See note on *dum convaluisse*, p. 34, l. 19. **Pyr-rhō**: indirect object of **respondit**. **eum interrogantī**: 'who asked him.' **2. quālis**: sc. *urbs*, 'what kind of a city.' **ipsā**: for the case-form, see B. 88; A. 101; H. 186, v.

§ 41. 4. alterō: 'second.' **5. interfectī**: sc. *sunt*. **6. Inter-iectō annō**: 'after a year had intervened.' **8. vēnit prōmittēns**: 'came and promised.' **9. vinctum redūcī**: 'to be bound and to be taken back.' **10. dominum**: i.e. *Pyrrhum*. **11. quī**: subject of *āvertī potest* understood, since *sōl* is the subject of *āvertī potest* expressed. **difficilius**: 'with more difficulty.' **12. Paulō post**: cf. *paulō post*, p. 38, l. 16. **14. apud**: 'near.' **Argos**: see Vocab.

§ 42. 15. Annō . . . conditam: i.e. 264 B.C. **16. exercitūs**: nom. pl., subject of *trāiēcērunt*. Note the quantity. **trāiēcērunt**: here used intransitively, 'crossed'; this case is probably to be explained by understanding *sē* as object of the verb. **17. rēgemque**: note that *-que* connects the two verbs, *trāiēcērunt* and *superāvērunt*, while the *-que* of *poenōsque* connects the two nouns, *rēgem* and *Poenōs*. **Syrā-cūsārum**: the name of this city is in the plural. Cf. *Cannae*, p. 44, l. 11. **18. in eā insulā**: i.e. *in Sicilia*.

20. C. Duiliō et Cn. Cornēliō Asinā cōnsulibus: 'during the consulship of C. Duilius,' etc. See note on *duce Fabiō cōsule*, p. 37, l. 17. The Romans regularly dated events thus by the names of the consuls for the current year. **in**: 'upon.' **21. Carthāginiēnsēs**: another name for *Poenōs*. **22. quattuordecim**: sc. *nāvēs*. **23. tria milia**: sc. *hostium*. **Rōmānis**: dat. case with the adjective, *grātior*. See B. 192, 1; A. 234 a; H. 391, 1. **24. concessum est**: impersonal, 'it was allowed.' **25. tībīcen**: ordinarily nouns of the third decl. ending in *-n* are neuter, but this word is masc. by signification. See B. 14, 1; A. 29, 1; H. 42, 1, 1.

§ 43. 26. Paucis annis interiectis: cf. *Interiectō annō*, l. 6. **27. nāvālī**: an adjective; note the derivation. **28. superātur**: B. 259, 3; A. 276, d; H. 467, III. **perditis . . . nāvibus**: 'after he had lost sixty-four ships.' **29. vīgintī duās**: sc. *nāvēs*. **Page 42. 1. vīcērunt**: sc. *Rōmānī*. **2. in fidem accēpērunt**: 'received under their protection.' **4. Quam**: see note on *Quod*, p. 31, l. 14. The antecedent is *pācem*. Note the order. **5. nōllet**: for the derivation see Vocab., under *nōlō*. **nisi dūrissimis condiciōnibus**: 'except under the harshest conditions.' Abl. of attendant circumstance. See note to p. 40, l. 13. **8. captus**: sc. *est*.

§ 44. 10. **aliquot**: indeclinable; limits **proeliis**. **ut . . . proficiscerētur**: cf. *ut . . . mōnstrāret*, p. 32, l. 6. 11. **captivōrumque**: notice that the *-que* connects *pācem* and *permūtātiōnem*, and that *captivōrum* belongs in the second of these two members; in other words, that *captivōrum* depends upon *permūtātiōnem*. 13. **inductus**: expresses time. **sē dēsisse Rōmānum esse**: because he was a prisoner of war of the Carthaginians. 14. **quā**: on the gender of *dies*, see B. 53; A. 73; H. 123. **Rōmānis**: cf. *coniugī*, p. 34, l. 13.

15. **suāsīt**: for the difference in meaning between this word and *persuādeō*, see Vocab. **illōs . . . redderentur**: in indirect discourse depending on a verb of saying implied in *suāsīt*. 'Exhorted them . . . saying.' **illōs**: i.e. *Carthāginiēnsēs*. **enim**: introduces the reason for *nē . . . facerent*. 16. **tot**: limits *cāsibus*; abl. of means. *tot* is indeclinable; cf. *aliquot*, l. 10. **tantī nōn essē**: 'it was not worth while'; for the case of *tantī* see B. 203, 3; A. 252, a; H. 396, v, 404. 17. **ut . . . redderentur**: the logical subject of *esse*. **propter**: governs *paucōs* as well as *sē*. 18. **ex Rōmānis**: cf. p. 39, l. 3. 19. **obtīnuīt**: 'prevailed.'

§ 45. 21. **C. Lutātiō Catulō, A. Postumiō cōsulibus**: see note on *C. Duiliō et Cn. Cornēliō Asinā cōsulibus*, p. 41, l. 20. 22. **annō . . . tertiō**: i.e. 241 B.C. The adjective **Pūnicī** is derived from the noun, *Poenī*; why is the *ū* long? 23. **contrā**: 'opposite,' 'just off.' **Lilybaeum**: see Vocab. 25. **captae . . . dēmersae . . . captae**: sc. *sunt*. 28. **Captīvī**: derivation? 29. **Siciliā, Sardinia et cēteris insulis**: abl. of separation with *dēcesserunt*. 31. **Ibērum**: see Vocab.

Page 43. § 46. 1. **Annō . . . ūndētrīcēsīmō**: i.e. 225 B.C. What is the literal meaning of *ūndētrīcēsīmō*? 2. **prō**: 'in the support of.' 4. **Rēs prōspērē gesta est**: 'a successful engagement was fought.' 5. **apud**: see note on *apud*, p. 41, l. 14. 6. **Aliquot annīs post**: cf. *duōbus annīs post*, p. 39, l. 20. **pūgnātum est**: passive and impersonal. 'A battle was fought.' 9. **Viridomarum**: in apposition with *rēgem*. 10. **Gallī**: i.e. the followers of Viridomarus. **stīpiti**: dat. governed by *in-* in composition.

§ 47. 11. **Paulō post**: in 218 B.C. **per**: 'through the action of.' 13. **novem annōs**: acc. expressing extent or duration of time. See B. 181, 1; A. 256, 2; H. 379. **nātum**: modifies *quem*, i.e. *Hannibalem*. The whole expression *novem annōs nātum* means 'when he was nine years old.' **ārīs**: dat. because of the influence of the prep. *ad-* in composition. The direct object, *quem*, feels the force of the action of the

simple verb only, *-mōverat*. **perenne**: 'eternal.' Notice the derivation. **in Rōmānōs**: to be taken with *odium*. **14. annum agēns vīcēsimum aetātis**: 'when in his twentieth year.' **15. Rōmānīs**: cf. *Rōmānīs*, p. 41, l. 23.

oppugnāre: depends upon *aggressus est*. **16. aggressus est**: 'started to.' **Huic**: i.e. *Hannibalī*. **17. cum**: 'since.' **nōllet**: see note to p. 42, l. 5. **18. ut . . . mandārētur**: depends upon an idea of commanding or demanding implied in *miserunt*. Cf. *ut abstineret* l. 17. **19. nē . . . gereret**: cf. *nē . . . redderentur*, p. 35, l. 17. This clause is the logical subject of *mandārētur*, just as *ut . . . abstineret* (l. 17) is the object of *dēnūntiāvērunt*. **sociōs**: the city of Saguntum had formed an alliance with the Romans. **20. reddita**: sc. *sunt*. **21. Carthāginiēnsibus**: cf. *Albānīs*, p. 33, l. 8.

§ 48. **22. frātre . . . relictō**: 'having left his brother.' **24. septem et trīgintā**: in the case of compound numerals, if the smaller number precede, *et* must be used to connect them. When the smaller number follows, the conjunction is unnecessary. Cf. *vīgintī quinque* and *trīgintā duo*, p. 42, l. 25, and see B. 81, 1; A. 94; H. 174, footnote 3. **Page 44. 1. vulnere acceptō**: expresses cause. **Ticinum . . . Trebiam . . . Trasumēnum lacum**: see Vocab. **3. vincitur**: see note on *superātur*, p. 41, l. 28. **populī**: 'tribes,' 'states.' **5. interēptus**: sc. *est*.

§ 49. **7. Quīngentēsimō . . . conditam**: i.e. 216 B.C. **9. mittuntur**: cf. *vincitur*, l. 3 above. **10. quam**: 'than,' with *aliter*. **morā**: i.e. by continually putting off a decisive engagement, and so wearing out the enemy. **11. morae**: gen. case with the adjective, *impatiens*. See B. 204, 1, a; A. 218, b; H. 399, 11. **apud**: see note on *apud*, p. 41, l. 14. **Cannae**: see note on *Syrācūsarum*, p. 41, l. 17. **12. victī**: sc. *sunt*. **13. cōsulārēs . . . praetōriī**: men who had been consuls, or praetors, respectively. **14. captī . . . occisī**: sc. *sunt*. **17. quod**: has for its antecedent the thought contained in the main sentence, *Servī . . . manūmissī (sunt) et milītēs factī sunt*. Trans. 'a thing which,' etc. **ante**: adverb. **factum**: sc. *erat*. **manūmissī**: derivation? See Vocab.

§ 50. **18. Post eam pūgnam**: i.e. the battle at Cannae. **19. pāruerant**: notice the tense. **20. Rōmānīs**: see note on *quibus*, p. 30, l. 7. **21. eōs cīvēs . . . esse**: depends upon *respōsum est*. **22. Hōs omnēs**: i.e. *captīvōs*. **ille**: *Hannibal*. **23. Carthāginem**: why is the preposition omitted? **24. manibus**: see note on

Advenientī, p. 33, l. 21. 26. *duōbus Scīpiōnibus*: *P. Cornēlius Scīpiō* and *Cn. Cornēlius Scīpiō*.

§ 51. 30. *apud Nōlam*: what would *Nōlae* mean? Cf. note on *apud*, p. 41, l. 14. Page 45. 1. *bene*: 'well,' i.e. 'successfully.' 2. *Macedoniae*: see Vocab. 3. *eīque*: what does *-que* connect? 5. *quī . . . impedīret*: cf. *quī . . . peteret*, p. 40, l. 28. *quō minus . . . trāiceret*: 'from transporting.' See B. 295, 3; A. 331, e, 2; H. 497, II. 6. *Idem*: sc. *ille*, lit. 'he likewise,' 'he also.'

§ 52. 8. *quoque*: i.e. as well as in Macedonia. *rēs gesta est*: cf. p. 43, l. 4. 9. *cōpīt*: 'took,' in the sense of 'captured.' *occupāverant*: note the tense. 10. *Syrācūsās*: see note on *Syrācūsārum*, p. 41, l. 17. *nōbillissimam*: 'famous.' The Latin superlative is often best trans. by an Eng. positive. *expūgnāvit*: 'took by storm.' Note the derivation. 11. *inde*: i.e. from Syracuse. 12. *cum*: governs *populis* as well as *Philippō*. 16. *regressus est*: what is the force of *re-*?

§ 53. 17. *duo Scīpiōnēs*: see note on *duōbus Scīpiōnibus*, p. 44, l. 26. *ab Hasdrubale*: why is the preposition necessary? See note on *ab eā*, p. 32, l. 9. 19. *Hic puer duodēvigintī annōrum*: 'he, when a boy of eighteen years.' *annōrum* is gen. of measure. See B. 203, 2; A. 215, b; H. 396, v. 20. *in pūgnā ad Tīcinum*: mentioned p. 43, l. 26 fol. 21. *Cannēsem*: 'of Cannae.' On the use of the adj. see B. 353, 5. 22. *cupientium*: trans. by a rel. clause. Note the tense. 23. *ab hōc cōnsiliō*: i.e. *ut Italiam dēsererent*. *Vigintī quattuor annōrum iuvenis*: cf. *Hic puer duodēvigintī annōrum*, l. 19. 24. *diē*: abl. of time. *quā*: see note on *quā*, p. 42, l. 14. 28. *Quā rē*: i.e. because *obsidēs parentibus reddidit*. *ad eum . . . trānsērunt*: i.e. allied themselves with.

Page 46. § 54. 1. *Ab eō inde tempore*: 'from that time on (*inde*).'
in diēs: 'day by day.' *laetiōrēs*: notice the degree of comparison. 2. *factae sunt*: 'became.' *frātre*: i.e. Hannibal. 5. *Bruttīs*: 'the country of the Brutii,' a district in southern Italy. 6. *trādīdērunt*: derivation?

§ 55. 7. *Annō . . . vēnerat*: i.e. 203 B.C. 8. *creātus*: sc. *est*. 10. *pūgnat . . . dēlet*: cf. *superātur*, p. 41, l. 28. 11. *ūndecim*: derivation? Note the quantity. 14. *Quā rē audītā*: 'when this was heard,' or, better, 'on hearing this.' 15. *ā Carthāginiēnsibus*: with *iubētur*. 16. *annō decimō septimō*: i.e. 201 B.C. 17. *ab*

Hannibale liberāta est: 'was freed from Hannibal.' See B. 214, 1, n. 1; A. 243, a; II. 414, 1, and cf. III with footnote 3.

§ 56. 18. **plūs semel**: 'more than once,' the regular comparative adverb, *quam*, being omitted. See B. 217, 3; A. 247, c; H. 417, 1, n. 2.

19. **ad Zamam**: meaning of *ad*? This battle was fought in 202 B.C.
20. **victor**: predicate nom. 23. **Āfricānus appellātus est**: because of his decisive victories in Africa. 24. **Sic**: in the manner above described. **finem accēpit**: the subject is *bellum*. Lit. 'received an end,' and so, 'was ended.' 25. **post . . . quam**: separated, as often in expressions of time. See B. 287, 3; A. 324, a (and exs.), 262; H. 518, n. 2, 430, n. 3. Trans. as if the Latin read *annō undēvicesimō postquam coeperat*.

§ 57. 26. **Finītō Pūnicō bellō**: i.e. the second Punic War. **Macedonicum**: sc. *bellum*. 28. **Cynoscephalās**: hills in eastern Thessaly. **hīs lēgibus**: 'on these terms.' Abl. of accordance. See B. 220, 3. Page 47. Following *lēgibus* we have six substantive clauses in apposition with *lēgibus*: *nē . . . inferret, ut . . . redderet, (ut) . . . habēret, (ut) . . . daret; (ut) . . . praestāret, et . . . daret*. For the construction, cf. *eā condiciōne ut . . . obtinēret*, p. 40, l. 28. **Graeciae**: gen. modifying *civitāte*. 2. **trānsfugās**: derivation? 3. **sōlum**: 'only.' Modifies *quīnquāgintā*. **reliquās**: sc. *nārēs* from the preceding sentence. 4. **talenta**: a Greek standard of value. See Vocab. 5. **Lacedaemoniis intulit bellum**: cf. l. 1 above.

§ 58. 7. **Finītō bellō Macedonicō**: cf. *Finītō Pūnicō bellō*, p. 46, l. 26. 10. **lēgātus**: predicate nominative. 11. **victus**: sc. *est*. 13. **Data est**: sc. *pāx*. 14. **hāc lēge**: see note on *lēgibus*, p. 46, l. 28. *ut . . . recēderet, atque . . . continēret, . . . praebēret, . . . dēderet*. See note on *lēgibus*, p. 46, l. 28. **Asiā**: i.e. from Asia Minor. See Vocab. **intrā Taurum**: 'within the limits of the Taurus mountains.' 17. **et**: 'also,' i.e. as well as his brother. 18. **ad imitātiōnem**: 'in imitation of.' **Asiaticī**: limits *nōmen*. Why did he select *Asiaticus* as a nomen?

§ 59. 19. **Philippō . . . mortuō**: 'after the death of Philip.' 20. **rebellāvit**: derivation? **ingentibus . . . parātis**: perhaps best translated by changing to the active construction, 'having prepared,' etc. **cōpīs**: on the difference of meaning between the singular and plural, see Vocab. 21. **missus**: sc. *est*. 23. **nisi hīs condiciōnibus**,

ut . . . dēderet. Cf. *hūc lēge ut . . . recēderet*, l. 14. **25. Pydnam :** see Vocab. **ēius :** whose ? **27. tenuerat :** note the tense. **dēdīdērunt :** is this from the same word as *dēderet*, l. 24 ? **Ipse :** 'himself,' the intensive.

28. in : governs *potestātem*. A modifying genitive, like an adjective, is thus very often placed between a preposition and its noun. **30. Perseī :** gen. case, from *Perseus*. **māgnitūdīnis :** gen. of quality. See B. 203, 1 ; A. 215 ; H. 396, v. **31. rēmōrum ōrdīnēs :** 'banks of oars.' Ordinarily ancient vessels had only three or four banks of oars ; hence the word *inūsītātē*, applied to this vessel of Perseus. **32. duō-bus filiis . . . adstantibus ?** Here the abl. abs. expresses attendant circumstances. We may translate, 'with his two sons standing by.' **utrōque . . . latere :** 'on each side.' See B. 228 ; A. 258 c, 1 ; H. 425.

Page 48, § 60. **4. sescentēsīmō . . . conditā :** i.e. 152 B.C. Note the meaning of *alterō* = 'second.' **annō quīnquāgēsīmō,** etc.: see note on *Zamam*, p. 46, l. 19, and cf. note on *quadrāgēsīmō tertiō*, p. 33, l. 5. **7. trāiēcērunt :** transitive or intransitive ? **8. ibi :** where ? **Scipionis Africānī :** see p. 46, l. 22, fol. **10. Hūius :** i.e. *Scipionis*, limits *metus et reverentia*. **apud omnēs :** 'with all.' **ingēns :** pred. adjective. **neque :** 'and . . . not.' The Latin regularly unites thus in one word the connective and a negative. **11. quidquam :** direct object of *vītābant*. **quam :** 'than,' with *magis*. **12. committere :** depends upon *vītābant* understood.

§ 61. **13. māgnum :** pred. adjective with *nōmen*, the subject of *esset*. *Māgnum* is emphasized by its position. **14. postquam trāiēcit :** see B. 287 ; A. 324 ; H. 518. **15. missus :** sc. *est*. **urbem . . . cēpit :** in 146 B.C. **16. ibi :** 'where ?' **facta :** sc. *est*. **17. plūrima :** lit. 'very many things' ; better, 'very many objects.' **excidīs :** pl., referring to different destructions of cities. **19. quae :** the antecedent is *civitatibus*. **sua recognōscēbant :** 'recognized' or 'identified as their own.' **21. iūniōris :** 'the younger,' in distinction from his adoptive grandfather, who also bore the cognomen of *Africānus* ; see p. 46, l. 22, fol.

§ 62. **22. Pseudophilippus :** i.e. one who falsely (*pseudo*) assumed the name of Philippus. This was a certain Andriscus (see below, p. 49, l. 5), who pretended to be a son of King Perseus. **arma mōvit :** 'incited to arms.' **22. ad interneciōnem :** 'up to the point of annihilation.' **25. vīgintī quīnque mīlibus . . . occīsīs :** expresses time. **26. ex mīlitibus ēius :** see note on *ex Rōmānīs*, p. 39, l. 3.

Page 49. 1. **Römānīs lēgātīs**: see B. 187, III; A. 228; H. 386. **illātām**: trans. by a rel. clause. 2. **Hanc**: sc. *civitātem*. 3. **fuērunt**: 'there were'; *trēs triumphī* is the predicate. See note on *triumphāns*, p. 34, l. 6 above. **Scipiōnis . . . Metelli . . . Mummi**: sc. *triumphus fuit*. 5. **praecessit**: derivation? **et**: 'also.' 6. **signa**: 'statues.' 7. **alla**: limits *ōrnāmenta*. **urbis clāriissimae**: i.e. Corinth.

§ 63. 9. **Annō . . . conditam**: i.e. 144 B.C. 11. **primō**: 'at first.' 12. **ut . . . existimārētur**: see B. 284; A. 319; H. 500. **vindex**: pred. noun; sc. *ille* = *Viriāthus*. *libertātis* depends upon *vindex* and *Hispaniae* in turn upon *libertātis*. 13. **interfectōrēs**: derived from the verb, *interficiō* (cf. *interfectus est*). What is the meaning of the suffix *-tor*? See B. 147, 1; A. 162, a; H. 326, 1. 15. **placuisse**: see note on *hunc sonum . . . esse*, p. 30, l. 20. **imperātōrem . . . interfici**: the logical subject of *placuisse*. On *imperātōrem* see note on *interfectōrēs*, l. 13.

§ 64. 17. **civitāte**: in apposition with the name of the city, *Numantiā*, implied in *Numantīnis*. Cf. *civitātī*, l. 1. 18. **victus**: sc. *est*. 19. **eis**: i.e. whom? 20. **Infringī . . . trādī**: for the construction, see note to p. 31, l. 10. *quam* is the subject of the first infinitive, *Mancinum* of the second. 22. **militem**: 'soldiery,' lit. 'soldier.' 23. **partim . . . partim**: 'partly . . . partly,' with the verbs, *cēpit*, *accēpit*. 25. **iamē**: abl. of means with *coēgit*. **coēgit**: derivation? See Vocab. 26. **reliquam**: 'the rest of the.'

§ 65. 28. **Iugurthae**: cf. *lēgātis*, l. 1. Page 50. 1. **interēmisset**: 'because, according to the charge brought against him, he had killed.' See note on *quod . . . exhaurirētur*, p. 36, l. 23. **missus . . . corruptus**: with *fecit*. Trans. as if coördinate. 5. **vel**: i.e. he killed some elephants and captured the rest. 7. **triumphantis**: 'when he was celebrating his triumph.' 8. **cum duōbus filiis**: cf. *cum multis Trōiānis*, p. 30, l. 7. **vinctus**: 'in chains,' lit. 'bound.' 9. **strangulātus**: sc. *est*.

§ 66. 10. **Dum . . . geritur**: 'while the war was being carried on.' Cf. *dum . . . oppūgnat*, p. 35, l. 3. 12. **Italiae**: see note on *quibus*, p. 30, l. 7. **plūrēs**: 'several.' 13. **Ingēns**: note the emphatic position. **nē . . . occuparent**: depends upon (*fuit*) *timor*. See B. 296, 2; A. 331 f.; H. 498, 3. **iterum**: see § 32. 14. **creātus**: sc. *est*. **eique bellum . . . dēcrētum est**: 'war was entrusted to him by a decree (of the senate).' 16. **tertius**: sc. *cōsulātus*. 17. **ce-**

cīdīt: what enables us to decide that this form is the perfect tense of *caedō* and not of *cadō*? **18. mīlia**: what word is to be supplied? **propter quod meritum**: 'on account of this service,' *i.e.* his successes described in the preceding sentence. Note the trans. of *quod*.

19. absēns: 'though absent.' The part. contains a concessive idea. **quīntum**: 'for the fifth time.' **20. adhūc**: 'still,' *i.e.* even after their losses in battle with Marius. **Infīnīta**: derivation? **21. trānsiērunt**: *i.e.* *Alpēs*. **ā C. Mariō et Q. Catulō . . . dīmīcātum est**: 'C. Marius and Q. Catulus fought.' Cf. *pūgnātum est*, p. 43, l. 6. **ad**: see note on *ad*, p. 40, l. 18. **24. capta**: sc. *sunt*.

§ 67. **25. Sescentēsīmō . . . conditā**: *i.e.* 95 B.C. **26. bellum**: the Social War. **27. multōs annōs**: see B. 181, 1; A. 256, 2; H. 379. **28. cum illīs**: *i.e.* *cum Rōmānīs*. **īūra**: 'rights' of Roman citizenship. Page 51. **1. in eō**: sc. *bellō*. **2. fūsi fugātique**: sc. *sunt*. **3. cum . . . tum**: 'not only . . . but also.' **ēgregiē**: how are adverbs of this class formed? See B. 76, 1; A. 92; H. 304, II, 2. **4. cōpiīs**: cf. the plural of *cōpiūs* with the singular, *cōpia*, p. 50, l. 20. **quadriennium**: derivation? **6. eī**: *i.e.* *bellō*. **7. id**: in apposition with the phrase *iūs civitātis*, and at the same time antecedent of *quod*. **prius**: 'formerly.' **negāverant**: note the tense. **8. sociīs**: indirect object of *tribuērunt*.

§ 68. **9. Annō . . . sextō**: *i.e.* 88 B.C. Notice the three modes of expression, *urbis conditae* here, *ab urbe conditā* in p. 50, l. 25, *post urbem conditam*, p. 44, l. 7. **10. prīmum**: is an adj., limiting *bellum*. **11. Mithridāticum**: sc. *bellum exortum est*. **bellō cīvili**: 'for the civil war.' **12. Sullae**: see note on *eīque*, p. 50, l. 14. **15. cum . . . tum**: note the same expression in l. 3. Here = 'either . . . or'; *i.e.* 'killed some of his opponents, and put to flight others.' **16. utcumque**: 'in some way or other.' **19. finibus**: abl. with the adj., *contentus*. See B. 219, 1; A. 254, b, 2; H. 421, III.

§ 69. **20. dum . . . vincit**: see note on *dum . . . oppūgnat*, p. 35, l. 3. **21. ex cōsulibus**: see note on *ex Rōmānīs*, p. 39, l. 3. **22. reparārunt**: = *reparāvērunt*. **23. ex senātū**: *i.e.* 'from among the senators.' **cōsulārēs**: 'of consular rank,' *i.e.* who had at some time held the office of consul. **24. prōscripsērunt**: 'proscribed.' The custom of proscription, introduced by Sulla, consisted in 'posting up in writing' or 'publishing' the names of those whom he desired to have killed and their property confiscated, on the ground that they were hostile to his party. **ipsīus**: intensive; 'himself.' **ēversā**: note

the gender of *domus*. **25. ūniversus**: 'in a body.' **reliquus**: 'the rest of.' **28. etiam**: 'even.' **29. inermium**: sc. *cirium*.

Page 52. 1. dē Mithridāte triumphāvit: 'celebrated a triumph over Mithridates,' the regular form of expression. See note on *triumphāns*, p. 34, l. 6. **2. Italicum**: sc. *bellum*. **et**: 'also.' **socialē**: sc. *bellum*. **3. cīvile**: sc. *bellum*. **cōnsūmpsērunt**: the subject is *bella*, l. 2. **ultrā**: 'more than.' **4. cōsulārēs**: see note on *cōsulārēs*, p. 51, l. 23. **praetōriōs**: 'ex-praetors,' 'men of praetorian rank'; cf. *cōsulārēs*. **5. aediliciōs**: 'ex-aediles.'

III. VIRI ROMAE.

1. *Caius Julius Caesar*.

100-44 B.C.

Page 53. 1. C. Iūlius Caesar: the character *C*. in early times represented both C and G, and C. stands for *Gāius*; see B. 373; A. 6; H. 2, 1-3. Of the three names *Gāius* is the *praenōmen*, corresponding to our Christian name; *Iūlius* is the *nōmen* or name of the *gēns*; and *Caesar* is the *cognōmen*, or family name. The *cognōmen* was often in its origin a nickname (cf. note on p. 61, l. 13 below). The origin of the name *Caesar* is doubtful; see Class. Dict. **nōbilissimā**: see note to p. 45, l. 10. **Iūliōrum**: see Vocab. and Class. Dict. **familiā**: for the case see B. 215; A. 244, a; H. 415, II. **2. annum agēns sextum et decimum**: 'in his sixteenth year.' See note to p. 43, l. 14. **Cornēliam**: Roman women are ordinarily referred to only by the *nōmen* or gentile name. Cf. note to l. 1 above. **3. Cinnae**: see Vocab. **dūxit uxōrem**: = *in mātrimonium dūxit*. **pater**: subject of *esset*; note the order, which is a common one in Latin.

4. Sullae: for the case see B. 192, 1; A. 234 a; H. 391, 1. **ut eam repudiāret**: see B. 295, 1; A. 331; H. 498, II. **5. neque potuit**: 'but he could not.' **bonis**: 'goods,' 'property.' For the case see B. 214, 1, b; A. 243, a; H. 413. **6. etiam**: 'besides.' **7. quārtānae morbo labōrābat**: 'he was suffering from quartan ague;' *quārtānae* (sc. *febris*) was an intermittent fever, the attacks of which occurred after intervals of two days, i.e., on every fourth day, according to the Roman method of inclusive reckoning. For the case of *morbo* see B. 219;

A. 245, 2; H. 416. Note the mood of *labōrābat* in the concession of a fact.

8. prope per singulās noctēs: 'almost every night.' **9. nē . . . perdūcerētur**: depends on *evāsīt*; note the order. **10. propinquōs et affīnēs**: what difference in meaning between these two words? See Vocab. **11. Satis cōstat**: see Vocab. under *cōnstō*. **12. cum**: is this the prep. or the conj.? Why? **dēprecantibus . . . virīs**: dat., ind. obj. of *dēnegāssēt*. **14. expūgnātum**: 'forced to consent'; note the literal meaning of the word. **vincerent**: 'that they might have their way.' On the mood see B. 316; A. 339; H. 523, III. **15. scīrent**: see B. 310, II; A. 314; H. 513, I. **quem incolumem**: sc. *esse*. **16. sēcum**: refers to Sulla. **dēfendissent**: = *dēfendistis* of the dir. disc. **17. exitiō futurum**: 'would be the ruin': for the case of *exitiō* see B. 191, 2; A. 233, a; H. 390, I. **18. stipendia prima . . . fēcīt**: 'he served his first campaign.' **19. Corōnā cīvīcā**: for the case see B. 187, I, a; A. 225, d; H. 384, 2. The civic crown, of oak leaves, was the most highly prized of the various rewards conferred for distinction in arms. It was awarded for saving the life of a Roman citizen in battle, and conferred certain privileges on its possessor, including immunity from taxation. Cf. Macaulay, *Lays of Ancient Rome*, *Virginia*, 314,

'How she danced with pleasure
To see my civic crown.'

Rhodum: Rhodes, like Athens, was a favorite resort for students of oratory. Cicero, as well as Caesar, studied with Molo at Rhodes. **20. per ōtium**: 'at leisure.'

Page 54. 1. dicendī: 'of oratory.' **Hūc**: i.e. *Rhodum*. **trā-icit**: for the mood and tense see B. 293, I; A. 328, a; H. 519, I. **4. terrōrī venerātiōnīque**: cf. *exitiō*, p. 53, l. 17 above. **5. ad expediendās pecūniās**: pl., like English 'moneys.' For the construction see B. 338, 3; A. 300; H. 543. **quibus redimerētur**: 'with which to ransom him'; a rel. clause of purpose. **6. dimisit**: note the force of the prefix. **quīnquāgintā**: sc. *talenta*. On the value of the talent see the Vocabulary. **7. datūrum**: sc. *esse*. Note the tense. **8. quae urbs proximē aberat**: 'which was the nearest city.' **9. invectus . . . fugāvit**: 'sailed . . . and put to flight.' What is the literal meaning of *invectus*? **12. quod illīs saepe minātus inter locum erat**: 'with which he had often jestingly threatened them.' For the case of *illīs* see B. 187, I; A. 225; H. 384, II. Note the position

of *inter iocum*, and its meaning. **13. cruci suffixit:** 'crucified,' a common mode of punishing slaves and criminals.

14. Quaestōri: sc. *eī*, 'as quaestor,' 'in his quaestorship.' **Obvénit:** 'fell to his lot.' **Quō:** adv. = *in ulteriorem Hispaniam*.

15. ad cōspectum: 'at the sight.' **16. per iocum:** 'in jest'; cf. *inter iocum*, l. 12, and *per otium*, p. 53, l. 20. **num:** note the force of the interrogative particle, and see note to p. 29, l. 24 above.

illic etiam: 'even there.' **17. ambiōnī:** dat. of possession; 'there was room for ambition,' more literally, 'ambition had a place.'

18. Domīnātiōnis: B. 204, 1; A. 218, b; H. 399, II. **22. aliis rēbus:** abl. of specification; see B. 226; A. 253; H. 424. **pietātem:** here = 'justice.'

colās: B. 275, 2; A. 266, a; H. 484, IV, N. 2. **23. Gādēs:** why is the preposition omitted with this word? **quod:** note the gen. and n.; see B. 250, 3; A. 199; H. 445, 4.

25. ingemuit: 'sighed.'

25. quasi . . . pertaederet: sc. *illum*; 'as if he were disgusted with his lack of enterprise.' For the case of *ignaviae* see B. 209, 1; A. 221, b; H. 409, III; for the mood of *pertaederet*, B. 307; A. 312; H. 513, II. **26. nihildum:** 'nothing as yet.' **actum esset:** the subj., because the reason is given as Caesar's thought, not as the view of the writer.

quā: B. 230; A. 256, 1; H. 429. **27. subēgisset:** subj. because it represents a part of Caesar's thought. This is sometimes called subj. *by attraction*.

continuō: be careful in the translation of this word; cf. *continuē*. **28. ad captandās . . . occasiōnēs:** 'to seize the opportunity'; one of the various ways of expressing purpose; see note on *ad pecūniās expediendās*, l. 5 above.

quam primum, B. 240, 3; A. 93, b; H. 170, 2, (2). *māiōrum rerum*, 'for greater deeds'; objective gen.

Page 55. 1. Aedilis: 'as aedile,' or 'in his aedileship'; see Vocab. The aediles were in the habit of giving public entertainments at their own expense, to gain the good will of the populace, and so pave their way to election to the praetorship and consulship.

4. cōmūnium quoque impēnsārum: *i.e.* he got the credit for the entertainments of which he and Bibulus jointly bore the expense, as well (*quoque*) as of those which he gave alone. **5. effudit:** 'wasted.'

6. sibi opus esse: 'that he needed.' **mīliēns sēstertium:** *i.e.* *mīliēns centēna mīlia sēstertium*, 'a hundred million sesterces,' about \$4,300,000.

7. ut habēret nihil: *i.e.* to be free from debt. **8. societātem:** 'a league,' the first triumvirate, in 60 B.C.

10. displicuisset: subj. because it is an essential part of the clause *nē quid ageretur*; cf. *subēgisset*, p. 54, l. 27

above. **11. ager Campānus**: this was land in Campania, which belonged to the state. **plēbi**: 'among the people'; dat. of the ind. obj.

12. cui lēgi: 'this law.' **rem ad populum dētulit**: 'he laid the matter before the people,' i.e. before the popular assembly.

15. stercore: for the case see B. 218, 8; A. 248, c, 2; H. 421, II. **eī**: the dat. is nearly equal to a poss. gen. modifying *fāscēs*. B. 188, 1 and n.; A. 235 and n.; H. 384, 4, n. 2. **16. adeō**: 'even.'

17. domō: 'in his house'; really an abl. of *means*; the loc. *domī* would mean 'at home.' See B. 218, 7. **18. ūnus**: 'alone.' **19. si quid testandī grātiā signārent**: 'if they signed anything as witnesses'; more lit. 'for the purpose of bearing witness.' The subjunctive is used because the conditional clause is an essential part of the result clause, *ut . . . scriberent*. General conditions are ordinarily in the indic. See B. 302, 3; A. 309. **20. per locum**: cf. p. 54, l. 16. **21. āctum**: sc. *esse*. Cf. the Eng. expression, 'done' in a given year. **Iūliō et Cae-**

sare: sc. *cōsulibus*. **22. duōbus**: sc. *cōsulibus*. **23. cōsul-**

lātū: for the case see B. 218, 1; A. 249; H. 421, 1. **prōvinciam**:

'as his province,' in apposition with *Galliam*.

24. novem annīs, quibus: time within which; *quibus* really expresses duration of time, but its case is attracted to that of *novem annīs*. See, however, B. 231, 1; A. 256, b; H. 379, 1. **26. primus Rōmānōrum**

. . . **affēcit clādibus**: the sentence cannot be rendered word for word into good English. Trans. 'He was the first of the Romans to make a bridge (across the Rhine) and attack the Germans, whom, etc.,' or in some similar way. Note the order of the Latin words.

Page 56. 1. superātis: sc. *eīs*, = *Britannīs*, and see B. 187, 1; A. 227, f; H. 384, II. Note that these verbs govern the dat. for different reasons: in this case the dat. is really governed by *in-* in composition; 'he conquered them and imposed on them a requisition of money and hostages.' Britain did not become a Roman province until 43 A.D.

2. Hic: adv.; 'in this campaign.' **cum**: correlative with *tum* below; see Vocab. **3. illud ēgregium**: sc. *insigne*; 'the following brilliant exploit.'

quod . . . restituit: a subst. clause in the indic., in apposition with *illud*; trans. *quod* by 'that.' **nūntante in fugam**: 'giving way to flight'; what is the lit. trans.?

4. scūtō: see INTRO. p. 16, 3.

5. Idem: 'again . . . he,' or 'also . . . he.' What is the lit. meaning? **6. aquiferum**: see INTRO. p. 17, 1. **ineundae fugae causā**: B. 338, c; A. 298, c; H. 544, 1.

7. comprehēsum . . . dētrāxit: 'seized . . . and turned.'

10. vincique: trans. with *parātās* (sc. *legiōnēs*). **vincere:** takes the place of the second acc. with *docuit*. See B. 178, *b*; A. 239, 2, *c*; H. 374. **12. interfectō . . . Crassō:** in the disastrous defeat at Carrhae, in 53 B.C. **14. iam pridem . . . suspectae:** sc. *erant* . . . *erat*, and see B. 260, 4; A. 277, *b*; A. 469, 2. **15. Pompēiō:** see B. 188, 2, *c*; A. 235; H. 384, II, 4, N. 3. **Pompēiāna:** = *Pompēi*. **16. ferēbat:** we should say 'could bear.' **17. imperfectō bellō:** abl. abs.; trans. 'before the war was ended.' **18. quamvis absenti:** = *quamvis absēns esset*, 'although he was absent' from Rome. **19. suādentibus . . . amicis:** 'at the solicitation of Pompey and his friends.' **20. negātum est:** sc. *id*, = *ut illi liceret alterum cōsulātum petere*. **acceptam:** trans. by a rel. clause. **21. vindicātūrus:** = *ut vindicāret*. See B. 337, 4; A. 293, *b*, 2; H. 549, 3. In what other ways might this purpose be expressed? **bellandum ratus:** sc. *esse*, 'thinking that war was inevitable'; more lit. 'that war must be waged.' See B. 138, IV; A. 146, *d*; H. 301, 1.

22. Rubicōnem . . . trānsiit: since the Rubicon was the boundary of Caesar's province, to cross it was equivalent to a declaration of war. The expression 'to cross the Rubicon' has become proverbial. **quī:** for the agreement see note on *quod*, p. 54, I. 23 above. **25. quod si:** 'but if.' **ponticulum:** 'that little bridge.' The dimin. emphasizes the insignificance of the action in comparison with its results. **26. trānsierimus:** fut. perf. denoting an action completed at the time of *agenda erunt*. See B. 264; A. 307, *c*; H. 508, 2. In accordance with the Eng. idiom it should be translated by the *present*. **27. Iacta ālea estō:** our familiar expression is 'the die is cast'; Caesar uses the imperative. **28. quō:** adv.

Page 57. **3. diūtius:** 'too long.' See B. 240, 1; A. 93, *a*; H. 444, 1. **4. ad eas arcessendās:** see note on *ad expediendās pecūniās*, p. 54, I. 5. **mlrae audāciae:** 'of astonishing boldness'; gen. of quality. **5. mo-
rae:** see B. 204, 1, *a*; A. 218, *a*; H. 399, 3. **6. nāviculam:** 'a small boat.' **7. saevā tempestāte:** abl. of cause. **8. nāvigium:** 'the craft,' a general term. Derivation? **9. gubernātōre:** 'steersman,' 'helmsman,' who was also the owner of the boat, and the only other person present. **11. obrutus esset:** note that the action of the verb did *not* take place. In such cases the subj. is used with *prius quam*. Cf. B. 292, *b*; A. 327; H. 520, II. **12. Pharsālicō:** see note on p. 45, I. 21 above. **15. quoque:** i.e. 'as well' as against Pompey. **vidēret:** B. 283, 3; A. 320, *c*; H. 517. **17. praeferōcem:** 'full of confidence'; note the force of *prae-*. **ab adventū:** note the position.

18. quattuor . . . hōris: abl. of time within which. Note the order. **quibus in cōspectum vēnit**: sc. *hostis*, or *eiūs*; 'after he came in sight of the enemy.' *quibus* (sc. *hōris*) is also abl. of time within which. **19. aciē**: 'battle.' Note the order. **mōre fulminis**: 'like a thunderbolt.' For the case of *mōre*, see B. 220, 3; A. 253, n.; H. 416, n. 2. **20. vēnit, percussit, ēvāsit**: note the perfect, denoting instantaneous action. **22. Ponticō . . . triumphō**: i.e. in the triumph which he celebrated over Pharnaces, king of Pontus; abl. of time. **trium verbōrum . . . titulum**: 'an inscription of three words.' For the case of *verbōrum* see B. 203, 2; A. 215, b; H. 396, v. **25. dēvicit**: note the force of *dē*-. The reference is to the battle of Thapsus, in 46 B.C. **26. Āfricānī bellī**: 'in the war in Africa'; *bellī* is an objective gen. governed by *victōrem*. On the use of the adj. *Āfricānī* see note on *Pharsalicō*, l. 12 above. **excēpit**: 'met.' The subject is *Hispaniēse* (sc. *bellum*). **27. Cn.**: stands for *Gnaeus*. Cf. C, p. 53, l. 1 above.

Page 58. 1. sequentium: 'from those who followed'; subjective gen. with *auxiliū*. Note that the Latin expression is *not eōrum sequentium*, which would have a different meaning. What meaning? *auxiliū . . . cōfluentibus* is abl. abs. **2. Sua**: 'his usual.' **in Hispaniam**: note the case. **4. initum**: sc. *est*. **proelium**: the battle of Munda, in 45 B.C. **plūs quam dubiō Mārte**: 'when the battle was more than doubtful,' i.e. was going against Caesar. *Mārte* is used by metonymy for *proeliō*. **6. servāset**: the subj. shows that Caesar's reason is quoted by the narrator. **8. vidērent**: an imperative clause in indir. disc. Cf. *vincerent*, p. 53, l. 14. **quem et quō locō imperātōrem**: 'what a commander and in what a situation.' Note the omission of the prep. with *locō*; see B. 228, 1, b; A. 258, c, 2, f; H. 425, 11, 2. **dēsertūrī essent**: B. 115; A. 129; H. 233.

9. Verēcundiā . . . virtūte: abl. of cause. **10. omnium**: 'over all.' Cf. *Āfricānī bellī*, p. 57, l. 26, and the note. **14. annumque . . . accommodāvit**: after Caesar's reform of the calendar, in 46 B.C., the year consisted of 365 days, distributed among the months as at present. By the previous arrangement, which tradition attributed to Numa, March, May, July, and October had 31 days, February 28, and the rest 29. Since this lunar year of 355 days was too short, the deficiency was made up by inserting an intercalary month (*intercalāriō mēse*, l. 16) every other year. **16. diērum**: see note on *verbōrum*, p. 57, l. 22 above. **ūnus diēs . . . intercalārētur**: the present 'leap-year.' **17. Iūs . . . dīxit**: 'he administered justice.' **18. Repetundārum**: sc. *rērum*, 'extortion.' For the case see B. 208,

1; A. 220; H. 409, II. **convictōs**: notice that we do not have *eōs* **convictōs**. See note on *sequentium*, l. 1 above. **19. Peregrinārum mercium**: 'on imports'; objective gen.

20. lēgem sūmptuāriam: 'the laws against extravagance.' The existing 'sumptuary laws,' especially those regulating the expense of the table, were vigorously enforced by Caesar, who also passed a new law forbidding the use of purple garments, of litters, and of pearls, except by persons of a certain rank or age, or on certain days. **exercuit**: 'enforced.' **22. ad certum modum**: 'to a definite limit.' **23. redigere**: sc. *dēstinābat*. **optima quaeque**: 'all the best'; see B. 252, 5, c; A. 93, c; H. 458, 1. **25. posset**: subj. representing Caesar's design. **pūblicāre**: 'to open to the public.' **26. Pomptinās palūdēs**: locate these, and the places mentioned in the following four lines, with the help of the Vocab. and the maps. **viam mūnīre**: see Vocab. **27. ad . . . ūsque**: 'all the way to,' 'as far as.' **30. agentem et meditantem**: sc. *eum*.

Page 59. **5. ōius**: refers to whom? Why? **rōstris**: 'the rostrum' (in English the singular is used, in Latin always the plural) or speaker's platform, between the Comitium and the Forum. It was so called because it was decorated with the beaks of the ships (*rōstra*) taken from the people of Antium in 338 B.C. **diadēma**: 'crown.' Note that *corōna* is not used of a kingly crown, and cf. p. 53, l. 19. **6. ita**: 'in such a way.' **7. offēnsus**: sc. *esse*. **8. sexāgintā amplius viris**: 'more than sixty men.' *Amplius* does not affect the construction; see B. 217, 3; A. 247, c; H. 417, 1, n. 2. **dēcrētumque**: sc. *est*. **10. futūrī periculī**: 'of the coming danger.' **11. Calpurnia**: see note on *Cornēliam*, p. 53, l. 2. **nocturnō vīsū**: 'by a dream.' **12. praedixerat**: note the tense, denoting an action prior to that of *orābat*.

13. quasi fātālēs: 'as fateful.' **15. Ecquid**: simply interrogative. Do not translate. **16. is**: sc. *respondit*. **18. speciē officiī**: 'under the pretence of business,' i.e. as if to proffer the request referred to in *rogātūrus*. **19. rogātūrus**: see note on *vindicātūrus*, p. 56, l. 21. **renuentique**: sc. *eī*. For the case see note on *eī*, p. 55, l. 15 above. **ab utrōque umerō**: 'by both shoulders.' See note on *ā tergō*, p. 36, l. 8 above. **20. clāmantem**: sc. *eum*. **Ista**: note the force of the pron.; for the agreement cf. note on *quod*, p. 54, l. 23 above, and *quī*, p. 56, l. 22. **21. adversum**: sc. *eum*, 'in front.' **22. arreptum . . . trāiēcit**: 'seized . . . and stabbed.'

25. togā caput obvolvīt: see Shakespeare, *Julius Caesar*, Act. iii, 185,

‘In his mantle muffling up his face,
Even at the base of Pompey’s statue,
Which all the while ran blood, great Caesar fell.’

26. fili locō habēbat: ‘regarded as a son.’ On *locō* without the prep. see note on *quō locō*, p. 58, l. 8. **27. mī fili:** note the form of the voc.; see B. 25, 3 and 86, 2; A. 81, a, n.; H. 185, n. 1. **29. cōstitūt:** ‘it is agreed.’ **30. ex sententiā:** ‘according to his desire.’ **et:** ‘not only’; correlative to *et* on p. 60, l. 3. **quondam:** ‘once.’

Page 60. **1. ultimā valētūdine:** abl. of time. **3. subitam . . . celeremque:** sc. *mortem*. **occiderētur:** see note on *obrutus esset*, p. 57, l. 11. Here the action of *occiderētur* had *not yet* taken place, at the time of *praetulerat* (l. 5). **4. nātō:** ‘which arose.’ **5. repentinum inopinātumque:** sc. *finem vitae*. **7. morte necessariā:** ‘by a natural death.’ **9. sēmet:** emphatic form of *sē*. **11. Quō rārior . . . eō magis:** ‘the rarer . . . the more.’ *Quō* and *eō* are abl. of degree of difference. **principibus viris:** ‘great men.’ **12. victoriā civīlī:** ‘his victory in the civil war.’ **13. scrīnia . . . epistulārum:** ‘some boxes of letters.’ The *scrinium* was a circular box or case, for holding books (*i.e.* manuscript rolls) and letters. **15. diversis:** *i.e.* not Caesar’s. **nōluit:** ‘refused.’ **16. nē . . . darent:** sc. *epistulae*.

17. quod . . . solēret: ‘that he was accustomed,’ a subst. clause in apposition with *laudem*. The narrator quotes the expression of Cicero; hence the clause is in the subj. See B. 299, 314; A. 341, c; 336, 2; H. 524; 528, 1. **18. nisi:** ‘except.’ **19. prior:** *i.e.* without waiting to hear from Calvus. **21. versiculis:** the dimin. appears to have a contemptuous force. **22. nōn ignōrābat:** litotes; see B. 375, 1; A. 209, c; H. 637, viii. **adhibuit:** ‘invited.’ **Memmiī:** objective gen. with *suffragātor*. **25. excelsā statūrā:** abl. of quality. **26. calvitī:** see B. 202; A. 214, f; H. 396, vi. **27. iocīs:** B. 192; A. 234; H. 391. **aegrē ferēbat:** see Vocab. under *aegrē*. **28. dē-crētīs . . . honōribus:** note the order. **30. laureae:** sc. *corōnae*. **vīnī:** for the case see B. 204, 1; A. 218, a; H. 399, 1.

Page 61. **1. inimīci:** ‘his personal enemies.’ **Verbum:** ‘saying.’ **3. Armōrum et equitandī:** B. 204, 1; A. 218, a; H. 399, 2. **labō-ris:** cf. *dominātiōnis*, p. 54, l. 17. **4. ultrā fidem:** ‘beyond belief.’ **equō . . . pedibus:** B. 218, 7. **7. nūtiōs dē sē:** *i.e.* the messengers which were sent to report his coming. **8. inflātīs ūtribus:** B. 218, 3; A. 254, b; H. 425, 1, 1), n.

2. *Marcus Tullius Cicero.*

106-43 B.C.

10. equestrī genere : 'the equestrian order.' For the case see note to p. 53, l. 1. The knights (*equitēs*) were originally the cavalry of the state, consisting of the richest citizens. The *equitēs* ceased to serve in the field at an early period, their place being taken by Gauls, Numidians, etc. In the time of the Gracchi the equestrian order came into being, consisting of those who possessed a fortune of 400,000 sesterces (about \$17,000). It was thus a monied aristocracy occupying a position in the state between the nobility and the common people. The members of the order wore a narrow purple stripe on the tunic and a gold ring, and the first fourteen rows of seats in the theatre behind the orchestra were assigned to them. For fuller details, see *Class. Dict.* **Arpīnī :** 'at Arpinum.' Note the constr. **12. in extrēmō nāsō :** 'on the end of his nose.' See B. 241, 1; A. 193; H. 440, n. 1, 2. **grānō :** dat. with *similem*. **13. cognōmen :** *cognōmina* were frequently nicknames, originating in personal peculiarities, e.g. *Nāsō*, 'big-nosed,' *Flaccus*, 'loose-eared,' etc.; but, as in the case of Cicero, they were handed down to descendants to whom they did not of necessity apply.

14. istud : note the force of the pronoun, = 'that surname which you criticise,' or something similar. **16. cum :** with *disceret*. **ubi :** = *ut ibi*, introducing a rel. clause of purpose. **18. ad hūmānitātem solet infōrmārī :** be careful in the trans. of these words. See *Vocab.* **tantō successū :** B. 220, 1; A. 248; H. 419, III. **19. tantāque . . . admirātiōne :** note the order. **20. fāma dē Cicerōnis ingeniō :** see B. 363, 5, n. **22. scholās :** B. 175, 2, 2); A. 237, d; H. 372. **adirent :** for the mood see B. 283, 2; A. 320, a; H. 503, I. **23. in rē públicā :** 'in the state,' 'in public life.' **25. tōtō animō :** see note on *tantō successū*, l. 18 above. **ēius :** = *arte dicendī*. **27. sec-tārētur :** intensive of *sequor*, 'attached himself to.' This was the usual way of preparing oneself for the legal profession.

Page 62. 1. Prīmum : 'first.' What would *prīmus* mean? See note on p. 30, l. 3 above. **libertātem :** 'independence.' **Sul-lānōs :** 'the party of Sulla,' 'the adherents of Sulla.' **2. Rōscium quendam :** 'a man named Roscius,' 'one Roscius.' *Rōscium* is the object of *dēfendere*. Read the sentence slowly and carefully in the Latin; note the order and the relations of the words to one another.

parricīdī: see B. 208, 1; A. 220; H. 409, II., N. 2. **3. ob Chrysogonī:** modifies *potentiam*. **in:** 'among.' **5. iam tum:** 'even then.' **nūllus:** used substantively, = *nēmō*. **6. Ex quō:** 'from this,' i.e. from his defence of Roscius. The antecedent of *quō* is the entire preceding sentence. **7. studiōrum:** 'study.' **8. Rhodum:** why is the prep. omitted?

9. tum: 'at that time.' Note the order. **11. laude:** abl. of separation. **12. privārētur:** what is the meaning of the mood? **13. quaestor:** sc. *ille*; 'as quaestor.' Cf. *quaestōrī*, p. 54, l. 14. **15. cōgeret:** B. 283, 3; A. 320, e; H. 517. **18. quam illi praetōrī:** sc. *dētulerant*. **20. et esset et habērētur:** i.e. he was, and was admitted to be. **23. Plīnius:** see Vocab. **24. secundō . . . Pūnicō:** abl. of time. **Secundō stipendiō:** 'in his second campaign'; abl. of time. **25. stipendiis duobus:** time within which. **26. neutrā manū:** abl. of specification. **27. ātilis:** sc. *erat*. **dēbilis:** 'though crippled.' **mīles erat:** 'he continued to serve as a soldier.'

Page 63. **1. Vinculōrum:** obj. gen. with *profugus*; = *ē vinculis*. **2. vīgintī mēnsibus:** B. 231, 1; A. 250, b; H. 379, 1. **nūllō nōn diē:** 'every day.' See note on *nōn ignōrābat*, p. 60, l. 22 above. **3. duobus . . . suffossis:** an abl. abs. within an abl. abs. He had two horses killed *under him*. **4. Dextram:** sc. *manum*; note the gender. **6. duodēna:** see B. 81, 4, b; A. 95, b; H. 174, 2, 3). **7. hominum:** 'over men'; see note on *Āfricānī bellī*, p. 57, l. 26 above. **8. etiam:** force? **11. inopiā:** abl. of cause. **12. domīnandī:** 'for power'; objective gen. **13. passus esset:** what is the meaning of the subj.? **15. Āctum erat dē:** 'it would have been all over with'; lit. 'it was.' The indic. is used for vividness; see B. 304, 3; A. 308, b; H. 511, 1, N. 4. **16. in . . . cōsulēs incidisset:** 'had happened in the consulship of Cicero and Antonius.' Note the literal trans. **18. habitō senātū:** 'after calling the senate together,' 'in a meeting of the senate.' **19. in praesentem reum:** 'against the guilty man in person.' **21. illātūrus:** see note on *vindicātūrus*, p. 56, l. 21 above.

23. in carcere: in the *Tullīanum*, the lower, circular dungeon of the *Carcer*, the oldest prison at Rome, which is still to be seen on the eastern slope of the Capitoline Hill, near the Forum. The *Tullīanum* seems to have been originally a reservoir, and to have derived its name from *tullū*, 'springs.' **senātōrīi ōrdinis:** 'of the senatorial order,' the

nobility of Rome, consisting of those eligible to election into the senate. They wore the broad purple stripe (*lātus clāvus*) on the tunic, and the best seats were reserved for them at public spectacles. Cf. the note on *equestri genere*, p. 61, l. 10 above. 25. *nitentem . . . secūtum . . . retrāctum*: be careful in the trans. of these participles. Do not trans. them literally. 26. *supplicio mortis affēcit*: a Roman father had the power of life and death over his sons.

Page 64. 1. *infestis signis*: 'in hostile array.' 3. *dīmīcātum sit*: note the tense; the verb is dependent as regards mood, but independent as regards tense. See B. 268, 6. 4. *quem . . . locum, eum*: = *eum locum, quem*. See B. 251, 4, *a*; A. 345, *e*. 6. *pulcherrimā morte*: sc. *concidisset*; abl. of manner. See note on *tantō successū*, p. 61, l. 18 above. 8. *orātiōne pro Sullā*: see note on p. 61, l. 20 above. 16. *tantum dare*: 'give the credit.' 17. *ut dispexerim*: elliptical result clause = *ut dicam me dispexisse*. 18. *rei publicae*: subjective gen. *factū*: B. 340, 2; A. 303; H. 547, 1, 2. 19. *paucis . . . annis*: 'a few years afterward'; abl. of degree of difference. *diem dixit*: see Vocab. under *dies*.

20. *quod . . . necāvisset*: note the mood; 'alleging that.' *civēs Rōmānōs*: i.e. the conspirators. *indictā causā*: 'without a trial'; abl. abs. of attendant circumstances. 21. *veste mūtātā*: 'in mourning garb.' Lit. trans.? 23. *quam*: 'rather than,' = *potius quam*. *suā causā*: 'on his account'; *suā* = an objective gen. 24. *Proficiēcentem*: sc. *eum*. *omnēs boni*: the term by which Cicero designates the senatorial party. 25. *ēdictum proposuit*: sc. *populō*; in his capacity as *tribūnus plēbis*. *ut Mārcō Tullio . . . interdiceretur*: the regular formula for banishment. For the cons. of *Mārcō Tullio* see B. 187, 11, *b*; A. 225, *e*; H. 384, 5: *ignī* and *aquā* are abl. of separation. 26. *domum et villas*: i.e. his city house and his country residences.

Page 65. 1. *māximō . . . studiō*: B. 221. 2. *per tōtam vītam*: 'throughout his whole life'; stronger than *tōtam vītam*. *itinerē*: with *iūcundius*; abl. of comparison. *quō*: B. 218, 7; A. 258, 2, *g*. 3. *obviam . . . itum est*: 'everybody went to meet him on his return.' *eī* is dat. governed by *obviam*. 4. *pūblicā pecūniā*: 'at the public expense'; abl. of means. 6. *gravissimae*: note the emphatic position. 7. *ut = ita ut*. *nisi*: 'except.' 8. *quidem*: 'for his part.' *summō studiō*: abl. of manner. 12. *ultrō*: 'freely,' 'without solicitation.' *Octāviānum*: see the Life on p. 67 fol. 15. *Antōnius*: see Vocab. 16. *iam diū . . . inimicum*: 'who had long been his

enemy.' 17. *itineribus*: see note on *quō*, l. 2 above. *ā mari proximē aberat*: 'was nearest to the sea.' Note the Latin idiom, 'was nearest, reckoning from the sea.' 18. *transitūrus*: see note on *vindicatūrus*, p. 56, l. 21 above.

19. *in altum*: sc. *mare*. *prōvectum*: sc. *eum*. 20. *iactatiōnem maris*: i.e. he was seasick. 21. *fugae et vitae*: objective gen. governed by *taedium*. 25. *lecticam*: litters for sick persons and invalids seem to have been in use at Rome from the earliest times. They were covered and enclosed with curtains, or with sides in which there were windows, and resembled a sedan chair. In later times they were used by people in health, especially in travelling. *quietōs*: 'quietly.' Really an adj. agreeing with *servōs*. 26. *Prōminentī*: sc. *eī*. See B. 188, 2, d; A. 229; H. 386, 2. 27. *abscisae*: sc. *sunt*. 28. *iussū*: see note on *mōre*, p. 57, l. 19 above. 29. *rōstris*: see note to p. 59, l. 5 above.

Page 66. 1. *quam diū*: 'as long as.' 2. *ipsa* = *rēs publica*. 3. *plūs operae pōnēbat in*: 'gave more attention to'; *operae* is partitive gen. 6. *homine*: B. 226, 2; A. 245, a, 1; H. 421, III. 7. *rūra*: 'the country,' i.e. he went from one of his country residences to another. See p. 64, l. 26. 10. *rettulisset*: representing the thought of Cicero, *sī rettulerō*. *adulēscēns*: 'in his youth.' 14. *brevi tempore*: time within which. *ēversā rē publicā*: 'after the overthrow of the republic.' 15. *eā = rē publicā*. Trans. by a temporal clause. 16. *ēvāsīt*: 'he finally became,' 'turned out to be.' 17. *oportēre*: sc. *nōs* or *hominēs*. 18. *sī quid insit bonī*: 'whatever good there may be in them.' Why is *insit* subj.? Cns. of *bonī*? 19. *facētē ab eō dicta*: 'witty sayings of his.'

20. *exiguae statūrae*: abl. of quality or description. Cf. *excelsā statūrā*, p. 60, l. 25. *gladiō*: an abl. of means. See B. 218, 7. 23. *iūniōrem sē*: sc. *esse*. *dictitābat*: note the force of the intensive verb; cf. *sectārētur*, p. 61, l. 27 above. 25. *audiō*: note the tense. See B. 259, 4; A. 276, a; H. 467, 2. 26. *alterō cōsule*: 'the other consul,' that is, Caesar's colleague. *diēs Decembris ultimā*: the new consuls would enter upon office Jan. 1, i.e. on the following day. 27. *hōrā septimā*: about 1 P.M. 28. *salūtātum*: B. 340, 1; A. 302; H. 546.

Page 67. 1. *Festīnēmus*: B. 274; A. 266; H. 483. *absat*: B. 292, 1; A. 327, a; H. 520, 2. 3. *viderit*: a rel. clause of cause; on the tense see note on *dīmicātum sit*, p. 64, l. 3 above.

3. *Caesar Octavianus Augustus.*

63 B.C. TO 14 A.D.

4. Octāviānus: his name was originally *Gāius Octāvius*. Upon his adoption by *C. Iūlius Caesar*, he assumed, after the custom of the time, the name *C. Iūlius Caesar Octāriānus*. **quārtum annum agēns:** see note to p. 53, l. 2. **6. eum:** i.e. *avunculum*. **Hispāniās:** the pl. is used of the two divisions of *Hispānia Citerior* and *Hispānia Ulterior*. **7. studiis vacāvit:** 'he had leisure for study.' **8. occisum . . . sē:** sc. *esse*. **11. Mutinae:** see Vocab., and locate the place on the map.

12. urbis aditū: 'from access to the city'; *urbis* is objective gen. **13. primō:** 'at first,' i.e. this was his first means of communication. **15. Quin et:** 'then too.' **16. internūtiis:** 'as messengers'; abl. in apposition with *avibus*. **Columbis:** see note on *eī*, p. 55, l. 15 above. **quās inclūsās . . . famē affecerat:** 'which he had shut up and starved.' **18. moenibus:** dat. governed by *proximō*. **lūcis cibique:** B. 204, 1; A. 218, a; H. 399, 1, 1. **19. altissima aedificiōrum:** 'the tops of the buildings'; *aedificiōrum* is partitive gen., and *altissima* is the n. pl. used substantively. **21. dispositō . . . cibō:** 'by scattering food.' **22. instituit:** B. 287, 1; A. 324; H. 518, n. 1. **23. Bellum Mutinēse:** 'the war before Mutina.' Note the adj., and see B. 353, 5, b. **25. officiō:** B. 218, 1; A. 249; H. 421, 1. **aquiliferō:** see Intro. p. 17, 1.

Page 68. **1. subisse = subivisse.** **4. misitque:** sc. *eōs*. **nōmine exercitūs:** 'in the name of the army'; abl. of manner. **7. feceritis:** note the fut. perf. of an act completed at the time of *faciet*. **9. invāsisset:** note the word, used of a forcible seizure of the consular power. **ita ut:** 'on condition that,' introducing a result clause. **10. rei publicae cōstituendae:** B. 339, 7; A. 299, b; H. 541, 2, n. 3. The reference is to the second triumvirate, in 43 B.C. **12. Sullānā:** sc. *prōscriptiōne*. This was in 82 B.C. **13. multa . . . exempla:** note the order. **impietātis,** 'unfilial conduct.' **15. partēs:** 'party.' **17. posset:** B. 282, 2; A. 317, 2; H. 497, 1. **18. Alius quīdam:** 'another man'; *quīdam*, as is frequently the case, has the force of the English indefinite article. **prōscriptum:** sc. *esse*. **clientem suum:** 'to a dependent of his.' **20. occidendum eum . . . obiēcit:** 'gave him up to be killed.' See B. 337, 7, 2; A. 294, d; H. 544, n. 2. **23. torti:** this was the usual way of extracting information from slaves.

24. Nōn sustinuit: we should say 'could not endure.' **boni exempli:** gen. of quality or description. **26. senātoris cūiusdam:** 'of a senator.' See note on *alius quīdam*, l. 18 above. **28. cognōisset = cognōvisset.** **29. posticō:** abl. of means. See note on *equō*, p. 61, l. 4 above. **31. Quantī virī:** B. 198, 3; A. 214, 1, d; H. 401, n. 2. **cum:** 'although'; note the mood of *ostendantur*. **32. prae-mium fideī:** 'as the reward of fidelity,' in apposition with *mortem*.

Page 69. **2. quamquam . . . aeger:** sc. *erat*. **3. duplici proeliō:** abl. of means. **priore:** sc. *proelio*. **4. Victor:** 'as victor,' 'after his victory.' **5. nōbilissimum quemque captivum:** 'all the noblest captives.' See note on *optima quaeque*, p. 58, l. 23 above. **nōn sine:** see note on *nōn ignōrābat*, p. 60, l. 22 above. **7. istam:** 'that of which he spoke' = *sepulturam*. **8. Aliōs:** subject of *sortiri*. **9. concōderētur:** sc. *vita*, or *ut viveret*. **10. voluntariā . . . nece:** abl. of manner. Cf. *morte necessariā*, p. 60, l. 7. **12. cōnantibus:** 'those who attempted.' Note that the Latin expression is not *eīs cōnantibus*, and cf. note on *sequentium*, p. 58, l. 1 above. **vōce:** 'remark,' 'word.' **moriendum esse:** 'that they must die.'

13. quīdam: 'some.' **divō Iulio:** 'in honor of the deified Iulius'; dat. case; for the meaning of *divō*, see Vocab. **15. repudiātā:** 'having divorced,' or 'after divorcing.' **16. dūxisset uxorem = in matrimōnium dūxisset.** **18. centiēns sēstertium = centiēns centēna milia sēstertium,** 'ten million sesterces,' about \$430,000. **19. dixerat:** sc. *illa = Cleopatra*. **20. magnificam aliās . . . sed cottidiānam:** i.e. no more magnificent than usual. **21. irridentī:** trans. by a rel. clause. **22. potuisset:** what is the meaning of the subjunctive? **23. Ex praeceptō:** 'at her command,' 'in accordance with her command.' Cf. *ex sententiā*, p. 59, l. 30 above. **25. quīdam esset actūra:** 'what in the world she was going to do.' **26. auribus:** an abl. of means; see B. 218, 7. **27. absorbit:** 'drank.' **Victum:** sc. *esse*.

Page 70. **1. Actium:** in 31 B.C. For the location see Vocab. and map opp. p. 75. **2. Victum:** sc. *eum = Antōnium*. **3. petiit:** sc. *Octāviānus*. **5. habitū rēgis:** B. 221. **6. mortem sibi ipse cōnscivit:** 'committed suicide.' **8. triumphō:** 'for his triumph'; dat. of purpose. **9. afferendam:** see note on *occidendum obiicit*, p. 68, l. 20. **11. imperiō:** B. 218, 1; A. 249; H. 421, 1. **13. mān-suētudinis . . . hūmānitātis:** B. 204, 1; A. 248, c, n; H. 399, 1, 3. **cīs:** in apposition with *multis*; we should say 'of those.' **14. triumphāns:** 'in triumph'; see note on *triumphāns*, p. 34, l. 6. **15. tōtō**

orbe : B. 228, 1, *b* ; A. 258, *f*, 2 ; H. 425, II., 2. **16. Iānī geminī portās** : 'the arch of two-faced Janus.' Janus was represented with two faces turned in opposite directions. **tantum** : adv. **17. sub Numā rēge . . . Pūnicum bellum** : the traditional date of Numa's reign was from 715-673 B.C. ; the first Punic War closed in 241 B.C. **20. laetitīā** : B. 218, 1 ; A. 249 ; H. 421, 1.

21. Augustō cognōmen : 'the surname of Augustus.' *Augustō* is attracted to the case of *ipsī*. See B. 190, 1 ; A. 231, *b* ; H. 387, n. 1. **22. Sextilis** : the original name of the month now called August ; it was the sixth month of the year, reckoning from March 1, which was originally the beginning of the year. July was called *Quīntilis*, or the fifth month, until it received the name *Iūlius*, in honor of Julius Caesar. **23. Patris . . . cognōmen** : cf. *Augustō cognōmen*, l. 21 above. **25. compos . . . vōtōrum meōrum** : 'since I have gained my heart's desire.' For the case of *vōtōrum* see B. 204 ; A. 218, *a* ; H. 399, 3. **26. quid habeō . . . quod precer** : 'what else have I to pray for?' For the mood of *precer* see B. 283, 2 ; A. 320, *a* ; H. 503, 1.

Page 71. 3. nōn semel : 'more than once.' See note on p. 66, l. 22 above. **5. commissum irī** : the subject is *rem publicam*. Note that the fut. pass. part. does not change its form according to the gender of its subject. **6. quem novī statūs** : B. 209, 1 ; A. 221, *b* ; H. 409, III. **8. aliquandō** : 'once.' **12. patriae** : B. 204, 1, *a* ; A. 218, *b* ; H. 399, II. **13. Pedibus** : an abl. of means ; see B. 218, 7. **incēdēbat** : note the tense. **15. ut . . . adesset** : a subst. clause of purpose, object of *rogāvit*. **16. ūnum ē comitātū suō** : 'one of his suite.' **18. bellō Actiacō** : abl. of time. Note the adj. **19. vicārium** : 'a substitute.' **ipse** : 'in person.' **23. opifex quīdam** : 'a workman.' See note on *quīdam*, p. 68, l. 18 above. **25. officiōsam** : 'well-trained,' 'dutiful.' **vīgintī milibus nummōrum** : 'twenty thousand sesterces,' about \$820. On the case of *milibus* see B. 225 ; A. 252 ; H. 422. **28. quem . . . rogāvit** : trans. as if it were *et rogāvit ut eum afferre cōgerētur*.

Page 72. 4. sollicitāvit : 'tempted.' **5. impenditō** : 'outlay,' 'expense.' **7. perit** : B. 255, 3 ; A. 205, *b* ; H. 463, 3. **8. dictam** : 'which had been taught him.' **dum trānsit** : see note on p. 31, l. 23 above. **9. superfuit corvō memoria** : 'the raven had memory enough left.' **10. ut . . . subtexeret** : 'to add.' *illa* : sc. *verba*. **12. quantī nūllam ante ēmerat** : i.e. at a greater price than he had paid for any previous bird. On *quantī*, see B. 203, 3 ; A. 252, *a* ; H. 405. **14. Graeculus quīdam** : 'a poor Greek.' Note the force of the dimin-

utive; cf. *versiculis*, p. 60, l. 21 above. **ē palātiō**: 'from his palace.' Note the derivation; see Vocab. **16. factūrum**: sc. *esse*. **17. breve** . . . **epigramma**: note the order. **18. inter legendum**: 'while reading it.' Cf. *inter iocum*, p. 54, l. 12. **19. laudāre mirārique**: historical inf. B. 335; A. 275; H. 536, 1. **20. quā**: 'in which,' an abl. of *means*; see B. 218, 7.

22. quōs . . . **daret**: 'to give'; a purpose clause. **datūrum fuisse**: B. 321, 2; A. 337, b, 2; H. 527, III. **24. satis grandem pecūniāe summam**: 'quite a large sum of money.' **26. ferē nulli**: 'to hardly any one'; *nulli* is used substantively. **27. quōdam**: 'a man.' See note on *quidam*, p. 68, l. 18 above. **28. mē** . . . **familiārem**: 'that I was such an intimate friend of yours.' **29. Pōlliōnem quendam**: 'a man named Pollio'; cf. *quōdam*, l. 27 above.

Page 73. **1. piscīna**: 'a fish-pond,' for keeping fish alive for the table; these ponds were often of great size. **3. petītūrus**: see note on *vindicātūrus*, p. 56, l. 21. **quam**: 'than.' **5. quidem** . . . **autem**: these words contrast *illum* and *crystallina*; the force of *quidem* may be expressed merely by extra stress: 'that *the boy* be let go.' **8. cantū**: 'hooting.' **10. aucupī**: see B. 204, 1; A. 218, a; H. 399, 2. **prehendendam cūrāvit**: 'had the owl caught.' For the construction cf. *occīdendum obiēcīt*, p. 68, l. 20. **11. spē**: abl. of cause. **12. mille nummōs**: 'a thousand sesterces,' about \$40. **13. ut** . . . **vīvat**: B. 296, 1; A. 331, b; H. 498, 1. **16. aequō animō**: abl. of manner. **18. neque**: = *et nōn*, with *et* correlative to the following *et*; trans. as if it were *nōn*. **19. Imprimis familiārem habuit**: 'he was most intimate with.' **Maecēnātem**: see Vocab.

20. eā . . . **grātiā**: note the order; *quā* is abl. of specification. **21. posset**: subj. because it is an essential part of the purpose clause *ut prōdesset*; see note on p. 54, l. 26 above. **22. aliquandō**: 'once.' **capite**: for the case, see B. 208, 2, b; A. 220, b, 1; H. 410, III. **23. damnātūrus**: sc. *esse*. **circumstantium**: 'of bystanders.' See note on *sequentium*, p. 58, l. 1. **25. cōnābātur**: imperf. of repeated action. **26. tabellā**: 'a small tablet'; note the derivation. **27. Quā lēctā**: 'And when he had read it.' **28. quisquam**: B. 252, 4; A. 202, b; H. 457. **morte**: see note on *capite*, l. 22 above. **30. amplius**: see note on *amplius*, p. 59, l. 8 above.

Page 74. **1. hieme et aestāte**: abl. of time. **2. privātae ēlegantiae**: predicate gen. of quality or description. **3. quam cōfectā**: sc. *veste*; 'than that made.' **4. tamen**: *i.e.* although he was frugal

in his private life. **8. lēnōcinī:** 'foppishness,' a term of contempt. **10. illud:** = *caput*. **aut legeret . . . aut scriberet:** *i.e.* he was read to by a slave, or he dictated to an amanuensis. **12. morerētur:** the subj. because at the time of *accēpit* the act expressed by *morerētur* is merely looked forward to. **14. Hāc:** *sc. clāde*. **16. Iovī optimō māmō:** *i.e.* the Capitoline Jupiter. **17. vertisset:** subj. in 'informal ind. disc.' implied in *rōvit*, representing the fut. perf. ind. of the direct form. He might have said *māgnōs lūdōs tibi dabō, sī . . . verteris*. **17. cōnsternātum:** *sc. eum fuisse*. **ferunt:** 'they say.'

18. per continuōs mēnsēs: 'for whole months.' On the use of *per*, see note on *per tōtam vītā*, p. 65, l. 2 above. **barbā . . . summissō:** this was one of the usual signs of mourning. **20. habuerit:** subj. because it is part of the result clause introduced by *ut*. Note that it is independent in tense, and cf. note on *dīmīcātum sūt*, p. 64, l. 3 above. Note *illīderet* in l. 19. **22. afflictā valētūdine:** an abl. abs. denoting cause; trans. accordingly. **24. petītō speculō:** 'calling for a mirror.' The Roman mirrors were of polished metal, and were often very beautiful. **25. ecquid:** 'whether . . . at all.' **26. clausulam:** 'conclusion,' 'tag,' of a mime or other play.

IV. CORNELIUS NEPOS.

1. *Miltiades*.

Page 75. Chapter I. 1. Miltiadēs: Nepos usually begins with the name of the person whose life he is describing. *Miltiadēs* is subject of *fūrēret* and *esset*, a common order in Latin. In the first part of the life of Miltiades, Nepos confuses the victor of Marathon with his uncle of the same name. **antīquitāte generis:** Miltiades claimed descent from Aeacus of Aegina, son of Zeus. **2. ūnus omnium māmō:** 'most of all'; *ūnus* need not be translated. For the case of *omnium*, see B. 201, 1; A. 216, 2; H. 397, 2. **3. eāque aetate:** B. 224; A. 251 and *α*; H. 424. **nōn iam solum:** 'no longer merely.' **4. cīvēs suī:** 'his fellow-citizen.' In clauses of result *sē* and *suus* are not commonly used to refer to the subject of the main verb; *suī* is used here on the principle of B. 244, 4; A. 196, *g*; H. 449, 4. **5. futurum:** *sc. esse*. Nepos frequently omits *esse* with the compounded forms of the inf., especially with the fut. act. inf. **cognitum:** *sc. eum*, 'after

experience,' more literally, 'when known,' = *cum cognōvissent*. The thought is, that the Athenians at that time had hopes that Miltiades would turn out to be the kind of man that he did actually afterwards become.

6. Chersonēsum: 'to the (Thracian) Chersonese,' see map of Greece, opp. p. 75. The word is used without a prep., as if it were the name of a town or island. This construction is common with Greek geographical names in *-us*. **colōnōs . . . mittere:** the Greeks were very active in that regard; their colonies were to be found all along the shores of the Mediterranean. **Cūius generis:** 'of such people,' *i.e.* *colōnōrum*.

7. ēius dēmigrātiōnis: B. 200; A. 217; H. 396, III. **8. Delphōs:** note the omission of the prep. **dēlīberātum:** 'to consult the oracle,'

B. 340; A. 302; H. 546. **9. quō potissimum dūce ūterentur:** 'whom they should choose in preference to all others as their leader.' For the case of *quō*, see B. 218, 1; A. 249; H. 421, 1; *dūce* is in apposition with *quō*. For the mood of *ūterentur*, see B. 300; A. 334; H. 529, 1.

10. cum quibus: the more common order is *quibus cum*. See B. 142, 4; A. 104, *e*, and *n*.; H. 187, 2. **11. Hīs cōnsulentibus:**

dative, ind. obj. of *praecepit*. **nōminātim:** *i.e.* mentioning his name, instead of returning an ambiguous answer as was frequently done.

12. id sī fēcissent: the construction changes to ind. disc. depending on *dixit*, implied in *praecepit*. Note the moods and tenses, and see B. 302, 1, and 319; A. 307, *c*, and 337; H. 508, 2, and 527, 1. The direct form might be: *id sī fēceritis* (fut. perf.), *incepta prōspera erunt*. **ut . . .**

sūmerent: a substantive purpose clause object of *praecepit*; see B. 295, 1; A. 351; H. 498, I.

14. Miltiadēs: subject of *accessisset*; cf. *Miltiadēs*, l. 1 above. Trans. 'When Miltiades had set out for the Chersonesus . . . and had reached.' **classe:** 'with a fleet,' B. 218, 7; A. 248, *c*, 1; H. 420.

Chersonēsum: cf. l. 6 above, and the note. **15. Lēmnum:** cf. *Delphōs*, l. 8 above, and the note. **16. idque:** *i.e.* *ut sē sub potestātem redigerent Athēniēnsium*.

19. vēnisset: represents what mood and tense of the dir. disc.? Give the reply of the Lemnians in dir. disc.; cf. note on *id sī fēcissent*, l. 12 above. **20. adversum tenet Athēnīs proficiēsentibus:** 'is dead ahead for those who are on their way from Athens.'

For the case of *proficiēsentibus*, see B. 188, 2, *a*; A. 235, *b*; H. 384, 4, *n*. 3. **21. morandī tempus:** B. 338, 1, *a*; A. 298; H. 542, 1.

nōn habēs: trans. by a causal clause. **quō tendēbat:** 'towards his destination'; what is the literal meaning?

Page 76. II. 1. **cōpīis disiectis**: do not translate the abl. abs. literally. 2. **quam petierat**: *i.e.* at the possession of which he had aimed. **castellis**: B. 192, 2; A. 234, *a*; H. 391. 4. **locuplētāvit**: *sc. eōs*, implied in *multitudinem*. 5. **prudentiā**: note the derivation and be careful about the meaning. See Vocab. 6. **dēviciasset**: note the force of *dē-*. See Vocab. **summā aequitate**: see note on *tantā successū*, p. 61, l. 18 above. 7. **rēs cōstituit**: 'he arranged matters,' 'set affairs in order.' **Erat enim . . . dignitate regiā**: his reason for remaining in the Chersonesus; he was given royal honors. For the case of *dignitate*, see B. 224, 1; A. 251 and *n.*; H. 419, *II*.

8. **nōmine**: *sc. regis*, implied in *regiā*. For the case, see B. 214, 1, *c*; A. 243, *a*; H. 414, 1. 9. **id**: 'that position,' *i.e. ut esset regiā dignitate*. **imperio**: *i.e.* by his position as a general of the Athenians. **cōnsecutus**: *sc. est*. 12. **voluntate**: for the case, see B. 220, 3; A. 253, *n.*; H. 416, *n.* 2. 13. **illōrum**: *sc. voluntate*. 14. **revertitur et . . . postulat**: B. 259, 3; A. 276, *d*; H. 467, *III*. **ex pacto**: 'according to the agreement.' Cf. *ex sententiā*, p. 59, l. 30 above.

15. **ut . . . trādant**: object of *postulat*. **cum . . . dēditūrōs**: express this in the form of *dir. disc.* Note the omission of the subject of *dēditūrōs*, which is common in Nepos. Here it is justified by euphonic reasons, to avoid the repetition of *sē* or *sēsē*. 16. **sē . . . habēre**: *ind. disc.* after *dixit*, implied in *postulat*. Since Miltiades now lived in the Chersonesus, he could sail to Lemnus with a north wind; hence he demanded the fulfilment of the promise. *Chersonēsī*: cf. p. 75, l. 6, and the note. 19. **dictō**: 'argument,' *lit.*, 'what was said.' 20. **captī**: 'caught.' 21. **Parī felicitate . . . potestatem**: Nepos makes a double mistake. In the first place, there are other islands in the Aegean besides Lemnus and the Cyclades; and secondly, it was Conon who reduced the islands of the Aegean.

III. 23. **Eisdem temporibus**: *i.e.* B.C. 513. 25. **quā**: the adverb instead of the *rel. pron.* *quō*, 'by which.' **trādūceret**: B. 282, 2; A. 317, 2; H. 497, 1. 26. **Eius pontis**: B. 200; A. 217; H. 396, *III*. **abesset**: 'while he should be gone.' The subjunctive is used because it represents the thought of Darius, which in the *dir. form* might be expressed thus: *pontem custodiūte, dum aberō*. 28. **Sic**: refers to the clause *sī . . . trādidisset*, which follows. 29. **Graecā linguā loquentēs**: 'the Greek-speaking peoples.' *Graecā linguā* is *abl. of manner*.

Page 77. 1. **sē oppressō**: *trans.* by a conditional clause. Express the thought of Darius in *dir. disc.* 4. **ā fortunā**: the *prep.* is used

because fortune is thought of as personified. **6. Nam si . . . interisset**: ind. disc. after a verb of saying implied in *hortatus est*. Give the sentence in the dir. form. Note that *trānsportārat* (= *trānsportāverat*) is indic. ; it is an explanation of the writer, not forming part of the speech of Miltiades. See B. 314, 3; A. 336, 2, b; H. 524, 2, 1). **8. genere**: 'by birth.' B. 226; A. 253; H. 424. **Persarum dominātiōne et periculō**: 'from the rule of the Persians, and the danger arising from it.'

9. ponte . . . rescissō: see note to p. 77, l. 1. **10. paucis diebus**: 'within a few days.' See note on *brevi tempore*, p. 76, l. 1. **12. nē rēs cōficerētur obstitit**: 'opposed the carrying out of the plan.' **13. ipsīs**: see B. 249, 3; A. 196, a, 2, n.; H. 452, 5. Cf. *ipsōrum* in l. 14, below, and *sē*, referring to Histiaeus alone, in l. 16. **summās imperiī**: the plural because several generals are referred to. **14. rēgnō**: B. 218, 3; A. 254, b, 1; H. 425, 1, 1), n. **quō**: i.e. Darius. Trans. the abl. abs. by a conditional clause.

20. tam multis cōscīis = *quod tam multī cōscīi essent*. **nōn dubitāns . . . perventūra**: 'not doubting that his designs would come.' The best Latin writers use *quīn* and the subj. with *nōn dubitō*, meaning 'I do not doubt.' Nepos commonly uses the acc. and the inf., although he uses the subj. p. 103, l. 31. See B. 298, and a; A. 319, d; H. 505, 1, 1. **22. ratiō**: 'way of thinking,' 'advice.'

IV. 28. ducenta peditum: sc. *mīlia*. **29. causam interserēns**: 'alleging as a reason.' **30. Athēniēnsibus**: dat. governed by *hostem*, instead of the usual objective gen. **Sardis expugnāssent**: B.C. 499. *Sardis* is acc. plu. for the Greek Σάρδεϊς.

Page 78. 2. Eretriam: see map opp. p. 75. **3. ēius gentis**: i.e. of the Eretrians. **abreptōs misērunt**: 'carried off and sent.' **5. Marathōna**: Greek form of the acc. sing., 'to the plain of Marathon,' lit., 'to the plain Marathon.' The battle of Marathon was fought in 490 B.C. **6. oppidō**: i.e. Athens; *urbe* is more usual in speaking of so important a city. **7. tumultū**: 'threatening danger'; *tumultus* was applied by the Romans to a sudden uprising within the limits of Italy, an insurrection. Here it is used of a danger which unexpectedly presented itself within the limits of Attica.

9. ēius generis, quī: 'of the kind called.' *quī* agrees not with the antecedent *generis*, but with the predicate nom. *hēmerodromoe*. See note on *quod*, p. 54, l. 23 above. **hēmerodromoe**: 'day-runners,' i.e. couriers who could run all day and cover great distances. Herodotus

tells us that Phidippus made the 140 miles between Athens and Sparta within 48 hours.

11. auxiliō: B. 218, 2; A. 243, *e*; H. 414, *iv*. **creant**: see note on *revertitur*, p. 76, l. 14. **13. praetōrēs**: in speaking of the Greeks, = 'generals,' the Greek *στρατηγός*. The word also meant 'general' in early Latin, but was afterwards used in a different sense. Note the derivation; see Vocab. **praessent**: see note on *trādūceret*, p. 76, l. 25.

13. utrum . . . dēfenderent an . . . dēcernerent: B. 300, and 4; A. 211 and 334; H. 353 and 529, 1. **15. Ūnus**: 'alone.' **primō quōque tempore**: 'at the first possible moment.' Cf. B. 252, 5, *c*; A. 93, *c*; H. 458, 1. **16. castra fierent**: *i.e.* that they should take the field. **17. eōrum**: we might expect *suā* (cf. *adversus sē*, l. 19), but the demonstrative is sometimes used instead of the reflexive to avoid a possible ambiguity. The best writers show occasional irregularities in the use of *sē* and *suus*. **18. nōn dēspērārī**: 'that no discouragement was felt,' representing an impersonal verb of the dir. disc. So *audērī*, in l. 19. **tardīōrēs**: 'more cautious.'

V. 22. ea: refers to *civitās*, instead of *quī* referring to *Plataeēnsēs*. **mīlitum**: partitive gen. with *mīlle*. The subst. use of *mīlle* is rare in the sing., although it is found three times in Cicero. It is the regular construction in the plural. **25. plūs . . . valēret**: 'had more influence,' *i.e.* his view prevailed. **27. locōque idōneō**: B. 228, 1, *b*; A. 258, *f*; H. 425, 2. **28. sub montis rādīcibus**: 'at the foot of a mountain.' **aciēs regiōne instructā nōn apertissimā**: note the order. See B. 350, 11, *d*; A. 344, *h*. *regiōne nōn apertissimā* = 'in a place which was not very open.' The omission of the prep. *in* is unusual, unless, perhaps, *regiōne apertissimā* may be regarded as abl. abs. **29. multis locis**: see note on *locōque idōneō*, l. 27 above. **rārae**: 'scattered,' an attributive adj. **30. hōc cōsiliō**: 'with this design,' an abl. of attendant circumstance. See B. 221.

Page 79. 1. aequum: sc. *esse*. **vidēbat**: note the mood and tense. B. 309, 2, *a*; A. 313, *c*; H. 515, *ii*. **frētus numerō**: 'relying on the number.' For the case of *numerō*, see B. 218, 3; A. 254, *b*, 2; H. 425, 1, 1), *x*. **3. venīrent**: the subject is used because at the time of *arbitrābātur* the action represented by *venīrent* had no existence except in the mind of Miltiades. In general, when the action of the *priusquam* clause is anticipated or prevented by that of the main clause, the subjunctive is used. Nepos always uses *priusquam*, never *antequam*. **ūtile**: sc. *esse*. **4. peditum centum**: sc. *mīlia*.

6. tantō: abl. of degree of difference. **7. prōfligārint:** Nepos has a great many cases of the perf. subj. in a result clause after a past tense. See B. 268, 6; A. 287, c; H. 495, vi. In this so-called exception to the rule of the 'sequence of the tenses,' the verb of the result clause is independent so far as its tense is concerned. When the imp. subj. is used, the result is more closely connected with the time represented by the main verb. Cf. *dīmīcātum sit*, p. 64, l. 3 above. **8. petierint:** see note on *prōfligārint*, l. 7 above. **9. adhūc:** *i.e.* up to the writer's own time. **nōbilius:** 'more famous.' Note the derivation; see Vocab. **nūlla enim umquam tam exigua manus:** 'for never did so small a force.' In Eng. we transfer the negative to the adv. **10. opēs:** 'power,' including men, ships, money, and resources of all kinds.

VI. 11. Cūsus victōriæ: 'for this victory,' gen. modifying *præmium*. Note the order, which is involved but natural. Read the sentence carefully through in the Latin order, noting the endings of the words and their relation to one another. **aliēnum:** 'out of place,' *i.e.* foreign to the subject. **12. quō:** 'in order that.' Why is *quō* used rather than *ut*? **13. eandem:** predicate adj., emphatic position. **14. quondam:** 'in former times.' **15. effūsī:** 'lavish,' contrasted with both *rārī* and *tenuēs*, while *obsoletī*, 'worthless,' lit. 'worn out,' is contrasted with *glōriōsī*. **17. liberārat = liberāverat.** **tālis honōs tribūtus est,** etc.: note the order; cf. note to l. 11 above. **tālis honōs** is explained by the clause *ut . . . committeret*; the clause *cum . . . dēpingerētur*, which modifies the *ut* clause, is put before it, instead of being included within it, an order of which Nepos is rather fond. **tālis = hic**, as is frequently the case in Nepos. The special honor was that Miltiades was represented as foremost among the ten generals, encouraging the soldiers and directing the battle. **22. largitiōne magistrātuum:** it is not clear to what Nepos refers. He probably speaks generally, and with some confusion of Greek and Roman conditions.

VII. 27. plērāsque: sc. *īnsulās*. **28. Parum:** see map opp. p. 75. *Parum* is object of *reconciliāre*. The position of *cum* is not unusual; cf. l. 18 above. **opibus elātam:** 'full of confidence in its strength'; for the meaning of *opibus* see l. 10 above.

Page 80. **2. vineīs ac testudinibus:** see Intro., p. 23. **3. mūrōs:** governed by *propius*. See B. 141, 3; A. 234, e; H. 437, l. **4. in eō . . . potirētur:** 'was on the point of taking the town.' Cf. p. 38, l. 19. **5. nesciō quō cāsū:** 'by some chance.' Do not trans. *nesciō* by a

verb; *nesciō quō* forms a compound indef. pron. See B. 253, 6; A. 202, a; H. 191, n. 6. *Cūius flamma*: 'the light of this,' 'the flame caused by this.' 7. *utrisque vēnit in opiniōnem*: 'both sides got the idea.' For the case of *utrisque* see B. 188, 1; A. 235, a; H. 384, 4, n. 2. 9. *dēterrērentur*: see note on *prōfligārint*, p. 79, l. 7.

13. *prōditiōnis*: B. 208, 1; A. 220; H. 409, II. 14. *infectis rēbus*: 'without accomplishing his purpose.' *discessisset*: subj., because it gives the reason alleged by the accusers of Miltiades. 16. *ipse*: 'in person.' 17. *Stēsagorās*: a mistake of Nepos. Stesagoras died some time before these events. 18. *capitis*: see note on *prōditiōnis*, l. 13 above. *pecūniā*: B. 208, 2, b; A. 220, b, 1; H. 410, III. 19. *lis . . . aestimāta est*: see Vocab., under *lis*. *quīnquāgintā talentis*: abl. of price; we should say 'estimated at.' *quantus . . . factus erat*: 'the sum which had been expended on the fleet'; i.e. *tantā pecūniā multātus est quantus sūmptus factus est*. 21. *vincla pūblica*: 'the public prison,' 'state prison.'

VIII. 23. *Hic*: note the position; see note on *Miltiadēs*, p. 75, l. 1 above. *crimine Parīō*: 'a complaint about Parōs.' For the case cf. *pecūniā*, l. 18; for a different constr. *prōditiōnis*, l. 13. 25. *quae paucis annis ante fuerat*: the rule of the sons of Pisistratus is included, hence the period from 560 to 510 B.C. is meant. The trial of Miltiadēs was in 489. 27. *multum . . . versātus*: 'who had had long experience.' *nōn vidēbātur posse esse*: we should say 'it did not seem possible that Miltiades could be,' i.e. that he could be satisfied to be. 30. *habitārat*: = *habitāverat*. 31. *fuerat appellātus*: here = *erat appellātus*. 32. *erat . . . cōnsecūtus*: sc. *tyrannidem*, implied in *tyrannus fuerat appellātus*.

Page 81. 2. *potestate sunt perpetuā*: abl. of quality = *potestātem perpetuam obtinent*, 'have absolute power.' 4. *ut . . . esset*: result clause without any introductory word meaning 'so.' 5. *patēret*: B. 283, 2; A. 320, a; H. 503, 1. *māgna auctōritās*: sc. *eī fuit*.

2. Themistocles.

Chapter I. 9. *Themistoclēs . . . Athēniēnsis*: this abrupt beginning is found in several of the lives. *Neoclī*: gen. of *Neoclēs*. See Vocab. *Hūius*: governs the expression *vitia ineuntis adulēsentiae*, 'his early faults,' 'the faults of his early life.' 12. *est ōrdiendus*: 'his story must be told,' lit., 'he must be described.' *generōsus*: do not trans. by the cognate Eng. word. Note the derivation. See Vocab.

13. dūxit: sc. *in mātrimonium*. **14. Qui cum:** 'since he.' **minus esset probātus parentibus:** 'incurred the displeasure of his parents'; *parentibus*, 'in the eyes of his parents,' is dat. of the person judging. See B. 188, 2, c; A. 235; H. 384, 4. **15. liberius:** 'too freely,' 'too fast,' a common meaning of the comparative. **16. nōn frēgit eum:** 'did not crush him,' 'did not break his spirit.' **18. eam:** sc. *contumēliam*.

19. amīcis fāmaeque serviēns: 'devoting himself to his friends and to (acquiring) fame.' **multum . . . versābātur:** 'he took an active part.' **iūdicīis privātis:** i.e. 'in the legal difficulties of his friends.' **20. cōntiōnem populī:** i.e. the popular assembly. **21. māior:** i.e. of more than ordinary importance. **quae opus erant reperībat:** 'he discovered the course of action which was necessary.' For the construction of *quae* see B. 218, 2, a; A. 243, e, Rem.; H. 414, iv, n. 4. **22. eadem:** i.e. *ea quae opus erant*. **23. excōgitandis:** i.e. *in rēbus excōgitandis*. **instantibus:** 'the present,' more lit., 'what was immediately urgent,' contrasted with *futūris*. **25. Quō:** i.e. on account of the course of conduct described in line 24; *quō factum est* might be translated 'and so it happened.'

Page 82. II. 1. Prīmus autem gradus: 'now his first step.' **capessendae rei publicae:** see Vocab. under *capessō*. **2. bellō Corcyræo:** Nepos is in error here. Themistocles was not a general in the war between Athens and Corinth about Corcyra, and his advice to build ships was given in connection with the war against Aegina, B.C. 482. **3. reliquō tempore:** 'in the future,' contrasted with *praesentī bellō*. B. 231, 1; A. 256, b, n.; H. 379, 1. **5. metallis:** the silver mines of Mount Laurium in Attica, southeast of Athens; these mines are worked at the present time by a French company, and still yield considerable amounts of silver. **largitiōne magistrātuum:** see note to p. 79, l. 22. *largitiōne publicā* would be more appropriate here, since the money yielded by the mines was distributed by a law passed in the regular way. **7. Quā = classe.** **8. maritimōs praedōnēs:** 'pirates.'

9. In quō: 'and by this policy,' lit., 'in which,' i.e. in making Athens a maritime power. Cf. *quō factum est*, p. 81, l. 25. These relative expressions to connect two sentences are a favorite usage with Nepos, especially *quō factō*. **10. belli nāvālis:** 'naval warfare.' **Athēniēnsēs:** object of both *ornāvit* and *fecit*. Nepos is fond of reserving the object or the subject until the end of the sentence. Cf. *ferōciōrem reddidit civitātem*, l. 3, above. **quantae salutī:** dat. of purpose.

11. **fuerit**: see note on *prōfligārint*, p. 79, l. 7. Result clauses and ind. questions are less closely subordinated to the main clause than purpose clauses (for instance), and hence admit these so-called exceptions to the rule of the 'sequence of tenses.' **bellō . . . Persicō**: the second Persian invasion is meant, under Xerxes, B.C. 480. 12. **et mari et terrā**: the more common expression is *terrā marique*. For the constr. see B. 228, i, c; A. 258, d; H. 425, 2. 14. **quisquam**: see note on *Athēniēsēs*, l. 10 above. 15. **nāvium**: see note on *trium verbōrum*, p. 57, l. 22 above. **fuit**: 'consisted of.' 17. **fuērunt**: agrees by attraction with *mīlia*, instead of with the subject *exercitus*.

20. **miserunt**: sc. *Athēniēsēs*. **quidnam facerent**: an indirect dubitative question; the direct form would be *quidnam faciāmus*! These differ from ordinary indirect questions, which are indicative in the direct form. See B. 300, 2; A. 334, b. 21. **Dēliberantibus**: sc. *eīs*. **respondit ut . . . mūnīrent**: the subj. is due to the idea of command or advice in *respondit*, which = *monuit* or *persuāsit*. What would the acc. with the inf. mean? 22. **Id respōsum . . . nēmō**: note the order. See note on *Athēniēsēs*, l. 10 above, and cf. *quisquam*, l. 14 above. **Id respōsum quō valēret**: 'what this reply meant'; *quō* is the adv. What is the literal meaning? 23. **persuāsit cōnsilium esse**: 'persuaded them that the advice was.' Some verbs are used with either the inf. or the subj. with a difference of meaning; the former if the idea is ind. disc., the latter if it is purpose. See note on *respondit ut . . . mūnīrent*, l. 21 above.

24. **ut . . . cōferrent**: in apposition with *cōnsilium*. What kind of a clause, and why subj.? **eum enim . . . mūrum ligneum**: 'for that was the wooden wall meant by the god.' *eum* agrees by attraction with *mūrum ligneum*. Note that *mūrum* is used here, and *moenibus* in l. 22. The distinction in meaning is shown by Caesar, B. G. 2, 6: *circumiectā multitudine hominum tōtis moenibus undique in mūrum lapidēs iaci coepti sunt*. The distinction is observed here. They were to protect themselves in a city with wooden walls (*moenibus ligneis*), of which the wooden wall (*mūrum*) was to be the fleet. 25. **Tālī = hōc**; so frequently in Nepos. Cf. p. 79, l. 17. **superiōrēs**: 'the former,' sc. *nāvēs*. 26. **sua omnia quae movērī poterant**: 'all their movable property,' as well as their wives and children. 28. **arcem . . . trādunt**: according to Herodotus, those who remained behind did so because they did not accept the interpretation of Themistocles. They barricaded the Acropolis (*arcem*) with a 'wooden wall.'

Page 83. III. 1. **Hūius** : *i.e.* *Themistoclis*. 2. **in terrā dīmīcārī** : 'that the war be waged on land' ; *dīmīcārī* stands for an impersonal verb in the direct form. **missī sunt** : the battle of Thermopylae took place before the events described at the end of Chap. II. 4. **longiusque . . . nōn paterentur** : instead of *nēve longius . . . paterentur*, because *nōn* modifies *paterentur* especially ; *nōn paterentur* = *prohibērent*. 5. **omnēs** : used loosely of the *dēlēctī* in l. 2. Only the Lacedaemonians and Thespians remained until the end. 9. **Angustiās** : 'a narrow part of the sea.' 10. **Hinc** : 'from there,' *i.e.* from Artemisium. **parī proeliō** : 'after an indecisive battle.' Abl. of attendant circumstance. See B. 221. 12. **superāssēt** = *superāvissēt*, 'should round.' The subj. is due to implied ind. disc., their thought being : *sī pars nāvium Euboeam superāverit, ancipitī premēmur periculō*. *premerentur* is subj. after the expression *periculum erat* = *timēbant*. See B. 296, 2 ; A. 331, f ; H. 498, III.

IV. 17. **astū** : the omission of *ad* with *accessit* is not common. 18. **Cūius** : sc. *incendī*. 19. **cum . . . nōn audērent** : note the position of *cum* in the clause. 21. **ūiversōs** : 'all together,' 'united,' opposed to *dispersōs*. 22. **testābātur** : an emphatic word. 23. **summae imperiī praeerat** : 'held the chief command' ; *imperiī* is partitive gen. 24. **minus quam vellet** : the subj. represents the thought of Themistocles transferred to past time, *eum moveō, minus quam volō*, or perhaps *minus quam velim*. 25. **dē servis suis** : sc. *eum*. 26. **suis verbis** : 'in his name,' *i.e.* in the name of Themistocles. 28. **cōnfectūrum** : sc. *eum*. Give the words of Themistocles in dir. disc.

Page 84. 1. **Hōc eō valēbat** : 'the purpose of this was.' Cf. *quō valeret*, p. 82, l. 22. **ad dēpūgnandum** : 'to fight it out.' Note the force of *dē*. 2. **barbarus** : *i.e.* Xerxes. 5. **potuerit** : note the tense. See note on *prōfīgārīnt*, p. 79, l. 7 above. The battle was fought in 480 B.C.

V. 8. **Hic** : adv. **male rem gesserat** : 'he had been unsuccessful.' 10. **ab eōdem gradū dēpulsus est** : do not connect *eōdem* and *gradū* ; *gradū dēpellere*, 'to drive from one's position,' hence 'to baffle,' is a metaphor from the gladiatorial contests. *eōdem* refers to Themistocles. 12. **id agī** : 'that this was being agitated,' *i.e.* that steps were being taken. **in Hellēspontō** : we should say, 'over the Hellespont.' **fēcerat** : see note on *trānsportārat*, p. 77, l. 6. 13. **exclūderētur** : sc. *ille*. 14. **sex mēnsibus** : in his life of *Agēsilaus*, Nepos gives the time as a year. The actual time was four months. **eādem** :

adv. 15. **minus diēbus trīgintā**: the actual time was forty-six days. 18. **Haec altera victōria**: sc. *est*, 'this is a second victory.' 19. **possit**: B. 283, 2; A. 320; H. 503, 1. **tropaeō**: = *victōriā*. 21. **dēvicta**: note the force of *dē*-. See Vocab.

VI. 23. **Cum enim . . . fiterentur**: the emphatic words are *bonō* and *māgnō*. We should say in English, 'for since the harbor at Phalerum which the Athenians used was neither large nor good.' 24. **triplex Pīraei portus**: the port at the Piraeus included three separate harbors, — the Piraeus, in a narrower sense, Munychia, and Zea. See the plan on the map opp. p. 75. It was begun in 482 B.C., and finished in 477. 25. **eisque**: 'such,' 'so strong.' 26. **dignitāte**: 'splendor.' **Idem**: 'he also.' 27. **praecipuō suō periculō**: 'at particular personal risk'; *suō* represents an objective gen.; *periculō* is abl. of attendant circumstance. 29. **quā negārent oportēre**: 'for saying that it was not necessary.' For the mood of *negārent*, see B. 282, 3; A. 320, f.; H. 503, 11, 2.

Page 85. 1. **quae hostēs possiderent**: 'for the enemy to seize.' B. 282, 2; A. 317, 2; H. 497, 1. **aedificantēs**: 'in their building,' instead of *quōminus aedificārent*. 2. **Hōc . . . volēbant**: 'this had a far different purpose than they were willing to let appear,' lit., 'looked in a very different direction.' Cf. *hōc eō valēbat*, p. 84, l. 1. 5. **principātū**: 'the hegemony'; i.e. the chief place among the states of Greece. 9. **dēsiderunt**: sc. *illī* = *Athēniēnsēs*. The omission of the subject in such a case as this is careless writing. 12. **tuendō**: modifies *satis altī*. B. 338, 2, a; A. 299; H. 541, 11. **exstrūctī**: cf. *struī*, l. 7; *ex*- gives the idea of completeness. 13. **neque**: instead of the more exact *nēve*. 14. **esset**: subj. because it forms part of the command of Themistocles; so *putārent* in l. 15.

VII. 18. **Themistoclēs**: subject of *vēnit*. See note on *Miltiadēs*, p. 75, l. 1. 19. **dedit operam ut . . . dūceret**: 'did his best to prolong the time,' i.e. before appearing before the ephors. 20. **causam interpōnēns**: 'alleging as a reason.' 23. **superesse**: 'remained to be done.' 24. **ephorōs**: see Vocab. 25. **summum . . . imperium**: *summa potestās* would be a more proper term for the civil power of the ephors; the *imperium*, or military command, belonged to the kings. 26. **falsa eis esse dēlāta**: 'that a false report had been made to them.' *illōs*: subject of *mittere*. 27. **nōbilēs**: 'prominent.' Note the derivation. **quibus fidēs habērētur**: a clause of characteristic. *quibus* is dat. governed by the phrase *fidēs habērētur* = *fiderent*. 28. **retinē-**

rent: representing an imperative of the dir. disc. Give the words of Themistocles to the ephors in dir. disc. **29. fūctī summīs honōribus**: 'who had held the highest offices.' **31. ut nē . . . dīmitterent**: subj. on account of the idea of command in *praedixit*. On *ut nē*, see B. 282, 1, *b*; A. 331, *e*, *n*. 2. **32. esset remissus**: part of the injunction of Themistocles, which in the dir. form might be: *nē prius Lacedaemoniōrum lēgātōs dīmittite, quam ipse remissus erō*.

Page 86. 1. magistrātūs senātumque: *i.e.* to the ephors and the *gerusia*, or council of elders. **3. liberrimē professus est**: 'declared with the utmost frankness.' **quod . . . facere possent**: 'a thing which they had a right to do according to the common law of nations.' The antecedent of *quod* is the clause *deōs . . . saepsisse*, below. In such cases *id quod* is more usual; see B. 247, 1, *b*; A. 200, *e*, and *n*.

4. deōs publicōs: *i.e.* the gods of Greece, while *patriōs* (*sc. deōs*) are the gods of Athens, and *Penātēs*, the household gods. **6. neque . . . fēcisse**: *i.e.* in so doing had acted for the best interests of Greece. *neque . . . inūtile* is litotes. See B. 375, 1; A. 209, *c*; H. 637, viii. **7. illōrum**: *i.e. Athēniēnsium*.

8. oppositum esse: agrees in form with the predicate acc. *prōpugnaculum*, instead of with the subject *urbem*. **bis**: in what battles? **9. fēcisse**: note the inf. in a rel. clause. See B. 314, 4; A. 336, *c*; H. 524, 1, 1.). **10. facere**: 'were acting.' Note the tense. **intuērentur**: B. 283, 3, *a*; A. 320, *e*; H. 517. **12. miserant**: not part of the words of Themistocles. Cf. note to p. 77, l. 6. **13. remitterent**: see note on *retinērent*, p. 85, l. 28 above. **illōs**: *i.e. lēgātōs*. **essent receptūrī**: 'they were not likely to recover.' See B. 115; A. 129; H. 233.

VIII. 15. effūgit: *sc. Themistoclēs*. **16. quō damnātus erat Miltiadēs**: see p. 80, l. 28. **17. tēstulārum suffrāgiis ē cīvitate expulsus**: under certain conditions, after due notice and discussion, the Athenians might vote for the banishment of a citizen who was so powerful as to seem to menace the freedom of the state. Each voter wrote a name on an oyster-shell (*ostrakon*, whence the name *ostracism*) or on a potsherd, and if 6000 shells bore the same name, the person so designated was banished for ten years, but without loss of honor or possessions. Themistocles was ostracized about 476 B.C. **20. absentem**: 'in his absence,' *i.e.* without a hearing. **cum rēge Persā**: 'with the king of the Persians'; the more common expression is *rēx Persārum*.

21. fēcisset: the reason of the Lacedaemonians, hence the mood. **Hōc crimine**: 'on this charge.' See note on *crimine Parīō*, p. 80, l. 23. **23. tūtum sē**: sc. *esse*. **24. principēs**: 'the leading men' of the state. **25. sē**: Themistocles, while *eis* refers to the people of Corcyra, including *principēs*. **26. Molossū**: an old gen. pl., instead of *Molossōrum*; not a contraction. **cum quō ei hospitium nōn erat**: i.e. to whom he was bound by no ties of hospitality. Note the order *cum quō*, and cf. note on *cum quibus*, p. 75, l. 10. **28. receptum**: trans. by a finite verb. The subject of *tuērētur* is *rēx* understood.

Page 87. **1. eum . . . in fidem reciperet**: 'received him under his protection.' When the verb of the main clause is negative, the perf. ind. is usual in the *prius quam* clause. Here the subj. denotes the thought of Themistocles, who had resolved to remain in the shrine until the king pledged him his protection. **2. quam praestitit**: 'which (pledge) he kept.' **3. publicē**: 'officially,' 'in the name of the state.' **5. tūtō**: adv. **6. esset**: represents the thought of the king, 'such guard as (he thought) would be sufficient.' **7. omnibus**: B. 192, 1; A. 234, α; H. 391. **8. ferrētur**: 'was being carried'; note the tense. **9. sibi**: B. 189, 1; A. 232; H. 388. **12. cōservāset**; implied ind. disc.; *sī me cōservārīs, tibi multa dabō*. **14. neque quemquam . . . passus est**: 'and did not allow any one.'

IX. 18. potissimum: 'in preference to all others.' **19. aetāte proximus**: 'nearest in time,' i.e. he came nearest to being contemporary with the events described. **20. Is autem ait**: 'Now he says.' **21. his verbis**: 'in these terms'; abl. of means modifying the expression *epistulam mīsisse* = *scripsisse*. **22. Themistoclēs, vñī**: we should say, 'I, Themistocles, am come.' **23. omnium Grāiōrum**: part. gen. modifying *quī*. **25. Idem**: 'On the other hand, I.' **26. ipse**: sc. *esse coepi*. Note the chiasmic order of *in tūtō ipse, ille in periculō*. See B. 360, 11, c; A. 344, f, and n.; H. 562. **28. id agi ut pōns . . . dissolverētur**: cf. p. 84, l. 9, fol., and notice the real motive of Themistocles. **29. fēcērat**: what does the mood denote? See note to p. 77, l. 6. **circumīrētur**: sc. *ille* = *rēx*. The omission of the subject under the circumstances is careless writing.

Page 88. **2. quam**: trans. by a demonstrative and a conjunction. **4. quās**: *dē quibus* is more usual. In the best writers *colloquī* governs the acc. only of neu. prons. or num. adjs. **annuum . . . tempus**: 'the space of a year.' **5. venīre**: sc. *mē*.

X. 6. Hūius : 'his.' **7. veniam dedit** : 'granted his request.' **8. litteris sermōnīque Persārum** : *i.e.* to reading and speaking Persian. **quibus** : has for its antecedent *litteris sermōnīque*. **9. multō commodius . . . verba fēcisse** : 'to have made a speech in much better style.' **11. grātissimumque illud** : *sc. pollicitus esset*, 'and what pleased him most of all, that.' **13. Asiam** : Nepos speaks from the Roman point of view, meaning the Roman province of Asia, Asia Minor.

17. redībant : *i.e.* there was a revenue of; cf. our Eng. expression 'returns.' **unde . . . sūmeret** : rel. clause of purpose, like *ex quā habēret*. **18. obsōnium** : 'dainties,' including everything but bread, which was regarded as the only essential article of diet; *obsōnium*, therefore, means meat, vegetables, fruits, and especially fish. **20. oppidum** : *i.e.* Magnesia. **22. eundem** : 'the aforesaid,' referring to p. 87, l. 18. **23. auctōrem probāmus** : 'accept as authority'; *probāmus* is the 'editorial plural,' used for modesty. **24. neque negat** : 'and yet he does not deny.' **25. sūmpsisse** : *sc. eum*. **pollicitus esset** : subj. as part of the thought of Themistocles. Express his thought in a direct form. **26. Idem** : *i.e.* Thucydides. **27. sepulta** : *sc. esse*. **quoniam lēgibus nōn concēderētur** : explains *clam*. **28. prōditiōnis** : see note to p. 80, l. 13 above.

3. Pausanias.

Page 89. Chapter I. **1. varius in omni genere vitæ** : 'unreliable in all the relations of life.' **3. illūstrissimum** : used as subst., 'his most glorious exploit.' **proelium apud Plataeās** : 'the battle at Plataea.' A prepositional phrase modifying a noun is used quite commonly by Latin writers, but by Cicero less commonly than an adj. or a rel. clause (*quod apud Plataeās factum est*). It is better to avoid the construction in writing Latin. See B. 352, 5. The battle was fought in 479 B.C. **5. rēgius** : 'of the king.' **Mēdus** : the Romans commonly confused the Medes and Persians. Mardonius was a Persian. **6. manū fortis** : 'a man of personal bravery.' What is the lit. trans.? **7. viritū** : 'man by man'; *i.e.* it was an army of picked men. **vigintī** : *sc. milia*. **8. haud ita māgnā manū Graeciae** : 'by a comparatively small band of Greeks'; lit. trans.? Only 61,000 Lacedaemonians, Tegeans, and Athenians took an actual part in the battle. **9. plūrima miscēre** : 'to cause a great deal of disturbance.'

10. **in eō**: 'in this respect,' explained by the clause *quod . . . posuisset*. The subj. shows that it was the reason given by those who censured him. 12. **in quō haec erat sententia**: 'of which this was the purport.' What follows is a free rendering of the metrical inscription (*epigramma*) on the tripod. 13. **ergō**: 'on account of.' Used only in antiquated style, — laws, inscriptions, etc. 14. **dedisse**: sc. *sē*, a careless omission. 15. **nōmina eārum civitātum**: the brazen support of this tripod, composed of three serpents twisted together, on whose coils the names are inscribed, is now in the Hippodrome at Constantinople.

II. 17. **classe commūni**: sc. *Graeciae*. 18. **Cyprum atque Hellēspontum**: note the omission of the prep. with *Hellēspontum*. See note on *Chersonēsum*, p. 75, l. 6. The influence of *Cyprum* is also to be taken into account. 19. **praesidia**: 'garrisons.' 23. **effūgisse**: sc. *eōs*. 24. **Gongylum**: sc. *mīsit*, since *remisit* can only be used properly of the captives. A case of zeugma. B. 374, 2, *a*; A. 385, 1; H. 636, 11, 1.

Page 90. 2. **cōperat**: B. 265; A. 282; H. 472, 1. 3. **mīsit**: sc. *eōs*, antecedent of *quōs*. 4. **dēs**: B. 274; A. 266; H. 484, 11. **nūptum**: 'in marriage.' B. 340, 1; A. 302; H. 546. 5. **sē**: acc., while *tē* is abl. 7. **certum**: 'reliable.' **mittās face**: 'see to it that you send,' 'pray send.' *face* is an archaic form for *fac*. See B. 116, 3; A. 128, *c*, and 269, *g*; H. 238 and 489, 2. Put the letter of Pausanias into ind. disc. 9. **tam sibi necessariōrum**: 'so nearly related to him.' 11. **nē cui rei parcat**: 'that he spare no means.' 12. **pollicērētur**: the imp. subj. instead of the present. *petit* is historical present. See note to p. 76, l. 14. In vivid narration the tenses in both the ind. and the subj. are often changed from pres. to past or from past to pres. in the same sentence. 13. **lātūrum**: sc. *eum esse*. **Hūius**: 'his,' i.e. the king's. 15. **Quō factō**: 'on account of this' = *cum in suspiciōnem cecidisset*. See note on *in quō*, p. 82, l. 9. 16. **capitis**: modifies both *accūsātus* and *absolvitur*; 'he was accused on a capital charge and acquitted.' 17. **remissus nōn est**: Doro was sent in his place, but found the hegemony transferred to the Athenians. This was in 477 B.C.

III. 18. **post nōn multō**: a common order in Nepos for the usual *nōn multō post*. **suā sponte**: i.e. as a volunteer. 19. **cōgitāta**: 'ideas.' He developed ideas which were not foolish (i.e. that expression is not strong enough), but those of a madman. 20. **mōrēs**: 'ways,' 'habits.' 21. **rēgiō**: i.e. of a Persian king. 23. **quī aderant**:

sc. eī, 'his associates.' **possent**: B. 283, 2, a; A. 320, c; H. 503, II, 3. **28. clāvā**: a means of secret communication used by the Spartan ephors. When a king or general left home, he was given a staff, or cylindrical piece of wood, exactly similar to one in the possession of the ephors. When they wished to communicate with him, they cut the writing material into strips, wound it around the staff, and wrote their message along the length of the staff. When it was unrolled, only detached letters or fragments of words were seen; but the person to whom it was sent could read it by wrapping it around his staff. Both the staff and the despatch were called *σκυτάλη*, of which *clāva* is the Latin equivalent. **29. mōre illōrum**: 'after their fashion,' i.e. as just described. On *mōre*, see note to p. 57, l. 19.

Page 91. 3. vinola pūblica: cf. p. 80, l. 21. **4. rēgi**: Pausanias was not king, but as guardian of the young King Pleistarchus, who was his cousin, he acted as regent. **Hinc = ex vinctis**. **6. rēge**: i.e. the king of the Persians. **7. quod**: quī would be more in accordance with the common usage. **Hilōtae**: lit. 'captives,' prisoners taken in war or their descendants; they were the original owners of the country, and were serfs rather than slaves. **9. mūnere**: B. 218, 1; A. 249; H. 421, 1. **11. crīmen**: 'charge.' **12. et expectandum**: sc. *esse*, 'but that they ought to wait'; *putābant* has a negative force with *oportere iudicārī*, but not with *expectandum aperīret*. B. 293, 111, 2; A. 328, 1; H. 519, 11, 2.

IV. 14. Argilius: see Vocab. Subject of *accēpisset*. **15. eō**: i.e. Pausanias. **eīque**: refers to *adulēscētulus*; trans. as subject. **17. redisset . . . missi erant**: meaning of the moods? **vincla epistulae**: the tablet on which the letter was written was fastened together by a cord, which was secured by a seal. **18. si pertulisset**: 'if he should deliver it'; force of *per-*? **19. Erant in eādē epistulā**: 'there were also contained in the letter.' **quae**: 'correspondence which.' **22. gravitās**: 'deliberateness.' They were unwilling to take decisive measures until they had absolute proof. **hōc locō**: 'on this occasion.' **25. indicāset**: the subj. is due to ind. disc. **huic**: i.e. *Argiliō adulēscētulō*. **27. violārī nefās**: hence one who took refuge there was secure from molestation. **28. hanc iūxtā**: B. 144, 3; A. 263, n.; H. 636, v, 1. **29. posset**: subj. representing the design of the ephors. **loquerētur**: not a condition contrary to fact, but a future condition in implied ind. disc. **30. Hūc**: 'into this.'

Page 92. 2. supplicem: 'as a suppliant,' in apposition with *Quem*. **3. causae quid sit = quae causa sit**; *causae* is part. gen. **5. neu** =

nēve, the regular connective of two negative purpose clauses. See note to p. 85, l. 13. *meritum*: trans. by a rel. clause. 6. *si eam veniam . . . dedisset*: 'if he granted him that request'; cf. p. 88, l. 7. 7. *māgnō eī praemiō futūrum*: the subject is *id* understood = *eam veniam sibi dedisse et . . . sublevāsse*. On *praemiō*, see B. 191, 2; A. 233, a; H. 390, 1.

V. 9. *His rēbus ephorī cognitīs*: this position of the subject of the sentence is common, when it would also be the subject of the clause represented by the abl. abs.; here the abl. abs. = *quae (hās rēs) cum ephorī cognōssent*. *putārunt* = *putāvērunt*. 10. *Quō* = *in urbem*. 12. *in eō esset ut*: 'was on the point of being'; cf. p. 80, l. 4. *ex vultū cūiusdam ephorī*: 'from the expression of one of the ephors.' 14. *gradibus*: B. 223; A. 250; H. 423. 15. *quae*: refers to *Minervae*. 16. *Chalcioicos*: see Vocab. The temple was one of the most ancient in Sparta. The statue of the goddess was of bronze, and the part of the temple in which it stood was sheathed with bronze plates, decorated with bas-reliefs. 19. *vixisse*: 'was still alive.' The personal construction, *māter dicitur vixisse*, is better. *iam māgnō nātū*: 'then very old,' abl. of quality modifying *eam*; the more common expression is *grandem nātū* or *māximam nātū*. 20. *comperit*: why indic.? See note to p. 77, l. 6. 25. *quō ī*: sc. *inferrentur*. The place was a ravine near Sparta called *Caēādas* (*Kalaḍas*). 26. *plūribus*: 'the majority.' *procul ab*: here means, as the words of Thucydides show, 'a little way from,' i.e. outside the sacred precinct, but not very far off. 27. *dei Delphicī*: Apollo at Delphi. 28. *eōdem locō*: 'in the very place,' i.e. just outside the temple.

4. *Epaminondas*.

Page 93. Chapter I. 2. *scribimus*: B. 292, a; A. 327, a; H. 520, 1, 1. *praecipectenda*: sc. *esse*. 3. *aliēnōs mōrēs ad suōs referant*: i.e. judge the customs of other nations by comparison with their own. *ipsis*: dat. of the person judging. See note on *parentibus*, p. 81, l. 14. 4. *leviōra*: 'somewhat trivial.' *fuisse*: note the tense. Nepos is thinking of times gone by, especially the time of the Greek generals of whom he writes. 5. *abesse ā* = *aliēnam esse ā*, 'is inconsistent with.' *principis persōnā*: 'the character of a great man.' *Persōna* means, first, the mask worn by actors on the stage, then the character personated by the actors. 8. *exprimere imāginem*: 'to give a picture,' 'to give a clear idea.' 10. *eam*: refers to *imāginem*. 11. *ā quibus*: note the prep. What does it show?

II. 15. quō dīximus: sc. *eum nātum esse*. **16. iam ā māiōribus:** *iam* implies that his ancestors had been poor for some generations back. **ērudītus:** sc. *est*. **17. ut nēmō Thēbānus magis:** sc. *ērudītus sit*, i.e. his education was equal to that of any Theban whatsoever. **19. mūsicis:** see Vocab., under *mūsicus*. **20. cantāre tībils:** 'to play the flute'; the pl., because two pipes joined together were commonly played at the same time. For the case see B. 204, 1; A. 218, a; H. 399, 1, 3. **23. tristem ac sevērū:** 'grave and austere.' **25. antecessit:** see note to p. 87, l. 1. **26. superātūrum:** sc. *eum esse*.

Page 94. 1. ad: 'according to.' **3. ephēbus:** see Vocab. **5. servīvit:** 'aimed at,' 'devoted himself to.' **illam . . . pertinēre:** sc. *existimāvit*. Trans. 'for he thought the former was necessary for athletes, while the latter was helpful in war.' **6. exercēbātur = sē exercēbat.** **7. ad eum finem, quoad stāns complectī posset atque contendere:** 'so far as to be able to grapple standing up and to fight in that way.' There was another style of wrestling, in which the contestants grappled lying down. *posset* is subj. of design or purpose. B. 293, III, 2; A. 328; H. 519, II, 2.

III. 11. modestus, prūdēns, etc.: be careful in translating these adjs. **temporibus:** 'circumstances.' **13. iocō:** B. 220, 2; A. 248, Rem.; H. 419, III, N. 2. **Idem:** 'He was also.' **16. commissa cēlāns:** 'keeping secrets'; more lit., 'things confided to him.' **quod:** refers to *studiōsus audiendī* as its antecedent. **17. studiōsus audiendī:** 'a good listener'; lit. trans. ? **ex hōc:** i.e. *ex studiōsē audiendō*. **18. cum vēnisset:** subj. of repeated action. B. 302, 2, a; A. 309, b. **19. rē publicā:** 'politics.' **21. esset adductus:** see note to p. 87, l. 1. **23. caruit = nōn ūsus est.** **24. facultātibus:** for the constr., see B. 214, I, c; A. 243, a; H. 414, I. **25. iudicārī possit:** 'it can be judged.' Note the tense of *possit*. Cf. B. 259, I; A. 287, c; H. 495, VI; and the note to p. 79, l. 7. **27. propter paupertātem . . . nōn posset:** the dowry was an important feature in ancient marriages, as in those of European nations of to-day. The subj. in *esset captus* and *posset* is that of repeated action. See note on l. 18 above. **28. prō facultātibus:** 'according to his means.' **29. fēcerat:** note the mood. The idea is temporal, and *cum* = 'as soon as.' The pluperf. ind. with *cum* is not common. **30. potius quam acciperet = nē ipse acciperet.** The subj. represents the design of Epaminondas.

Page 95. 1. quaerēbat: sc. *pecūniam*. **ipsī:** nom., 'the donors themselves.' **2. quantum cuique dēberet:** 'how much he owed

each man'; so that he could pay the money back at some future time, if he should be able.

IV. 4. Temptāta est: 'was tested.' **abstinentia:** 'integrity.' This word is used especially of incorruptibility in money matters on the part of public officials. **5. Artaxerxis:** Artaxerxes Mnemon is meant. **6. corrumpendum suscēperat:** 'had undertaken to bribe.' *corrumpendum* is gerundive agreeing with *Epaminōndam*. **8. quinque talentis:** abl. of price. **9. convēnit:** 'called on,' 'went to see.' **11. cōram:** adv., 'to his face,' 'in a personal interview.' Note the derivation of *cōram*. **Nihil:** adv. acc., an emphatic *nōn*. **pecūniā:** see note on *auxiliō*, p. 78, l. 11. **13. contrāria:** sc. *vult*. **nōn habet . . . satis:** sc. *ad mē corrumpendum*. **15. Tū:** emphatic, with a gesture towards Diomedon. **18. tū:** like *Tū* in l. 15. **19. facis:** instead of *fēceris* on account of *cōnfestim*. Cf. B. 261, 2; A. 276, c; H. 467, 5. **20. attulerat:** ind. because it is not part of the request of Diomedon, but is an explanation of Nepos.

21. Istud: 'what you ask.' What is the lit. meaning of *Istud*? **neque tuā causā:** 'and that, not for your sake.' **22. tibi:** 'from you.' For the case see B. 188, 2, d; A. 229; H. 386, 2. **aliquis:** *quis* is usual after *nē*; *aliquis* is more emphatic. See B. 252, 2; A. 105, d, n.; H. 455, r. **23. ēreptum . . . dēlātum:** appositive adjs.; they may be translated, 'by force' . . . 'as a gift.' **25. dēdūcī:** 'to be escorted,' 'to be conducted.' **26. Athēnās:** sc. *sē dēdūcī velle*. **27. Neque . . . satis habuit:** 'and he was not even satisfied with that.' **29. suprā:** in the life of *Chabriās*. **Abstinentiae:** obj. gen.; for the meaning see l. 4 above. **30. possumus:** 'we might.' For the mood see B. 271, r, a; A. 264, b; H. 476, 4. **31. tūc hōc volūmine:** refers to the book *Dē Excellentibus Ducibus Exterārum Gentium*, not to the whole work, *Dē Viris Illūstribus*.

Page 96. **1. versuum:** we should speak of so many pages, but the ancients measured their rolls of manuscript, each of which formed a *volūmen*, by the number of lines. **2. complūrēs scriptōrēs.** See Intro., p. 9.

V. 3. disertus: sc. *ita*. **ut nēmō . . . Thēbānus:** not very high praise. Cf. l. 7 below. Nepos, however, thinks highly of the oratory of Epaminondas, as we see by Ch. VI. **4. concinnus:** 'happy.' **6. indidem Thēbis:** see Vocab. under *indidem*; the expression is an unusual one. **et:** connects *obtrectātōrem* and *adversārium*. **7. ut Thēbānum scilicet:** 'for a Theban, of course.' **11. imperātōris:**

'as a general,' in apposition with *illius*. 12. *verbō*: 'by your use of terms,' i.e. 'of the terms *pāx* and *ōtium*.' 13. *paritur pāx bellō*: note the alliteration; the expression was doubtless a proverbial one. 14. *diūtina*: trans. by an adv. 15. *Quā rē sī . . . vultis*: addressed to the Thebans generally. *prīncipēs Graeciae*: i.e. to be the chief state in Greece, to hold the hegemony. *castris . . . ūtendum, nōn palaestrā*: 'you must practise in the camp, not in the gymnasium'; lit. trans. ? 18. *Insolentiam*: object of *obiceret*, like the *quod*-clauses which precede. 21. *nūllius*: used as the gen. of *nēmō*; see Vocab. under *nēmō*. *Habēbat suspiciōnem*: 'was suspected of.' 22. *Quod . . . putās*: 'As to your supposing.' See B. 299, 2; A. 333, a; H. 516, II, N. 25. *Lacedaemoniis fugātis*: at Leuctra, B.C. 371.

VI. 29. *omnēs*: object of *praestābat*, which usually governs the dat. in classical prose.

Page 97. 1. *multa*: adv. 2. *in eisque*: i.e. among the charges, implied in *invectus esset*. *animum advertere*: = *animadvertere*. 6. *nātum*: sc. *esse*. 8. *perōrāsset*: 'had said what he had to say.' 9. *rhētoris*: said contemptuously, 'speechifier.' 13. *lēgātī*: in apposition with *ēius*; trans. as if it were *cum lēgātus esset*. 14. *pūgnam Leutricam*: cf. note to p. 89, l. 3. 18. *quod*: i.e. *eum perfēcisse ut auxiliō . . . privārentur*. They were led to desert by the speech of Epaminondas.

VII. 20. *Fuisse*: sc. *eum*. 23. *praeficere . . . nōlissent*: in 368 B.C. 24. *rēs eō esset dēducta*: 'affairs had been brought to such a pass.' *esset dēducta* is subj. because it forms part of the *cum*-clause. 26. *obsidēbantur*: what does the mood show? *dēsiderārī coepta est*: see B. 133, 1; A. 143, a. 27. *privātus numerō mīlitis*: 'without command, in the capacity of a common soldier.' 28. *contumēliae*: see l. 22 fol. 29. *et*: 'but.' 30. *hōc . . . fēcit*: i.e. *ostendit sē esse patientem suōrumque iniūriās ferentem civium*. See l. 20. *Māximē autem fuit illūstre*: sc. *hōc*, 'But the most remarkable instance was.' *Māxime . . . illūstre* is pred., and *hōc* the subject; *hōc* has the same meaning as the *hōc* in l. 30.

Page 98. 1. *dūxisset*: B.C. 370. 5. *eīs*: for the case, cf. *tibi*, p. 95, l. 22. 6. *aliī praetōrēs successissent*: the term of the Boeotarchs, or generals, expired naturally. The whole account of the part played by Epaminondas is exaggerated by Nepos. 11. *multābat*: sc. *eum*. 12. *retinisset . . . praefinitum foret*: subj. in implied

ind. disc. ; the language of the law is quoted. Give it in the direct form.
14. cōnferri : 'to be turned,' 'to be employed.'

VIII. 17. crimine : see note to p. 80, l. 23. **18. factum** : sc. *esse* ; the subject is the following *ut* clause. **21. quid diceret nōn habēret** : 'he would not know what to say' ; *diceret* is an ind. dubitative question, of which the direct form would be *quid dicam* ! 'what am I to say.' **22. crimini** : dat. of purpose. **24. eis** : 'the judges,' implied in *iudicium* in l. 21. **27. sē** : instead of *eum*, as if Nepos were quoting a speech of Epaminondas and not an inscription for his tomb. **28. ausus sit** : subj. of characteristic, with the idea of concession, B. 283, 3, *b* ; A. 320, *e* ; H. 515, III ; the perfect tense is used because the clause is parenthetical, and hence the tense is independent.

Page 99. 1. utrōrumque : 'of both nations,' *i.e.* the Thebans and the Lacedaemonians. **2. possent** : represents the thought of the Lacedaemonians, *satis habēbimus, si salvī esse poterimus*. **4. clausit** : see note to p. 87, l. 1. **5. risus omnium** : 'general laughter.' **6. ferre suffragium** : 'to cast a vote,' *i.e.* for his condemnation.

IX. 8. extrēmō tempore : = *tandem*. The battle of Mantinea was in 362 B.C. **9. cognitus . . . ūniversī** : Nepos begins as if he were going to make *Epaminōndās* the subject, but changes his mind ; such a change of construction is called anacoluthon. See B. 374, 6 ; A. 385, 1 ; H. 636, IV, 6. Trans. 'he was recognized by the Lacedaemonians, and they in a body,' etc. *ūnūs* and *ēius* belong together. **14. vidērunt** : cf. *clausit* in l. 4. **15. neque tamen** : 'but yet they did not.' **16. prōfligārun**t : cf. *clausit* in l. 4. **19. retinuit** : sc. *ferrum*.

X. 23. in quō : 'And . . . with regard to this.' **25. in eō** : cf. *in quō* in l. 23. **26. relinqueret** : the subject is *Epaminōndās*, while that of the preceding verb is *Pelopidās*. This is careless writing. **cōnsulās** : sc. *patriae*. **27. ex tē nātum** : 'as your son.' **relictūrus sīs** : note the tense. **28. ex mē nātā**m : 'as my daughter.' **30. sit** : see B. 295, 8 ; A. 332 ; H. 502, 1. **Quō tempore** : = *eō tempore, quō*, 'at the time when.' B.C. 379.

Page 100. 3. domō : 'in his house' ; *domō* is abl. of means. See B. 218, 7 ; A. 258, *f*, 1 ; H. 425, 1, 1). The abl., instead of the loc. *domī*, is usual when *domus* means house, *i.e.* refers to the building. **malōs** : 'traitors' ; the word is used in a political sense. **4. suōrum** : 'of his fellow-citizens.' **5. cīvilem** : 'over citizens.' **6. pūgnāri coeptum est** : see B. 133, 1 ; A. 143, *a*. **9. ibit infitiās** : see Vocab. under *infitiar*, and B. 182, 5 ; A. 258, *b*. Rem. ; H. 380, 2, 3). **10. per-**

petuō: adv. **11. aliēnō pāruiſſe imperiō**: *i.e.* they never held the hegemony, but followed the lead of other states of Greece. They had not, however, been actually subject to any other state. **praefuerit**: the perf. of dir. disc. is usually retained in the ind. disc. after a past tense, although the rule of the 'sequence of tenses' would require the pluperf. See B. 287, 1; A. 324; H. 518, n. 1.

5. *Hamilcar.*

Chapter I. 14. Barca: the Latin form of Βάρκας, meaning 'lightning.' **15. Poeniciō**: = *Pūnico*. **temporibus extrēmīs**: 'towards the end.' Hamilcar came into Sicily in 247 B.C., seventeen years after the beginning of the war. **17. male rēs gererentur**: the Carthaginians retained only a few strongholds in Sicily, but held the supremacy on the sea. **19. locum**: 'opportunity.' **20. lacesſiuit**: sc. *hostem*. **22. bellum eō locō gestum nō vidērētur**: 'that the war did not seem to have been finished in that quarter.' **23. apud insulās Aegātēs**: in 241 B.C. **26. serviendum**: sc. *esse*, 'ought to be striven for'; for the meaning, cf. p. 94, l. 5.

Page 101. 1. essent refectae: subj. in implied ind. disc. Hamilcar's thought was, *sī rēs erunt refectae, bellum renovābimus*. **2. dōnicum**: an archaic form of *dōnec*. **3. manūs dedissent**: 'should submit,' lit. 'should stretch out their hands,' to receive the fetters. The subj. represents the design of Hamilcar. **4. in quō**: 'and in this matter,' *i.e.* in the negotiations for peace. **ferōciā**: 'high spirit.' **5. compositūrum**: sc. *sē* and *esse*. **6. dēcēderent**: pl. because *ille cum suis* forms the subject. **ut . . . dixerit**: modifies *tanta ferōciā*; for the order, cf. p. 79, l. 16 fol. **8. suae . . . virtūtis**: = *suae virtūtī convenire*; for the case, see B. 187, III; A. 214, d; H. 401. **10. cessit**: to the extent of letting them march out under arms.

II. 11. aliter . . . sē habentem: 'in a very different condition.' **14. cum dēlēta est**: note the mood; the *cum* clause gives the date. **17. abaliēnārunt**: *i.e.* 'caused to revolt.' **19. eaque impetrārunt**: the Romans sent no troops, but aided them in various ways. **21. imperātōrem**: in 239 B.C. **22. cum . . . facta essent**: *i.e.* although the number of the enemy had been increased to more than 100,000 men. **27. tōtā Africā**: locative abl. See B. 228, 1, b; A. 258, f, 2; H. 425, 2.

Page 102. III. 2. causam: 'pretext.' **bellandī**: sc. *cum Rōmānīs*. **4. annōrum novem**: gen. of measure, instead of the common

expression *annōs novem nātus*. **5. illūstris**: *i.e.* 'of noble birth.' **8. princeps**: = *primus*.

IV. 14. in Italiam . . . Inferre: 'to carry war into Italy,' while *Italiae bellum inferre* would mean 'to make war on Italy.' **16. vōnerat**: for the tense, see B. 287, 3; A. 324, *a*; H. 518, *n. 2*. **20. Rōmānōs nōn experiri**: *i.e.* than not to try conclusions with the Romans.

6. Hannibal.

Chapter I. 22. ut . . . superārit: a subst. clause subject of *est*. The usual constr. with *vērū est* is the acc. and the inf. **24. tantō . . . quantō**: abl. of degree of difference. **imperātōrēs**: see note to p. 96, l. 29. **26. cum eō**: *i.e.* *cum populō Rōmānō*.

Page 103. 1. discessit superior: as we say, 'came off victor.' **Quod nisi**: 'And if he had not'; *quod* is really the neu. of the rel. pron. in the adverbial acc. = 'as to which.'

II. 5. ergā Rōmānōs: the best writers rarely use this word of unfriendly feelings. Cf. *in Rōmānōs*, l. 18 below. **6. quī quidem**: *i.e.* as is shown by the fact that he. **patriā**: abl. of separation. The prep. is found with *pellō* in the best prose. **8. omittam**: B. 282, 4; A. 317, *c*; H. 490, 2, *n.* **absēns**: *i.e.* without a personal interview, while he himself was carrying on war with the Romans in Italy. **hostem**: from 215 to 205 B.C. **11. rubrō marī**: here refers to the Persian Gulf. **13. cōnsiliis**: abl. of means modifying *addūcerent*. **14. rēgi**: B. 188, 1; A. 235, *a*; H. 384, 4, *n. 2*. **15. tamquam**: *i.e.* 'alleging that.' **atque**: 'than.' **16. ab interiōribus cōnsiliis**: *i.e.* of Antiochus. **17. tempore**: 'opportunity.' **20. puerulō mē**: trans. by a temporal clause modifying *proficiscēns*.

21. Iovī optimō māximō: the sacrifice was made to Baal, the great divinity of the Phoenicians and Carthaginians, but the Romans identified the gods of foreign nations with their own. **22. cōnficiēbātur**: the pres. with *dum* is the rule, unless the action of the *dum* clause and that of the main clause are coextensive in time. **23. in castra proficisci**: *i.e.* to go to war. **26. fidem**: 'pledge.' **28. tenentem**: the person who took oath by a god before an altar laid hold of the altar. **31. quā . . . sim futūrus**: the usual constr. with *nōn dubium*. The more common constr. in Nepos is, however, the inf.; see p. 77, l. 20.

Page 104. 1. mē: for the constr. see B. 178, 1, *e*; A. 239, *d*, and *n.*; H. 374, *n. 1*. **cēlāris** = *cēlāveris*. **cum quidem**: 'when, however.' **2. si nōn**: why not *nisi*? **in eō**: *i.e.* *in bellō* or *in bellō parandō*.

III. 6. dētulit : 'offered.' **7. Id** : 'that action,' of making Hannibal commander-in-chief. **dēlātum** : 'reported.' **8. minor quīnque et vīgintī annīs nātus** : an unusual expression instead of *minor quīnque et vīgintī annōs nātus*. Hannibal was really 26 years old at the time. **10. civitātem** : here = *urbem*. **vī expūgnāvit** : 219 B.C. **13. dūxit** : in 218 B.C. **18. quō factō** : abl. of cause. **20. mūnit** : 'built,' the regular Roman expression. **ōrnātus** : *i.e.* fully equipped, contrasted with *inermis*, as is *rēpere* with *ire*. The elephants carried towers.

IV. 23. Cōnfixerat : . . . **pepulerat** : note the tense. These events were concluded at the time of *dēcernit*, which begins the main narration. The affair at the Rhone was a mere cavalry skirmish, in which the Romans were victorious. **24. Clastidī** : locative, instead of *ad* or *apud* with the acc., the usual expression for a battle near a town; cf. *apud Plataeās*, p. 89, l. 4. Nepos confuses the battle of Clastidium with that at the Ticinus river in 218 B.C. **27. utrōsque** : we should expect *utrumque*, of two individuals. **28. petēns** : 'on his way to,' in 217 B.C.

Page 105. 1. afficitur : historical present. **3. valētūdine** : 'infirmity.' **6. praetōrem** : *i.e.* *lēgātus prō praetōre*. **saltūs occupantem** : 'while holding the mountain passes.' He was actually defeated and killed in Umbria, while marching to the aid of Flaminius. **7. Hinc . . . pervēnit** : the account of Hannibal's campaigns is confused and inaccurate. **8. utrīusque** : the usual usage; cf. *utrōsque*, p. 104, l. 27, and note. **9. ūnō proeliō** : at Cannae, in 216 B.C. **Paulum** : L. Aemilius Paulus.

V. 15. Q. Fabius Māximus : the reference is to Quintus Fabius Maximus, surnamed *Cunctātor*, or 'the Lingerer,' whose policy of masterly inactivity checked Hannibal's victorious career during the early part of the second Punic War, and contributed greatly to the final triumph of Rome. 'Fabian policy' became proverbial. **18. dedit verba** : see Vocab. under *verbum*. This really took place in 211 B.C., before the battle of Cannae. **obductā nocte** : sc. *nūbibus*, 'on a cloudy night.' **19. ēiusque generis** : *i.e.* *iuvencōrum quōrum in cornibus sarmenta dēligāta erant*. **22. extrā vāllum** : 'outside the rampart' of their camp. The Romans fortified their camp in regular order whenever they halted for the night. **Hanc . . . diēbus** : a favorite order with Nepos. Cf. p. 90, l. 18.

24. par ac dictātōrem imperiō : the master of horse was usually the lieutenant of the dictator, and Rufus held that relation to the dicta-

tor Q. Fabius Maximus. He succeeded, however, in exciting distrust of the 'Fabian policy' and finally induced the people to give him equal authority with the dictator. 26. *iterum cōnsulem*: this expression is used strictly of a man who is holding his second consulship; as Sempronius was killed after his second consulship, the proper expression would be *bis cōnsulem*. On the other hand, Marcellus, who was holding his fifth consulship when he fell, should be designated as *quintum* (adv.) *cōnsulem*. Gracchus was killed in 212 B.C., Marcellus in 208 B.C. in *Lūcānis*: modifies *sustulit*. *absēns*: i.e. through one of his lieutenants. 28. *Longum est*: we should expect the subjunctive. See note to p. 95, l. 30. 30. *possit*: subj. of characteristic.

Page 106. VI. 1. *revocātus*: in 203 B.C. 2. *P. Scipionem*: called *Āfricānus*, on account of his victory over Hannibal. 5. *bellum compōnere* = *pācem facere*. 7. *Post . . . diēbus*: cf. l. 1, above. 8. *apud Zamam*: B.C. 202. 12. *ipsōs*: emphatic, 'them'; i.e. he ruined the very men who expected to ruin him.

VII. 18. *P. Sulpiciūm . . . cōsulēs*: B.C. 200. *His . . . magistrātibus*: 'in their consulship.' 20. *cum eis . . . eōrum*: we should expect *sēcum* and *suī*; the ambassadors, however, speak of the Carthaginians as a third party. 24. *acceptum*: adj.; see Vocab. *obsidēs . . . futurōs*: a condensed expression for *obsidēs eō locō futurōs in quō ut essent rogārent*. 25. *remissūrōs*: sc. *sē*. 30. *rēx*: here stands for the highest magistrate of Carthage, the *suffēs*, or 'judge.'

Page 107. 4. *ex*: 'in consequence of,' 'through.' 6. *penderētur*: 'to be paid': subj. of design or purpose. 8. *M. Claudiō . . . cōnsulibus*: B.C. 196. 10. *senātus darētur*: 'an opportunity of addressing the senate was given them.' For the mood, see note to p. 79, l. 3. 11. *Antiochum*: cf. p. 103, l. 10. 13. *possent*: subj. because it forms part of the design of the Carthaginians and of the instructions given to the commander of the ships.

VIII. 17. *L. Cornēliō . . . cōnsulibus*: B.C. 193. 18. *sī forte . . . inducere posset*: 'if haply he might be able to induce,' a colloquial expression for *ut, sī forte posset, induceret*. 19. *Antiochī*: objective gen. depending on *spē fiduciāque*. 21. *Hūc*: i.e. *in finēs Cŷrēnarōrum*. 23. *Illī*: i.e. *Hannibal et Māgō*. 25. *duplex memoria*: i.e. two accounts. 26. *servulīs*: diminutives without any particular force were common in the language of everyday life. *interfectum*: a case of zeugma, since with *naufrāgiō* alone *perisse* would have been used; cf. p. 89, l. 24. 28. *ēius* = *Hannibalīs*, a careless use of the pron.

29. Tiberī: dat. of nearness; the acc. is the usual construction with *propius*. **Thermopylis:** locative. Antiochus was defeated there in 191 B.C. **dē summā imperiī:** 'for dominion'; i.e. for the rule of the world.

Page 108. **2. Asiam:** see note to p. 88, l. 13. **3. Pamphylīō mari:** see map of Asia, opp. p. 93. **4. sui:** 'his own men.'

IX. 6. fugātō: the battle was fought near Magnesia, in 190 B.C. See map opp. p. 75. **7. si sui fēcisset potestatem:** i.e. if he had allowed himself to be taken. What is the literal trans.? **8. quō sē cōnferret:** an ind. dubitative question; in the dir. form *quō mē cōnferam!* **13. summās:** sc. *amphorās*. He filled the jars nearly full of lead, and then put a little gold and silver on top of the lead. **15. illōrum:** i.e. of the Gortynians; cf. *eīs*, p. 86, l. 25. **17. abicit:** i.e. as if they were of no value. **19. eīs:** we should expect *sibi*.

X. 21. Poenus illūsis Crētēnsibus: it was a case of 'diamond cut diamond,' for both the Carthaginians and the Cretans were noted for their craft. **23. neque aliud quicquam ēgit:** i.e. 'he devoted all his attention.' **25. conciliābat . . . adiungēbat:** sc. *Prūsiae*. **27. ab eō:** i.e. Prusias. This happened in 184 B.C. **Eumenēs:** Eumenes II. is meant. See Vocab. **28. utrobique:** i.e. *et mari et terrā*. **30. quem si remōvisset . . . arbitrabātur:** 'for he thought that if he got him out of the way.'

Page 109. **3. Superabātur:** 'he was inferior,' i.e. Hannibal to Eumenes. **5. colligī:** the pass. inf. with *imperō* is found in Cicero, and is not uncommon. An *ut* clause with the subj. is, however, the usual constr. **6. effēcisset:** 'had brought together.' **9. ā cēteris . . . sē dēfendere:** 'that they should be satisfied merely to defend themselves against the rest.' **11. rēx . . . sē factūrum:** note the order. **13. eīs:** to be taken with *praemio fore*.

XI. 15. Quārum: i.e. *classium*. **21. ducis:** i.e. *rēgis*. **23. solūtā epistulā:** cf. *vincla epistulae laxāvit*, p. 91, l. 17, and the note. **24. Cūius rei:** i.e. of sending the letter. **27. praeceptō:** 'at the command.' **29. sua praesidia:** i.e. his naval camp (*castra nautica*) on shore. See p. 110, l. 7, below.

Page 110. **3. conicī coepta sunt:** see note to p. 100, l. 6. **6. novā:** 'strange.'

XII. 12. apud: 'at the house of.' **15. dētulit:** 'reported.' **18. suum . . . sibi:** refer to the Romans, while *sēcum* refers to

Prusias. 19. *Prūsia*: another form of the nom. *Prūsias*. *illud recūsāvit, nē . . . postulārent*: 'he objected to their asking.' *id ā sē fieri*: the usual constr. with *postulō* is *ut* with the subj.; the acc. with the inf. is rare. 25. *ūsū*: an old form of the dat., instead of *ūsui*; a dat. of purpose. *venīret*: the subject is *quod accidit*. 27. *puer*: 'a slave'; slaves were designated as *puer* without regard to age. 29. *circumīret*: 'go around to,' 'make the round of.' 30. *num*: expecting a negative answer. It implies that Hannibal had hope that not all the outlets were blockaded.

Page 111. 2. *sēnsit*: sc. *ille*, = *Hannibal*. 3. *sē petī*: *sē* is the emphatic word; 'that he was the object of the attack.' 4. *aliēnō arbitriō*: B. 220, 3; A. 253, n.; H. 416, n. 2. 5. *pristinārum virtūtum*: 'his former deeds of valor,' note the pl.

XIII. 8. *septuāgēsīmō*: Hannibal was sixty-three years old at the earliest of the dates which Nepos gives. 9. *M. Claudīō Marcellō . . . cōsulibus*: B.C. 183; the other dates are 182 and 181. 14. *litteris*: i.e. to composition. 16. *ad Rhodiōs*: sc. *ōrātiō* or *liber*. *rēbus gestis*: Volso conquered the Galatians in 189 B.C. 17. *Hūius*: i.e. *Hannibalis*. *gesta*: neu. pl. used substantively. The more common expression is *rēs gestae*. 18. *simul*: = *cum eō*. 20. *hōc sōsilō . . . doctōre*: cf. *quō . . . duce*, p. 75, l. 9, and the note.

7. Cato.

Chapter I. 22. *municipiō*: a *municipium* was a town to whose inhabitants Roman citizenship had been granted. 23. *daret*: note the subj. with *priusquam*. The writer puts himself at the standpoint of *versātus est*, from which *daret* is something looked forward to, as not yet existing. 24. *hērēdiūm*: 'an hereditary estate' of two *iūgera*, assigned to him in the distribution of the land by the Romans. 27. *in forō esse*: 'to frequent the forum,' at first to get acquainted with public business and the method of conducting it; then to take an active part. 28. *stipendium meruit*: see Vocab. under *stipendium*. *annōrum septem decemque*: 'at the age of seventeen,' gen. of measure. Q. *Fabiō . . . cōsulibus*: in 214 B.C.

Page 112. 2. *castra secūtus est*: cf. *in Hispāniam proficiscēns*, p. 103, l. 21. 3. *in proeliō apud Sēnam*: known also as the battle of the Metaurus River. See map of Italy, opp. p. 30. The battle was fought in 207 B.C. 5. *obtigīt*: 'fell to the lot of'; the quaestors were

assigned by lot. This was in 205 B.C. **prō sortis necessitudīne**: for the meaning of *necessitudīne*, see Vocab. The relations of the consul and his quaestor were usually very intimate; Cicero says that they should be like those of father and son. **7. Aedilis**: in 199 B.C. **Praetor**: in 198 B.C. **9. ex Āfricā dēcēdēns**: 'on his way home from Africa.' That Ennius came back with Cato was mere chance. Cato had no love for poets, and was bitterly opposed to the tendencies which Ennius represented.

II. 12. cōsulātum gessit: in 195 B.C. **Sorte . . . nactus**: the provinces were assigned to the consuls by lot. **13. triumphum dēportāvit**: in 194 B.C. **17. cum quidem**: 'even although,' 'in spite of the fact that.' **18. principātum . . . obtinēret**: *i.e.* he was the most influential man in the state. Note the tense and meaning of *obtinēret*. **19. tum**: 'in those days,' contrasted with the writer's own time. **potentiā**: 'personal influence.' Cf. *potestās* in l. 22. **20. privātus in urbe mānsit**: *i.e.* he refused to accept another province. **21. cēnsor**: in 184 B.C. **22. nōbilēs**: at that time the *nōbilēs* were those whose ancestors had held such offices as admitted them to senatorial rank. **23. multās rēs novās . . . addidit**: *i.e.* he introduced many innovations into the usual edict which was published by the censors on their entrance to office. **24. reprimerētur**: subj. of purpose. *quā rē* is relative, referring to *multās novās rēs*. **25. Cīrciter annōs octōgintā**: he died in 149 B.C., at the age of 85. **28. fēcīt**: we should say 'suffered.'

Page 113. **III. 3. probābilis**: note the derivation and meaning. Nepos is appraising Cato by the standard of his own times. Cato was the greatest orator of his day. **4. arripuerat**: 'had taken up.' **5. reperīri posset**: sc. *aliquid*. **7. historiās**: 'history.' **9. unde quaeque civitās**: *i.e.* the origin of each state, including that of Rome, and also the history of Rome from the expulsion of the kings until the first Punic War. **10. omnēs**: sc. *librōs*, *i.e.* 'the whole work.' **14. dīripuit Lūsitānōs**: in 150 B.C. In 149 Galba was tried for his mismanagement. **15. hōrum bellōrum ducēs**: *i.e.* those after the second Punic War. He spoke of them merely as *cōsul*, *praetor*, etc. **18. compāret**: 'are shown.' **21. studiōsōs Catōnis**: 'those who are interested in Cato.'

CAESAR, BOOK I.

Page 114. C. IULI CAESARIS: C. stands for *Gai*. Why? See note to p. 53, l. 1. **Iuli**: why the ending *i* instead of *ii*? B. 25, 1; A. 40, b; H. 51, 5. **Caesaris**: the origin of the name *Caesar* has been much discussed, but remains uncertain; see Smith's Dictionary of Biography and Mythology, vol. i, p. 536.

DE BELLO GALLICO: the subjects of books in Latin are often put in the abl. with *dē*. COMMENTARIUS: 'memoir,' 'commentary'; *commentarius*, properly an adjective modifying *liber* expressed or understood, is here used as a noun. What case is it in and why? Sc. *hic est*.

INTRODUCTION. GAUL AND ITS PEOPLES. I.

Chapter I. 1. Gallia: Study pp. 25–26, in connection with the map of Gaul. **omnis**: 'as a whole.' **divisa**: B. 337, 2; A. 291, b; H. 550, n. 2. If *est divisa* were a perfect passive, it would have to be translated 'has been divided,' or 'was divided.' **finam**: sc. *partem*. **2. aliam**: *alteram* might have been expected. **tertiam, quā**: = *tertiam partem eī incolunt, quā*. B. 251, 1; A. 200, c; H. 445, 6. **ipsōrum**: for *suā ipsōrum*, emphatic, 'their own.' **linguā**: B. 218; A. 248, c; H. 420.

3. Celtæ: B. 168; A. 185; H. 362, 2, 2). **nostrā**: i.e. *Latīnā* [*linguā*]. Caesar, though writing in the third person, often uses *nōs* and *noster* for *Rōmānī* and *Rōmānōrum*. **linguā**: B. 226; A. 253; H. 424. The language of all transalpine Gaul except Aquitania belonged to the Keltic family, but there were numerous dialects; some dialects of the Belgæ in Caesar's time may still have retained Germanic elements (cf. p. 152, 22–24). Modern scholars have gained a scanty knowledge of the Gallic language from proper names and other words of this speech preserved in Greek and Latin texts, from inscriptions and from coins. The peculiar speech of the *Aquitānī* survives in the Basque language. **linguā, institūtis, lēgibus**: in translating supply 'and' with the last two words. B. 341, 4, a; A. 208, b; H. 554, 1, 6.

4. inter sē: 'from one another.' B. 245; A. 196, f; H. 448, n. **5. dividit**: sing. number because the Marne and Seine were looked upon as forming *one* boundary. B. 255, 3; A. 205, b; H. 463, II, 3.

6. Hōrum: B. 201, 1; A. 216, *a*, 2; H. 397, 3. **propterea quod**: 'because'; *propterea* (for *propter eā*) is properly an adv. meaning 'on this account,' but when closely connected with *quod*, as here, the two may be translated by one word. **7. cultū**: 'mode of life,' refers to external characteristics, as dress, food, etc., while *hūmānitās* suggests 'refinement' and culture of mind. **minimē . . . saepe**: = *rārissimē*, 'very seldom.' **8. mercātōrēs**: 'traders' from the Province found their way into central Gaul by following the course of the Rhone and the Saône, so that naturally they did not often go so far north as the region of the *Belgae*.

9. ad effēminandōs animōs: 'tend to weaken the courage.' B. 339, 2; A. 296, 300; H. 544, 1. **10. Germānis**: B. 192, 1; A. 234, *a*; H. 391, 1. What other case sometimes found after *proximus*? Cf. p. 150, 23, and note. **quibuscum**: see note to p. 75, l. 10.

11. Quā: B. 251, 6; A. 180, *f*; H. 453. **12. reliquōs**: 'the rest of the.' A. 193; H. 440, *n*, 1, 2. **virtūte**: not 'virtue.' B. 226; A. 253; H. 424. **13. proeliis**: B. 220, 1; A. 248; H. 419, *iii*. **cum**: the conj. *cum* can be distinguished from the prep. *cum* only by the sense and the connection. **suīs**: B. 244, 1, 1; A. 196; H. 449. **finibus**: B. 214, 2; A. 243; H. 414. **14. eōs**: = *Germānōs*.

15. Eōrum: = *hōrum omnium*, i.e. the inhabitants of Gaul as a whole mentioned at the beginning of the chapter; *pars*, 'division,' is used because *eōrum* refers to the country rather than to the people. **quam**: object of *obtinēre* ('occupy'), which with *Gallōs* stands as subject of *dictum est*. B. 330; A. 329, 330, *a*, 2; H. 538. The Galli here are simply the inhabitants of the central part of Gaul, the *Celtae* of l. 3.

16. capit ā: 'begins at.' **Garumnā**: why abl.? For the omission of the conjunction cf. l. 3 and note. **17. Oceanō**: *Ōceanus* was often used to designate the Atlantic Ocean; the part here referred to is known to-day as the Bay of Biscay. **ab**: 'on the side of.' See note on *ā tergō*, p. 36, l. 8. **18. vergit ad septentrionēs**: 'it lies to the north,' of the Roman Province. **19. extrēmīs**: 'furthest,' i.e. from the Province. **Galliae**: here 'the land of the Galli.'

Page 115. 1. Inferiōrem partem: the part of the Rhine near its mouth. **in septentrionem et orientem sōlem**: i.e. toward the northeast. **4. ad**: 'near.' **occāsum sōlis et septentrionēs**: toward the northwest.

THE WAR WITH THE HELVETII. II-XXIX. B.C. 58.

II. 6. longē: B. 350, 6; A. 344, *b*; H. 566. **dītissimus**: see Vocab., *dīves*. **7. Orgetorix**: for the meaning of the name, see Vocab. The form ORCETIRIX is found on Gallic coins. **M.**: = *Mārcō*. **cōnsulibus**: B. 227, 1; A. 255, *a*; H. 431, 4. Trans. 'in the consulship of'; = B.C. 61. See note to p. 41, l. 20. **8. cupiditāte**: B. 219; A. 245, *b*; H. 416, *n*. 1. **civitatī**: B. 187, *II*, *a*; A. 227; H. 385, *II*. **9. ut**: the clause *ut . . . exirent* stands as object of *persuāsit*; 'to go out,' etc. B. 295, 1; A. 331; H. 498, *I*. **exirent**: pl. because of the idea of *civēs* in *civitatī*.

10. perfacile to potiri, indirect discourse; sc. *dixit*, or *dicēns*. B. 313, 314, 2; A. 330, *e*, 335, 336; H. 522-524. The subject of *esse* is *potiri*. How does *perfacile* differ from *facile*, and why is it neuter? A. 170, *c*, 29, *c*, 189, *d*; H. 170, 1 and 42, *n*. **virtūte**: B. 226; A. 253; H. 424. **omnibus**: B. 187, *III*, 1; A. 228; H. 386. **praestarent**: B. 286, 2, 314; A. 326, 336; H. 517, 524. **11. imperiō**: B. 218, 1; A. 249; H. 421, *I*.

12. Id: refers to the clause *perfacile . . . potiri*; 'that (course).' B. 176, 2, *a*; A. 225, *c*; H. 384, 2, (1). **hōc**: B. 219; A. 245; H. 416. **loci nātūrā**: 'by the character of their country' (lit. 'of their situation'). **13. ūnā**, etc.: 'on one side.' **lātissimō**: B. 240, 2; A. 93, *b*; H. 444, *I*.

14. quī: why masc.? Cf. *quod*, p. 54, l. 23, and the note. **ā Germānis**: 'from (the territory of) the Germans'; the name of a people is often put for that of their country. **15. alterā**: here for *secundā*, as often. **16. tertiā**: sc. *ex parte*; trace out these boundaries on the map. **17. nostram**: i.e. *Rōmānam*.

18. fīēbat: the subject is *ut . . . possent*. B. 297, 2, cf. 284, 1; A. 319, 332, *a*; H. 501, *I*, 1. **minus lātē, minus facile**: i.e. than they wished. **19. finitimis**: B. 187, *III*, 2; A. 228; H. 386. **quā ex parte**: 'and in this respect.' **hominēs**: a kind of appositive; 'being men.' **20. bellandī**: B. 338, 1, *b*; A. 298, 218, *a*; H. 542, *I*, 399, *I*, 1. **Prō**: 'in proportion to,' 'considering.' The number of the Helvetii is given as 263,000 (p. 132, 3). **22. quī**: i.e. *finēs*.

23. mīlia: B. 181, 1; A. 257; H. 379. The Roman mile (*mille passūs*, pl. *mīlia passuum*) = 4854 English feet; the *passus* (originally a double pace) as a measure of length = 5 Roman *pedēs* = 4 feet 10½

inches by English measurement. **ccxl** : = *ducenta et quadrāgintā*. Always read numbers in the text with the Latin words. From the boundaries given we see that the country of the Helvetians was about two-thirds the size of modern Switzerland. As the shorter distance actually measures only about 80 Roman miles, it has been conjectured that Caesar wrote **LXXX**, which was changed to **CLXXX** through a mistake of an early copyist. The same territory now supports a population of about two millions. The reasons assigned by Caesar for this national migration do not seem adequate. The pressure of the Germans may have been more serious than implied in chap. i, ll. 11-14. Cf. p. 131, 19-23; p. 134, 16-20.

III. 25. cōstituērunt : i.e. *Helvētū*. **ea quae** : 'such things as.' **proficiēscendum** : B. 338, 3; A. 300; H. 542, III. **pertinērent** : the subj. implies that Caesar was giving the thought of the Helvetii rather than his own. B. 323; A. 341, d; H. 528, i.

26. comparāre, coēmere, facere, cōfirmāre : B. 328, 1; A. 271, a; H. 533, i, 1. **carrōrum** : two-wheeled carts, often covered. *Carrus* is of Keltic origin; our word "car" is connected with it in derivation. **quam** : adv. B. 240, 3; A. 93, b; H. 170, 2, (2); *quam māximum* (= *tam māgnum quam māximum*), 'as large as possible,' 'the greatest possible.' **28. suppeteret** : B. 282; A. 317; H. 497, II.

Page 116. 1. cōficiendās : B. 339, 2; A. 296; H. 544, i. **2. satis** : takes the place of a predicate adj. **dūxērunt** : 'they reckoned.' **in** : 'for.'

4. sibi : B. 187, III; A. 228; H. 386. **5. persuādet** : see note to p. 41, l. 28. **6. filiō, Sēquanō** : B. 169, 2; A. 184; H. 363. **rēgnum** : 'headship,' 'chief authority.' At this time there was no absolute or hereditary monarchy among the Gauls. **7. annōs** : B. 181, 1; A. 256; H. 379. **8. amicus** : B. 168, 2, b; A. 185; H. 361, 2, 2). Not infrequently the Roman Senate conferred the title of "friend" upon foreign chiefs and rulers as a means of winning their favor. **ut . . . occupāret** : object of **persuādet**; cf. p. 115, 9. Notice the imperfect after a historical present. **suā** : 'his own.' **9. quod** : not 'because.' **10. civitāte** : i.e. *Aeduōrum*. **obtinēbat** : force of the imperfect? B. 260, 1; A. 115, 2, b; H. 469, II. **11. plēbī** : B. 192, 1; A. 234, a; H. 391, i. **acceptus** : here an adj. **idem** : acc., 'the same thing.' **12. in mātīmōnium dat** : see Vocab.

13. Perfacile to possent : see note to p. 115, 10-11. **factū** : B. 340, 2; A. 303, a; H. 547, x. 1. **illīs probat** : 'he shows them.'

14. obtentūrus esset: a periphrastic form is here used, because there is no future tense in the subj. proper. B. 115; A. 129; H. 496, II, n. 2.

15. dubium: neuter, because the subject of *esse* is a clause (*quīn . . . possent*). **Galliae**: B. 201, 1; A. 216, a, 2; H. 397, 3. **plūrimum**: neut. acc., used adverbially. B. 176, 3, a; A. 148, d, 240, a; H. 304, 1, 3 and 371, II, (2). Trans. with *possent*, 'had the most power,' 'were the most powerful.' **possent**: B. 298; A. 332, g; H. 501, 1, 2. **16. cōpiis**: 'means,' 'wealth.' **conciliātūrum**: in the future infinitive *esse* is usually omitted; 'would procure.' **17. inter sē fidem et iūs iūrāndum dant**: 'they give one another an oath-bound pledge of good faith'; hendiadys in *fidem et iūs iūrāndum*. B. 374, 4; A. page 429; H. 636, III, 2. **iūs iūrāndum**: A. 79, d; H. 125, 126. **18. rēgnō occupātō** = *cum rēgnū occupāvissent*. **trēs . . . populōs**: i.e. *Helvētiōs, Aeduōs, Sēquanōs*. **19. Galliae**: B. 212, 2; A. 249, a; H. 410, v, 3. **sēsē**: subject of *posse*.

IV. 20. Ea rēs: what 'fact'? **per indicium** = *per indicēs*, 'by informers' (lit., 'by means of information'). **Mōribus**: B. 220, 3; A. 245; H. 416, 1, n. 2. **21. ex**: we should say 'in.' **causam dicere**: 'to plead his case,' i.e. 'to make his defence.' **22. damnātum** = *sī damnātus esset*. Sc. *eum*, obj. of *sequi*. B. 138, II; A. 146, c; H. 298, foot-n. 5. **ut . . . cremārētur**: in apposition with *poenam*. B. 294; A. 329, 2, and 332, f; H. 501, III. The Gauls punished grave offences by burning, and on certain occasions offered human sacrifices. **Diēs**: B. 230; A. 256; H. 429. Is *diēs* usually fem.? See note to p. 42, l. 14.

23. dictiōnis: 'for the pleading.' B. 200; H. 393, n. **24. familiam**: not 'family'; see Vocab. **ad**: adv. modifying *decem*; 'about.' **milia**: B. 80, 5; A. 94, e; H. 178; appositive of *familiam*. **25. obaerātōs**: the derivation of this word suggests the kind of money most common among the Romans. **26. eōdem**: adv. **diceret**: B. 282; A. 317; H. 497, II.

27. sē ēripuit: he overawed the judges so that they did not dare call him to account. **iūs suum**: the right of the state to punish traitors. **28. cōnārētur, cōgerent**: B. 288, 1, B; A. 325; H. 521, II, 2. **29. neque** = *et nōn*. B. 341, 1, d; A. 156, a; H. 554, 1, 2. **30. ut**: what does *ut* mean with the indic.? see Vocab. **sibi mortem cōnsciverit**: 'committed suicide.' B. 284, 2, a, 3; A. 319, d; H. 504, 3, 2).

Page 117. V. 1. *ēius* : = *Orgetorigis*. ***nihilō* :** B. 223 ; A. 250 ; H. 417, 2. **2. *cōnantur* :** see note to p. 141, l. 28. ***ut . . . exeat* :** explains *id.* B. 297, 3 ; A. 329, 2 ; H. 363, 5. **3. *parātōs* :** adj. ***oppida* :** 'walled towns,' while the *vici* were rows or groups of houses in the open country. **4. *numerō* :** B. 226 ; A. 253 ; H. 424. ***ad* :** adv. ***reliqua*, etc. :** the buildings belonging to individuals not in the walled towns and the villages. **5. *incendunt*.** 'set fire to,' while *combūrere* means 'to burn up,' and *cremāre* 'to burn' with bright flames.

6. *domum* : B. 182, 1, *b* ; A. 258, *b* ; H. 380, 11, 2. The idea of motion is suggested by *reditiōnis*, which takes the place of *redeundī*. ***spē* :** B. 227 ; A. 255 ; H. 431. **7. *subeunda* :** B. 339, 2 ; A. 296 ; H. 544, 1. ***essent* :** B. 282 ; A. 317 ; H. 497, 11.

8. *cibāria* : here used for *frūmentum*. On an allowance of three-quarters of a pound of coarse flour per day for each person, 24,840,000 pounds, or 12,420 tons, would be needed to feed 368,000 people (cf. p. 132, 6 and note) for 90 days. If we assume that the strong and heavy carts, each drawn by a yoke of draft-animals, would on the average carry a ton, more than 12,000 carts must have been required for the transportation of the supplies, and perhaps half as many more for other purposes ; but it is hardly probable that the Helvetians and their allies all obeyed literally the order here mentioned. 18,000 carts, allowing 20 feet to each, if arranged in a single file would form a line 68 miles long. ***domō* :** B. 229, 1, *b* ; A. 258, *a* ; H. 412, 11, 1. ***efferre* :** B. 331, 11 ; A. 331, *a* ; H. 535, 11.

9. *Rauracis* : B. 187, 11, *a* ; A. 227 ; H. 385, 11. The Rauraci were in the vicinity of modern Basle, the Tulingi about Schaffhausen, the Latobrigi on the upper Danube, in the Black Forest. See map opp. p. 114. **10. *ūsī* :** 'adopting' (lit. 'having used'). ***cōnsiliō* :** B. 218, 1 ; A. 249 ; H. 421, 1. **11. *finā* :** adv. ***eis* :** *Helvētīs*. ***Bōiōs* :** see Vocab.

12. *Nōrēiam* : the site of Noreia is occupied by the town of Neumarkt, about 125 miles southwest of Vienna. **13. *oppugnārant* :** B. 116, 1 ; A. 128, *a* ; H. 235. ***receptōs* :** agrees with *Bōiōs*. B. 337, 2 ; A. 292, *r.* ; H. 549, 5. ***sociōs* :** B. 177, 1 ; A. 184 ; H. 363. ***sibi* :** after *asciscunt* ; *ad sē* goes with *receptōs*.

VI. 14. *Erant* : 'There were.' Forms of *esse* should often be rendered with the expletive 'there.' ***itineribus* :** not to be translated. B. 251, 3 ; A. 200, *a* ; H. 445, 8. ***domō* :** as in l. 8. **15. *possent* :** subj. of characteristic ; 'routes (of such character that) by them they

[the Helvetii] could go out.' B. 283; A. 320; H. 503, 1. **itnum** (*iter*) and **alterum** (*iter*) are in partitive apposition with *itinerā*. B. 189, 5; A. 184; H. 364.

16. **inter . . . Rhodanum**: *i.e.* on the right bank of the Rhone. There was no route across the Jura range practicable for so large a force, while the passage down the left bank of the Rhine, between the Jura and the Vosges Mountains, was left out of consideration, not only (we may assume) because it was less direct, but also because it was exposed to the attacks of Ariovistus and the Suebi. **quā**: B. 140; A. 148, *e*; H. 305, *v*. **singuli**: B. 81, 4, *a*; A. 95; H. 172, 3; 'one by one,' here = 'in single file.' The narrowest point of the route is at the Defile of the Écluse (Pas de l'Écluse), 19 Roman miles (about 17½ English miles) below Geneva. This route is now traversed by a railway connecting Geneva with French cities, the most difficult part being avoided by a tunnel 2½ miles long.

17. **dūcerentur**: for mood see note to *possent* above; the relative adv. *quā* has the force of a relative pron. 18. **perpauci**: force of *per*? A. 170, *c*; H. 170, 1. **possent**: B. 284, 1; A. 319; H. 500, 11. 19. **nostram**: note to p. 115, 17. **multō**: as *nihilō*, l. 1. **propterea quod**: note to p. 114, 6.

20. **Allobrogum**: on the left bank of the Rhone, in the Province; they were subdued by C. Pomptinus in 61 B.C. 21. **locis**: B. 228, 1, *b*; A. 258, *f*; H. 425, 11, 2. **vadō**: B. 218; A. 248, *c*; H. 420. At present the Rhone is said to be fordable only at one place, a few miles below Geneva. Once having crossed the river, the Helvetii would find the route along the left bank through the Province easy enough. **trans-itur** = *transiri potest*.

23. **finibus**: B. 192, 1; A. 234, *a*; H. 391, 1. 24. **Allobrogibus**: B. 187, 11, *a*; A. 227; H. 385, 11. **persuāsūrōs**: *sc. esse*; so with *coactūrōs*, below. B. 331, 1; A. 330, 1; H. 534, *n*, 535, 1, 1. 25. **bonō animō**: 'kindly disposed'; in pred. with *esse* understood. B. 224, 1; A. 251; H. 419, 11. **vidērentur**: B. 314, 1; A. 336; H. 524. 26. **vī**: how declined? **suōs**: refers to the Allobroges; **eōs** = *Helvētiōs*.

27. **diē**: B. 230; A. 256; H. 429; cf. note to *itineribus*, l. 4 above. 28. **convenient**: B. 282, 2; A. 317; H. 497, 1; *quā* = *ut eā*, 'that on that day.' a. d. v. **Kal. Apr.**: = *ante diem quintum Kalendās Aprilēs*; trans. as if *quintō diē ante Kalendās Aprilēs*, the phrase *ante diem* being followed by the acc. as if it were a preposition; 'the fifth day

before the Kalends of April' = March 28 of the unreformed calendar, March 24 (Napoleon, Goeler), or April 16 (Mommsen) according to the Julian calendar (see note to p. 58, l. 14); authorities disagree. B. 371, 372; A. 376, *a*, 259, *e*; H. 642-644. 29. *cōsulibus*: note to p. 41, l. 20. The date is 58 B.C.

Page 118, VII. 1. *Caesarī*: B. 187; A. 225, *e*, 344, *i*; H. 384, *i*, 561, *i*. *nūntiātum esset*: B. 288, *l*, *B*; A. 325; H. 521, *ii*, 2. *eōs* . . . *cōnārī*: appositive of *id.* B. 294; A. 329, *i*; H. 539, *ii*. 2. *urbe*: Rome, which by way of distinction was "the city." 3. *quam*: cf. note to p. 115, 26. *Galliam ulteriōrem* = *Galliam Trānsalpinam*. 4. *ad*: 'into the vicinity of,' 'as far as.' B. 182, 3; A. 258, *b*, *n*. 2; H. 380, *ii*, 1, (1). *Genavam*: derived from Keltic *genus*, 'mouth,' because the lake there presses into the narrow river course. Plutarch states (*Caesar*, 17) that Caesar made the journey from Rome to Geneva in eight days. *Prōvinciae*: B. 187, *ii*, *a*; A. 227; H. 385, *i*. 5. *imperat*: 'levies.' 6. *legiō ūna*: the tenth legion.

8. *certiōrēs* . . . *sunt*: 'were informed.' 9. *nōbillissimōs*: B. 169, *l*, 2, 3; A. 188, 184; H. 441, 363. *lēgatiōnis*: = *lēgātōrum*. 11. *dicerent*: B. 282, 2; A. 317; H. 497, *i*. *sibi*: B. 190; A. 231; H. 387. The rest of the sentence is in indir. disc.; the subject of *esse* is *facere*; with *rogāre*, supply *sē*. *sibi esse in animō*: 'that it was their intention.' 12. *nūllum*: emphatic position. 13. *liceat*: this would be subj. in dir. disc. B. 295, 1; A. 331; H. 498, *i*.

14. *memoriā*: B. 218; A. 248, *c*; H. 420; *memoriā tenēbat* = *meminerat*. *occisum*: supply *esse*, as also with *pulsum*, *missum*, *concēdendum*, and *temperātūrōs*. 15. *sub iugum*: two spears were set up and a third placed across on top; this was the 'yoke,' and conquered soldiers were made to pass under it, one by one, as a token of complete submission and humiliation. The terrible defeat here referred to took place 107 B.C. See Mommsen's History of Rome, ed. of 1895, vol. iii, p. 435. 16. *concēdendum*: 'that it (the request of the Helvetii) ought not to be granted.' *neque*: = *et nōn*. *animō*: B. 224; A. 251; H. 419, *ii*.

17. *datā facultāte*: = *sī facultās data esset*. B. 227, 2, *b*; A. 292, 310; H. 507 3, *n*. 7. *faciundī*: = *faciendī*. B. 116, 2, 339, 1; A. 296; H. 239 and 514, *i*. 18. *spatium*: (nom.) = *tempus*. 20. *convenirent*: B. 293, *iii*, 2; A. 328; H. 519, *ii*, 2. *diem*: 'time.' 21. *quid*: indef. After *sī* and *nē*, *quis* and *quid* mean 'any one,' 'anything.' *vellent*: B. 314, 1; A. 336, 337; H. 524. *ad*: 'about,' 'on.' *Id. Aprīl.*: = *Idūs Aprīlēs* = Apr. 13, of the unreformed cal-

endar. See note to p. 58, l. 14. **reverterentur**: B. 316; A. 339; H. 523, III. In dir. disc. the sentence would read, *Sī quid volētis, ad Id. April. revertiminī.*

VIII. 22. legiōne, militibus: looked upon as instrument rather than as agent. B. 218, 10; A. 248; H. 420. **23. quī . . . influit**: as a matter of fact the Rhone flows into the lake at the upper end, and out at the lower. **25. Sēquanōrum**: west of the Jura; see map opp. p. 114. **mīlia passuum**: see note to p. 115, 23.

26. pedum: B. 203, 2; A. 215, b; H. 396, v. **mīrum . . . fossamque**: we are not to suppose that Caesar built a rampart and dug a trench from Geneva to Pas de l'Écluse (see note to p. 117, 16, and Plan I). For a large part of the distance the cliffs on the left bank are so steep as to render fortifying unnecessary. What Caesar did was to make the gentler slopes difficult to scale by cutting the face down from the top for 16 feet, and throwing the dirt out towards the river; in this way the general effect of a wall and moat was produced, as shown by the "Section" in Plan I. At points especially exposed he erected redoubts (*castella*). Recent surveys indicate that the whole distance which really needed to be fortified was hardly more than three miles out of the nineteen. The work was probably completed in three or four days.

27. praesidia: 'garrisons,' referring to the forces occupying the redoubts; the redoubts themselves were called *castella*. **28. quō**: B. 282, 1, a; A. 317, b; H. 497, II, 2. **sē invītō**: 'without his leave,' 'against his will' (lit. 'he being unwilling'). B. 227, 1; A. 255, a; H. 431, 4. **cōnārentur**: B. 324, 1; A. 342; H. 529, II. Notice that the hist. pres. *commūnit* is followed both by a primary tense (*possit*) and by a secondary tense (*cōnārentur*). B. 268, 3; A. 287, e; H. 495, II.

Page 119. **2. negat**: = *dicit nōn*. **mōre**: B. 220, 3; A. 245; H. 416. **3. iter**: 'right of way.' **vim facere**: 'use force.' **4. cōnēntur**: B. 314, 1; A. 336; H. 524. **prohibitūrum**: = *sē prohibētūrum esse*. **spē**: B. 214; A. 243; H. 414.

5. nāvibus iūctis, etc.: 'by joining boats,' probably brought down from the lake (p. 121, l. 4, on the Arar, *lintribus*, not *nāvibus*); the rafts were 'made' for the occasion. B. 227; A. 255; H. 431, 2, (2). We should expect *alū* before *nāvibus* correlative with *alū* before *radis*, 'some . . . others.' But the use of the latter *alū* alone implies that most of the Helvetii tried to cross over in the way first mentioned.

7. **cōnātī sī . . . possent**: 'having tried (to see) whether they could.' B. 300, 3; A. 334, *f*; H. 529, II, 1, *x*. 1. What particle is commonly used in single indirect questions? **operis mūnitiōne**: 'by the strength of the works.' 8. **concurſū**: the rapid massing of the soldiers at any point attacked. **cōnātū**: B. 214; A. 243; H. 414.

IX. 10. **ūna via**: 'only the way.' **quā**: B. 218, 9; A. 258, *g*; H. 420, 1, 3). **Sēquanīs**: cf. note to p. 118, 28, *sē invitō*. 11. **angustiās**: the Pas de l'Écluse, where, as stated in Chapter 6, a few men could prevent the passage of the Helvetii. **suā sponte**: 'by their own influence.' B. 220, 3; A. 248; H. 420. 12. **possent**: B. 288, 1, *B*; A. 325; H. 521, II, 2. 13. **eō dēprecātōre**: 'by his intercession' ('he being intercessor'). B. 227, 1; A. 255, *a*; H. 431, 4. **impetrārent**: B. 268, 3; A. 287, *e*; H. 495, II; 'they might gain their request.'

14. **grātiā**: 'popularity.' B. 219; A. 245; H. 416. **plūrimum**: see note to p. 118, 16. 15. **Helvētīs**: B. 192, 1; A. 234, *a*; H. 391, I. 17. **novīs rēbus**: 'a revolution.' B. 187, II, *a*; A. 227; H. 385.

19. **ut . . . patiantur**: object of *impetrat*; *utī . . . dent* is object of *perficit*. B. 295, 1; A. 331, *a*; H. 498, I and II. 20. **obsidēs**: hostages were exchanged between states and tribes as a pledge of good faith. If the agreement were violated, the hostages were usually put to death with the most horrible tortures. **Sēquanī, Helvētīi**: sc. *obsidēs dent*. 21. **itinere**: B. 214, 2; A. 243; H. 414. **prohibeant, trāseant**: B. 282, 1; A. 317; H. 497, II.

X. 23. **renūtiātur**: 'word is brought back'; the *re-* implies that men had been sent out by Caesar who now returned with the information sought. The subject is the following infin. **Helvētīs**, etc.: cf. p. 118, 10-13. The Helvetii intended to settle near the west coast of Gaul. 25. **nōn longē**: about 100 miles, not a long distance for a victorious enemy to traverse in an open country. In reality the Helvetii, if they reached their destination, would be further from the Province than before they started; but Caesar had no reason for interfering with the passage of the Helvetii through the country of the Sequani unless he could show that Roman interests would be unfavorably affected by it. **quae civitās**: 'a state which', the state of the Tolosates.

26. **Id**: refers to *iter . . . facere* above. **fieret**: B. 314, 1; A. 336; H. 524. The principal verb of the indir. disc. is *futūrum (esse)*, whose subject is the clause *ut . . . habēret*. B. 284, 1, 297, 3; A. 319, 332, *a*; H. 501, I, I.

Page 120. 1. *inimicōs*: B. 169, 1, 2, 3; A. 184; H. 363. *locīs*: A. 234, *a*; H. 391, 1. 2. *mūnitiōnī*: B. 187, III; A. 228; H. 386. 3. *lĕgātum*: what were the officers of the Roman army? See INTRO., p. 12. 'Titus Labienus was the ablest of Caesar's lieutenants, and one of the most trusted.' 4. *Italiam*: at this period Italia proper extended north only as far as the Rubicon; but Caesar here, as elsewhere in the Gallic War, includes Cisalpine Gaul, which later lost its provincial organization and became a part of Italy (43 B.C.).

5. *Aquilēiam*: a Roman colony (founded B.C. 181) near the head of the Adriatic Sea, east of Venice. It was the centre of the Roman military operations for the Northeast, and was hence strongly garrisoned. The word *circum* implies that the winter-quarters, as usual, were outside the walls of the city.

6. *ulteriōrem Galliam*: = *Galliam Trānsalpīnam*; see p. 25. 7. *quīnque*: the two legions levied in Cisalpine Gaul were the xth and xiith, the three drawn from winter-quarters at Aquileia, the viith, viiith, and ixth. As the xth legion was already near Geneva, Caesar's force now consisted of six legions (how many men? cf. p. 10) and soldiers from the Province (ll. 4-6 above). 8. *Ibi*: i.e. *in Alpibus*; Caesar's route lay by way of Mt. Genèvre, a pass described as "one of the best and safest in the Alps"; see Map.

9. *itinere*: B. 214, 2; A. 243; H. 414. *Complūrībus*: order, *his pulsīs complūrībus proellīs*. 10. *ab*: 'from.' *citeriōris*: on the side nearer Rome; *citeriōris prōvinciae* = *Galliae Cisalpinae*. 11. *extrēmum*: sc. *oppidum*; 'last,' here = 'most westerly.' 14. *trāns Rhodanum*: Caesar crossed to the north of the upper Rhone, and went outside the Province in order to intercept or overtake the Helvetii, who, with their throng of women and children and their loaded carts, had gone only about 100 miles, in the time that he had taken (not less than 40-50 days) to bring the five legions from Cisalpine Gaul. The Segusiavi were clients of the Aedui, hence on good terms with the Romans.

XI. 15. *angustiās*: see p. 117, 14-18, and p. 119, 10-11. 17. *populābantur*: notice the change from the plupf. *trādūxerant* to the impf., implying that the devastation was still going on. *sua*: B. 236, 1; A. 188, 197, *d*; H. 449, 4. 18. *possent*: B. 286, 2; A. 326; H. 517. 19. *rogātum*: B. 340, 1, *a*; A. 302; H. 546. *Ita sē meritōs esse*: '(saying) that they had so deserved.' As early as 121 B.C. the Aedui were called *sociī populī Rōmānī*; see note to p. 135, 22. 20. *nostrī*:

with *exercitūs*, = *Rōmānī*. 21. *vāstārī*: B. 270, 2; A. 288, *a*; H. 537, 1. *eōrum* = *suī*.

24. *dēpopulātīs*: passive. B. 112, *b*; A. 135, *b*; H. 231, 2.
25. *trāns Rhodanum*: cf. l. 14. 26. *fugā*: B. 218; A. 248, *c*; H. 420. 27. *dēmōnstrant*: *i.e. eum certiōrem faciunt*. *sibi*: B. 190; A. 231; H. 387. *solum*: noun. 28. *reliqūī*: B. 201, 2; A. 216, *a*, 1; H. 397, 1; 'that they had nothing left.' *Quibus*: B. 251, 6; A. 180, *f*; H. 453. *expectandum* [esse] *sibi*: 'that he ought not to wait.' B. 189, 1; 337, 7, *b*, 2; A. 232, 330, *c*; H. 388 and 301, 2. 29. *fortūnīs cōnsūptīs*: render by a clause beginning with 'after.' 30. *pervenīrent*: B. 293, III, 2; A. 328; H. 519, II, 2.

Page 121. XII. 1. *Flūmen*, etc.: 'There is a river (called) the Arar'; cf. note to p. 117, 14. For a part of its course the Arar (Saône) formed the boundary between the territories of the Aedui and the Sequani, between whom there was a strife for the possession of the stream; each state claimed the exclusive right to levy tolls on passing vessels. The best bacon was brought to Rome from the country along the Arar.

2. *lēnitāte*: B. 220, 1; A. 248; H. 419, III. 3. *fluat*: B. 300, 1; A. 334; H. 529, 1. *possit*: B. 284, 1; A. 319; H. 500, II. 4. *īfūctīs*: cf. note to p. 119, 5. Where the Helvetii crossed the Saône is not known; perhaps not far from Mâcon.

6. *cōpiārum*: 'forces.' *partēs, flūmen*: B. 179, 1; A. 239, *b*; H. 376. 7. *citrā*: on the east side. *Ararim*: B. 38, 1; A. 56, *a*, 1; H. 62, III, 1. *dē tertiā vigiliā*: 'in the third watch,' between 12 and 3 A.M.; *dē* with *vigiliā* implies that the watch had already begun. H. 429, 1. 8. *castrīs*: perhaps at Sathonay, east of the Saône, and near the point where it enters the Rhone. *profectus*: from *proficiscor*. 10. *concidit*: how different in meaning from *concidit*? 11. *mandārunť*: B. 116, 1; A. 128, *a*; H. 235. *in silvās*: the acc. with *in* implies the idea of motion in *abdidērunt*; they (went) into the woods and concealed themselves.

12. *Tigurīnus*: B. 167, 168, 2, *b*; A. 185; H. 362. The word *pāgus* ('canton') which properly has reference to a division of territory, is here used of the people inhabiting it. 13. *divīsa*: cf. note to p. 114, 1.

14. *domō*: B. 229, 1, *b*; A. 258, *a*; H. 412, II, 1. *exisset*: B. 288, 1, *B*; A. 325; H. 521, II, 2. 15. *memoriā*: B. 230; A. 256;

H. 429. **L. Cassium**: see p. 118, 14-16, and notes. **16. cāsū**: B. 219; A. 245; H. 416. **17. quae pars**, etc.: = *ea pars civitatis Helveticæ, quae*. B. 251, 4; A. 200, b, n.; H. 445, 9. **18. princeps persolvit**; 'was the first to pay.' See B. 239; A. 191; H. 443, n. 1; and cf. note to p. 29, l. 1. **20. quod**, etc.; *quod Tigurini, eodem proelio quō Cassium (interfecerant), interfecerant Lūcium Pisōnem lēgātum, avum Lūci Pisōnis, eius* (Caesar's) *socerī*. Lucius Calpurnius Piso, consul B.C. 58, was the father of Caesar's fourth wife. Thence she took the name Calpurnia, familiar to the readers of Shakespeare's *Julius Caesar*. **21. proeliō**: B. 230, 2; A. 256; H. 429.

XIII. 23. Hōc proeliō factō: = *post hōc proelium*. **24. posset**: B. 282, 1; A. 317; H. 497, II. **in**: 'over.' **faciendum**, etc.: 'he had a bridge built.' B. 337, 7, b, 2; A. 294, d; H. 544, 2, n. 2. **26. id**: object of *fēcisse*; explained by *ut flūmen trānsirent*. B. 297, 3; A. 329, 2; H. 363, 5. **27. illum**: = *Caesarem*. **intellegerent**: B. 288, 1, B; A. 325; H. 521, II, 2. **28. lēgātōnis**: cf. p. 118, 9, and note.

29. bellō Cassiānō: 'war with Cassius.' B. 230, 2; A. 190; H. 395, n. 2. As the defeat of Cassius took place B.C. 107, at the time of which Caesar was writing (B.C. 58), Divico must have been at least eighty years of age; but though the Helvetii clearly preferred to avoid a conflict with Caesar, the braggart insolence of Divico's language (as of Ariovistus's, p. 137, 26-30) was barbaric rather than senile; it was calculated to make a mutual understanding impossible.

Page 122. 1. SI, etc.: indir. disc. to the end of the chapter. The direct form is given in A. 339, and in Comstock's First Latin Book, p. 226; cf. also Madvig's Latin Grammar, §§ 404, 405. A general outline of each sentence follows. (Cf. Comstock's First Latin Book, pp. 147-148.)

SI to Helvētiorum. This sentence is *Declaratory*, as far as *voluisset*; the remainder is *Imperative*. The Principal Verbs in the Declaratory part are *itūrōs* (*esse*), *futūrōs* (*esse*); the Principal Verb in the Imperative part is *remīniscerētur*, 'let him remember' ('he should remember'). — **Quod to nīterentur**. This sentence is *Imperative*, to *dēspiceret*; the remainder is *Declaratory*. The Principal Verbs in the Imperative part are (*nē*) *tribueret*, *dēspiceret*, 'let him not' (= 'that he should not') attribute (the victory), etc., 'or despise them'; the Principal Verb in the Declaratory part is *didicisse*. — **Quā rē to prōderet**. This sentence is *Imperative*, the Principal Clause being *nē*

(Caesar) **committeret**: 'let him not (= that he should not) cause the place where they should take (should have taken) their stand to receive (lit., 'cause that it should receive') a name,' etc., 'or transmit the remembrance' (of the defeat to future generations).

1. **faceret, cōstituisset, voluisset**: B. 314, 1; A. 336, 337; H. 524. **cōstituisset, voluisset**: in dir. disc., indic. fut. perf. 2. **itūrōs** [esse] and **futūrōs** [esse] represent the indic. fut. of the direct form. B. 331, 1; A. 330, 1, 337; H. 535, 1, 527, 1. **ubi**: = *in quā*. 3. **bellō**: B. 218; A. 248, c; H. 420. 4. **perseverāret**: sc. Caesar. **reminisceretur**: = *reminiscere* (imper.) in direct disc. B. 316; A. 339; H. 523, III. **incommodī**: the defeat of Cassius. B. 206, 2; A. 219; H. 406, II.

5. **Quod**: conjunction, 'as to the fact that.' B. 299, 2; A. 333, a; H. 516, II, 2, N. 6. **pāgum**: i.e. *Tigurinum*. **adortus esset**, 7. **trānsissent**: B. 314, 1; A. 336; H. 524. **possent**: why subj. ? **nē**: B. 276; A. 269, a; H. 483, 3.

8. **rem**: refers to the clause *quod . . . adortus esset*. **virtūtī**: B. 187; A. 225; H. 384, II. The place of the dir. obj. is taken by *māgnopere*. **tribueret**: B. 316; A. 339; H. 523, III. How would *nē tribueret, dēspiceret* be expressed in direct disc. ? **ipsōs** = *Helvētiōs*. 9. **sē ita**, etc.: in dir. disc., (*nōs ita ā patribus māiōribusque nostrīs didicimus, ut magis virtūte contendāmus quam dolō aut insidiīs nūtāmur*). **didicisse**: = *institūtōs esse*. 10. **contenderent**: B. 284, 1; A. 319; H. 500, II. **Insidiīs nīterentur**: 'rely on ambushes.' B. 218, 3; A. 248, c, 254, b; H. 420 and 425, 1, 1), N.

11. **committeret**: 'give occasion.' B. 316; A. 339; H. 523, III. **cōstitissent**: in dir. disc., fut. pf., 'where we shall have taken our stand.' 13. **caperet, prōderet**: what mood in direct disc. ? B. 297, 1; A. 332, e; H. 501, II, 1. **memoriam prōderet**: i.e. *memoriam calamitātis posteris prōderet*.

XIV. 14. **Hīs**: sc. *lēgātīs*. 15. **Eō**: 'for this reason.' B. 219; A. 245; H. 416; indir. disc. from **Eō** to p. 123, l. 4. **dubitātiōnis**: B. 201, 2; A. 216, a, 2; H. 397, 3. **dārī**: B. 314, 1; A. 336; H. 523, 1. 16. **memoriā tenēret**: 'he remembered.' B. 218; A. 248, c; H. 420. **eō** . . . **quō**: B. 223; A. 250, R.; H. 417, 2. 17. **meritō**: B. 220, 3; A. 248, R.; H. 419, III, N. 2. **quī**: = *populus Rōmānus*, 'it.' 18. **infūriae**: B. 204, 1; A. 218, a; H. 399, 1, 2. **fuisse**: *fuit* in dir. disc., 'it was not'; the subject is *carēre*.

19. eō : B. 219 ; A. 245, H. 416. **dēceptum** : *populum Rōmānum dēceptum esse*. **commissum** : sc. *quicquam esse*. **20. timēret** : subj. also in dir. disc., characteristic ; for *quā rē* here = *propter quod* see B. 283 ; A. 320, a ; H. 503, 1. **timendum** : sc. *esse* ; impers. B. 138, iv ; A. 330, c ; H. 301, 2. **21. Quod** : 'Now' ; properly an adverbial acc. referring to the thought of the preceding sentence (lit., 'as to which'). B. 185, 2 ; A. 240, a ; H. 378, 2 and 453, 6. **contumēliae** : B. 206, 2 ; A. 219 ; H. 406, ii. **num** : what sort of an answer does *num* expect ? B. 162, 2, b ; A. 210, c ; H. 351, 1, n. 3.

22. iniūriarum : depends on *memoriam*. The 'wrongs' are specified in the following clauses introduced by *quod*, 'that.' B. 299, 1, a, 169 ; A. 329, 3 and 184 ; H. 540, iv and 363, 5. **eō** = *Caesare*. B. 227, 1 ; A. 255, a ; H. 431, 4. **23. temptāssent** : B. 116, 1, 314, 1 ; A. 128, a, 336 ; H. 235, 524. **24. Allobrogas** : Greek acc. of a Keltic word ended in *-as*. B. 47, 3 ; A. 63, f ; H. 68. **posse** : in dir. disc., *possum*.

25. Quod : 'the fact that' ; the two clauses introduced by *quod* stand as subject of *pertinēre*. B. 299, 2 ; A. 333, a ; H. 516, ii, 2, n. **suā** : 'their,' of the Helvetii. **victōriā** : over the Romans under Cassius, b.c. 107. **26. eōdem pertinēre** : 'pointed to the same thing,' i.e. impending destruction of the Helvetii. **27. Cōnsuēsse** : is this perfect in meaning ? B. 116, 1 and 262, a ; A. 143, c, n., and 128, a ; H. 235 and 297, i, 2. **quō** : B. 282, 1, a ; A. 317, b ; H. 497, ii, 2. **30. Cum** : temporal, causal, or concessive ? B. 309 ; A. 326 ; H. 515, iii.

Page 123. 1. ea : object of *factūrōs* [*esse*], with which supply *eōs*. **2. Aeduīs** : sc. *satis faciant*. B. 187, ii, a ; A. 227, e, 2 ; H. 384, ii, 4, n. 1. **ipsīs** = *Aeduīs*. **3. sēsē**, etc. : in dir. disc., *vōbiscum pācem faciam* (indic.). **6. cōnsuērīnt** : B. 284, 1 ; A. 319 ; H. 500, ii.

XV. 9. movent : sc. *Helvētīi*. **Idem** : neut. acc. **11. coāctum habēbat** : B. 337, 6 ; A. 292, c ; H. 388, 1, n. **12. videant** : pl. from the idea of *equitēs* in *equitātum*. B. 282, 2 ; A. 317 ; H. 497, 1. **13. faciant** : B. 300, 1 ; A. 334 ; H. 529, i ; *quās* is interrogative. **Quī** : how trans. ? B. 251, 6 ; A. 180, f ; H. 453. **cupīdīus** : 'too eagerly.' B. 240, 1, A. 93, a ; H. 444, i. **novissimum agmen** : the 'rear' of the line of march of the Helvetii. **14. aliēnō locō** : 'in an unfavorable place,' probably too hilly to admit of free movement. B. 228, 1, b ; A. 258, f ; H. 425, ii, 2. **15. dē nostrīs** = *nostrōrum*. B. 201, 1, a ; A. 216, c ; H. 397, 3, n. 3. From *paucī* . . . *cadunt* we are to infer that the rest saved themselves by flight.

16. equitibus : looked upon as instrument rather than as agent. Cf. note to p. 118, l. 22. **17. novissimō agmine** : 'rear' of the Helvetian line of march. B. 228, 1, *b* ; A. 258, *f* ; H. 425, II, 2. **18. proeliō** : B. 220 ; A. 248 ; H. 420. **nostrōs** : sc. *mīlites*. **19. in praesentia** : 'for the moment.' **20. rapīnis** : B. 214, 2 ; A. 243 ; H. 414, 1. **prohibēre** : object of *habēbat*, with *satis* as predicate acc. B. 177, 2, 328, 1 ; A. 239, *a*, 271 ; H. 373, 533. **21. Ita** : correlative with *utī*. **diēs** : B. 181, 1 ; A. 256 ; H. 379. **circiter** : adv. modifying *quīndecim*. **22. primum** [agmen] : 'van' ; see p. 18. **23. quīnis . . . sēnis** : distributive, 'five or six miles (each day).' B. 78, I, *c*, 81, 4, *a* ; A. 95 ; H. 172, 3. **mīlibus** : B. 217 ; A. 247 ; H. 417 ; note to p. 115, 23.

XVI. 24. Aeduōs frūmentum : B. 178, 1, *a* ; A. 239, *c* ; H. 374. **25. pūblicē** : 'in the name of the state.' **essent pollicitī** : Caesar the writer presents the statement of Caesar the commander as if it were the thought of some one else, or a clause in indir. disc. ; 'which (he said) they had promised.' B. 323 ; A. 341, *d*, *r*. ; H. 528, 1. **flāgitāre** : B. 335 ; A. 275 ; H. 536, 1. Notice the frequentative (or iterative) force, 'kept asking,' 'asked again and again.' B. 155, 2 ; A. 167, *b* ; H. 336. **frīgora** : 'cold spells.' What difference in meaning between sing. and pl. of such words ? B. 55, 4, *c* ; A. 75, *c* ; H. 130, 2. **26. posita** : B. 337, 2 ; A. 291, *b* ; H. 550, *π*. 2.

27. frūmenta : standing grain. Why pl. ? **nē pābulī**, etc. : the season must have been very backward, for it was now the middle of June or later. Caesar, too, was writing with the early spring of Italy in mind. **nē . . . quidem** : 'not even.' B. 347, 1 ; A. 151, *e* ; H. 569, III, 2. **28. frūmentō** : B. 218, 1 ; A. 249 ; H. 421, 1. **29. flūmine** : B. 218 ; A. 258, *g* ; H. 420. **30. āverterant** : the Helvetii had turned to the northwest, into the valley of the Loire (*Liger*), avoiding the mountains in the region of the Aulerci Brannovices. See Map.

Page 124. **1. Diem ex diē dūcere** : = *dūcere* ('were putting off') *Caesarem ex diē in diem* ('from day to day') ; *dūcere* is hist. inf., *diem* acc. of time. **cōnferri**, etc. : climax ; *cōnferri* refers to the collecting, *comportāri* to the transportation to Caesar's headquarters, *adesse* to the immediate delivery.

3. diēs : not to be translated. B. 251, 3 ; A. 200, *a* ; H. 445, 8. **4. mētiri** : B. 327, 1 ; A. 270 ; H. 538. How often was the grain measured out to the army ? See p. 14. **oportēret** : B. 314 ; A. 336 ; H. 524. **6. Diviciācō, Liscō** : sc. *convocātis* ; abl. abs. **magistrātuī** : B. 187, III ; A. 228 ; H. 386. **7. vergobretum** : meaning ?

See Vocab. B. 177, 1; A. 239, *a*; H. 373. **annuus**: B. 239; A. 191; H. 443. **8. in suōs**: 'over his people.' **eōs**: = *Divitiācum et Liscum*.

9. posset: sc. *frūmentum*. B. 323, 324, 1; A. 341, 342; H. 528, 1 and 529, II. **10. tam necessariō tempore**: 'at so urgent a crisis.' **hostibus**: B. 227, 1; A. 255, *a*; H. 431, 4. **11. sublevētur**: see note to p. 123, 25, *essent polliciti*; also B. 268, 3; A. 287, *e*; H. 495, II. **māgnā ex parte**: 'in great measure.' **12. multō**: B. 223; A. 250; H. 417, 2.

XVII. 15. quod: sc. *id*, object of *prōpōnūt*. **16. Esse**, etc.: indir. disc. to the end of the chapter. **plūrimum valeat**: 'has the greatest influence'; see note to p. 116, 15. **17. plūs possint**: 'have more power.' The state of things here depicted arose from the feudal organization of society, which rendered it possible for the great landholders and chiefs to control multitudes of personal adherents.

19. nē . . . cōferant: pl. from the plural idea in *multitūdinem*; 'from furnishing.' B. 294, 295, 3; A. 331, *e*, 2; H. 498, II. **dē-beant**: sc. *cōferre*. **praestāre . . . ēreptūrī**: 'that it was better,' etc.; parenthetical, giving the arguments used by the demagogues to stir up the people. **23. ūnā**: adv. **reliquā**: B. 241, 1; A. 193; H. 440, 2, *n*. 1. **Aeduis**: B. 188, 2, *d*; A. 229; H. 386, 2 and 385, II, 2. **sint ēreptūrī**: more emphatic than *ēripiant*, which might have been used. B. 284, 3; A. 319, *d*; H. 501, II, 2.

24. quaeque . . . gerantur: 'and whatever is done' (lit., 'and what things are done'). **25. sē**: = *Liscō*. **Quīn etiam**: 'moreover.' **26. quod**: 'in that.' B. 299, 1, 314, 1; A. 333, *a*; H. 516, II, 2, *n*. **27. id**: refers to the clause, *Quod . . . enūntiārīt*. **28. tacuisse**: trans. by plupf. indic. B. 270, 1, *b*; A. 288; H. 537.

XVIII. 30. plūribus: B. 227; A. 255, *a*; H. 431, 4.

Page 125. 1. iactārī: 'discussed.' **2. dīmīttit, retinet**: what is the omission of a conj. (a usage common in Caesar) called? B. 341, 4, *a*; A. 208, *b*; H. 636, 1, 1. **sōlō**: sc. *eō*.

4. esse: sc. *haec*. **vēra**: case? B. 233, 2; A. 186, *b*; H. 536, 2, 2). **Ipsūm**: in pred.; 'that Dumnorix was the very man'; indir. disc. to l. 24. **5. māgnā . . . grātiā**: B. 224, 1; A. 251; H. 419, II. **7. annōs**: B. 181, 1; A. 256; H. 379.

8. vectigālia : from *vehō*, *vectus*, meaning what is brought in to the public treasury ; revenues in general, taxes on grain and other products of the soil, stock, etc. The **portōria** were customs duties collected on imports and exports, levies on goods passing through the country on rivers and roads, bridge tolls, and the like. These revenues were "farmed out," as among the Romans, — that is, the privilege of collecting them was sold at auction to the highest bidder, who guaranteed to the State a certain sum, did the collecting through his agents, and kept for himself all that he could get over and above the amount paid in to the public treasury. **redēpta habēre** : = *redēmisse*. B. 337, 6 ; A. 292, c ; H. 388, 1, n. **9. illō licente** : Dumnorix was so powerful and arbitrary that when he bid for the collecting of the revenues no one dared oppose him ; hence he was awarded the privilege on the most favorable terms.

10. largiendū : B. 338, 3 ; A. 300 ; H. 542, III, n. 2. **11. comparāsse** : sc. *eum*. B. 116, 1 ; A. 128, a ; H. 235. **12. neque** : = *et nōn*. B. 341, 1, d ; A. 156, a ; H. 554, I, 2. **domī** : B. 232, 2 ; A. 258, d ; H. 426, 2. **13. largiter** : what peculiarity in the formation of this adv. ? **largiter posse** : = *largiter potentem esse*. **14. causā** : 'for the sake of.' B. 219 ; A. 245, c ; H. 416. **15. ipsum** : Dumnorix, whose wife was the daughter of Orgetorix ; see Chap. 3. **16. sorōrem ex mātē** : 'half-sister on the mother's side.' B. 353, 5, n. **nūptum** : B. 340, 1, b ; A. 302 ; H. 546, 1. **nūptum . . . collocāsse** : 'had given in marriage.'

17. cupere Helvētiis : 'was well-disposed toward the Helvetii.' B. 187, 11, a ; A. 227 ; H. 385, 1. **18. suō nōmine** : 'on his own account.' B. 219 ; A. 245 ; H. 416. **19. dēminūta** : sc. *sūt*. **20. Diviciācus** : a Druid, and a man of some culture ; he had been at Rome in B.C. 63, endeavoring to get the help of the Romans against Ariovistus.

21. quid : cf. note to p. 118, 21. **accidat** : here used of something unfavorable. *i.e. sī vincantur Rōmānī*. **22. per** : 'with the help of.' A. 246, b ; H. 415, I, n. 1. **imperio** : B. 230 ; A. 256 ; H. 429 ; 'while the Roman people were in power.'

25. quod, etc. : 'in regard to the unsuccessful cavalry skirmish which had taken place' ; *proelium* is attracted into the relative clause, while its proper place in the antecedent clause is taken by *fugae*.

Page 126. XIX. 1. Quibus, etc. : 'after these things had been found out.' **suspiciōnēs** : 'grounds of suspicion.' **2. accēderent** : =

adderentur, 'were added.' B. 288, 1, *B*; A. 325; H. 521, II, 2. *quod*: 'that,' 'the fact that.' 3. *trādūxisset*: B. 323; A. 341, *d*; H. 516, II, and 528, I. *curāisset*, etc.: 'had procured an exchange of hostages.' 4. *iniussū*: 'without his own (Caesar's) bidding and that of the State' of the Aedui. 5. *ipsais* = *Caesare et Aeduīs*. *magistrātū*: the vergobret, Liscus; see Chap. 16. 6. *causā*: dep. on *satis*, which is used as a noun. B. 201, 2; A. 216, *a*, 4; H. 397, 4. 7. *animadverteret*: subj. also in dir. disc.; *quā rē* = *propter quam*. B. 283, 1; A. 320, *a*; H. 503, I.

9. *rēbus*: B. 187, 11, *a*; A. 227; H. 385, I. *ūnum*: nom., 'one consideration.' 12. *cognōverat*: 'he was familiar with.' B. 262, *A*; A. 279, *d*, *R*.; H. 297, I, 2. Notice the omission of the conjunctions in this line. Cf. note to p. 114, 3, *lingua*, etc. *nē*: 'that.' B. 296, 2; A. 331, *f*; H. 498, III, *N*. *ēius* = *Dumnorīgis*.

13. *prius, quam*: trans. as one word, 'before.' *cōnārētur*: B. 291, 292, 1, *a*; A. 327; H. 520, II. 14. *cotidiānis*: 'ordinary.' Cf. p. 69, I, 20. 16. *Galliae*: noun or adj. ? *cui*: 'in whom.' *omnium rērum*: 'in every respect.' 17. *eō* = *Diviciācō*.

19. *sint dicta*: B. 323; A. 340; H. 528, I. *eō* = *Dumnorīge*. 20. *apud sē*: 'in his (Caesar's) presence.' *ēius*: dep. on *animī*; 'without wounding his (Diviciacus's) feelings.' 21. *ipse*: Caesar. *causā cognitā*: abl. abs.; 'after trying the case.'

XX. 24. *gravius*: 'too severe.' B. 240, 1; A. 93, *a*; H. 444, I. 25. *Scīre*, etc.: sc. *dixit*; indir. disc. to p. 127, I, 4. *nec quemquam*: 'and no one.' B. 252, 4. *ex eō*: 'from that fact,' 'on account of that fact.' *plūs . . . dōlōris*: B. 201, 1; A. 216, *a*, 2; H. 397, 3. 26. *ipse*: Diviciacus. *grātiā*: B. 219; A. 245; H. 416. *plūrimum*: sc. *posset*; see note to p. 116, 15. 27. *domī* = *in Aeduīs*. *ille*: Dumnorix. 28. *crēvisset*: with *propterea quod*; sc. *opibus ac nervīs*. Dumnorix had become powerful through the influence and with the help of Diviciacus. *opibus*: refers to resources, means, while *nervīs* means strength, power. B. 218, 1; A. 249; H. 421, I. 30. *ūterētur*: B. 314, 1; A. 336; H. 524. *frāternō* = *frātris*. B. 353, 5, *b*; A. 190; H. 395, *N*, 2.

Page 127. 1. *Quod*: cf. note to p. 122, 25. *eī* = *Dumnorīgī*. *ā Caesare*: 'at the hands of Caesar.' 2. *cum*: 'while.' *apud eum* = *apud Caesarem*. 3. *nōn factum [esse]*: 'that it was not done,' object of *existimātūrum (esse)*. 4. *futūrum [esse]*: 'it would come about.'

5. peteret: B. 288, 1, *B*; A. 325; H. 521, II, 2. **6. faciat:** B. 295, 8; A. 331, *f*, R.; H. 499, 2. **7. tantī . . . esse:** 'that his (Diviciacus's) influence with him (*apud sē*, Caesar) was so great' (lit., 'of so great account'). B. 203, 3; A. 215, *c*, 252, *a*; H. 404, 405. **8. voluntātī:** 'in answer to his wish.' **10. intellegat:** B. 300, 1; A. 334; H. 529, I. **12. praeterita:** = *rēs praeteritās*, 'by-gones.' **13. agat, loquātur:** B. 300, 1; A. 334; H. 529, I.; cf. B. 324, 2; A. 342; H. 529, II.

XXI. 15. hostēs, etc: the Helvetii were now in the valley of the Liger, some distance southeast of Bibracte. **17. esset:** B. 300, 1; A. 334; H. 529, I. **in circuitū ascēsus:** 'the ascent in case one should go around' (lit., 'in the going around'), *i.e.* in case one should try it from the other side. Caesar planned a flank movement, by which he intended secretly to get on the other side of the height, and occupy the summit above the heads of the enemy, — a very advantageous position. **18. cognōcerent:** B. 282, 2; A. 317; H. 497, I. **mīsit:** sc. *explōrātōrēs*, 'scouts.' **esse:** sc. *ascēsum*. **Dē tertiā vigiliā:** see note to p. 121, 7.

19. prō praetōre: when a lieutenant was given a special responsibility, to act outside the presence of the commander, he was called *lēgātus prō praetōre*, 'lieutenant in place of the general,' and for the time being had the authority and insignia of the commander. See p. 12.

20. ducibus: appositive, 'with those men as guides,' referring to the scouts previously sent out. **21. cōnsilī:** B. 201, 1; A. 216, *a*, 1; H. 397, 3. **22. itinere:** B. 218, 9; A. 258, *g*; H. 420, 1, 3). **quō:** 'as.' **24. rei:** B. 204, 1; A. 218, *a*; H. 399, I, 2. **peritissimus:** pred. adj. **25. M. Crassī:** sc. *exercitū*.

XXII. 27. Primā: B. 241, 1; A. 193; H. 440, 2, N. 1. As it was now midsummer, daybreak was not far from four o'clock. **summus mōns:** 'the top of the height.' **29. passibus:** B. 217, 1; A. 247; H. 417.

Page 128. **1. cognitus esset:** B. 288, 1, *B*; A. 325, 323, H. 521, II, 2. **equō admissō:** abl. abs., 'with his horse at full speed.' **3. voluerit:** B. 314, 1; A. 336; H. 524. **4. insignibus:** particularly the crests of their helmets.

7. committeret: B. 295, 1; A. 331, *h*; H. 498, I. **vīsae essent:** B. 324, 1; A. 342; H. 529, II. **8. fieret:** subj. of purpose. **9. proe-**
hō: B. 214, 2; A. 243; H. 414, I. **10. Multō diū:** 'late in the

day'; abl. of time. **12. perterritum**: participle; force of *per*? **prō vīsō**: used as a noun, = 'as (something) seen.' Considius in the dim light had mistaken the detachment of Labienus on the height for a Gallic force. **13. renūntiāsse**: sc. *id.* **intervallō**: five or six miles, as we learn from p. 123, 21-23. B. 251, 4; A. 200, b; H. 445, 9. **14. mīlia**: B. 181, 1; A. 257; H. 379.

XXIII. 15. diēi: B. 201, 3, a; A. 214, g; H. 398, 5. **16. cum**: 'before,' 'within which.' **oportēret**: B. 288, 1, B; A. 323, 325; H. 521, II, 2. **17. Bibracte**: B. 39, 2; A. 57, d; H. 63, 2, (1). **18. mīlibus passuum xviii**: = about 16½ English miles; cf. note to p. 115, 23. **rei**: B. 187, III; A. 228; H. 386. **19. prōspiciendum**: sc. *esse*; *impers.* **20. Bibracte**: B. 182, 1, a; A. 258, b; H. 380, II.

21. fugitivōs: 'runaway slaves'; deserters from the ranks were called *trānsfugae*. **decuriōnis**: what was his position? See pp. 11, 12. **23. existimārent**: B. 323; A. 341, d; H. 516, II. **eō**: B. 223; A. 250, r.; H. 423. **25. eō**: 'on this account.' B. 219; A. 245; H. 416. **rē**: B. 214, 2; A. 243; H. 414, I. **posse**: sc. *Rōmānōs*. **26. itinere conversō**: abl. abs., 'having reversed their line of march.' **27. novissimō agmine**: see pp. 18, 19.

Page 129. **XXIV. 1. animum advertit**: = *animadvertit*; *animum* is object of *vertit*, *id* is governed by *ad*. B. 179, 2; A. 239, b; H. 376. **2. sustinēret**: B. 282, 2; A. 317; H. 497, I. There are no data in the text fixing the place where this battle was fought, outside the fact inferred from chap. 23, that it must lie within eighteen Roman miles from the site of Bibracte. Recent investigations by Colonel Stoffel have located the field of battle near the village of Montmort, southeast of Mt. Beuvray (the site of Bibracte), about three miles northwest of the town of Toulon on the Arroux.

3. in colle mediō: 'half-way up the hill.' See Plan II. **triplicem aciem**: see p. 22. The four legions were placed in a line. **5. suprā sē**: this implies that Caesar was near the four legions at the front. **summō**: B. 241, 1; A. 193; H. 440, 2, n. 1 and 2. **quās**, etc.: see Chap. 10. **6. auxilia**: soldiers that were not Romans, — light-armed troops and cavalry. See p. 11. **7. sarcinās**: how different from *impedimenta*? See p. 12.

8. superiōre aciē: 'the upper line,' the two legions posted on the top of the hill. The outline of the trenches and rampart thrown up was discovered and traced by Colonel Stoffel; it is indicated on Plan II by a curved red line. **11. aciē**: B. 220, 1; A. 248; H. 419, III. **pha-**

lange: the Gauls in the front line of a phalanx interlocked their shields, so as to present a firm barrier to the enemy.

XXV. 13. suō: sc. *equō remōtō*. **omnium . . . equis**: i.e. of Caesar's staff and the mounted officers, not of the cavalry. According to Plutarch (*Caes. xviii*), Caesar, in sending his horse away, said, "After conquering I shall need it for the pursuit (of the enemy)." At the battle of Munda, as his troops were retreating, Caesar gave orders that his horse be led out of sight, and rushed on foot into the front rank. **16. pīlis**: see p. 16. What other weapons did the Roman soldier use? **17. Eā**: render the first abl. abs. by a temporal clause, the second by a participle with object.

18. Gallis . . . impedimentō: B. 191, 2, *a*; A. 233, *a*; H. 390, 1. **19. scūtis**, etc.: as the strong bayonet-like point of the pike was more than 1½ feet long, by the force of the hurling it could well penetrate two or more shields, which in so dense a throng overlapped one another. **20. inflexisset**: B. 286, 2; A. 326; H. 517. **sinistrā**: the shield was carried on the left arm. **21. ut**: 'so that.' **iactātō**: 'exerted' in trying to pull the bent point of the pike from the shields. **22. nudō**: 'unprotected' by a shield. **23. pedem referre**: see Vocab. **24. mōns**: north of Montmort; see Plan II. **mille**: here a noun. B. 181, 1, 80, 5, *a*; A. 94, *e*, *n.*, 257; H. 178, 379. **eō**: adverb.

26. Captō: abl. abs.; 'after having reached,' referring to the Helvetii. **27. milibus**: B. 220, 1; A. 248; H. 420. **agmen claudēbant**: 'were bringing up the rear.' **28. novissimis** (= *novissimō agminī*) **praesidiō**: B. 191, 2, *a*; A. 233; H. 390, 1. **ex itinere**: 'leaving their (i.e. of the Boii and Tulingi) line of march.' **ab latere apertō**: 'on the open flank,' approaching from the left. See Plan II. **29. circumvenire**: sc. *coepērunt*.

Page 130. 1. conversa: B. 337, 2; A. 292, *r.*; H. 549, 5; 'changed their front and advanced in two divisions,' in opposite directions, one division facing straight ahead (*prīma et secunda aciēs*), the other facing toward the rear (*tertia aciēs*). See Plan II. **2. victis ac summōtis**: = *Helvētiis*. **3. venientēs**: = *Bōiōs et Tulingōs*; these had been in the rear of the Helvetian host, came up too late to join in the main engagement, and so attacked on the left flank the Roman line that was just driving the Helvetii up the height.

XXVI. 4. ancipiti: 'twofold,' because the Romans were fighting on two fronts. **pūgnātum est**: 'fighting went on' (lit., 'it was

fought'). B. 138, iv; A. 146, c; H. 301, i. 5. **possent**: sc. *Helvētīi, Bōi et Tulingi*. 8. **proeliō**: B. 231, 1; A. 256, b; H. 379, i. **cum**: 'although.' B. 309, 3; A. 326; H. 515, iii. **hōrā septimā**: one o'clock. The day, from sunrise to sunset, was divided by the Romans into twelve hours of equal length. 9. **āversum hostem**: 'the back of a foe.' Caesar states this with evident admiration of the bravery of the enemy; cf. note to p. 40, l. 13. **Ad multam noctem**: 'to a late hour of the night'; cf. *multō diē*, p. 128, 10.

11. **locō superiōre**: the top of the rampart made by the vehicles. Even this elevation would be of great advantage in throwing their darts and missiles. 13. **matarās**: Gallic spears; *trāgulae* were light darts thrown by means of a leather thong. **subiciēbant**: some sheltered themselves behind the carts, casting their missiles from underneath and between the thick, solid wheels. 14. **impedimentis, castris**: B. 218, 1; A. 249; H. 421, i. Here were the women and children, a large number of whom were doubtless immediately slaughtered (cf. Plut. *Caesar*, xviii). 15. **captus est**: agrees with the nearer subject. B. 341, 1, a, b, c; A. 156, a; H. 554, i, 2.

18. **nocte**: B. 231, 1; A. 256, b; H. 379, i. **partem**: B. 181, 1; A. 256; H. 379. 19. **finēs Lingonum**: 60 or 70 miles from Bibracte, almost directly north. See map opp. p. 114. 21. **trīdum**: = *trēs diēs* (acc.). The fact that the Romans delayed so long before following up the victory shows that it must have cost them dearly. **potuissent**: B. 286, 2; A. 326; H. 517. 22. **Lingonas**: Greek form; see note to p. 122, 4. B. 47, 3; A. 63, f; H. 68. 23. **iuvārent**: B. 316; A. 339; H. 523, iii. **iūvisent**: fut. pf. in dir. disc. B. 319, B, a; A. 337; H. 527, i. **sē**, etc.: *sē habitūrum esse eōs* (= *Lingonas*) *eōdem locō, quō Helvētīōs habēret*. 24. **locō**: 'position.' B. 228, 1, b; A. 258, f; H. 425, ii, 2).

XXVII. 27. Qui: B. 251, 6; A. 180, f; H. 453. 28. **convēnissent**: here transitive. 29. **eōs**: = *Helvētīōs*, not *lēgātōs*. 30. **essent**: B. 324, 1; A. 342; H. 529, ii.

Page 131. 2. **perfūgissent**: B. 323; A. 341, d; H. 528, i. 3. **ea**: neut. pl. (B. 235, B, 2, b; A. 195, 187, b; H. 439, 2, n.) = *obsidēs, arma, (fugitivī) servī*, spoils of war. **nocte**: the collection of hostages, etc., was not completed in one day. 4. **circiter**: adv. with *sex* (vī). **Verbigenus**: at home this canton dwelt east of the *pāgus Tigurīnus*; see Map. 5. **perterriti**: with *mīlia*. B. 235, B, 2, c; A. 187, d; H. 438, 6. **nē**: 'that.' B. 296, 2; A. 331, f; H. 498, iii, n. 1. **How is**

'that not' expressed with words implying fear? **8. existimarent.** B. 323; A. 341, *d*; H. 516, *ii*. **primā:** B. 241, 1; A. 193; H. 440, 2, *n*. 1.

XXVIII. 10. Quod: B. 251, 6; A. 180, *f*; H. 453. **ubi:** of place or time? **quōrum:** precedes its antecedent, *his*. **11. conquirerent:** B. 295, 1; A. 331; H. 498, *i*. **alibi:** 'in his sight.' B. 188, 1, *n*.; A. 235; H. 384, 4, *n*. 3. **pūrgātī:** *pf.* part. used as *adj.*, 'cleared,' 'blameless.' B. 328, 2; A. 272, *b*; H. 537, 2, and 536, 2, 1). **12. in . . . habuit:** a polite way of saying that they were all mas-sacred.

15. unde: = *ē quibus*. **16. quō:** B. 218; A. 248, *c*; H. 420. **tolerārent:** B. 283, 2; A. 320, *a*; H. 503, *i*. **17. facerent:** 'furnish.' **18. ipsōs:** = *Helvētiōs, Tulingōs, Latobrigōs*. **oppida,** etc.: see p. 117, 2-7.

19. unde: = *ex quō*. **22. trānsirent:** B. 282, 1; A. 317; H. 497, *ii*. As the Helvetii were reduced to one-third of their former number, much of their land must have been left unoccupied after their return, and was probably soon seized upon by German tribes. They sent only eight thousand men to the relief of Alesia; and the population of that whole region now is of Germanic origin.

23. Bōiōs, etc.: *Aeduīs petentibus* (*abl. abs.*), *ut Bōiōs in finibus suis collocārent, quod (Bōi) egregiā virtūte cognitū erant* (*Caesar id* = this request) *concessit*. The Aedui, hard pressed in their struggles with the Sequani, desired an accession of strength. **25. quibus, quōs** = *et eis, eos*. B. 251, 6; A. 180, *f*; H. 453. **postea:** after the great Gallic rebellion under Vercingetorix, narrated in Book VII. **26. atque:** 'as.' B. 341, 1, *c*; A. 156, *a*; H. 554, *i*, 2, *n*.

XXIX. 28. tabulae: 'lists.' **29. litteris:** 'characters.' Greek letters were used by the Druids, but a knowledge of them was by no means widely diffused. As the word *tabulae* implies, the 'lists' were probably written in wax, on thin, small boards, fastened at the back by a hinge, so as to open like the leaves of a book. **30. tabulis:** B. 251, 3; A. 200, *a*; H. 445, 8. **ratio:** 'statement.' **quī:** interrogative. B. 90; A. 104, *a*; H. 188, *ii*, 1.

Page 132. 1. exisset: B. 300, 1; A. 334; H. 529, *i*. **possent:** B. 283, 2; A. 320, *a*; H. 503, *i*. **2. rerum:** 'items,' here used of persons; Caesar had in mind the numbers rather than the personality.

3. capitum Helvētiōrum : = *Helvētiōrum*. We say 'head' of stock, but 'souls' of human beings. **cclxxiii.** : = *ducenta sexāgintā tria*; read all these numbers in the Latin.

6. fuērunt : B. 254, 3; A. 204, *b*; H. 462. **mīlia** : nom., in pred.; *ad* has the force of an adv.

THE CAMPAIGN AGAINST ARIOVISTUS. XXX-LIV.

XXX. 9. Galliae : the land of the *Galli*, or Celtic Gaul. **10. grātulātum** : B. 340, 1; A. 302; H. 546.

12. Intellegere, etc. : sc. *dixērunt*. B. 314, 1; A. 336; H. 523, 524. **infūris** : with two genitives (B. 199; A. 217, *b*; H. 398, 2); 'inflicted upon the Roman people by the Helvetii.' Notice here the difference in meaning between the subjective genitive, denoting the agent of an action, and the objective genitive, denoting the object (person or thing) toward which the action or feeling is directed. B. 200; A. 214, 217; H. 396, II and III.

14. rem : refers to the preceding clause. **ex ūsū** : 'of advantage,' 'advantageous.' **15. accidisse** : dep. on *Intellegere*. **eō cōsiliō** : 'with this design'; explained by the compound *utī*-clause, which is in apposition with it. **flōrentissimīs rēbus** : 'although their circumstances were,' etc. B. 227, 1; A. 255, *a* and *n.*; H. 431, 4 and 2, (3). **17. Inferrent** : B. 282, 1; A. 329, 2; H. 363, 5. **impēriō** : B. 218, 1; A. 249; H. 421, I. **domiciliō** : B. 191, 1; A. 233; H. 384, II, 1, 3). **18. cōpiā** : sc. *locōrum*. **20. stipendiārīas** : predicative. B. 233, 2; A. 186, *b*; H. 373, 1, *n.* 2.

21. Petiērunt, utī sibi . . . licēret : 'they asked permission'; so also l. 28 below. **22. id . . . licēret** : they wished Caesar's consent in order not to appear to him to be acting disloyally or too independently. **habēre** : B. 331, I; A. 330, *e*; H. 523, I, *n.*

25. nē quis : 'that not any one,' = 'that no one.' **ēnūntiāret** : 'should make an announcement' of what might be done in the council. B. 295, 1; A. 331; H. 498, I. **nisi**, etc. : i.e. *nisi ut eī ēnūntiārent, quibus*, 'except those to whom,' etc. **26. mandātum esset** : plupf. subj. for fut. perfect ind. of dir. disc. B. 314, I; A. 336; H. 524.

XXXI. 27. Idem : = *eūdem*. **28. fuerant** : sc. *apud eum*.

Page 133. **1. agere** : B. 327, 1; A. 270, *b*; H. 538, 1 (2). **2. Caesarī** : trans. as if *Caesaris*. B. 188, 1, *n.*; A. 235, *a*; H. 384,

11, N. 2. 3. *id*: explained by the appositive clause *nē . . . ēnūntiārentur*. *sē contendere*: sc. *discerunt*. 4. *vellent*: B. 314, 1; A. 336; H. 524. 5. *ēnūntiātum esset*: *impers.*; 'if disclosure should have been made.' B. 319, A, B, a; A. 337; H. 527, 1; the conclusion is represented by *ventūrōs (esse)*. 7. *Diviciācus*: see note to p. 125, 20.

8. *Galliae*, etc.: indir. disc. to the end of the chapter; study carefully the moods and tenses. *factiōnēs*: 'parties.' *principātum*: 'headship.' 11. *factum esse*: 'it had come to pass.' B. 314, 1; A. 336; H. 523, 524. *Arvernīs Sēquanisque*: for the original cause of contention see note to p. 121, 1. The Sequani, having attacked the Aedui, found themselves unequal to the contest and called in the aid of Ariovistus. At this time the Sequani were tributary to the Arverni. *mercēde*: B. 225; A. 252; H. 422. 12. *arcesserentur*: B. 297, 2, 314; A. 332, e, 336; H. 498, 11, N. 2, and 524.

14. *adamāssent*: *ad-* is here intensive. *trāductōs*: sc. *esse*. *plūrēs*: sc. *Germānōs*. 15. *esse*: subject?

16. *clientēs*: 'dependents,' here dependent or tributary states. 19. *frāctōs*: sc. *eōs*, as antecedent of *quī* and subject of *coactōs esse*. 20. *plūrimum*, etc.: 'had previously possessed the greatest power.' See note to p. 116, 15.

22. *obaidēs*: appositive. 23. *sēsē . . . repetitūrōs*, etc.: appositive of *iūre iūrādō* (B. 294; A. 329; H. 539, 11); the meaning is, 'and to make the citizens pledge themselves that they' (*sēsē*). 25. *quō minus essent sub*: 'to be under.' B. 282, a; A. 317, b; H. 497, 11, 2. *quō minus* is milder than *quān*. *illōrum*: = *Sēquanōrum*.

26. *Unum sē esse*: 'that he (Diviciacus) was the only one.' 27. *potuerit*: would be subj. in direct disc. B. 283, 2; A. 320, b; H. 503, 11, 1. *ut iūrāret*: 'to take the oath.' B. 295, 1; A. 331, e; H. 498, 11. 29. *postulātum*: B. 340, 1; A. 302; H. 546. 31. *pēlus*: 'a worse fate.' *victōribus*: here an adj. A. 88, c; H. 441, 3.

Page 134. 3. *alterā parte tertiā*: 'a second third-part.' 4. *mēnibus*: B. 223; A. 250, 259, d; H. 430. *Harūdum*: a German tribe south of the headquarters of the Danube; see Map opp. p. 14.

5. *eum*: = *Ariovistum*. *Futūrum esse*: 'it would come about.' The subject is the clause introduced by *utī*. 6. *omnēs*: sc. *Gallī*.

8. Gallicum: sc. *agrum*. **9. hanc:** refers to the Gauls, *illā* to the Germans. B. 246, 1; A. 102, *a* and *b*; H. 450, 1. At this time the civilization of the Gauls was far in advance of that of the Germans.

10. Ariovistum: subject of the infinitives below. **ut semel:** 'as soon as' (lit., 'when once'). **vicerit:** in dir. disc. would be *vicit*.

11. proelium: B. 251, 3; A. 200, *a*; H. 445, 8. **Admagetobrigae:** for the meaning of the word, see Vocab.; where the place was, is not known. **12. nōbillissimī cīvīsq̄ue:** 'of all of the highest rank.' Cf. p. 69, l. 5. **13. exempla cruciātūsq̄ue:** 'all kinds of tortures'; hendiadys. B. 374, 4; A. 385; H. 636, III, 2. **ēdere:** implies publicity; 'inflicted publicly.'

15. posse: sc. *sē*, = *Gallōs*. **16. quid . . . auxili:** B. 201, 2; A. 216, *a*, 3; H. 397, 3. **17. Gallīs:** B. 189, 1; A. 232; H. 388; 'all the Gauls would have to do the same thing.' **idem:** subject of *faciendum esse*, explained by the appositive clause introduced by *ut*. B. 297, 3; A. 332, *f*; H. 501, III. **20. quaecumque:** indefinite relative, referring to *fortūnam*; 'endure whatever fortune might befall them.'

21. dubitāre: sc. *sē*, = *Diviciācum*. **23. sūmat:** B. 284, 3; A. 332, *g*; H. 501, II, 2. **exercitūs:** sc. *auctōritāte*. **24. dēterrere,** etc.: 'prevent a larger population of Germans from crossing the Rhine.' **25. Rhēnum:** B. 175, 2, *a*; A. 239, *b*; H. 376, *n*. **trādūcātur:** B. 295, 3; A. 331, *e*; H. 498, II.

XXXII. 29. flētū: B. 220, 1; A. 248, *r*; H. 419, III. **30. ūnōs:** 'alone.' B. 66. **nihil:** 'none.'

Page 135. **1. facerent:** B. 314; A. 336; H. 524. **2. quae:** from the interrogative adj. pron. *quī*, in pred., hence agreeing with *causa*; 'what the reason was.' **esset:** B. 300, 1; A. 334; H. 529, I. The clause stands as object of *mīrātus*. **3. respondēre:** B. 335; A. 275; H. 536, I. **4. quaereret:** B. 288, 1, *B*; A. 325; H. 521, II, 2. **5. neque:** = *et nōn*. B. 341, 1, *d*; A. 159, *a*; H. 554, I, 2.

7. Hōc: abl. of degree of difference and cause; 'all the more wretched on this account'; explained by the following *quod*-clause. **8. nē . . . quidem:** 'not even.' B. 347; A. 151, *e*; H. 569, III, 2. **10. adesset:** would be subj. also in direct disc.; *velut* (*horrērent*), *sī* (*Ariovistus*) *cōram adesset*. B. 307, 1, 2; A. 312; H. 513, II. **11. reliquīs:** 'to the rest' of the Gauls. **tamen:** 'at any rate.' **Sēquanīs . . . essent perferendī:** 'the Sequani must endure' (lit., 'by the Sequani must be endured'). B. 189, 1; A. 232; H. 388.

XXXIII. 16. sibi, etc.: 'that he would look after that matter' (lit., 'that that matter would be a care to him'). **17. sē habēre spēm** = *sē spērāre*. **18. infūris**: B. 186; A. 225; H. 384, II, 4, n. 2.

20. secundum: prep.; 'besides those (considerations).' **21. cōgitandam** (*esse*): 'ought to be taken into consideration.' **putāret**: B. 283; A. 320; H. 503, I; **quā rē** here = *propter quās* = *ut propter eas*. **22. frātrēs**: B. 168, 2, b; A. 185; H. 362. **cōsanguīneōs**: probably on the ground of a Trojan origin (as did the Arverni), the Aedui claimed kinship with the Romans, who flattered them by admitting it. **25. quod**: 'a state of things which'; the antecedent lies in the infin. clauses dep. on *vidēbat* and *intelligēbat*. **in**: 'in the case of'; trans. freely, 'in view of the fact that the dominion of the Roman people was so great.'

28. Germānōs cōnsuēscere: 'for the Germans to become accustomed;' sc. *esse*, of which this infin. clause and *multitudinem venire* form the subject, *periculōsum* ('a thing full of danger') being in the pred. **31. quīn . . . exīrent**: 'from going out.' **32. ut**: 'as.' ante: B.C. 102.

Page 136. **1. exīrent**: B. 284, 3; A. 319, d; H. 500, II. **3. dīvideret**: B. 286, 2; A. 326; H. 517; trans. the Latin impf. here by an English pres., 'only the Rhone separates.' **rēbus**: 'that he ought to attend to these things.' B. 187, II, b; A. 230; H. 384, 5. **quam mātūrrimē**: 'as early as possible.' B. 240, 3; A. 93, b; H. 170, 2, (2). **5. ferendus nōn**: 'unbearable.'

XXXIV. 7. placuit ei, ut: 'he (Caesar) resolved to.' **ut . . . mitteret**: subject of *placuit*. **8. quī . . . postulārent**: 'to ask.' **9. medium utriusque**: 'midway between both.' B. 204; A. 218; H. 399. **velle sēsē**: in trans. supply 'stating.' **10. Eī lēgātīōnī = eīs lēgātīs**.

12. Si . . . esset: 'If he himself (Ariovistus) should want anything of Caesar.' B. 218, 2, a; A. 243, e, n.; H. 414, IV, n. 4. What is the usual construction with *opus est*? **ventūrum fuisse**: B. 304, 3, b; A. 308, d; H. 527, III. **13. ille**: Caesar. **quid sē**: B. 178, 1, a; A. 239, c; H. 374; **velit** = *velit poscere*. **14. sine**, etc.: Ariovistus was a long distance from Caesar, probably over near the Rhine.

17. mīrum: agrees with the clause *quid . . . esset*. **quid . . . negōtī**, etc.: 'what business either Caesar or the Roman people had;' indirect question, subject of *vidērī*. **18. vicisset**: B. 314; A. 341, a; H. 524. **Caesarī, populō**: B. 190; A. 231; H. 387. **19. negōtī**: B. 201, 2; A. 216, a, 1; H. 397, 3.

XXXV. 22. affectus: 'although treated.' **23. cōsulātū suō:** Caesar was consul B.C. 59. **rēx atque amīcus:** note to p. 116, l. 7. The Roman Senate had clearly played a double part. After the battle of Admagetobriga (see p. 134, 11), fearing the great power of Ariovistus, and perhaps foreseeing the possibility of an alliance hostile to the Romans between him and the Helvetii, the Senate had recognized him as a "ruler," and conferred upon him the title of "friend." But at this very time it was proclaiming its regard for the Aedui, and claiming to maintain their cause against Ariovistus.

24. grātiām referret: see Vocab. **25. neque,** etc.: 'and did not consider himself under obligation to discuss and investigate a matter of common interest.' **26. haec esse, quae:** 'these were (the things) which,' explained by the following clauses. **27. quam:** 'any.' **28. amplius:** 'afterwards' (lit., 'any more'). **trādūceret:** B. 316; A. 339; H. 523, III. What other verbs in the same constr.?

Page 137. 1. illi = Sēquanī. **2. hōcēret:** hardly necessary to the sense; trans. as if *ut illi (i.e. Sēquanī) obsidēs redderent.* B. 295, 2; A. 331; H. 498, I. **iniūriā:** B. 220, 2; A. 248, R.; H. 419, III, N. 2.

4. fēcisset . . . futūram [esse]: in dir. disc., *feceris* (fut. pf.), — *erit.* B. 319, A. B. a; A. 337; H. 527, 1. **sibi,** etc.: 'he himself and the Roman people would cherish uninterrupted kindly feeling (for him) and friendship with him.' **5. impetrāret:** sc. *Caesar;* i.e. *sī nōn impetrābō, — nōn neglegam.* **6. M. Messālā,** etc. = B.C. 61. See note to p. 115, 7. **7. prōvinciam:** 'as a province.' B. 177; A. 239, a; H. 373, I. **8. quod:** 'so far as.' B. 283, 5; A. 320, d; H. 503, I., N. 1. **commodō:** B. 220, 3; A. 248, R.; H. 419, III, *rei publicae*, objective gen. **9. sē:** repetition of *sēsē* above, so as to bring *neglēctūrum* into close relation with its subject.

XXXVI. 12. quī: the antecedent is the implied subject of *imperārent*; 'they who had conquered should command those,' etc. **13. velent:** why subj. ? **14. victīs:** B. 236; A. 188; H. 441. **alterius:** 'of a second person,' 'of another.' **16. suō:** 'its own,' referring to *populō Rōmānō.* **17. suō:** 'his own,' referring to Ariovistus.

19. stipendiāriōs: obliged to pay the *stipendium*, which was a fixed tax, not regulated according to the produce of each year. **Māgnam:** emphatic. B. 350, 11, a; A. 344, i; H. 561, I. **20. quī:** 'since he.' B. 283, 3, a; A. 320, e; H. 517. **suō:** refers to Caesar; **sibi,** to Ariovistus. **vectigālīa:** note to p. 125, 8. **21. dēteriōra:** 'less

profitable.' **22. iniuriā**: 'wrongfully.' B. 220, 2; A. 248, n.; H. 419, III, n. 2. **23. in eō, quod convēnisset**: 'in that (relation) which had been agreed upon.' **24. penderent**: the use of this word points back to the time when money was weighed out in uncoined metal; compare the English "pound sterling." **longē eis . . . āfutūrum**: 'would be of little avail to them,' 'far from helping them.' **eis**: B. 188, 2, d; A. 229; H. 385, II, 2. **frāternum**: 'of brethren.' B. 353, 5, b; A. 190; H. 395, n. 2.

26. Quod: 'In regard to the fact that' (B. 299, 2; A. 333, a; H. 516, II, 2, n.); freely, 'So far as Caesar's threat was concerned.' **sē = Caesarem**. In l. 27, *sēcum* refers to Ariovistus, *suū* to the imaginary opponent implied in *nēmīnem*. **27. nēmīnem**: '(he would simply say) that no one.' **28. congregerētur**: 'let him come on!' B. 316; A. 339; H. 523, III. **intellēctūrum: i.e. Caesarem intellēctūrum esse. quid . . . virtūte possent**: 'what measure of prowess the Germans — had.' B. 176, 2, a; A. 240, a, 238; H. 371, II, (2). **29. inter**: 'during'; stronger than the simple acc. of time.

Page 138. **XXXVII. 2. Aedui questum**: sc. *veniēbant*. B. 340; A. 302; H. 546. **3. transportāti essent**: by Ariovistus. B. 324, 1; A. 340; H. 528, I. **4. populārentur**: B. 323; A. 341, d; H. 516, II. **nē . . . datis**: 'not even by the giving of hostages,' abl. abs. **5. Trē-verī**: sc. *veniēbant questum*. **6. Suēbōrum**: see Vocab.

8. vehementer commōtus: a very strong expression, not used elsewhere by Caesar; it indicates how extremely critical he perceived that the situation had become. **10. veteribus cōpiis**: the forces of Ariovistus already in Gaul. **coniūnxisset**: B. 324, 1; A. 342; H. 529, II. **11. resisti**: impers.; 'resistance could be made less easily.' B. 138, IV; A. 146, c; H. 301, I. **12. magnis itineribus**: see Intro., p. 19.

XXXVIII. 14. tridui = trium diērum. B. 203, 2; A. 215, b; H. 396, v, n. 1. **viam**: B. 176, 4, a; A. 238; H. 371, II, n. Caesar was marching eastward from the country of the Lingones, where he had caught up with the fleeing Helvetii. Trace his route on the map. **15. occupandum**: gerundive. The gerund in the acc. does not take a direct object. **16. quod**: why not *quī*? B. 260, 3; A. 199; H. 445, 4. **17. suis finibus**: probably the territory ceded to Ariovistus by the Sequani, west of the Rhine and south of the Vosges mountains. **Id**: emphatic. **18. sibi praecavendum**: 'that he ought to take every precaution.'

19. ad bellum = *bellō*. Cf. B. 192, 2, n.; A. 233. **ūsui**: dat. of purpose. **20. facultās**: 'abundance.' **id**: *oppidum*. **loci**: 'situation.' **21. ad dūcendum bellum**: 'for prolonging the war,' i.e. till the arrival of the Suebi. **22. ut**: 'as though,' 'just as if.' **circumductum**: with *flūmen*. The Dubis (modern *Doubs*, 'Black River') here bends into the form of a loop, leaving only one side of the town (*reliquum spatium*) not surrounded by it; and this space is taken up by a high hill, the top of which forms an irregular plateau.

24. pedum: B. 203, 2; A. 215, b; H. 396, v. Why not abl.? B. 217, 3; A. 247, c; H. 417, 1, n. 2. The distance across the neck of the loop is 1600 feet; but the distance which needed to be fortified, measured across the top of the plateau, was only 600 feet. **25. altitūdine**: B. 224; A. 251; H. 419, ii. **rādīcēs**: object of *contingant*.

26. Hunc (montem) arcem: B. 177; A. 239, a; H. 373 and 373, 1. Excavations at Besançon have brought to light many traces of the Gallic city of Vesontio; and the foundations of several structures of the Roman period — among them a theatre — have been discovered. **28. nocturnis, etc.**: 'by night and by day.'

Page 139. **XXXIX. 2. morātur**: sc. *Caesar*. B. 293, i; A. 276, e; H. 467, iii, 4. **ex percentātiōne**: 'in consequence of the questions.' **3. vōcibus**: 'remarks.' **mercātorum**: there were always many traders about the army. Caesar elsewhere speaks of the great frame of the Germans. The Romans, as the modern Italians, were of smaller size than the average of Englishmen or Americans. The barbarians of Northern Europe seemed larger to them than they would have appeared to us.

6. aciem: 'keen look.' **7. timor**: 'panic,' a shrinking, cowardly fear; while *metus* is a well-grounded dread of impending evil. **9. mentēs animōsque**: 'minds and spirits.' Dio (xxxviii, 35) represents the soldiers as saying 'that they were undertaking a war which was neither just nor voted (by the Senate and People), merely on account of Caesar's personal ambition.'

10. praefectis: these were not the *praefecti equitum* (see page 12, and compare ll. 21-22 below), but probably officers in command of the light-armed troops. Caesar left Rome heavily in debt. As it was quite the fashion for young men of means to get some experience in military life, he no doubt filled many secondary positions with the relatives of creditors and others whose favor he wished to retain. In the campaign

these proved always a hindrance, as in this instance; and they were given as little to do as possible. We see here why Caesar's military tribunes were of so little account; compare INTRO., p. 13. **urbe** : = *Rōmā*. **amicitiae causā** : Caesar is politic as well as polite in ascribing the presence of these worthless men in his army to personal attachment to himself.

12. alius aliā causā illātā : '(each) one presenting a different excuse.' B. 253, 2; A. 203, c, 344, g; H. 459, 1, and 563; *causā* is abl. abs. **13. diceret** : B. 323; A. 341, d; H. 528, 1; 'which, as he said, made it imperative.' **petēbat ut . . . liceret** : 'asked permission.' **16. vultum fingere** : 'control their features,' 'put on a cheerful expression.' **17. abditī** : 'hiding themselves.' B. 256, 1; A. 111, a, n.; H. 465. What kind of tents did the Romans have? See p. 21. **19. castris** : B. 228, 1, b; A. 258, f; H. 425, II, 2. **testamenta** : formal documents, written and sealed, as shown by *obsignābantur*.

21. militēs : the private soldiers. **centuriōnēs** : generally the bravest men in the army, promoted from the ranks on account of efficient service. **quī**, etc. : *praefecti equitum* and *decuriōnēs*. **23. verēri** : implies a fear arising from a worthy cause. **25. rem** : acc. of anticipation; a nominative, subject of *posset*, would have been the ordinary construction. A. 334, c. Cf. the scriptural "I know thee, who thou art." **26. ut** : 'that not.' B. 296, 2; A. 331, f; H. 498, III, n. 1. **28. signa ferri** : i.e. 'advance.' **iussisset** : 'should give the order.' B. 314; A. 336; H. 525, 2. **fore dictō audientēs**, 'obey the command,' like the scriptural "Ye will not hearken unto me." B. 187, II, a; A. 227, n. 2; H. 385, II. Cf. the derivation of "obedient" from *oboediēns* = *ob-audiēns*.

Page 140. XL. 1. ordinum : how many *ordinēs*, and how many *centuriōnēs* in a legion? See pp. 10, 13. As Caesar at this time had six legions, how many centurions in the council? Usually of the centurions only the *primōrum ordinum centuriōnēs* took part in the council of war. See note to p. 141, 27.

3. Primum, etc. : Dio puts into the mouth of Caesar a long harangue of the conventional kind, resembling the exercises in declamation that students of oratory were taught to write (xxxviii, 36-46). **quam in partem** : 'in what direction?' The indirect question stands as subject of *quaerendum* [*esse*] and *cōgitandum* [*esse*]. **4. putārent** : B. 323; A. 341, d; H. 516, II. **5. sē** : B. 227, 1; A. 255, a; H. 431, 4.

6. **ab officiō**: 'from his obligation' of allegiance. 7. **iūdicāret**: in dir. disc., *iūdicet*. B. 277, 300, 2; A. 268, 338, *a*; H. 523, II, 1, *n*. **Sibi . . . persuādērī**: 'he at least was persuaded.' B. 187, II, *b*; A. 230; H. 384, II, 5. **cognitīs**, etc.: trans. by a clause beginning with 'after.' 8. **eum** = *Arriovī-tum*.

10. **Quod**: 'But.' B. 185, 2; A. 240, *b*; H. 453, 6. 11. **quid tandem**: 'what, pray.' H. 351, 4. **verērentur, dēspērārent**: B. 300, 1, 2; A. 334, 338; H. 523, II, 1. What mood in dir. disc.? **suā**: 'their own.' 12. **Factum (esse) periculum**: 'trial had been made.' **hostis** = *Germānōrum*. 13. **memoriā**: B. 231; A. 256; H. 429. **Cimbris et Teutonīs**: the Cimbri and Teutones formed a great horde of barbarians, mainly of Germanic origin, that in the latter part of the second century B.C. set out to invade Italy. They were well-nigh annihilated in two great battles, at Aquae Sextiae, in Transalpine Gaul, 102 B.C.; and at Vercellae, in Cisalpine Gaul, the following year. Cf. p. 50, § 66, and notes. See Mommsen's History of Rome, ed. of 1895, vol. iii, pp. 441-449. 15. **meritus [esse]**: cf. B. 328, 2; A. 272, *b*; H. 536, 2, 1), *n*. **vidēbātur**: the subj. would have been more regular; the indic. is emphatic, making prominent the fact. B. 314, 3; A. 336, *d*; H. 524, 2, 2).

16. **servīlī tumultū**: 'at the time of the uprising of the slaves.' The gladiators, who were for the most part slaves captured in war, rebelled under Spartacus, and, with other slaves that flocked to their standards, resisted the Roman arms for three years, 73-71 B.C. As many of these were of Germanic origin, Caesar here speaks of the Romans having become familiar with the prowess of the Germans in the Servile War. The word *tumultus* is used instead of *bellum* in case of any sudden war within the limits of Italy. **quōs**: the antecedent is implied in *servīlī* = *servōrum*. B. 251, 2; A. 199, *b*; H. 445, 6. **aliquid**: adv. acc., 'somewhat,' 'considerably.' **ūsus**: although barbarians, yet (*tamen*) the slaves had had the benefit of acquaintance with the Roman methods of warfare, and of gladiatorial training.

17. **quae**: B. 235, *A*, 2 and *B*, 2, *b*, *β*; A. 187, *b*; H. 445, 3, *n*. 1. 18. **quantum**, etc.: 'how much advantage there is in steadfast courage' (lit., 'how much of good firmness has'). B. 201, 1; A. 287, *d*, 334; H. 529, I, 495, *v*. 19. **inermōs**: referring to the lack of weapons among the followers of Spartacus at the beginning of the insurrection.

23. **superārint**: sc. *eōs*. **quī**: 'and they,' the Helvetii. 24. **Si quōs**, etc.: 'If the defeat (of the Gauls by the Germans) and the rout of the Gauls alarmed any' of the soldiers, etc.

25. Order: *hōs posse reperire, sī quaerent, Ariovistum, Gallis dē-fatigātis diūturnitāte belli, cum multōs mēnsēs sē castris ac palūdibus tenuisset neque suī potestātem fēcisset* ('and had given them no chance of attacking him,' lit., 'no chance at himself'), *subitō adortum (eōs) dēspērantes iam dē pūgnā* ('giving up hope of battle') *et dispersōs, vicisse (eōs) ratiōne et cōsiliō* ('by skill and strategy') *magis quam virtūte.*

30. ratiōnī: B. 251, 4, *a*; A. 200, *b*; H. 445, 9. Trans. *Cui ratiōnī, hāc* as though it were *Hāc ratiōne, cui.* Ariovistus himself knew that for the clever tactics with which he had defeated the Gauls there would be no chance against the Romans.

Page 141. 1. Quī: '(Those) who assigned their fear to a pretence (of anxiety, i.e. a pretended anxiety) about the supply of grain.' **3. praescribere:** sc. *officium.* **vidērentur:** subj. in dir. disc. B. 286, 2, 314; A. 326; H. 517. **4. sibi cūrae:** B. 191, 2, *a*; A. 233, *a*; H. 390, 1.

7. Quod: B. 299, 2; A. 333, *a*; H. 516, 11, 2, *n.* **dictō:** note to p. 139, 28. **lātūri:** cf. B. 328, 2; A. 272, *b*; H. 536, 2, 1), *n.* **dīcantur:** sc. *militēs*; trans. 'it is said that.' B. 332, *c*; A. 330, *b*; H. 534, 1, *n.* 1, (2). **8. nihil:** has the force of an emphatic *nōn*, 'not at all.' B. 176, 2, *b*; A. 240, *a*; H. 378, 2. **scīre:** sc. *sē.* **quibuscumque:** dat. after *dictō audiēns*, taken together = *oboediēns*; for antecedent sc. *eīs* after *dēfuisse.* **9. fortunam:** the Romans avoided any undertaking which bad luck seemed to follow, thinking that a curse rested on it, or that a deity was against them. Ill-luck and wrong-doing on the part of commanders Caesar considers the chief cause of mutiny. **11. vitā:** B. 230; A. 256; H. 429.

13. longiōrem: 'more distant.' **14. repraesentātūrum:** 'he would at once do.' **dē vigiliā:** note to p. 121, 7. **15. quam primum:** B. 240, 3; A. 93, *b*; H. 170, 2 (2). **utrum . . . an:** B. 300, 4; A. 211; H. 353, 1. **16. pudor:** properly 'feeling of shame' at doing something dishonorable; hence 'sense of honor.' **Quod sī:** 'moreover, though.' **18. nōn dubitāret:** 'he had no doubts.' **praetōriam cohortem:** 'body-guard.' The tenth legion always remained Caesar's favorite. Make an analysis of this speech of Caesar's, showing to what motives and feelings of his men he appealed, and the oratorical skill with which he brought it to a climax.

XLI. 23. princeps: B. 239; A. 191; H. 443, *n.* 1. **24. eī grātias ēgit:** 'thanked him.' **fēcisset:** B. 323; A. 341, *d*; H. 516, 11. **27. primōrum ordinum centuriōnibus:** whether these were the cen-

turions of the first cohort in each legion, or the first centurions of the ten cohorts, cannot now be determined. See Smith's Dict. of Greek and Roman Antiquities, vol. i, pp. 798-800. **ēgērunt**: 'made an arrangement.' **satis facerent**: 'apologize.'

28. sē, etc.: sc. *dixērunt*. **29. dē summā bellī**: 'on the general management of the campaign,' to be taken closely with *iudicium*. B. 353, 5, n. **suum, sed imperā-tōris**: 'not theirs, but the general's'; in pred. with *esse*. B. 198, 3; A. 214, c; H. 402.

Page 142. 3. mīlīum: sc. *passuum*; dep. on *circuitū*. Could it have been in the abl.? B. 203, 2; A. 215, b; H. 396, v. Why not abl.? B. 217, 3; A. 247, c; H. 417, 1, n. 2. **locīs apertīs**: 'through (lit., 'in' or 'by') open country.' He was marching to the northeast from Vesontio, but avoided the mountains and forests of the valley of the Doubs (p. 139, 24; p. 141, 1-3) by a detour, entering the valley of the Rhine near the southern end of the Vosegus range. Follow his course on the map opp. p. 114. **4. dūceret**: this subj. of result explains *itinere*, but follows *exquisitō*. **5. Septimō diē**: at the close of the seventh day Caesar had probably brought his army about 120 miles from Vesontio, for the latter part of the distance marching along the base of the Vosegus range. He was the first Roman general to enter the valley of the Rhine. Cf. note to p. 147, 8. **6. mīlibus**: B. 223; A. 257, b; H. 379, 2. **7. XX**: = *vigintī*. In Latin expressions of number, words and symbols are often connected.

XLII. 9. quod: indir. disc. to *existimāre*. Notice that the relative clause is before the antecedent, *id*. **per sē**: 'so far as he was concerned.' **10. accessisset**: sc. *Caesar*. **12. ad sānitātem**: 'to his senses.' **13. petentī**: sc. *Caesari*. **dēnegāset**: B. 314; A. 336; H. 524. **14. in spem venībat**: has the force of *spērābat*, and so is followed by the fut. infin. *fore*, of which the subject is *utī* . . . *dēsisteret*. B. 331, 1; A. 330, 3; H. 535, 1, 3. **prō**: 'in return for.' **15. in eum**: 'toward him,' = 'bestowed on him.' **beneficiis**: Ariovistus understood as well as any one the hollowness of these 'favors.' See note to p. 136, 23. **16. pertināciā**: B. 214; A. 243; H. 414. **colloquīd**: dat. of purpose. **ex**: 'after.'

18. ultrō citrōque: 'back and forth,' between the two generals. **20. Verērī**: sc. *dixit*. How are *nē* and *ut* rendered after verbs of fearing? **21. venīret**: *veniat* in dir. disc. B. 316; A. 339; H. 523, 111. **aliā ratiōne**: 'on any other condition.'

23. interpositā causā: 'by the pretext that had been alleged.'

24. Gallōrum equitātūī: Caesar's cavalry was drawn mainly from the Aedui and their allies. See p. 123, 9-13. **commodissimū:** agrees with *impōnere*. Why neut.? **25. equitibus:** B. 188, 2, *d*; A. 229; H. 385, 11, 2. **eō:** 'thereon,' *i.e.* on the horses, = *in eōs*. Cf. "Hath not where to lay his head." **27. si . . . esset:** 'if there should be any need of action.' **quid:** B. 176, 3; A. 240, *a*; H. 378, 2.

28. factō: B. 218, 2, *c*; A. 243, *e, R.*; H. 414, IV, *N. 3*. **Quod cum fieret:** 'while this was being done.' **nōn irrīdiculū:** 'not without wit'; litotes. See note to p. 60, 1. 22. **29. ex militibus:** why not genitive? *quidam* is here not wholly indefinite, but refers to a particular person. **Plūs . . . facere:** *i.e.* for the legion. **30. pollicitum:** is *esse* to be supplied? **in locō habitūrum:** 'would regard as.' **31. ad equum rescribere:** the phrase has a double meaning, — 'enroll as cavalrymen,' or 'enroll as knights,' a rank of nobility. In this lies the point of the joke.

Page 143. XLIII. 1. tumulus: identified by Colonel Stoffel with the hill of Plettig, an elevation of oval shape, 24 miles southwest of Strassburg, between the villages of Epfig and Dambach; it rises in isolation more than 170 feet above the surrounding plain.

3. ut erat dictum: 'as agreed upon.' **4. equis:** abl. of means; 'on horseback.' **passibus:** B. 223; A. 257, *b*; H. 379, 2. What distance in English feet? Cf. note to p. 115, 23. **6. cōstitērunt:** how different in meaning from *cōstituērunt*? **ex equis:** 'on horseback' (lit., 'from horses'). **7. sē. pl. dēnōs:** 'ten apiece.'

9. ventum est: *impers.*; *trans.* 'when they had come thither.' **10. appellātus esset:** B. 323; A. 341, *d*; H. 528, 1. **11. mūnera:** such as embroidered robes, an ivory chair of state, and the like. **missa:** *sc. essent*. **12. quam rem:** 'and this distinction,' 'this honor.' **prō magnis officiis:** 'in return for distinguished services.' **13. aditum:** 'ground of approach,' 'access.' **15. suā, etc.:** cf. p. 136, 22-24 and Notes. **cōnsecūtum:** the word implies that Ariovistus had sought after the favors shown, — probably an unjust insinuation.

16. necessitudinis: 'alliance.' **17. ipsis: Rōmānis.** B. 187, III; A. 228; H. 386. **ipsis cum Aeduis interocderent:** 'existed between themselves and the Aedui.' **18. honorifica:** how compared? B. 71, 5; A. 89, *c*; H. 164. **in eōs facta essent:** 'had been passed in their behalf.' **19. ut:** 'how'; interrogative. **20. prius,**

quam: B. 291, 323; A. 327, 341, *a*; H. 524, 520, *II*. **21. ut . . . velit**: 'to desire.' **22. suf nihil**: 'none of their standing.' B. 237, 2, *a*, 201, 2; A. 188, 216, *a*, 1; H. 441 and 397, 1. **23. quod vērō**, etc.: order, *quis posset pati id, quod . . . attulissent, eripi eis*, etc. **quod . . . attulissent**: spoken by way of compliment to the Aedui, referring to their independence and power (*prīncipātum*, l. 19). **24. eis**: B. 188, 2, *d*; A. 229; H. 385, *II*, 2. What would be the mood of *posset* in dir. disc.? B. 277, 300, 2; A. 268, 338, *R*.; H. 486, *II*, 523, *II*, 1, *N*.

26. Postulāvit eadem: 'made the same demands'; the following clauses are in apposition with *eadem*. **27. Inferret, redderet, patēretur**: B. 316; A. 339; H. 523, *III*. **29. at**: 'at any rate.' **quōs**: B. 252, 1; A. 105, *d*; H. 455, 1. **amplius**: as p. 136, 28.

Page 144. XLIV. 1. pauca: object of *respondit*.

3. Trānsisse: the direct form is in part given in H. 531. **rogātum, arcessitum**: 'because he had been,' etc. B. 337, 2, *f*; A. 292; H. 549, 1. **4. spē māgnisque praemiis**: trans. as if *spē māgnōrum praemiōrum*; hendiadys. B. 374, 4; A. p. 429; H. 636, *III*, 2. **6. ipsi**: *Galli*. **concessās**: 'which had been,' etc. B. 337, 2; A. 292; H. 549, 4. **obsidēs**: as *sēdēs*, object of *habēre*.

7. stipendium . . . belli: just so in 1871, as a result of the Franco-German War, France was obliged to pay her conqueror an indemnity of a thousand million dollars. **8. sibi**: *i.e. Ariovistō*. **10. castra habuisse**: = *pūgnāvisse*. **12. dēcertāre**: 'fight it out.' **ūtī**: 'enjoy'; followed by what case? **iniquum**: agrees with *recūsāre*, 'it was unfair to refuse (to pay) the indemnity.' **13. suā**: 'their own,' of the Gauls; they, however, told a different story. See Chapters 31, 37.

16. oportēre: the subject is *amīcitiā* . . . *esse*. **17. per**: A. 246, *b*; H. 415, *I*, *N*. 1.

20. Quod, etc.: 'in regard to his bringing over.' B. 299, 2; A. 333, *a*; H. 516, *II*, 2, *N*. **22. nisi rogātus**: 'without being asked.' **23. dēfenderit**: 'had acted on the defensive.' **24. populum**: *populus* [*vēnisset*] might have been expected. B. 314, 4; A. 336, *a*, *R*.; H. 524, 1, 2). **26. Quid sibi vellet**: 'What did he (Caesar) mean?' **27. hanc Galliam**: 'this part of Gaul,' *i.e.* towards the Rhine. **28. illam**: 'that part over there.' **Ut**: 'as.' **ipsi**: = *sibi*, *i.e. Ariovistō*. **concedī nōn oportēret**: 'no concession should be made.' **29. nōs**: = *Rōmānōs*.

31. dīceret: sc. *Caesar*. **Quod . . . dīceret:** 'With reference to his saying,' 'As to his harping on the fact.' **sē . . . esse:** '(he would like to inform him) that he,' etc. **32. rērum:** B. 204, 1; A. 218, a; H. 399, 1, 2. **ut nōn scīret:** 'as not to know' (lit., 'that he,' etc.).

Page 145. **1. bellō:** B.C. 61. **2. ipsōs:** *Aeduōs*. **5. Dēbēre suspicārī:** 'had good reason to suspect.' **quod:** conj., 'in that.' **6. habēre:** 'had (it) there,' sc. *eum (exercitum)*; the subject is *Caesarem*.

7. Quī nisi dēcēdat: 'Now if he (does not) should not withdraw.' **8. hoste:** sc. *prō*. **9. Quod,** etc.: *Quod* ('moreover'), *sī tē interfecerō, faciam grātum* ('a thing pleasing'). **10. grātum:** here used as a noun. **11. compertum habēre:** almost = *comperisse*. B. 337, 6; A. 292, c; H. 388, 1, n. **12. ēius:** = *Caesaris*. Whether Ariovistus here spoke the truth or not, he was evidently familiar with the party strifes and jealousies at this time in Roman politics. Caesar's enemies at Rome heard the reports of his successes with ill-concealed alarm.

13. Quod: 'on the other hand.' **15. ēius:** 'on his part.' **16. cōnfectūrum:** the subject is *sē* (= *Ariovistum*). In case Caesar will withdraw, the German king will fight his battles for him. The reply of Ariovistus throughout is spirited and brave, but less defiant than his former answer (Chap. 36).

XLV. 17. in eam sententiam: 'to this effect,' i.e. 'to show.' **18. quā rē:** = *quibus dē causis*. **negōtiō:** B. 214, 2; A. 243; H. 414, 1. Derivation? **posset:** B. 300, 1; A. 334; H. 529, 1.

20. neque: = *et nōn*. **21. esse Ariovistī:** 'belonged to Ariovistus.' B. 198, 3; A. 214, c; H. 402. **22. Arvernōs et Rutēnōs:** conquered 121 B.C. **23. ignōvisset:** the Romans with good reason had 'pardoned' them,—their country, lying beyond the Cévennes Mountains, could have been held only with the greatest difficulty. **25. antiquissimum quodque tempus:** 'priority of time' (lit., 'each earliest period' of possession). B. 252, 5, c; A. 93, c; H. 458, 1. **28. suīs:** 'its own,' referring to the subject of *ūt*.

XLVI. 29. geruntur: B. 293, 1; A. 276, e; H. 467, 4.

Page 146. **1. tumultum:** B. 141, 3; A. 234, e; H. 437, 1. See p. 143, 1, and n. **4. quod omnīnō tēlum:** 'any missile at all.' **5. legiōnis:** 'to the legion.' B. 200; A. 217; H. 396, III. **6. committendum [esse]:** 'that occasion ought to be given'; the subject is *ut*

... *posset*. Cf. B. 297, 2; A. 332, *a*; H. 501, 1. 7. *per fidem*: 'through confidence' in his pledge.

9. *quā arrogantīā fūsus*: 'with what arrogance.' *Galliā Rōmānis*. See note to p. 64, l. 25. 10. *interdixisset*: indir. question. 11. *ut*: 'how.' *dirēmisset*: B. 300, 1; A. 334; H. 529, 1.

XLVII. 14. *Bīduō*: B. 223; A. 250; H. 423, 430. 16. *utī*: '(asking) that.' 17. *cōstitueret*: B. 296, 1; A. 331, *b*; H. 498, 1. *minus*: = *nōn*. *suls*: *Caesaris*. 18. *sē*: = *Ariovistum*.

19. *vīsa nōn est*: 'seemed unreasonable.' *eō magis*: 'all the more for this reason.' 20. *diŕī*: B. 201, 3, *a*; A. 214, *g*; H. 398, 5. *quīn* . . . *conicerent*: 'from hurling.' B. 284, 3; A. 319, *d*; H. 504, 1, *n*. 21. *Lēgātum*: an 'envoy,' not a lieutenant, from 'his own' staff. *sēsē cum periculō missūrum*: i.e. it would be a hazardous thing for him to send, etc.

23. *vīsum est*: *mittere* (l. 29) is subject. 24. *C. Valerī Cabūrī*: see p. 246, l. 1, *n*. to *C. Iūlius Caesar*.

26. *cīvitatē*: 'citizenship.' B. 187, 1, *a*; A. 225, *d*; H. 384, *ii*, 2. The Romans often conferred the distinction of citizenship upon foreigners who had been useful to them. In such cases, frequently the person honored became a client of the Roman through whom citizenship was bestowed, and adopted his gentile name. Thus Procillus took the name of Flaccus. Flaccus was governor of Gaul, 83 *a.c.*

27. *quā multā ūtēbātur*: 'which Ariovistus spoke fluently.' 28. *in eō*: 'in his case.' *peccandī causa*: 'temptation to do wrong.' Procillus being a Gaul, the Germans would neither feel so harshly towards him as towards a Roman, nor have the same object in getting possession of his person. 29. *esset*: B. 323; A. 341, *d*, *n*.; H. 516, *ii*.

Page 147. 4. *Quid*: = *Cūr*. B. 176, 3, *a*; A. 240, *a*; H. 454, 2. *venirent*: B. 300, 1; A. 338, 334; H. 523, *ii*, 1. *an*: 'or (was it) . . . ?' B. 162, 4, *a*; A. 211, *b*; H. 353, 2, *n*. 4. 5. *Cōnantēs*: *sc. eōs*. Ariovistus apparently wished to convey to his army the impression that these men were spies; hence he 'called out loudly' (*con-clāmāvit*) and would not let them speak, in order to forestall any explanation on their part.

XLVIII. 7. *mīlibus*: distance expressed as degree of difference. 8. *Caesaris castris*: Caesar's camp is located by Colonel Stoffel be-

tween Gemar and Ostheim, about 36 miles southwest of Strassburg. See Plan III, a. 9. *diēi*: as p. 146, 20. 10. *castra*: this camp (b on the Plan) probably lay on the low spurs of the Vosges Mountains, which rise from the plain west of Ostheim. In transferring his forces thither, Ariovistus was protected from attack by the low elevations and ridges behind which they could march.

11. *frumentō*: B. 214, 2; A. 243; H. 414. Ariovistus thought to force an engagement on his own ground by cutting off Caesar's supplies. 12. *supportārētur*: subj. by attraction. B. 324, 1; A. 342; H. 529, II, and 529, II, N. 1, 1). 14. *vellet*: B. 324, 1; A. 342; H. 529, II. 15. *ei . . . deesset*: 'he might not lack opportunity.'

16. *diēbus*: B. 231, 1; A. 256, b; H. 379, 1. *castris*: 'within the camp.' B. 228, 1; A. 258, f; H. 425, II, 1, 1). 19. *numerō*: B. 226; A. 253; H. 424. 'quōs, etc.: 'whom they (the cavalymen) had chosen from the entire force (selecting) a man apiece.' B. 81, 4, a; A. 95, a; H. 174, 2, 1), and 172, 3. 21. *versābantur*: 'associated themselves.'

22. *hi*: the foot-soldiers. *si quid*, etc.: 'if there was any serious difficulty'; *dūrius* is nom. neut. *concurrēbant*: 'rushed to their assistance.' *si quī*: = *si quis*. 23. *equō*: B. 214, 2; A. 243, b; H. 414, 1. 24. *si quō erat*, etc.: 'if it was necessary to advance or retreat to any place.' 26. *sublevātī*: 'supporting themselves.' B. 256, 1; A. 111, a; H. 465. *cursum*: taken lit., 'running,' 'galloping.'

XLIX. 27. *eum*: = *Ariovistum*; *sē* is object of *tenēre*. 30. *castris*: B. 192, 1; A. 234, a; H. 391, 1. *locum*: the camp placed here (marked c in the Plan) is called *castra minōra*, to distinguish it from Caesar's first camp, which is called *castra maiōra* (marked a). The two camps were probably between two and three miles apart; both were no doubt on elevations. The purpose of the smaller camp, which was a little more than half a mile from the Germans, was to keep open the road to Vesontio, and so maintain communication with the base of supplies.

Page 148. 4. *hominum . . . expedita*: = *sēdecim milia hominum expeditōrum*. 5. *quae cōpiae*: 'in order that these forces'; *cōpiae* takes the place of the antecedent repeated (*milia*; B. 251, 4, b; A. 201, d; H. 445, 9), the relative being equivalent to *ut eae*. B. 282, 2; A. 317, 2; H. 497, 1. 6. *Nihilō sētius*: 'none the less.' B. 223; A. 250; H. 417, 2.

L. 10. Institūtō suō: 'in accordance with his plan.' B. 220, 3; A. 253, n.; H. 416 and 416, n. 2. **12. potestātem fēcit**: 'gave an opportunity.' **15. quae**: *ut ea*.

21. esset: B. 323; A. 341, d; H. 516, II. **22. sortibus**: the Germans drew lots in this way. Having lopped off a bough from a fruit-bearing tree, they cut it up into small pieces, which were marked in different ways and scattered at random over a white cloth. The person drawing the lot looked upward, took up each bit of wood three times, and found in it a meaning according to the mark previously impressed. **vāticinātiōnibus**: these 'predictions' were drawn from 'the eddies of rivers and the whirlings and noises of currents' (Plut. *Caes.* xix). **dēclārārent**: B. 297, 3; A. 332, f; H. 501, III. **utrum . . . necne**: B. 162, 4; A. 211; H. 353, n. 3. **23. ex ūsū**: 'expedient.' **24. fās**: 'the divine will.' **ante novam lūnam**: it has been computed that the 'new moon' for which the Germans were waiting became visible September 18. Many people now will not commence certain kinds of work "in the old of the moon."

LI. 26. diēi: as p. 146, 20. **27. ālārīōs**: = *auxilia*, the light-armed troops, called *ālārī* because usually stationed on the wings (*ālāe*). **29. minus . . . valēbat**: 'was weaker.'

Page 149. 1. ad speciem: 'for show,' in order to hide from the enemy his real weakness in infantry; Ariovistus would take the *ālārīōs* for *legiōnārīōs*. **triplici aciē**: the front formed by the six legions was about a mile and a half long. In Plan III only two cohorts are shown in the rear line, on the assumption that one cohort was drawn off from each legion for guard duty (*praesidiō castris*, p. 148, 26). **4. intervallis**: B. 221; A. 248, n.; H. 419, III. **Harūdēs**, etc.: locate all these from the map. **6. raedis**: the *raeda* had four wheels, and was usually provided with a strong leather covering, much resembling the gypsy wagons of to-day. **7. Eō**: 'thereon' (see note to p. 142, l. 25) upon the wagons and carts.

LII. 10. singulōs . . . quaestōrem: Caesar put a lieutenant each over five of the six legions, the *quaestor* over the other, with the special purpose of noting and encouraging praiseworthy conduct; he himself was confined closely with the right wing. **12. eam partem . . . hostium**: the left wing of the enemy, opposite the Roman right. **13. Ita**: modifies *ācritēr*. **15. spatium**: = *tempus*. **16. coniciendī**: dep. on *spatium*. If this were changed to the gerundive, what form would *pīla* take?

18. phalange: see note to p. 129, 11. **19. complūrēs**: 'in many cases.' B. 239; A. 191; H. 443. **insillirent**: B. 283, 2; A. 320, a; H. 503, 1. **20. dēsuper**: in hand-to-hand fighting the Roman soldiers, usually stooping slightly, ran one edge of their shields under the shields of the enemy, and wounded him from underneath, as they could do while still protected by their arms. But in this case Caesar's men, in their eagerness, rushed on the foe, sprang up and pulled back the enemy's shields from the top, and stabbed with their short swords from above.

21. ā sinistrō cornū: 'on the left wing' of the Germans. **23. Pāblius Crassus**: son of the triumvir. He is called *adulēscēns* and *adulēscētulus*; but his exact age is not known. Three years later Caesar entrusted him with an important command. **24. expeditior**: 'more disengaged,' so that he had an opportunity to look about and see where help was most needed. **25. inter aciem**: 'at the front.' **tertiam aciem**: the rear line waited as a reserve force till called into action. **26. nostris subsidiō**: B. 191, 2, b; A. 233, a; H. 390, 11.

LIII. 29. Rhēnum, etc.: the Germans probably followed the valley of the river Ill, and came to the Rhine about fifty miles northeast of the scene of battle. **30. vīribus**: B. 219, 1; A. 254, b; H. 425, 11, 1, 1), n.

Page 150. 3. eā: 'in it,' not 'with it.' Ariovistus seems to have died not long after. **4. equitēs**: what were the principal uses of cavalry in the Roman army? See p. 23. **interfēcōrunt**: Plutarch gives the number of the slain as 80,000.

5. Duae uxōrēs: the Germans generally had but one wife. **nātiōne**: B. 226; A. 253; H. 424. **7. dūxerat**: = *in mātīmōnium dūxerat*; but *dūxerat* in l. 6 means 'had brought.' **8. filiae**: sc. *fuērunt*. **altera**: B. 253, 1; A. 203, a; H. 459.

9. Procillus: see p. 146, 23 *et seq.* **trīnis**: instead of *tribus*, because *catēnae* is a pl. word; 'three sets of chains.' B. 81, 4, b; A. 95, b; H. 172, 3. **10. vinctus**: principal parts of *vinciō*, *vincō*, and *vivō*? **11. incidit in**: 'fell in the way of.' **quidem**: what is its regular position? **13. honestissimum**: 'most honorable'; never trans. *honestus* (from *honor*) by 'honest.' **14. hospitem**: the relation of host and guest was considered a more firm and lasting bond by the ancients than by us. **ēreptum, restitūtum**: is *esse* understood?

15. ōsus: Procillī. calamitāte: *i.e. morte.* **17. ter**: a sacred number; cf. note to p. 148, 22. **cōsultum**: sc. *esse*; *impers.* **utrum**: '(to decide) whether.' **19. eum**: = *Caesarem*.

LIV. 21. Rhēnum: B. 141, 3; A. 234, *e*; H. 437, 1. **Suēbī . . . vēnerant:** see p. 138, 5-8. **25. ūnā aestāte:** the defeat of Ariovistus took place about Sept. 10; that of the Helvetii, the last of June or the earlier part of July. Thus, with not over 35,000 soldiers, including the cavalry and light-armed troops, Caesar had overwhelmed several hundred thousand Gauls and Germans, whose fighting force must have been several times as large as his. There is in history no more marked instance of the victory of organization, discipline, and generalship, over numbers, barbaric courage, and brute force.

26. hiberna: see INTRO., p. 21. **27. in Sēquanōs:** how rendered here? **28. citeriōrem:** = *Cisalpinam*. Caesar's point of view is Rome. **ad conventūs agendōs:** 'to hold court.' The governor of a province from time to time visited the principal cities to administer justice. Caesar's chief object in going up into Cisalpine Gaul, however, was doubtless to get as near Rome as the law allowed, in order to watch the course of events there.

NOTES TO CAESAR, BOOK II.

i. THE CAMPAIGN AGAINST THE BELGAE. I-XXXIII. B.C. 57.

Page 151. Chapter I. 1. esset: B. 288, 1, *B*; A. 323, 325; H. 521, 11, 2. **citeriōre Galliā:** cf. p. 150, 28 and note. B. 143; A. 152, *c*; H. 435, *n*. 1. **ita utī:** 'just as.' **suprā:** in Book I., Chap. 54; so we use the word "above" when referring to the preceding part of a work. **2. dēmōstrāvimus:** the editorial "we." B. 242, 3; A. 98, 1, *b*; H. 446, *n*. 2. Caesar the *writer* sometimes speaks in the first person, but always presents Caesar the *doer* in the third. **crēbrī:** 'frequently,' agrees with *rūmōrēs*, but has the force of an adverb. B. 239; A. 191; H. 443. **afferēbantur:** force of the imperfect? B. 260, 2; A. 115, 2, *b*; H. 469, 11. **litterīs:** B. 218; A. 248, *c*; H. 420.

3. Labiēnī: see note to p. 120, 3. **certior fīēbat:** see Vocab. **Belgās:** see p. 114, 6-11, and Map; also Motley's Rise of the Dutch Republic, Intro., §§ 11 and 111. **quam:** subject of *esse*, = *quōs*, being attracted to the fem. sing. to agree with *partem*. B. 250, 3; A. 199; H. 445, 4. Trans., 'who, we had said, form (lit., 'are') the third part of Gaul.' Caesar puts the name of the people for that of their country. **4. esse:** B. 331, 1; A. 330, 1; H. 535, 1 and 2. **partem:** why acc.? B. 167, 168; A. 185; H. 362. **dixerāmus:** plup., because

Caesar looks upon the preceding book, in which the statement occurs (Chap. 1), as a finished work.

5. **coniūrāre, dare**: in dir. disc., *coniūrant, dant*. B. 314; A. 336; H. 523, 1. **obsidēs**: note to p. 119, 20. **inter sē dare**: 'were exchanging.' **Coniūrandī**: dep. on *causās*. B. 338, 1, a; A. 297, 298; H. 542, 1. This uprising of the Belgae, looked upon by Caesar as a "conspiracy," was in reality the natural effort of a spirited people to defend their liberty. They saw clearly that Caesar would seize upon the first pretext to invade their country; and they were justified in preparing to meet the aggressor. They fought heroically, and it was by no means to their discredit that they were finally conquered; they were pitted against the best discipline and generalship of the age.

6. **causās**: with *esse*, in indir. disc., after *certior fiēbat*; 'the causes were as follows' (lit., 'these'), the different causes being introduced by *primum, deinde, and etiam*. **verērentur, (8) sollicitārentur**: 'because (as they said) they were afraid,' etc. **nō**: 'that.' B. 296, 2; A. 331, f; H. 498, III, n. 1. **omnī pācātā Galliā** = *sī Gallia omnis pācātā esset*. B. 305, 1, and 227, 2, b; A. 255, 310; H. 431, 507, III, n. 7. By **Galliā**, not 'Gaul,' but only the central part, *Gallia Celtica*, the land of the *Galli* (p. 114, 3) is meant.

7. **noster**: see note to p. 114, 3. 8. **nōn nullīs Galliīs**: 'some of the Gauls.' **quī**: subject of *ferēbant*; for antecedent sc. *eīs (Galliīs)*, 'partly (those) who.' **ut . . . ita**: 'as . . . so.' 9. **Germānōs . . . versārī**: B. 331, IV; A. 330, 3 and R.; H. 535, II.

11. **molestē ferēbant**: see Vocab. In *ferēbant*, as in the following indicatives, the subj. might have been expected, as embodying part of the information conveyed by Labienus, and hence following the rule for subordinate clauses in indir. disc. The indic. is more emphatic, and shows that the statements reported were accepted by Caesar as true. **mōbili-tāte, levitāte**: B. 219; A. 245; H. 416. 12. **novīs imperiīs**: 'a change of rule.' B. 187, II, a; A. 227, 3; H. 385. **nōn nullīs**: i.e. powerful nobles; sc. *sollicitārentur*.

13. **ā potentiōribus**: 'by the more powerful.' B. 236; A. 188; H. 441. **ad condūcendōs hominēs**: 'for hiring men,' mercenary soldiers. B. 339, 1; A. 296; H. 543 and 544, 1. 14. **occupābantur**: 'were seized upon.' On the state of Gaul at this time see INTRO., p. 25, and cf. p. 124, 16-23. 15. **minus facile**: 'not so easily.' **imperiō nostrō**: 'under our sovereignty'; abl. of time and cause. **poterant**: 'would be able.'

II. 16. nūntiis, litteris: B. 219; A. 245, *b*; H. 416, *i*, 2), *n*. 1. **duās legiōnēs:** the *xiii*th and *xiv*th. Caesar had now eight legions, numbered *vii* to *xiv*, inclusive. **17. initā aestāte:** B. 227, 2, *a*; A. 255; H. 431. **18. quī dēdūceret:** *sc. eās*, 'in order to conduct (them).' **lēgātum:** B. 169, 1, 2; A. 184; H. 363. Pedius was a great-nephew of Caesar.

19. pābuli cōpia: for the numerous beasts of burden that carried the military stores, as well as for the horses of the cavalry and the officers. **inciperet:** B. 288, 1, *B*; A. 325, 323; H. 521, *ii*, 2. **20. exercitum:** the army was probably at Vesontio, the chief city of the Sequani, for which see Vocab. and map opp. p. 114. **Dat negotium:** 'directed.' B. 259, 3; A. 276, *d*; H. 467, *iii*. **reliquis:** cf. note to p. 114, 12.

21. Belgis: B. 192, 1; A. 234, *a*; H. 391, *i*. **22. gerantur:** B. 324, 1; A. 342; H. 529, *ii*. **cognōscant, faciant:** B. 296, 1; A. 331; H. 498, 1. **sē . . . certiōrem faciant:** 'inform him.' Why is *sē* used? B. 244, *ii*; A. 196, *a*; H. 449, *i*.

Page 152. 1. cōstanter: without disagreement in their reports. **manūs:** 'bodies of troops,' among the Belgae. **2. locum:** why not abl. ? **dubitandum,** etc.: *sc. esse sibi*, 'that he ought not to delay about setting out.' The infin. of the pass. periphrastic conj. is often used impersonally; in such cases *esse* is usually omitted. B. 337, 7; A. 113, *d*; H. 234. **3. eōs: Belgās.** **proficiscerētur:** B. 284, 3; A. 319, *d*; H. 504, 3, 2). **Rē . . . comparātā:** abl. abs., 'having provided for.' **4. castra movet:** see Vocab. **diēbus:** B. 230; A. 256; H. 429. **circiter:** adv. with *quīndecim*.

III. 6. Eō = ad finēs Belgārum. **imprōvisō:** abl. sing. neut. of the adj. used as a noun; with *dē* forming an adverbial phrase like the English colloquial phrase "of a sudden," "all of a sudden," *i.e.* 'unexpectedly.' **celerius omni opinione:** 'more quickly than any one had expected' (lit., 'than every expectation'). B. 217, 4; A. 247; H. 417. **7. vēnisset:** B. 286, 2; A. 326; H. 517. **Rēmi:** see Vocab. and Map. **Galliae:** B. 192, 1; A. 234, *a*; H. 391, *i*. The land of the *Celtae* or *Galli* is meant; see p. 114, 2-3. **ex Belgis = inter Belgās.** **8. primōs:** 'the chief men.' B. 236; A. 188; H. 441. **civitātis:** of the Remi.

9. quī dicerent: 'to say.' **sē, etc.:** indir. disc. to the end of the chapter, dep. on *dicerent*. **sē suaque:** see Vocab. **in fidem:** 'to the protection.'

10. *permittere*: sc. *sē* as subject of this and the following infin. ***neque*:** trans. as if *et nōn*. B. 341, 1, 2; A. 156, *a*; H. 554, 1, 2. **11. *coniūrāsse*:** = *coniūrāvisse*. B. 116; A. 128, *a*; H. 235. **12. *parātōs*:** adj., in pred. ***et . . . et*:** 'both . . . and.' ***dare, facere, recipere*** [eum], ***iuvāre*** [eum]: after *esse parātōs*. B. 325; A. 273, *b*; H. 533, 11, 3. **13. *oppidīs*:** B. 228, 1; A. 258, *f*; H. 425, 2, n. 2. Difference between *oppida* and *vicī*? See note to p. 117, 3. ***frūmentō, rēbus*:** B. 218; A. 248, *c*; H. 420. **14. *cis Rhēnum*:** the west side of the Rhine; Caesar writes from the point of view of the Roman Province. **15. *incolant*:** what mood in dir. disc.? ***hīs*:** = *Belgīs*.

16. *eōrum omnium*: *Belgārum et Germānōrum*. ***nē . . . quidem*:** 'not even.' B. 347; A. 151, *e*; H. 569, 111, 2. Notice that the emphatic word always stands between *nē* and *quidem*. ***Suessiōnēs*:** object of *dēterrere*. ***frātrēs*:** case? B. 169, 1, 2; A. 184; H. 363. **17. *iūre, lēgibus*:** B. 218, 1; A. 249; H. 421, 1. *Iūs* means 'principles of justice,' as distinguished from *lēgēs*, enacted 'laws.' ***isdem*:** = *eisdem*. **19. *potuerint, cōnsentirent*:** B. 284, 3; A. 319, *d*; H. 500, 11. ***quīn cōnsentirent*:** 'from uniting.'

IV. 20. *Cum*: temporal, causal, or concessive? ***hīs*:** the chief men of the Remi, who had given Caesar the information stated in the preceding chapter. ***quae*:** B. 90, 2; A. 104, *a*; H. 188, 11, 1. **21. *essent*:** B. 300, 1; A. 334; H. 529, 1. ***quid . . . possent*:** 'what power they had' (lit., 'to what extent they were able'). B. 176, 3, *a*; A. 148, *d*, 240, *a*; H. 304, 1, 3, 371, 11, (2).

22. *Plērōsque*: indir. disc. to *sūmerent* (l. 28), dep. on *reperiēbat*. The infinitives representing principal clauses of dir. disc., are *esse oriōs, cōnsēdisse, expulisse, esse, fieri*. ***Belgās*:** perhaps originally a Keltic people; probably because of nearness to the Germans, Germanic elements were gradually infused into the race and speech. The tradition here given by Caesar may be accepted as trustworthy for a part of the Belgae, but not for the people as a whole. The subject is one of much difficulty. ***Germānis*:** B. 215, 2; A. 244, *a*, *r*.; H. 313. ***Rhēnum*:** dep. on *trā(ns)* in *trā-ductōs*. B. 179, 1; A. 239, *b*; H. 376, *n*.

23. *ibi*: west of the Rhine, in Gaul. **24. *sōlōs*:** in pred., 'the only (people of Gaul), who.' **25. *memoriā*:** abl. of time within which. ***Galliā vexatā*:** B. 227, 2, *a*; A. 255; H. 431; trans. by a clause beginning with 'when.' ***Teutonōs, Cimbros*:** see note to p. 140, 13. **26. *prohibuerint*:** subj. also in dir. disc. B. 283, 2; A. 320, *b*; H. 503, 11, 1; 'prevented the Teutons and Cimbri from entering.'

quā ex rē: 'and from this fact.' B. 251, 6; A. 180, *f*; H. 453.
27. fieri: the subject is the clause *ut . . . sūmerent*. B. 284, 297, 2;
 A. 319, 332, *a*; H. 501, 1, 1. **memoriā**: B. 219; A. 245; H. 416.
28. rē militārī: 'the art of war.' **sūmerent**: *sūmant* in dir. disc.;
 the sequence of tenses here requires the impf.

29. Dē: indir. disc. to the end of the chapter. **eōrum**: *Belgārum*.
omnia habēre explōrāta: almost = *omnia explōrāvisse*; 'had found
 out everything.' **30. propterea quod**: note to p. 114, 6. **pro-**
pinquitātibus affinitātibusque: 'relations arising from nearness and
 from intermarriage.'

Page 153. 1. quisque: *i.e.* each member of the war-council, each
 delegate or representative. **2. pollicitus sit**: B. 300, 1; A. 334; H.
 529, 1. **cognōverint**: B. 314; A. 336; H. 524.

3. Plūrimum . . . valēre: cf. note to p. 116, 15. **virtūte**, etc.:
 B. 226; A. 253; H. 424. **4. cōficere**: 'muster.' **armāta milia**:
 = *milia hominum armātōrum*. **5. ēlēcta sexāgintā**: *sc. milia*, 'sixty
 thousand picked men.' **tōtius**: how declined? **6. sibi**: refers to
 the *Bellovāci*; but *suōs* refers back to the subject of *dicebant*, the *Rēmī*.
 B. 244, 1, 11; A. 196; H. 449, 1. **7. possidēre**: *sc. eōs* (*Suessiōnēs*).

9. cum . . . tum: 'not only . . . but also.' B. 290, 2; A. 155, 1, *a*;
 H. 554, 1, 5. **10. regiōnum**: dep. on *partis*, which limits *im-*
perium. **Britanniae**: not the whole of Britain, probably only a
 portion of the island along the southeast coast. **obtinerit**: why
 subj.? **11. esse rēgem Galbam**: 'there was a king (by the name
 of) Galba'; note to p. 117, 14.

13. habēre: *sc. Suessiōnēs*. **numerō**: B. 226; A. 253; H. 424.
14. totidem: *sc. milia armāta pollicērī*. **Nerviōs**, etc.: for the
 Nervii, Bellovaci, Ambiani, Morini, Menapii, and Aduatuci, see Vocab.
 and map opp. p. 114. **māximē ferī**: in pred. B. 74; A. 89, *d*; H.
 170. **habeantur, absint**: B. 314; A. 336; H. 524. Caesar here uses
 the pres. tense where the impf. would have been more regular. In vivid
 narration the tenses that the speaker used are sometimes retained in
 indir. disc.

15. Atrebātēs: *sc. pollicērī*. See map opp. p. 114, and Vocab.
18. decem et novem: in what other ways may 'nineteen' be ex-
 pressed in Latin? See B. 79, 81, 2; A. 94; H. 174, and cf. p. 45, l. 19.
Condrūsōs, Eburōnēs, Caerōsōs, Caemanōs: small states, or tribes,

in the Ardennes (Arduenna) region; see Map. opp. p. 114. **19. ūnō** : 'a common.' **Germānī** : B. 168, 2, *b*; A. 185; H. 362, 373. **appellantur** : why indic. ? **20. arbitrārī** : sc. *sē posse cōficere*.

V. 21. liberāliter, etc. : 'having sought (to strengthen their attachment) by a gracious speech.' **22. senātum** : Caesar applies the name of a Roman institution to a Gallic body of counsellors. B. 331, 11; A. 330, 2; H. 535, 11. **23. obsidēs** : B. 169, 1, 2; A. 184; H. 363. **Quae** : 'And these things.' B. 251, 6; A. 180, *f*; H. 453. **24. ad diem** : 'at the appointed time,' as we say 'to a day,' 'to the minute.' **Diviciācum** : to be distinguished from the Diviciacus mentioned in l. 8 above; see Vocab.

25. quantō opere . . . intersit : 'how important it is.' **rei publicae** [*i.e. Rōmānōrum*], **salūtis** : B. 211, 1; A. 222; H. 406, 111; indir. disc. to *coeperint*, dep. on *docet*. **commūnis** : *i.e.* to the Romans and the Aedui. **26. intersit** : B. 300, 1; A. 334; H. 529, 1. The subject is *manūs distīnērī*. **nē . . . cōfligendum sit** : 'that they might not be obliged to fight.' B. 282; A. 317; H. 497, 11. **27. Id** : refers to *manūs distīnērī*. **28. posse . . . intrōdūxerint, coeperint** : B. 319, A, B, *a*; A. 337; H. 527, 1. **29. populārī** : B. 328, 1; A. 271; H. 533, 1, 1.

Page 154. 1. cōpiās : difference in meaning between the sing. and the pl. of this word ? **2. vidit** : = *intellēxit*, just as we often use the word "see" of things we understand, but do not really see with the eyes. B. 287, 1; A. 324; H. 518. **neque** : = *et nōn*. **abesse** : dep. on *cognōvit*; sc. *eās (cōpiās)*. **eīs** : with *explōrātōribus*. **3. flūmen, exercitum** : B. 179, 1; A. 239, *b*; H. 376. **Axonam** : see map opp. p. 114.

4. extrēmīs finibus : 'the furthest part of the territory.' B. 241, 1; A. 193; H. 440, 2, *x*. 1. **5. ibi** : the camp was on the north bank of the Aisne, about a mile northeast of the village of Berry-au-Bac. See Plan IV. **castra posuit** : see Vocab. **Quae rēs** : 'Now this position' or 'location.' B. 251, 6; A. 200, *e*; H. 453.

6. rīpīs : B. 218; A. 248, *c*; H. 420. **post . . . reddēbat** : = 'made the rear secure.' **7. quae** : supply *ea loca* as object of *reddēbat*. **commeātīs** : pl., because the supplies were furnished by more than one state. B. 353, 1. **9. efficiēbat**, etc. : 'made it possible for supplies to be brought,' etc. B. 297, 1; A. 331, *e*; H. 501, 11, 1. **In** : 'over.' **erat** : 'there was'; note to p. 117, 14.

10. praesidium: marked **G** on the plan; traces of fortifications have been discovered at Berry-au-Bac. **in alterā parte**: 'on the other side,' i.e. on the south bank of the Aisne, opposite Berry-au-Bac. See Plan IV, **C**. Caesar now had both ends of the bridge well guarded, thus being able to get provisions from his allies across the river without trouble, to set a watch on the movements of the Remi, the sincerity of whose professions of loyalty was hardly beyond question, and to keep open an avenue of retreat in case of disaster.

12. pedum: B. 203, 2; A. 215, b; H. 396, v. **vallō, fossā**: why abl.? **duodēviginti**: eighteen feet broad, measured across the top; the trench was probably about ten feet deep. Excavations, made in 1802, brought to light traces of this rampart and trench.

VI. 14. his castris: 'this camp'; why pl.? **nōmine**: B. 226; A. 253; H. 424. **Bibrax**: B. 169, 1, 2; A. 184; H. 363. See map opp. p. 114. **15. milia passuum**: see note to p. 115, 23. B. 181, 1; A. 257; H. 379. **ex itinere**: on their way to Caesar the Belgae stopped to attack Bibrax. **16. diēs**: B. 230; A. 256; H. 429. When is *diēs* fem.? B. 53; A. 73; H. 123, exception. **17. eadem atque**: 'just the same as.' B. 341, 1, c; H. 451, 5. **oppugnātiō**: how different from *obsidiō*? Cf. p. 23.

18. haec: 'as follows.' B. 246, 2; H. 450, 3. **circumiectā multitudīne**: B. 227, 2, a; A. 255; H. 431. **tōtis moenibus**: 'the entire (circuit of) fortifications.' B. 187, III; A. 228; H. 386, 2. **19. mūrus**: how different in meaning from *moenia*? **20. dēfēnsōribus**: B. 214; A. 243; H. 413. **testūdine factā**: abl. abs., 'having formed a testudo,' by holding their shields close together above their heads, just as the Romans were accustomed to do in storming a town. **succedunt**: this is the reading of the MSS.; many editions have *succēdunt*. Trans. 'attempt to burn the gates and undermine,' etc.; the present tense is sometimes used of actions attempted but never completed. B. 259, 2; A. 276, b; H. 467, 6.

21. Quod: 'Now this.' In the preceding sentence Caesar spoke of the usual Gallic mode of conducting an attack on a city; he now applies the general statement to the particular instance at hand, the storming of Bibrax. **22. conicerent**: pl. from the idea of *homīnēs* in *multitūdō*. B. 286, 2; A. 326; H. 517. **cōnsistendī**: B. 338, 1, a; A. 298; H. 542, 1. **23. nulli**: B. 190; A. 231; H. 387. How declined? B. 66; A. 83; H. 151, 1. Trans. 'no one was able to stand' (lit., 'no

one had the power of standing'). **fēcisset**: B. 288, 1, *B*; A. 325; H. 521, II, 2.

24. summā nōbilitāte: B. 224; A. 251; H. 419, II. **grātiā**: 'popularity.' **inter suōs**: 'among his people.' B. 236; A. 188; H. 441 and 449, 4. **25. oppidō**: B. 187, III; A. 228; H. 386. **praefuerat**: with *tum* = *praepositus erat et tum praeerat*. **ex eīs**: = *eōrum*. **lēgātī**: pred. appositive, 'as envoys.' **26. eum**: *Caesarem*. **27. sibi, sēsē**: refer to whom? **summittātur**: force of *sub* in composition? **sustinēre**: here intrans.

VII. 28. Eō: toward Bibrax. **dē mediā nocte**: 'about midnight.' **Isdem** (= *eisdem*): here used as a noun. B. 218, 1; A. 249; H. 421, I. **ducibus**: 'as guides'; why abl.? **29. Numidās**: see Vocab. **30. subsidiō, oppidānis**: B. 191, 2, *b*; A. 233, *a*; H. 390, II. **mittit**: B. 259, 3; A. 276, *d*.

Page 155. 1. **et . . . et**: B. 341, 3; A. 155, 1, *a*; H. 554, I, 5. **cum spē dēfēnsiōnis**: 'together with the hope of being able to hold the town' (lit., 'hope of defence'). **prōpūgnandī**: B. 338, 1, *a*; A. 298; H. 542, I.

2. accessit: = *auctum est*. **hostibus**: B. 188, 1; A. 235; H. 385, II, 2. **eādē dē causā**: 'for the same reason.' **potiundī**: = *potiendī*. B. 116, 2; H. 239. **potiundī oppidī**: B. 339, 1; A. 296; H. 544, 2, *n*. 5. **3. morātī**: sc. *hostēs*. **4. vicīs**, etc.: B. 227, 2, *a*; A. 255; H. 431. See note to p. 117, 3. **quōs**: why masc.? B. 250, 2; H. 445, 3, *n*. 1.

5. cōpīs: B. 222, 1; A. 248, *a*; H. 419, III, 1, 1). **6. castra**: see Plan IV, where the camp of the Belgae is marked **D D D**, that of Caesar, **A**. **7. quae**: 'and this.' B. 251, 6; A. 180, *f*; H. 453. **8. mīlibus**: abl. of measure. B. 217, 3; A. 247, *c*; H. 417, 1, *n*. 2.

VIII. 9. primō: difference in meaning and use between *primō*, *primum*, and *primus*? **10. opiniōnem virtūtis**: B. 200; A. 217; H. 396, III. **proeliō**: a regular engagement, as distinguished from a skirmish. B. 214; A. 243; H. 414, I.

11. equestribus proeliis: 'skirmishes with cavalry,' 'cavalry skirmishes.' **quid . . . posset**: 'what mettle the enemy had,' 'the mettle of the enemy' (lit., 'what the enemy could in the way of valor'). **quid**: neut. acc. used adverbially. B. 176, 2, *a*; A. 148, *d*, 240, *a*; H. 378, 2, and 371, II, (2). **12. posset, auderent**: B. 300, 1; A. 334; H. 529, I. **periclitābātur**: 'kept trying (to find out).' B. 260, 3;

A. 115, b; H. 469, II. **13. locō . . . opportūnō atque idōneō :** = *cum* ('since') *locus opportūnus atque idōneus esset*. B. 227, 2, d; A. 225, d, n.; H. 431, 2, (3). **aciem instruendam :** B. 339, 2; A. 296; H. 544, 1. **14. atque :** B. 341, 1, c; A. 156, a; H. 554, 1, 2.

15. ubi : = *in quō*. The clause **quod . . . redibat** explains the reason implied in the preceding abl. abs. **castra :** see note to p. 154, 5, and Plan IV, A. One side of the camp was guarded by the river Aisne (see p. 154, 5-9), the bed of which in Caesar's time is indicated on the plan by dotted lines. Northwest of the camp, on the opposite side of a marsh, through which the Miette brook runs, was a chain of heights on which the Belgae were encamped. Directly in front of the Roman camp, the hill on which it was situated extended out just far enough to give room to draw up the army, then sloped down gently to the plain. On the side of the camp lying toward the river, and the side opposite to this, the slope of the hill was more steep. Starting, therefore, from opposite corners of the camp, Caesar prolonged two lines of intrenchments at right angles to the sides, each about a third of a mile in length. One ran down the south slope of the hill, toward the Aisne, the other down the north slope, toward the Miette brook; they are indicated on the plan by red lines. At the ends of these intrenchments he constructed redoubts (marked **B B** on the plan), where he stationed troops, with military engines. His purpose was to guard against a flank movement on the part of the enemy, by which they might reach the rear of the camp, and attack from behind while his forces were engaged in front.

16. adversus : = 'on the side toward the enemy' (lit., 'turned toward' the enemy). **quantum :** object of *occupāre*. **tantum . . . quantum loci :** 'just so much space as.' B. 201, 2; A. 216, a, 3; H. 397, 3. **17. ex utrāque parte :** 'on each side.' **lateris dīfectūs :** = 'a steep slope' (lit., 'down-sinkings of the side'). **18. lēniter . . . redibat :** the slope was gradual down to the plain. **19. trānsversam fossam :** 'an intrenchment at right angles' to the direction of the hill. The greatest length of the hill was in the general direction of east to west; see Plan IV.

21. ad extrēmās fossās : 'at the ends of the intrenchments.' **tormenta :** what were the principal military engines of the Romans? Study INTRO., p. 24. **22. instrūxisset :** B. 288, 1, B; A. 325; H. 521, II, 2. **quod . . . poterant :** 'because they were so strong in numbers.' Cf. note to *quid*, I. 11. **23. multitudīne :** abl. of cause. **ab lateribus :** 'on the flanks.' **suōs :** i.e. *mīlites Rōmānōs*.

24. legiōnibus: with *relictis*. The **xiii**th and **xiv**th legions had been enrolled the previous spring in Cisalpine Gaul; see p. 151, 16-19. Caesar generally exposed his veterans to the brunt of the battle, leaving recruits, whose powers had not been fully tested, as a reserve force.

25. si quō: 'if anywhere.' **opus esset:** see Vocab. **esset:** why not *sit*? **subsidiō:** dat. of purpose, 'as a reserve force.'

26. prō castris: the line of battle was drawn up on the northwest slope of the hill, facing the marsh and the Miette brook. **in aciē:** what was the usual battle order of the Romans? See **INTRO.**, p. 22.

27. ēductās instrūxerant: 'had led forth and drawn up.' **B.** 336, 3; **A.** 292, **R.**; **H.** 549, 5. On Plan IV the forces of the Belgae are indicated by black lines.

Page 156. IX. 1. Palū: the low ground through which the Miette flows. See Plan IV. **erat:** 'there was'; note to p. 117, 14.

2. Hanc: palūdem. **si:** '(to see) whether.' **B.** 300, 3; **A.** 334, *f*; **H.** 529, **II**, 1, **N.** 1. **transirent:** subj. of indir. question.

3. Order, *nostrī autem parātī in armīs erant, ut, si ab illis initium transeundi (palūdem) fieret, (eōs, the enemy engaged in crossing over, hence at a disadvantage) impeditōs aggrederebantur. fieret:* **B.** 324, 1; **A.** 342; **H.** 529, **II**. **4. aggrederebantur:** **B.** 282; **A.** 317; **H.** 497, **II**.

5. neutri: each side was waiting for the other to assume the offensive. **6. secundiōre proeliō:** **B.** 227, 1; **A.** 255, *a*; **H.** 431, 4. **nostris:** why dat.? **7. redūxit:** force of *re-*?

9. dēmōnstrātum est: see p. 154, 5-9. **10. eō cōnsiliō:** 'with this design,' abl. of cause. **possent, expūgnārent:** cf. *fieret, aggrederebantur* (**II**. 3, and 4) and notes. **11. castellum:** on the south bank of the Aisne; see p. 154, 9-11, and Plan IV, **C**.

12. pontem: the bridge across the Aisne, guarded at the north end by a garrison (*praesidium*, Plan IV, **G**), and at the south end by the redoubt under the command of Q. Titurius Sabinus. The Belgae wished to destroy this bridge in order to cut off Caesar's supplies and make retreat difficult for him. **minus:** = *nōn*. Notice the distinction of time in **possent**, 'if they should be able,' and **potuissent**, 'if (having made the attempt) they should have been unable.' **13. populārentur, prohibērent:** sc. *ut*. **nōbis ūsuī:** **B.** 191, 2, *a*; **A.** 233, *a*; **H.** 390, 1. **14. commeātū:** **B.** 214; **A.** 243; **H.** 414, 1.

X. 15. certior factus: 'on being informed.' The cavalry of the Belgae were trying to cross the Aisne, probably a mile or two west of

the bridge, in order to avoid the marsh and the Miette brook. See Plan IV. **equitātum, pontem**: B. 179, 1; A. 239, *b*; H. 376. As Caesar's camp was south of the Miette and east of the bridge, he could send his cavalry across the bridge without danger of interference, and from the south side of the Aisne attack the enemy in the act of crossing.

17. eo loco: the engagement probably took place between the mouth of the Miette and the site of the modern village of Pontavert; see the mark of crossed swords on the Plan. Those of the Belgae who had already crossed were cut down where they were; many were slain in the stream; the rest were driven back to their camp. **19. per**: 'over.'

The Belgians were brave fighters; cf. note to p. 151, 5, *Coniūrandī*.

21. equitātū: looked upon as instrument; how is agency expressed in Latin? **circumventōs interfēcērunt**: 'surrounded and killed.'

B. 336, 3; A. 292, *x*.; H. 549, 5.

23. Hostēs: *i.e.* the main body of the enemy, that had remained in battle array facing the Roman legions, while a detachment (*partem suarum cōpiarum*, l. 9), having tried to cross the river, were being destroyed by Caesar's cavalry and light-armed troops. **oppidō**: Bibrax.

B. 339, 2; A. 301; H. 544, 2. **24. spem se fefellisse**: 'that they had been disappointed in their expectation' (lit., 'that their expectation had cheated them'). **neque**: = *et nōn*.

25. iniquiorem: 'quite unfavorable position,' or 'less favorable position' than that where the legions were drawn up. Caesar's tactics had the desired effect of checking the enemy. **causā**: 'for the sake of.'

26. ipsōs: *hostēs*. As the Gauls for the most part engaged only in short campaigns, their arrangements for supplies were very defective. It is a maxim of modern warfare that "the way to victory lies through the soldier's stomach." Caesar, as all great generals, paid the most careful attention to the provisioning of his army.

27. optimum: in pred. H. 42, II, *x*. The subject of **esse** is *quemque reverē*. **domum**: B. 182, 1, *b*; A. 258, *b*; H. 380, II, 2, 1).

28. intrōdūxissent: B. 314; A. 336; H. 524. **29. convenirent**:

in dir. disc., *convenīte*, or *conveniāmus*. B. 316; A. 339; H. 523, III. The clause (*ut*) . . . *conveniērent* follows *cōstituērunt* as embodying the decree, and is made coördinate with *esse*, etc., by *et*. *Cōstituō* is followed sometimes by the infin., sometimes by the subj.; rarely, as here, by both in the same sentence.

30. aliēnis: = *aliōrum*, 'of others,' as opposed to *domesticis*, 'their own.' **dēcertārent, ūterentur**: in how many ways may a purpose

be expressed in Latin? **cōpīs**: not 'forces' here. B. 218, 1; A. 249; H. 421, 1.

Page 157. 2. **Dīviciācum**, etc.: at Caesar's request; see p. 153, 24-29. 3. **finibus**: B. 187, III; A. 228; H. 386. **cognōverant**: trans. as if impf. B. 262, A; H. 471, 3.

4. **Hīs**: B. 187, II, b; A. 230; H. 384, 5. The Bellovaci (100,000 strong; see p. 153, 3-6) are meant, who 'could not be prevailed upon to stay longer' with the united host 'and not' go to the defence of their own country, now in danger of invasion. Caesar's plan of separating the forces of the Belgae (see p. 153, 26) was thus successful.

XI. 6. **rē**: what 'matter'? Trans. this abl. abs. by a clause beginning with 'After.' **secundā vigiliā**: from 9 to 12 P.M. **strepitū**: B. 220; A. 248; H. 419, III. 7. **castrīs**: why not *ex castrīs*? **nūllō . . . imperiō**: abl. of attendant circumstance, explaining *māgnō . . . tumultū*, and in turn explained by the causal clause *cum . . . propteraret*. Trans. 'without any definite arrangement,' etc.

8. **quisque . . . peteret**: each one wished to be the first to get under way, to be at the head of the retreating forces. B. 286, 2; A. 326; H. 517. 9. **īscērunt, ut**, etc.: 'they gave their departure the appearance of a rout.' B. 297, 1; A. 332, e; H. 498, II, n. 2. **fugae**: B. 192, 1; A. 234, a; H. 391, 1. 10. **per**: A. 246, b; H. 415, 1, 1, n. 1.

12. **exercitum equitātumque**: force of *-que*? B. 341, 1, b; A. 156, a; H. 554, 1, 2. 13. **Primā lūce**: 'at daybreak.' B. 241, 1; A. 193; H. 440, 2, n. 1. **rē**: the 'fact' that the Belgae had really retreated; previously Caesar had thought their departure only a feint, to cover up some stratagem. 14. **novissimum agmen**: 'the rear' of the retreating Belgae. **morārētur**: B. 282, 2; A. 317; H. 497, 1.

15. **Hīs**: pl., from the idea of *equitēs in equitātum*. Why dat.? 17. **novissimōs**: sc. *hostēs*; 'the rear.' **milia**: B. 181, 1; A. 257; H. 379. 18. **eōrum fugientium**: 'of them as they fled.' 19. **cum . . . cōnsisterent**: 'since (those) on the rear of the line of march, to whom (the Romans) had come, were making a stand.' **ventum erat**: B. 138, IV; A. 146, c; H. 301, 1. 21. **prīōrēs**: sc. *hostēs*, subject of *pōnerent*; refers to those at the head of the retreating column. **abesse ā periculō**: 'to be out of danger.' **vidērentur, continērentur**: subj. by attraction. B. 324, 1; A. 342; H. 520, II. **neque**: 'and not.' 22. **necessitāte**: 'compulsion.'

23. clāmōre: the 'shouting,' 'din,' of the combatants at the rear. **perturbātis**: force of *per-*? Cf. English *through* and *thoroughly*, which are different forms of one original word. **ōrdinibus**: 'ranks.' Notice that the time of the second abl. abs. is later than that of the first. **praesidium**: '(hope of) refuge.' **24. pōnerent**: coördinate with *cōsisterent*, *sustinērent*. B. 286, 2; A. 326; H. 517. **25. quantum . . . spatium**: 'as the duration of daylight permitted' (lit., 'as the length of the day was'). **sub**: 'about,' 'towards.' **26. erat imperātum**: why not a form with a personal subject?

XII. 28. diēi: B. 201, 3, *a*; A. 214, *g*; H. 398, 5. **sē recipere**: 'could recover themselves.' B. 292; A. 327; H. 520, II. Having scattered the forces of the Belgae by the defeat at the Aisne and the invasion of their territory by the Aedui (cf. p. 153, 24-30), Caesar proceeds to reduce the different states one by one.

Page 158. 1. Rēmīs: B. 192, 1; A. 234, *a*; H. 391, I. **māgnō itinere cōnfectō**: 'by making a forced march.' See INTRO., p. 19. **2. Noviodūnum**: thought to have been on the site of Soissons, about twenty-five miles west of Berry-au-Bac; see map. For the meaning of the name, cf. Newton, Newcastle, Naples (from Neapolis, *νέα πόλις*), Neuville, Neufchâteau, Neustadt, etc. **ex itinere**: 'immediately after his arrival.'

3. vacuum: sometimes followed by the abl. without a preposition. **esse**: sc. *id* (*oppidum*). **4. lātitudinem**, etc.: if the wall of a town was high, an attacking party must fill up the moat in order to make their ladders reach to the top; if the moat was deep and wide, the filling of it was a hard matter, and the difficulty of scaling the wall was greatly increased. **fossae** goes with *lātitudinem*, while *mūrī* depends on *altitudinem*, an arrangement known as *chiasmus*. B. 350, 11, *c*; A. 344, *f*; H. 636, v. 4. **paucis dēfendentibus**: concessive abl. abs.; 'though there were but few defenders.' **5. expugnāre**: how did the storming of a city differ from a siege? See INTRO., p. 23. **vīneās agere**: see Vocab. **6. quae**: as antecedent supply *ea* with *comparāre*. **ūsui**: B. 191, 338, 3; A. 233, 300; H. 390, II, N. 2, 542, III. Could *oppugnandō* have been used instead of *ad oppugnandum*?

8. proximā nocte: Caesar in one day had marched from Berry-au-Bac to Soissons, and begun to get ready his military engines. In the mean time the fleeing hosts had paused in their flight, and now by night stealthily entered the town. **vīneās**, etc.: on the various operations of the siege, see INTRO., pp. 23-24. **9. iactō**: 'thrown up,' 'constructed.' **māgnitudine, celeritāte**: B. 219; A. 245, *b*; H. 416, I,

2), N. 1. **10. operum** : 'siege-works.' **Gallī** : appositive, 'which they ('being,' 'since they were'), Gauls, had,' etc. **12. petentibus Rēmīs** : 'at the request of the Remi.' **ut cōservārentur** : after *petentibus*. B. 295, 1 ; A. 331 ; H. 498, 1.

XIII. 14. primīs : = *principibus*. B. 236 ; A. 188 ; H. 441. **civitatīs** : = *civium* ; kind of gen.? **15. Galbae** : see p. 153, 10-12. **17. Quī** : B. 251, 6 ; A. 180, f ; H. 453. **sē suaque** : see Vocab. **18. Brātuspantium** : apparently a fortified place of refuge, occupied only in time of danger. **19. circiter** : adv., with *quīnque*. **abesset** : how should the change of tense from *contulissent* to *abesset*, and from *accessisset* (l. 23) to *pōneret*, be brought out in trans.?

20. māiōrēs nātū : B. 226, 1 ; A. 253 ; H. 424. **21. in eius fidem** : 'under his protection.' **22. neque** : = *et nōn*. **24. puerī** : 'children,' not 'boys' merely. **passīs manibus** : abl. abs., 'with hands outstretched,' expressing humiliation and entreaty. B. 227, 2, e. Principal parts of *pandō* and *patior*? **25. mōre** : abl. of manner, with *passīs*. **petiērunt** : B. 116 ; A. 128, a ; H. 235.

XIV. 26. Prō : 'On behalf of.' **his** : *Bellovacīs*. **Diviciācus** : the Aeduan. **27. eum** : Caesar. **facit verba** : 'pled.'

29. Bellovacōs, etc. : indir. disc. to the end of the chapter, dep. on the idea of saying in *facit verba*. Study note to p. 152, 9. B. 331, 1 ; A. 330, 3, e ; H. 523, 1, N. **30. fuisse** : 'had been' ; *fuērunt* in dir. disc. B. 317 ; A. 336, a ; H. 523, 1. **quī dicerent** : 'who kept saying.' B. 318 ; A. 336 ; H. 524. What meaning would *dixerint* have had in this connection? **31. Aeduōs . . . perferre** : indir. disc. dep. on *dicerent*, a wheel within a wheel. **omnēs indignitatēs contumēliāsque** : 'every kind of ill-treatment and insult.' What force has the pl. of abstract nouns? B. 55, 4, c ; A. 75, c ; H. 130, 2. **32. et . . . et** : 'both . . . and.'

Page 159. 1. Quī : as antecedent sc. *eōs* with *profūgisse*. **prīncipēs** : here = *auctōrēs*, 'advisers.' **2. civitatī** : why dat.? **3. intulissent** : subj. also in dir. disc. B. 300, 1 ; A. 334 ; H. 529, 1. **Britanniam** : see Vocab. **4. suā** : 'his usual' (lit., 'his own'). **clēmētiā** : the 'mercy' with which a man treats those helpless and entirely in his power, while *mānsuētūdō* is the 'compassion' common to all men of feeling at the sight of those in trouble.

5. eōs : *Bellovacōs* ; could *sē* have been used here? **Quod** : 'Now this,' referring to the request of the preceding sentence. **sī fēcerit . . .**

[eum] **amplificātūrum** [esse]: in dir. disc., *sī fēceris* (fut. pf. indic.), *amplificābis*. B. 319, A, B, a; A. 337; H. 527, 1. 7. **sī**, etc.: in dir. disc., *sī qua bella* (= *quaecumque bella*, 'whatever wars') *incidērunt*, (*Aeduī*) *sustentāre* ('hold out') *cōnsuērunt*.

XV. 9. honoris, etc.: 'out of regard for Diviciacus' (lit., 'for the sake of honor to Diviciacus'); for the genitives, cf. p. 132, 12, and note. **causā**: B. 219; A. 245; H. 416. 10. **in fidem**: as p. 158, 21. 11. **auctōritāte**: B. 224, 1; A. 251; H. 419, II. 12. **multitūdine**: B. 226; A. 253; H. 424. **sexcentōs obsidēs**: an unusual number. The fact that for Diviciacus' sake Caesar had spared the lives of the Bellovaci did not prevent him from demanding enough hostages to bind them securely in their pledge of submission. 14. **eō locō**: Bratuspantium. Caesar's route lay to the north. See map opp. p. 114.

16. **Nerviī**: considered the most savage of the Belgae; see p. 153, 14-15. 17. **Nūllum**, etc.: indir. disc. to the end of the chapter. 18. **esse mercātōribus**: 'traders had.' **nihil patī vīnī** = (*eōs*) *nōn patī quicquam vīnī*; the force of the negative goes with the verb. B. 201, 1; A. 216, a, 1; H. 397, 1. Prohibition is not an entirely new thing! 19. **inferī**: B. 331, 1; A. 330; H. 535. **rēbus**: why abl.? 20. **animōs**: 'spirit,' 'courage,' as a quality of character, while **virtūs**, 'valor,' has reference rather to the manifestation of courage in brave deeds. **existimārent**: B. 314, 267, 1, 2; A. 336, 286, and 286, r.; H. 524, and 493, 1. 21. **-que**: connects *ferōs* with a gen. of quality, which takes the place of an adj. **increpitāre**: 'rebuke.' **incūsāre** (22), 'find fault with,' 'blame.' 22. **reliquōs**: note to p. 114, 12. **quī**: 'since they'; would be used with subj. in dir. disc. B. 283, 3, a; A. 320, e; H. 517. 23. **patriam**: noun or adjective? **sēsē . . . acceptūrōs** [esse]: indir. disc. dep. on *cōfirmāre*; cf. p. 158, 31, and note. **sēsē**: refers to *eōs*, understood, subject of *cōfirmāre*.

XVI. 26. eōrum: *Nerviōrum*. Trace Caesar's route on the map. **trīduum**: = *trēs diēs*. B. 181, 1; A. 256; H. 379. **iter fēcisset**: 'had advanced.' Why subj.? **invenībat**: = *quaerendō cognōscēbat*. 27. **Sabim**: B. 37; A. 56, a, 1; H. 62, II, 2, (1). See map opp. p. 114. 28. **mīlia**: B. 181, 1; A. 257; H. 379. Why not abl.? B. 217, 3; A. 247, c; H. 417, I, n. 2.

Page 160. 1. **hīs**: B. 187, II, a; A. 227; H. 385, II. 2. **experīrentur**: subj. of purpose or result? 3. **in itinere**: '(already) on the way.' **per aetātem**: 'by reason of (old) age.' 4. **eum**

locum: we should say 'a place.' Possibly the spot here referred to was in the marshy country about Thuin, on the south bank of the Sambre, some miles northeast of Hautinont. **confēciſſe**: the object is *muli-erēs*, and the unexpressed antecedent of *quī*; for subject supply *ēds*, from *ab hīs* above. **5. exercituī . . . eſſet**: trans. freely, 'an army could not go.'

XVII. 7. quī . . . dēligant: 'in order to choose.' On the choice of a location for encampment, see INTRO., p. 20. **ex . . . Gallīs**: with *complūrēs*. B. 201, 1, *a*; A. 216, *c*; H. 397, 3, *n. 3*. **8. dēditi- ciſ**: the Suessiones (p. 158, 16), the Bellovaci (p. 159, 10), and the Ambiani (159, 13-15). **10. diērum**: grammatically dep. on *itineris*, in thought dep. on the expression *cōſuētūdine itineris*, 'the usual marching order of those days.' **12. impedimentōrum**: here the beasts of burden that carried the *impedimenta*. Difference between *impedimenta* and *sarcinae*? **13. quicquam negōtī**: 'any trouble.'

14. in castra: *i.e.* to the place chosen for encampment. **vēniſſet, abeſſent**: fut. pf. and fut. indic. in dir. disc. **15. spatium**: B. 181, 1; A. 257; H. 379. **sub ſarcinīs**, etc.: the plan was to attack the first legion to come up, just as it reached the place chosen for encampment, before the soldiers could deposit their luggage and get themselves in fighting trim. **16. futūrum [eſſe]**: dep. on *dēmōſtrārunt*, the subject being *ut . . . audērent*; 'it would come about, that.' B. 297, 2; A. 332, *e*; H. 500, 1, 1. **17. reliquae**: sc. *legiōnēs*. **contrā** (adv.) **cōſiſtere**: = 'to withstand the attack.'

18. Adiuvābat: the subject is the clause *quod . . . effēcerant*, 'the fact that the Nervii,' etc. **19. antiquitus**: 'long ago.' **cum . . . poſſent**: 'since they could do nothing with cavalry.' **nihil, quicquid**: cf. p. 116, 15, *plūrimum*, and note. **20. ei rei**: 'this branch of the service.' Why dat.? **quicquid . . . cōpiīs**: freely, 'all the military power they have lies in infantry.' **21. quō**: B. 282, 1, *a*; A. 317, *b*; H. 497, 11, 2. **22. cauſā**: see Vocab. **vēniſſent**: B. 324, 1; A. 342; H. 529, 11. **tenerīs**, etc.: by cutting into young trees near the root they were able to bend these down to a horizontal position. The stem of the tree would then increase in size very slowly, but along the trunk branches would grow out, above and on the sides (*in lātitudi-nem*). In the spaces along the line of defence not filled by trees thus trained, thorn bushes were planted. The whole formed a living and impenetrable hedge. Similar hedges are still found in this region.

24. effēcerant, ut, etc.: B. 297, 1; A. 332; H. 500, 11. **25. in-**

star mūri: 'like a wall' (lit., 'the appearance of a wall,' *īnstār* being in apposition with *mūnimentum*). **quō**: = *in quod* (*mūnimentum*).

26. intrārī, perspicī posset: trans. as if active and personal, 'one could not enter, look into.' Force of *per-* in **perspicī**? **27. omit-tendum**: sc. *esse*. **28. cōnsilium**: 'the plan' of attack, described above.

XVIII. 29. haec: 'as follows.' B. 246, 2; H. 450, 3. **locum**: B. 251, 3; A. 200, *b*; H. 445, 9. According to Napoleon, the site here described lies on the river Sambre (*Sabis*), in France, near the Belgian frontier, about three miles southwest of Maubeuge. See Plan V. **30. Collis**: the hill on which the Roman camp was laid out; it was on the north side of the Sambre. **ab . . . dēclivis**: 'sloping down uniformly from the top.'

31. suprà: p. 159, 27. Cf. p. 151, 1, and note. **32. acclivitate**: 'upward slope.' **nāscēbātur . . . contrārius**: 'rose up, facing this (hill) and opposite to it,' on the south side of the Sambre. See Plan V.

Page 161. 1. passūs: acc. of extent of space. **Infimus**: 'at the bottom,' opposed in meaning to **ab superiōre parte**, 'along the upper portion.' **apertus**: free from woods. **2. ut**: 'so that.' **3. apertō locō**: the space indicated on the plan between the river and the dotted line running parallel with it, which marks the northern limit of the woods. **4. secundum**: preposition. **5. pedum**: kind of gen.?

XIX. 7. cōpīis: B. 222, 1; A. 248, *a*; H. 419, III, 1, 1). **ratio ōrdōque**: 'system and arrangement.' **aliter sē habēbat, ac**: 'were different from what,' 'were otherwise than.' **habēbat**: sing. because *ratio* and *ōrdō* express one idea. B. 255, 3; A. 205, *b*; H. 463, II, 3. **ac**: B. 341, 1, *c*; A. 156, *a*; H. 554, I, 2, *n*.

9. cōnsuētūdine suā: 'in accordance with his usual practice' when in the vicinity of the enemy. **expeditās**: predicative. **10. collocārat**: = *collocāverat*; not 'collect.' **11. duae legiōnēs**: the XIIIth and XIVth; see p. 151, 16-18. **12. praesidiō, impedimentis**: B. 191, 2, *a*; A. 233, *a*; H. 390, I. Study INTRO., pp. 18, 19, and the arrangement of the legions on Plan V.

15. identidem: 'repeatedly;' repeated action is implied also in the imperfects *reciperent, facerent, auderent*. **16. neque**: = *et nōn*. **17. quem ad finem**: = *ad eum finem ad quem*, = *ūsque eō quō*. B. 251, 4; A. 200, *b*; H. 445, 9. **18. cēdentēs**: sc. *eōs* (*hostēs*). **quae primae vēnerant**: 'which had been the first to come up.' B. 239;

A. 191; H. 443. **19. opere**: 'the work' on the fortifications of the camp. See pp. 19-21. **dimēnsō**: here with passive sense. B. 112, b; A. 135, b; H. 231, 2.

20. prima: 'the first part of.' B. 241, 1; A. 193; H. 440, 2, n. 2. **21. visa sunt**: here passive in meaning. **quod**: in apposition with the clause *ubi . . . visa sunt*. **tempus**: in pred. after *convēnerat*, 'which had been agreed upon as the time,' etc. **22. ut**: 'just as.' **23. ipsi sēsē cōnfirmāverant**: 'had made up their minds.' **24. prōvolāvērunt**: force of *prō*-? **27. in manibus nostris**: 'close at hand.' **28. adversō colle**: abl. abs.; trans. with *contendērunt*, 'dashed up the hill,' the hill on the north side of the river, where the Roman camp had been laid out.

Page 162. **XX. 1. Caesarī**: B. 189, 1, 349; A. 232, 344; H. 388, 561, 1. **vēxillum**: see p. 17. **2. prōpōnendum, dandum**, etc.: sc. *erat, erant*. **concurrī**: force of *con*-? **3. signum tubā dandum**: as a command to "fall in." What were the musical instruments of the Roman army? See INTRO., p. 17. **opere**: cf. p. 161, 19, and note. **4. quī**: as antecedent sc. *eī* (*mīlitēs*) with *arcessendī*. **aggeris**: here 'material for constructing the rampart,' an unusual meaning of *agger*. **5. signum**: i.e. *signum proelī committendī*.

7. difficultātibus, subsidiō: B. 191, 2, a; A. 233, a; H. 390, 1. **8. scientia atque ūsus**: B. 341, 1, c; A. 156, a; H. 554, 1, 2. The discipline of Caesar's army won for him many a battle. **11. singulis . . . lēgātōs**: 'their respective legions, the different lieutenants.' B. 81, 4; A. 95, a; H. 174, 2, 1). Caesar frequently placed a lieutenant in command of each legion, a plan the wisdom of which was evident in cases of emergency.

13. nihil = emphatic *nōn*. B. 176, 3; A. 240, a; H. 378, 2. **14. vidēbantur**: sc. *administranda*, 'seemed necessary to be done,' 'ought evidently to be attended to.'

XXI. 16. necessariis, etc.: 'having given (only) the indispensable orders.' **17. quam in partem**: = *in eam partem, in quam*. B. 251, 4, a; A. 200, b; H. 445, 9. **19. utī . . . sustinērent**: object-clauses of purpose, giving the gist of the *cohortātiō*. **20. neu**: 'and that not.' B. 282, 1, d. **animō**: B. 226; A. 253; H. 424. **21. quod . . . aberant**: gives the reason for *signum dedit*. **quam quō**: = *quam ut eō*. B. 283, 2, a; A. 332, b; H. 502, 2.

23. in alteram partem: 'in the opposite direction,' from the xth and ixth legions over to the xiiith and viiith. See Plan V. **profectus**:

principal parts of *proficiscor* and *proficiscor*? **24. pūgnantibus occurrit**: 'finds them (already) fighting.' **hostiumque**: the word to which *-que* is attached belongs after it in constr.; thus *hostium* must go with *animus*, not with *exiguitās*. **26. ad insignia accommodanda**: 'for putting on their decorations,' particularly the crests, which were taken off from the helmets on the march. In battle it was important that the crests be in place, for by differences of these in form and color the different legions and cohorts could be distinguished.

27. scūtis: B. 214; A. 243; H. 414. **tegimenta**: some shields were made with a heavy leather covering, which was not taken off; others were covered with leather on the march in order to protect them from the weather; for exposure to wet would rust the metal and warp the woodwork out of place. **Quam**: with *in partem*: 'into whatever part (of the field).' **28. dēvēnit**: 'happened to come.' **29. ad haec cōstitit**: 'by these he took his stand.' Under ordinary circumstances it was a serious offence for a soldier to be found in a maniple in which he did not belong. **in quaerendis suis**: sc. *signis*. How may gerundive be changed to gerund constr.?

Page 163. **XXII. 2. quam ut**: why not with subj., as p. 162, 19? **rei** . . . **ōrdō**: = 'the arrangement approved by military science.' **3. aliae aliā in parte**: 'different legions in different places.' B. 253, 1, 2; A. 203, c; H. 459, i. **4. resisterent, impedirētur**: B. 286, 2; A. 326; H. 517. **saepibus** . . . **interiectis**: B. 227, 2, d, 240, 2; A. 255, 93, b; H. 431 and 444, i. **5. ante**: = *suprā*; see p. 160, 18-28.

6. certa subsidia collocārī . . . **poterant**: 'reserves could be definitely stationed'; the movements of the enemy were so obscured by the thicket that Caesar could not tell where reserve forces could be advantageously posted. **certa**: B. 239; A. 191; H. 443. **quāque**: from *quisque*. **7. opus esset**: see Vocab. **prōvidērī**: sc. *poterat*. **8. fortunae**: dep. on *eventūs*, 'issues.'

XXIII. 11. aciēs: gen. B. 52, 3; A. 74, a; H. 120. For the position of the legions here mentioned and the Atrebatas, see Plan V. **pilis ēmissis**: 'having hurled their pikes.' What were the weapons of the Roman soldier? See INTRO., pp. 15, 16. **13. ea pars**: the left of the Roman line. **ex locō superiōre**: the slope of the hill on which the Roman legions were posted, up which the Atrebatas, having crossed the river, had rushed. **14. compulērunt**: derivation and force of *com-*? **cōnantēs**: sc. *eds* (*Atrebatēs*).

15. **Ipsī**: the soldiers of the ixth and xth legions. 16. **locum iniquum**: the ground south of the Sambre, sloping back from the river and covered with woods. 17. **resistentēs hostēs**: acc. 18. **aliā in parte**: in front of the camp; see Plan V. **dīversae**: 'separately.' B. 239; A. 191; H. 443. 19. **quibuscum**: B. 142, 4; A. 104, e; H. 187, 2.

20. **erant congressī**: sc. *mīlitēs*, from *legiōnēs*. **ex locō supēriore**: closely connected with *prōfligātis Viromanduis*; the Viromandui, as the Atrebatēs, having crossed the river and run up the slope, were now driven back. 21. **proeliābantur**: force of the imperfect? **tōtis**: B. 360, 11, a; A. 344, e; H. 561, III. **ā**: 'on'; the viiith and xixth legions in front, the ixth and xth legions on the left of the camp, had abandoned their positions to pursue the enemy, leaving the camp unprotected except on the right, where the xixth and viiith legions stood. See Plan V. 22. **nōn**: with *māgnō*.

23. **intervallō**: B. 223; A. 257, b; H. 379, 2. **cōstitisset**: why sing.? why subj.? 24. **duce Boduognātō**: B. 227, 1; A. 255, a; H. 431, 4. **summam imperī**: see Vocab. 26. **apertō latere**: B. 228, 1; A. 258, f; H. 425, II, 2, N. 2. The 'unprotected flank' was in this case the left, whence the other legions had withdrawn. **legiōnēs**: the xixth and the viiith. **summum castrōrum locum**: 'the height occupied by the camp.'

XXIV. 28. levis armātūrae peditēs: see INTRO., p. 11. 29. **cum eis ūnā**: 'together with them.' 30. **dīxeram**: Chap. 19. **reciperent, respexissent** (p. 164, 2): force of *re*? **adversis**: 'face to face.' The Nervii came up so rapidly that they were already entering the Roman camp at the time when Caesar's cavalry and light-armed troops, which had been routed on the other side of the Sambre (p. 161, 25), were just coming back to it again. Notice the descriptive force of the imperfects in this chapter. 31. **hostibus**: why dat.?

32. **ab decumānā portā**, etc.: study INTRO., pp. 19-21. As the hill on which the camp was, sloped a little toward the Sambre, the rear of the camp was slightly elevated above the front, and hence the *cālōnēs*, who were stationed there, could perceive what was going on along the river. Seeing the legions at the left and in front rush across the stream, they started to follow; but on looking back they saw, to their dismay, that the Nervii by a flank movement had gained possession of the camp.

Page 164. 2. **respexissent, vīdissent**: B. 288, 1, B; A. 325, 323; H. 521, II, 2. 3. **praecipitēs**: 'head over heels.' B. 239; A. 191;

H. 443. 4. **eōrum**: the drivers and attendants of the baggage-train, of which the **xiiith** and **xivth** legions were bringing up the rear. See Plan V. **clāmor**: 'shouting'; as distinguished from **fremitus**, general 'uproar,' 'hubbub.' 5. **alii aliam in partem**: see Vocab. 6. **ferēbantur**: 'rushed off.' B. 256, 1; A. 111, a; H. 465.

7. **rēbus**: B. 219; A. 245, b; H. 416, 1, 2), N. 1. 8. **virtūtis opīniō**: 'reputation for courage.' The Treveri went away not by reason of cowardice, but because they thought the day hopelessly lost. 9. **civitate**: personified, hence with *ā*. **cum**: with *vidissent*, expressing time and cause. 10. **legiōnēs**: the **viiith** and **xiiith**. 11. **Numidās**: the slingers and bowmen were included in the *levīs armātūrae* mentioned (p. 163, 28). Notice the omission of conjunctions in rapid narration. 12. **diversōs**: participle. 14. **pulsōs**, etc.: is *esse* to be supplied? **castris, impedimentis**: B. 218, 1; A. 249; H. 421, 1.

XXV. 16. **Caesar** to **possent** (p. 165, l. 3), forms a single complex sentence. The principal clause has for its subject *Caesar*, with which the participles *profectus* and *cohortātus* (p. 165, l. 1) agree; for its predicate it has the verbs *processit* (30), *iussit* (p. 165, l. 2). The most important subordinate clause is *ubi . . . vidit*, which is so long that *vidit* is repeated for the sake of clearness. Several infinitives with subject-accusatives depend upon *vidit*; and there are several abl. abs. worthy of particular attention. **ab . . . cohortātiōne** = *ab decimā legiōne quam cohortātus erat*.

17. **signis**: the standards of the maniples; see p. 17. So fierce had been the onset of the Nervii that the Roman soldiers could not keep their places in the ranks, but were crowded together, and hence at the mercy of the enemy. 18. **sibi esse impedimentō**: 'were a hindrance to themselves,' = 'were in one another's way.' 20. **signiferō**: here the one who carried the standard of the first maniple of the cohort, which was looked upon as the standard of the cohort.

22. **prīmiplō**: with *cōnfectō*, abl. abs. 23. **fortissimō**: B. 240, 2; A. 93, b; H. 444, 1. **vulneribus cōnfectō**: the brave *Baculus* did not die, but lived to fight several battles. **ut**: 'so that.' 25. **ab novissimis**: 'at the rear.' **dēsertō proeliō**: this is the reading of the MSS., but does not make good sense. Supply *locō* with *dēsertō*, 'quitting their posts.' **proeliō**: B. 214, A. 243; H. 414.

26. **hostēs**, etc.: 'that both in front the enemy did not cease coming up, — and on both flanks,' etc. **ex inferiōre locō**: from the low

ground along the river. **27. rem . . . angustō**: 'that matters had reached a crisis.' **28. subsidium**: 'reserve force'; the xiiith and xivth legions were not yet available, because too far off. **posset**: B. 283, 2; A. 320, *a*; H. 503, 1. **29. ūnī**: here = 'a'; cf. the French *un*, 'one,' which comes from *ūnus*. The English "an" and "one" were originally the same word. **militī**: B. 188, 2, *d*; A. 229; H. 385, 11, 2. **eō**: adv.

Page 165. 1. nōminātim: Caesar's personal knowledge of his men was an important element in his success as a general. **signa inferre**: see p. 18. **2. manipulōs laxāre**: 'to spread out the ranks,' in order to give each soldier more room for action, and to lessen the deadly effect of the enemy's missiles. **quō**: why not *ut*? **ūtī**: what other verbs are followed by the abl.?

3. possent: B. 282, 1, *a*; A. 317, *b*; H. 497, 11, 2. **militibus**: why dat.? **5. in extrēmīs rēbus**: 'in extreme peril.' **operam nāvare**: see Vocab. **paulum**: how different in meaning from *paulūlum*, *paulātim*, *paulisper*?

XXVI. 7. iuxtā: i.e. next to the xiiith legion. See Plan V. **9. ut . . . inferrent**: 'that the (two) legions gradually draw together, face about, and charge against the enemy.' Probably one legion simply took up a position behind the other, facing in the opposite direction, so that the rear of both was secure. **conversa signa**: B. 337, 2; A. 292, *r*; H. 549, 5. See p. 18. **11. ferrent, timērent**: B. 286, 2; A. 326; H. 517. **neque**: = *et nōn*. **timērent**: sc. *militēs*. How are *ut* and *nē* translated after a verb of fearing? **āversī**: 'in the rear.'

13. legiōnum duārum: the xiiith and xivth; see Plan V. **15. cursū incitātō**: 'having quickened their pace.' What relation of time between this and the preceding abl. abs.? **summō colle**: 'the top of the hill' on which the Roman camp was laid out. **16. castis**: B. 218, 1; A. 249; H. 421, 1. Labienus, with the ixth and xth legions, had driven the Atrebatēs in confusion across the river and gained possession of the camp of the enemy. **ex locō superiōre**: how was the enemy's camp situated? See Chap. 18 and Plan V.

17. gererentur: B. 300, 1; A. 334; H. 529, 1. **18. Qui**: pl. from the idea of *militēs* in *legiōnem*. **19. quō . . . esset**: 'in what condition the matter was,' = 'how matters stood.' **20. versārētur**: agrees with the nearest, in this case the most important, subject. B. 255, 2; A. 205, *d*; H. 463, 1. Trans. 'were.' **21. nihil . . . fēcē-**

runt: 'they came up as fast as they could' (lit., 'left nothing undone in regard to speed'). **reliqui**: pred. gen. H. 401, n. 4.

XXVII. 23. etiam quī: 'even such as.' **prōcūbuissent**: B. 283, 2; A. 320; H. 503, 1. **24. scūtīs**: B. 218, 3; A. 254, b; H. 425, II, 1, 1), n. **perterritōs**: with *hostēs*. **25. inermēs**: with *cālōnēs*. Notice the nearness of *inermēs* to *armātīs* (*hostibus*). B. 350, 10; A. 344, g; H. 563. **27. praeferrent**: 'tried to make a better showing than the legionary soldiers,' and thus atone for their cowardice in the earlier part of the battle. B. 260, 3.

28. etiam . . . salūtīs: 'even in utter despair of safety.' **29. primī**: 'the foremost,' 'those in the front ranks.' **iacentibus**: 'those that had fallen.' B. 187, III; A. 228; H. 386. **30. Insisterent**, etc.: what is the force of the imperfect? **ex**: 'on.' **31. superessent**: why subj.? **ut ex tumulō**: 'as from a hillock.' **32. intercepta**: 'that had been caught,' 'that they had caught.' **conicerent, remitterent**: sc. *ut*.

Page 166. 1. ut nōn, etc.: order, *ut iudicārī dēbēret, hominēs tantae virtūtis nōn nequiquam ausōs esse*, etc.; a result clause, following as a sort of conclusion from the preceding description. **3. quae**, etc.: 'things which, in themselves most difficult (lit., 'from being most difficult'), their greatness of courage had made easy (of accomplishment).' Caesar often bears witness to the valor of his foes. **facilia**: predicative. How compared? B. 71, 4; A. 89, b; H. 163, 2.

XXVIII. 5. Hōc proeliō factō: = *post hōc proelium*. Give a connected and accurate description of this battle, from a study of the text, the notes, and Plan V. **ad interneciōnem**: the Nervii so far regained their ancient strength, however, that they were able to send a contingent of warriors to join in the great uprising of Gaul against Caesar, 52 B.C. See Book VII, 75. **7. puerīs**: 'children.' **aestuāria**: inlets of the sea where the tide ebbed and flowed.

8. dixerāmus: see p. 160, 3-5. **nihil impeditum**: sc. *esse*, 'that nothing stood in the way of,' 'was a hindrance.' **9. omnium**: dep. on *cōsēnsū*. **12. milibus lx**: the Nervii had promised for the war only 50,000 men; see p. 153, 14. **vix**: with *quīngentōs*. The ambassadors probably exaggerated the losses of the Nervii in order to excite Caesar's compassion.

13. possent: B. 314; A. 336, B; H. 524. **14. fūsus**: sc. *esse*. B. 328, 2; A. 272, b; H. 536, 2, 1). **misericiordiā**: cf. note to p. 159, 4.

16. imperāvit: meaning, when followed by the dat. ? **ab iniūriā et maleficiō**: from 'wrong and harm' to the weak remnant of the Nervii.

XXIX. 18. suprà: p. 160, 2-3. **19. cōpīs**: B. 222; A. 248, *a*; H. 419, III, 1, 1). **venirent**: = *in itinere essent*. Why subj. ? **21. oppidum**: a place of refuge, like that of the Bellovaci (see note to p. 158, 18); situated, according to Napoleon, on the hill at the junction of the Meuse and the Sambre, across the Sambre from Namur, now the citadel of Namur; see Plan VI. Goeler, however, thinks the site of the *oppidum* is to be found on the hill Falhize, which lies on the north bank of the Meuse, opposite the town of Huy, nineteen miles below Namur.

22. Quod cum: 'and although this.' **partibus**: 'sides.' **25. pedum**: B. 217, 3 and 203, 2; A. 247, *c* and 215, *b*; H. 402, 417, I, N. 2. This narrow slope, leading up to the top of the plateau on which the town stood, was on the west side. See Plan VI. **26. magni ponderis**: B. 203, 2; A. 215, *b*; H. 396, v. **praeacūtās**: 'sharpened' at the end. **27. collocābant**: continued past action; notice the change of tense from *mūnierant*. **30. agere, portāre**: to what kind of *impedimenta* does each verb refer ? **citrā**: on the west side.

Page 167. 1. dēpositis: with *impedimentis*. **cūstōdiam** (= *cūstōdēs*), **praesidium**: appositive. **2. Hī**: the 6000 Aduatuci. **eōrum**: the great throng of Cimbri and Teutones, who perished at Aquae Sextiae (102 B.C.) and at Vercellae (101 B.C.). Cf. note to p. 140, 13. **3. cum**: causal. **aliās, aliās**: adverbs. **4. illātum**: sc. *bellum*; with *dēfenderent*, 'they were repelling invasion.'

XXX. 7. parvulis proeliis: 'skirmishes.' **8. vāllō, castellis**: these formed the line of circumvallation; see Plan VI. It has been thought strange that in this description no mention is made of the Meuse or the Sambre. The brow of the hill itself on which the town stood was so steep and high that probably the rivers hardly entered into Caesar's calculations in planning the attack and siege. **9. oppidō**: sc. *in*.

10. vineis, etc.: for the various siege operations, see pp. 23, 24. **aggere**: marked **A** on the Plan. **turrim procul**: the tower was constructed out of reach of the enemy's missiles. See Plan VI, **B**. **11. irridēre, increpitāre**: historical infinitives. **12. vōcibus**: 'remarks,' 'taunts.' **quod . . . institueretur**: the reason assigned by the Gauls, not by Caesar. B. 323; A. 341, *d*; H. 516, II. **ā**: 'off.'

13. Quibusnam: the expression implies contempt, 'with what hands, pray.' **praesertim**, etc.: 'especially (being) men of so small size,'

'such little chaps,' spoken contemptuously. **14. Gallis . . . contemptui**: 'an object of ridicule on the part of the Gauls.' Cf. note to p. 139, 4. **17. cōfident**: B. 315, 1; A. 338, 334; H. 523, II, 1. The Aduatuci thought that the Romans would have to pick the tower up and carry it in order to move it. This indicates their ignorance of mechanical contrivances, and gives an insight into their stage of civilization.

XXXI. 18. movērī, etc.: sc. *turrim*. **19. speciēs**: 'sight.' **20. quī**: subject of *dixerunt*.

22. Rōmānōs sine ope deōrum: the American Indians, it is said, thought that the first steamboats and railway-trains were gods, or demons. **23. quī**: 'because they.' B. 283, 3, a; A. 320, e; H. 517. **25. Ūnum**: 'one thing' (i.e. *nē . . . dēspoliāret*); indir. disc. to the end of the chapter. **26. clēmētiā ac mānsuētūdine**: cf. p. 159, 4, and note. **audirent**: by report. **27. nē dēspoliāret**: B. 316; A. 339; H. 523, III. **29. ā**: 'against.' **trāditis armīs**: = *sī arma trāditā essent*. B. 227, 2, b; A. 310; H. 507, 3, n. 7. **30. praestāre**: the subject is *paī*, 'that it would be better for them to endure any lot whatever.' **eum cāsum**: 'such a condition,' choosing between the mercy of the Romans and the treatment of the surrounding Gauls.

Page 168. **XXXII. 4. cōnsuētūdine suā**: 'in accordance with his habit,' of treating a prostrate foe mercifully. B. 220, 3; A. 245; H. 416. **5. cōnservātūrum [esse], dēdidissent**: in dir. disc. *cōnservābō, dēdiderint* (fut. perf.). B. 319, A, B, a; A. 337; H. 527, I. **attigisset**: why subj.? **ariēs**: in antiquity it was a rule of war that besieged cities which did not capitulate before the battering-ram touched the walls, should when captured be given over to destruction. **7. armīs trāditis**: abl. abs. **8. quam**: 'any.'

10. imperārentur: why subj.? **facere**: sc. *eōs* (*Aduatucōs*). The pres. tense is used instead of the fut. to express the immediate carrying out of Caesar's orders. **12. iactā**: with *multitūdine*, abl. abs. **summam**, etc.: the *agger* had been prolonged as far as the edge of the moat. The deep space between the end of the *agger* and the wall, from the bottom of the moat up, was filled with weapons. **15. pāce sunt ūsī**: 'they enjoyed peace,' 'kept quiet.'

XXXIII. 16. Sub: 'Towards.' **18. initō . . . cōnsiliō**: 'having formed a plot.' **19. praesidia dēductūrōs [esse]**: 'would withdraw the outposts,' from the redoubts and the line of circumvallation, where

the Roman sentries kept careful watch. 20. *dēnique*: 'at any rate.'

22. *vīminibus intextis*: 'by interweaving withes.' 23. *tertiā vigiliā*: abl. of time. What part of the night is meant? 24. *ascēsus*, etc.: from this it would seem that the Roman line of circumvallation was on ground somewhat above the level of the plain, so that the enemy, after rushing down from the town, must advance up a height in order to storm the Roman works.

27. *ignibus*: 'fire-signals.' 28. *concursum est*: see Vocab. 29: *ut . . . dēbuit*: 'as brave men were bound to fight.' in . . . *salūtis*: cf. p. 165, 28, and note. 30. *vāllō*: the Roman line of circumvallation. 31. *iacerent*: B. 283, 2; A. 320; H. 503, 1. *ūnā*: 'alone.' 32. *ad*: 'about.'

Page 169. 2. *diēi*: B. 201, 3, *a*; A. 214, *g*; H. 398, 5. *cum*: temporal, causal, or concessive? 3. *sectiōnem*: 'the booty' in this case included all the possessions of the people captured, as well as the people themselves, who were sold into slavery. That some of the Aduatuci were still left in their country is clear from Book V, 38-39. 5. *mīllium quīnquāgintā trium*: pred. gen.

ii. EXPEDITION OF PUBLIUS CRASSUS TO THE WESTERN COAST. XXXIV. B.C. 57.

XXXIV. 7. *legiōne ūnā*: the viiith. *Venetōs*: for the location of this and the following peoples, see map opp. p. 114. *Coriosolitas*: Greek acc. of a Keltic word. B. 47, 3; A. 63, *b*; H. 68. 8. *Aulercōs*: *Aulercōs Eburovīcēs*. 9. *Ōceanum*: the Atlantic.

iii. EVENTS AFTER THE REDUCTION OF THE BELGAE. XXXV. B.C. 57.

XXXV. 14. *incolerent*: subj. by attraction. B. 324, 1; A. 342; H. 529, 11. 15. *sē*: refers to *nātiōnēs*; hence *daturās* and *facturās* are fem.

16. *lēgātiōnēs*: for *lēgātōs*. *Illyricum*: this also was a part of Caesar's "province." 20. *hiberna*: how did the winter-quarters differ from the ordinary camp? See INTRO., p. 21. *Italiam*: see

note to p. 120, 4. **21. supplicātiō**: usually a 'solemn thanksgiving' lasted only three or four days. The longest *supplicātiō* previously decreed was in honor of Pompey, at the close of the war with Mithridates. See Smith's *Dictionary of Greek and Roman Antiquities*, 3d ed., vol. ii, pp. 729-730. **22. quod**: sc. *id*, referring to *in diēs . . . dēcrēta est*. B. 247, 1, b; A. 200, e; H. 445, 7. **nūllī**: emphatic position.

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION INTO LATIN.

THE following Exercises have been prepared because it is believed that a much more thorough acquaintance with and appreciation of Latin idioms, constructions, and forms can be gained from the turning of English into Latin, than from mere translation from the original.

Only the last ten Exercises are continuous passages, and both these and the sentences of the other Exercises have been made so simple that they may be written or recited orally, with or without previous preparation, as the teacher prefers. It is suggested that when they are written the pupil mark the quantity of all the long vowels. Owing to lack of space, the sentences are merely suggestive and are confined to the first few sections or chapters of each division of the text. It is strongly recommended that the teacher supplement them, if he find it necessary, by exercises of his own.

The Exercises are based closely upon the Latin text, and require a reproduction of various words and constructions, but with many changes of form and combination. All the words required in translating the Exercises will be found in some part of the text upon which they are based, or will be suggested in the foot-notes. In the first place, the Latin should be translated carefully and thoroughly understood, attention being directed especially to peculiarities of construction, or to points in which the Latin idiom differs from the English. The pupil will then be prepared intelligently to attempt the translation from the English. The Latin text should be referred to as a final authority for the verification of doubtful points.

Some of the errors to which beginners are especially inclined are guarded against in the following HINTS, to which references are made by Roman numerals (VI, X). References are also occasionally made to the pages and lines of the Text (as p. 10, l. 6), to call attention to words or phrases which may have been forgotten. Words between parentheses are to be omitted in translating into Latin.

HINTS.

I. Remember that only deponent verbs have a perfect active participle. With other verbs, 'having done this' and similar expressions must be translated into Latin by the ablative absolute, or by a clause introduced by *cum*, *ubi*, etc. Do not use the abl. abs. when it may be replaced by a participle agreeing with the subject or object of the verb; e.g. 'Latinus, the king, received him kindly and gave him his daughter in marriage,' *Latīnus rēx eī benignē receptō filiā Lāvīniā in mātīmōnium dedit* (p. 30, l. 8).

II. The present participle is often used loosely in English. It must be translated into Latin by a perfect participle or an equivalent (see I), unless its action is strictly *contemporaneous* with that of the verb on which the participle depends; e.g. 'the Helvetians crossed this river by joining rafts and boats,' *Id (flūmen) Helvētīū ratibus ac lintribus iūctīs trānsībant* (p. 121, l. 3 fol.).

III. Tenses are generally used more accurately in Latin than in English. We say, for instance, 'If he comes, I shall see him'; the Latin is more exact, *sī veniet* or *sī vēnerit* (fut. perf.). In translating into Latin, determine the exact relations of time, and use the corresponding tenses.

IV. Study the way in which Indirect Discourse is expressed. Read carefully B. 313, 323; A. 335-339; H. 522-527. When reading Latin, carefully notice the moods and tenses of all indirect quotations. In Indirect Discourse the time must be determined with reference to that of the verb which introduces the indirect discourse. The *past*, *present*, or *future* tense of the infinitive is to be used, according as the action takes place *before*, *at the same time with*, or *after* the action of the main verb upon which it depends. The infinitive

expresses *no time in itself*, but its time is viewed only with reference to the main verb in the sentence. The same is true of the participle.

V. Before translating a sentence in Indirect Discourse, try to reproduce the speaker's words: *e.g.* 'The Aedui said that their towns were being stormed and their fields laid waste.' The words of the Aedui may be given as follows: *oppida nostra oppūgnantur, et agrī vāstantur*; this becomes in ind. disc. after a past tense, *Aedui dixerunt oppida sua oppūgnārī et agrōs vāstārī*.

Pay special attention to the principle of the Sequence of Tenses. See B. 267; A. 285, 286; H. 491, 493. Note that the Pres. Subj., following a primary tense of the Indic., and the Imp. Subj., following a secondary tense of the Indic., express an action that is going on at the *same time* as the action of the main verb, or at some time future to that action; and that the Perf. Subj., following a primary tense of the Indic., and the Plup. Subj., following a secondary tense of the Indic., express an action that is *completed* at the time of the action of the main verb.

VI. Independent statements are much more common in English than in Latin. Hence, in translating English into Latin, many coördinate verbs in English should be made subordinate in the Latin in some of the ways suggested in I and II.

VII. The Latin pronouns are more numerous and more definite than the English. Where in English we repeat a proper name to avoid ambiguity, or use such paraphrases as 'the king,' 'the Carthaginian,' etc., a carefully chosen pronoun should be used in Latin.

VIII. Be careful in the use of pronouns. On *sē* and *suus* see B. 85; A. 196; H. 448, 449. In your Latin reading carefully observe the use of pronouns.

IX. Note the various ways of expressing Purpose. See B. 282, 337, 4, 339, 6, 340, 1; A. 318, with *a, b, c, d*; H. 497, 498, 542, I, N. 2, III, N. 2, 546, 549, 3.

X. The voluntary agent is expressed by the ablative *with* a preposition; the means or instrument, by the ablative *without* a preposition.

XI. Be careful in translating English prepositions: *e.g.* 'He killed him *with* a sword,' *gladiō eum interfēcit*; 'he went *with* him,' *cum eō ivit*; 'when he heard *of* this,' *cum dē hōc audirisset*; 'a man *of* great eloquence,' *vir māgnā ēloquentiā*; 'the possessions *of* his father,' *paterna bona*. Determine the exact force of the English preposition, and translate accordingly.

XII. In translating into Latin such sentences as 'the man I saw,' the relative cannot be omitted. In cases where in English two nouns are connected by a preposition, unless the relation can be expressed in Latin by the genitive, a relative clause is generally necessary: *e.g.* 'The embassy from Pyrrhus,' either *Pyrrhī lēgātīō* or *lēgātīō quae ā Pyrrhō missa est* (or *erat*).

XIII. A personal or demonstrative pronoun at the beginning of a sentence, and sometimes a noun (see VII), is often best translated into Latin by a relative pronoun. See note on *Quod*, p. 31, l. 14.

XIV. Some conjunctions, like *enim, autem, etc.*, are post-positive; *i.e.* they do not stand first in the sentence, but after one or more words. This is always indicated in the Vocabulary. *Inquit*, 'said he,' always follows one or more words of a quotation.

XV. Observe that verbs which govern the dative, or another case than the accusative, must be used impersonally in the passive: *e.g.* 'He persuaded the Helvetians,' *Helvētiīs persuāsit*; but 'the Helvetians were persuaded,' *Helvētiīs persuāsum est*.

XVI. In expressing the relations of place, the preposition is regularly omitted with names of towns, etc. (B. 182, 1; A. 258, 2, *a, b*; H. 380, 11, and 2); place where is expressed by the locative, which in the singular of the first and second declensions has the same form as the genitive; in the third declension, and in the plural, the same form as the dative or ablative. B. 232, cf. 228; A. 258, *c, 2*; H. 425, 11.

XVII. Prohibitions, or negative commands, are sometimes expressed by the pres. or perf. subjunctive; but generally by *nōlī* (pl. *nōlīte*) with the infinitive, or *cavē* (pl. *cavēte*) with the subjunctive.

XVIII. Causal clauses introduced by *quod*, *quia*, and *quoniam* take the indicative, unless the reason is viewed as that of some other person than the speaker or writer, when the subjunctive is used. B. 286, 1; A. 321; H. 516.

XIX. Note the idiomatic use of certain adjectives: *e.g. in extrēmō ponte*, 'at the end of the bridge'; *in mediā urbe*, 'in the middle of the city'; *summus mōns*, 'the top of the mountain'; *prīmus docuit*, 'he was the first to teach.'

XX. Distinguish: 'I may do this,' *licet mihi hōc facere*, or *licet hōc faciam*; 'I can do this,' *hōc facere possum*; 'I ought to do this,' *hōc facere dēbeō*, or *oportet mē hōc facere*; 'I must do this,' *mē hōc facere necesse est*, *necesse est ut hōc faciam*, or *hōc mihi faciendum*. In the past tenses the *auxiliary* becomes past, and not the infinitive as in English: *e.g. licuit mihi hōc facere*.

XXI. To write good Latin one must not only express one's self with grammatical correctness, but also idiomatically. Many English expressions cannot be rendered literally; in fact, a continuous passage of idiomatic English can hardly ever be translated word for word into idiomatic Latin. Read the passage carefully, and translate the thought, not the words.

I. ROMAN HISTORY, §§ 1-4.

GRAMMAR LESSON.

- (a) Review of First and Second Declensions. B. 20-27; A. 35-43; H. 48-54.
- (b) Use of Prepositions, *in* and *sub*. B. 143; A. 152, c; H. 435.
- (c) Subject and Direct Object of Verb. B. 166, 172; A. 173, 177, 237; H. 368, 371.

1. Saturn came into Italy. 2. He founded Saturnia upon¹ the Janiculum. 3. Aeneas fled from Troy² which³ is in Asia. 4. Latinus was a king in Italy. 5. He gave his⁴ daughter in marriage. 6. Aeneas transferred the seat of government to Alba.⁵ 7. This city was on the Alban mount. 8. Romulus Silvius was thrown headlong into the Alban lake. 9. Aeneas and Ascanius founded cities in Latium.⁶ 10. In very early times, during the reign of⁷ Romulus, a city was founded.

¹ Use the prep. *in*.⁴ Omit.² 'from Troy,' use the abl. case.⁵ 'to Alba,' cf. p. 30, l. 13.³ *quae*.⁶ Nom. case, *Latium*. See Vocab.⁷ See N., p. 30, l. 5.

II. ROMAN HISTORY, §§ 5-8.

GRAMMAR LESSON.

- (a) Review of First Conjugation. B. 93-102 (omitting 100); A. 121-129; H. 192-206 (omitting 204).
- (b) Agreement of Adjective. B. 234, 235; A. 186, 187; H. 438, 439.
- (c) Indirect Object. B. 187, I, II; A. 225, 227; H. 384, 385 (and read 385, II, N. 3).

1. The good Proca was ruling¹ in those districts. 2. This² king had³ two sons. 3. They were called⁴ Numitor and

Amulius. 4. Amulius gave the ancestral property to Numitor. 5. The younger⁵ son threw the daughter of Numitor into chains. 6. But the twin sons restored the kingdom to Numitor. 7. Romulus founded a city on the Aventine mount and called it⁶ Rome. 8. Romulus had surrounded his⁷ city with walls.⁸ 9. Romulus gave Remus his⁷ choice. 10. Nevertheless⁹ he killed his brother.

¹ Imperfect tense.

² Use the pronoun, *hic*, *haec*, *hōc*. See Vocab.

³ Use the verb, *habeō*.

⁷ Omit.

⁴ See p. 30, l. 3; what voice?

⁸ 'with walls,' abl. of means.

⁵ See p. 30, l. 24 and note.

⁹ *tamen*.

⁶ *eam*.

III. ROMAN HISTORY, §§ 9-11.

GRAMMAR LESSON.

(a) Review of the Verb *sum*. B. 100; A. 119, 120; H. 204.

(b) Predicate Noun. B. 167, 168; A. 176; H. 362.

(c) Predicate Adjective. B. 233, 2; A. 186, b, 1; H. 438, 2.

1. The city, of which¹ Romulus had been king, was new. 2. Many neighbors viewed the games. 3. Tarpeia was a maiden who had charge of the place-of-refuge.² 4. The Romans will be in the midst of the slaughter. 5. The rings and armlets are golden. 6. You gave to the children a small³ gift. 7. The road to the stronghold is long,⁴ but there⁵ are many soldiers there. 8. Romulus admitted the Romans into the stronghold, and was called king. 9. All of the enemy are on⁶ the Tarpeian mount. 10. This place is now called the Roman forum.

¹ *cūius*.

⁴ *longus*, adj.

² 'the place-of-refuge,' *asylum*.

⁵ Omit.

³ *parvus*, adj.

⁶ Cf. p. 30, l. 14.

IV. ROMAN HISTORY, §§ 12-14.

GRAMMAR LESSON.

- (a) **Pronouns, Relative, Demonstrative, Possessive.** B. 86-89; A. 98, 3-103; H. 185-187.
 (b) **Possessive Genitive.** B. 198; A. 214, I; H. 396, I.
 (c) **Agreement of Relative.** B. 250, 1; A. 198; H. 445 and N.

1. The senators, whom he chose, he called fathers. 2. After the death of their¹ king, the Romans carried on no wars. 3. Numa, who was elected king, was of great² assistance to the state. 4. He sought to civilize³ the character of a war-like people. 5. These women have come with their children. 6. The second⁴ king of Rome was Numa, to whom⁵ Tullus Hostilius succeeded. 7. He did everything which was of advantage⁶ to the state. 8. Those men who fought⁷ against the Sabines are brave and active. 9. Tullus Hostilius, whom the Romans elected king, undertook⁸ this war. 10. He ends the contest on account of the faithlessness of Tarpeia.

¹ See N. on *sē*, p. 30, l. 18, and Hint VIII.

⁴ *alter*. See Vocab. ⁷ *pūgnō*.

² *multum*, the adv.

⁵ Dat. case.

⁸ cf. p. 32, l. 4.

³ *molliō*.

⁶ Use the subjunctive mood.

V. ROMAN HISTORY, §§ 15-17.

GRAMMAR LESSON.

- (a) **Review of the Third Declension.** B. 28-47; A. 44-67; H. 55-115.
 (b) **Two Accusatives:** (1) Both referring to the same person or thing. B. 177, 1; A. 239, 1, *a*; H. 373, 1. (2) One referring to the person affected, the other to the result produced. B. 178, 1, *b*; A. 239, 2, *c*; H. 374.
 (c) **Apposition.** B. 169, 1, 2; A. 184; H. 363.

1. The Romans chose Ancus Martius, the grandson of Numa, king. 2. He taught¹ the Romans agriculture. 3. He

called the city, which he founded at the mouth of the Tiber, Ostia. 4. They asked Tarpeia, the daughter of a Roman soldier, the way to the stronghold. 5. Tarquinius came to the city of Rome. 6. Then he gained the friendship of Ancus, the king of Rome.² 7. The latter³ made Tarquinius guardian of his⁴ children. 8. Tanaquil, the wife of Tarquinius, was skilled in augury.⁵ 9. Afterwards⁶ he accomplished⁷ many things.⁸ 10. Nevertheless,⁹ the two sons of Ancus, who had been his wards, were the means of his death.¹⁰

¹ cf. p. 30, ll. 3-4.⁶ cf. p. 32, l. 19.² 'of Rome,' express by an adjective.⁷ i.e. did.³ See B. 246, 1; A. 102, a; H. 450, 2.⁸ 'many things,' express by one word.⁴ See Ex. IV, N. 1.⁹ See Ex. II, N. 9.⁵ a plural idea in Latin. See p. 33, l. 23. ¹⁰ i.e. killed him.

VI. ROMAN HISTORY, §§ 18-20.

GRAMMAR LESSON.

- (a) Review of Second Conjugation. B. 103, 104; A. pp. 96, 97; H. 207, 208.
- (b) Subjective Genitive. B. 199; A. 213, 1; H. 396, II.
- (c) Objective Genitive. B. 200; A. 217; H. 396, III.

1. The woman of whom¹ Servius Tullius was born was noble. 2. By the command² of the king, Tarquinius Priscus, this boy was brought up in the royal³ house. 3. Tanaquil, in honor⁴ of her husband, appointed him king. 4. Thus he, who had been a slave, now⁵ possessed⁶ royal power. 5. Servius Tullius had been the first⁷ to manage the government well. 6. In the first place,⁷ he put an end to the slaughter.⁸ 7. During the reign of this king the Roman city had⁹ many thousand citizens.¹⁰ 8. Tullia, the wife of Tarquinius Su-

perbus, killed her ¹¹ own ¹² father. 9. Tarquinius Superbus was the son of the fifth ¹³ king of Rome.¹⁴ 10. She drove the carriage over the dead ¹⁵ body of her father.

¹ 'of whom,' express by the prep. *ē*, with the abl. of the rel. pronoun.

² Cf. p. 33, l. 4.

³ Use the adj., *rēgius*.

⁴ Cf. p. 30, l. 10.

⁵ *nunc*.

⁶ Cf. p. 31, l. 4.

⁷ See N. to p. 30, l. 3.

⁸ Cf. p. 32, l. 16.

⁹ Imperfect tense.

¹⁰ 'citizens,' partitive gen.

¹¹ See Ex. IV, N. 1.

¹² *ipsius*.

¹³ *quintus*, adj.

¹⁴ Express by an adj.

¹⁵ *mortuus*, adj.

VII. ROMAN HISTORY, §§ 21-24.

GRAMMAR LESSON.

- (a) Adjectives, their Declension and Comparison. B. 62-75; A. 81-91; H. 146-170.
- (b) Accusative of Limit of Motion. B. 181, 1, a, b; A. 258, 1, b; H. 380, II, 2, 1).
- (c) Accusative of Duration of Time and Space. B. 181, 1; A. 256, 2; H. 379.

1. Tarquinius Superbus was more active in war than in peace.¹ 2. Nevertheless, he constructed many buildings,² among ³ which was the temple of Jupiter. 3. Then he advanced⁴ to⁵ Ardea, a city which is not far from⁶ Rome. 4. Lucretia, a very high-born lady, committed suicide in the sight of her husband, Collatinus. 5. For this reason her husband, together with many others, closed the gates of the city against Tarquinius. 6. Tarquinius is said⁷ to have been too proud.⁸ 7. For many years the-government-was-administered by kings. 8. Afterwards the Romans went to Rome and elected consuls. 9. In the first year five consuls were chosen, who were very unlike⁹ the kings. 10. Tarquinius

and several others made war against Rome, but they were conquered in the first battle.

¹ 'than in peace,' express by *quam*, followed by the ablative case of the noun.

² *aedificium*.

³ Use the prep. *in*.

⁴ Cf. p. 32, l. 14.

⁵ Do not translate the 'to.' Apply Grammar Lesson, b.

⁶ 'not far from.' Cf. p. 30, l. 2. ⁸ Cf. B. 240, 1; A. 93, a; H. 444, 1.

⁷ Cf. p. 30, l. 2.

⁹ 'unlike,' *dissimilis*, adj. Cf. p. 33, l. 13.

VIII. VIRI ROMAE, p. 53 to p. 54, l. 13.

GRAMMAR LESSON.

(a) Review of Third Conjugation of Verbs. B. 105, 106, 109-111; A. pp. 98-103; H. 209, 210.

(b) Ablative Absolute. B. 227; A. 255; H. 431.

1. Caesar, when he had lost his father,¹ was deprived of his property. 2. He was more hostile to Sulla than² to Cinna. 3. The former³ hunted for Caesar for the purpose of killing him,⁴ but Caesar changed his robe¹ and escaped to Alba.⁵ 4. He was seized by a slave, but by giving him money¹ he obtained pardon. 5. At first⁶ Sulla refused to grant⁷ the pardon, but Caesar's relatives at last⁸ prevailed. 6. In Asia, where he had served his first campaign, he captured Mitylenae. 7. When Caesar had been presented with a civic crown,¹ Sulla died. 8. He withdrew to Rhodes, where Apollonius Molo was a famous teacher. 9. Caesar was captured by pirates, but he conducted himself in such a way that he was ransomed when fifty talents had been given¹ them. 10. Then he hastened to⁵ Miletus.

¹ Express this clause by the abl. abs. constr., and cf. Hint I.

² *quam*.

³ Cf. Ex. v, n. 3.

⁴ 'for the purpose of killing him,' express by two words. Cf. p. 53, l. 6.

⁵ Cf. Ex. I, n. 5.

⁶ *primō*.

⁷ *dare*.

⁸ *tandem*.

IX. VIRI ROMAE, p. 54, l. 14 to p. 55, l. 22.

GRAMMAR LESSON.

- (a) **Review of Fourth and Fifth Declensions of Nouns.** B. 48-53; A. 68-74; H. 116-123.
 (b) **Ablative of Means.** B. 218; A. 248, c, 1; H. 420.
 (c) **Ablative of Comparison.** B. 217; A. 247; H. 417.

1. Caesar was more eager for power than many other Romans. 2. 'Therefore,' said he,¹ 'there is no opportunity for ambition in a poor village.' 3. He ever longed to obtain royal power by means of his forces. 4. He came to² Gades, a town in Spain. 5. There he noticed a temple of Hercules, in which was a statue of Alexander. 6. He was disgusted at his own inactivity because Alexander was³ greater than himself.⁴ 7. The Forum and Capitol were adorned with porticoes by Caesar, when⁵ aedile. 8. By giving games and hunting-spectacles,⁶ he squandered his patrimony. 9. After Caesar had been elected consul, Pompey and Crassus formed an alliance. 10. Bibulus, the colleague of Caesar, was driven out of the Forum by force of arms.

¹ Cf. p. 27, l. 12, and Hint XIV.³ Subjunctive mood. ⁵ Omit.² Cf. Ex. VII, N. 5.⁴ See Ex. IV, N. 1.⁶ Cf. Ex. VIII, N. 1.

X. VIRI ROMAE, p. 55, l. 23 to p. 57.

GRAMMAR LESSON.

- (a) **Review of Fourth Conjugation of Verbs.** B. 107, 108; A. pp. 104, 105; H. 211, 212.
 (b) **Uses of the Present and Perfect Participle.** B. 336, 337; A. 290-292; H. 549, 550.

1. Caesar, when he had completed his consulship,¹ attacked the Gauls. 2. For nine years² he carried on war in the

province of Gaul. 3. He was the first one to³ build a bridge and attack the Germans. 4. Having attacked the Britons, he reduced their country to the form of a province. 5. Hastening forward to the front of the battle line, he snatched a shield from the hands of a retreating soldier. 6. When Julia, the daughter of Caesar, married¹ Pompey, harmony was preserved. 7. When the former died,¹ the power of Caesar was suspected. 8. Caesar returned into Italy, and became a candidate for the consulship a second time. 9. He stood at the river Rubicon for a little time, but finally crossed the bridge. 10. He captured¹ Brundisium with his army, and hastened on to Rome.

¹ See Ex. VIII, Grammar Lesson, and N. 1.

³ 'the first to,' cf. p. 30, l. 3.

² See Ex. VII, c, Grammar Lesson.

⁴ Cf. Ex. V, N. 3.

XI. NEPOS, MILTIADES, I, II.

GRAMMAR LESSON.

(a) **Dative with Compounds.** B. 187, III; A. 228; H. 386.

(b) **Clauses of Purpose.** B. 282; A. 317; H. 497.

1. Miltiades was sent by the Athenians¹ to get possession of² the Chersonese. 2. The Athenians chose him as commander in-accordance-with-an-oracle³ of the Pythia. 3. They asked⁴ him to bring the inhabitants of Lemnus under their sway. 4. Miltiades set out⁵ with a chosen band, and arrived at Lemnus. 5. There he demanded that the Lemnians should surrender.⁶ 6. They refused,⁷ but Miltiades, since he had no time for delaying, did not bring-war⁸ against them. 7. He arrived at the Chersonese, where in a short time he conquered the army of the enemy. 8. Nevertheless, the Athenian decided to stay there, so that he might enjoy royal honors. 9. At length⁹ he returned to Lemnus, and demanded that they

surrender the city to him. 10. They did so, but the Lemnians departed from the island.

¹ 'by the Athenians,' express by the prep. *ā*, with the abl. case.

² Cf. p. 76, l. 2.

⁶ Cf. p. 76, l. 16.

³ *ex orāculō*.

⁷ *recūsō*.

⁴ Cf. N. to p. 32, l. 6.

⁸ *bellum inferre*.

⁵ See Ex. x, Grammar Lesson, b.

⁹ *tandem*.

XII. NEPOS, MILTIADES, III.

GRAMMAR LESSON.

(a) Ablative of Cause. B. 219; A. 245; H. 413.

(b) Clauses of Result and Characteristic. B. 283, 284; A. 319, 320; H. 500-503.

1. At that time it happened¹ that Darius constructed a bridge over the river Hister. 2. The king then² led his troops across, in order that he might make war upon his enemy, the Scythians. 3. Wherefore³ he left guards to protect the bridge,⁴ among whom⁵ was Miltiades. 4-5. So many⁶ messages were brought that⁷ Darius was unsuccessful,⁸ that Miltiades urged the guards of the bridge to destroy⁹ it.¹⁰ 6. At any rate,¹¹ if the bridge had been destroyed,¹² the king would have perished¹³ through want. 7. The majority opposed the plan.¹⁴ 8. And so they shrunk from this matter to such an extent that they followed the opinion of Histiaeus, the Milesian. 9. Miltiades was influenced¹⁵ through fear¹⁶ to depart¹⁵ to Athens. 10. And yet¹⁷ his plan ought to be praised because of its usefulness.¹⁸

¹ Cf. p. 39, l. 7.

² *deinde*.

³ *i.e.* because of which thing.

⁴ 'guards to protect the bridge,' *i.e.* lit., 'guards of the bridge.'

⁵ *i.e.* in which number.

⁶ 'so many,' *tantus*.

⁷ Omit in translation and study the text carefully.

⁸ *i.e.* carried on the affair ill.

¹³ 'would have perished,' *interisset*.

⁹ *i.e.* 'that they destroy it.'

¹⁴ See Ex. xi, Grammar Lesson, a.

¹⁰ *eum*.

¹⁵ Cf. p. 37, l. 12.

¹¹ *certe*.

¹⁶ *metus*.

¹⁷ *tamen*.

¹² See Ex. viii, Grammar Lesson, b.

¹⁸ *utilitās*.

XIII. NEPOS, MILTIADES, IV.

GRAMMAR LESSON.

- (a) **Partitive Genitive.** B. 201; A. 216, a, 2; H. 397, 2.
 (b) **Genitive of Quality.** B. 203, I; A. 216; H. 396, V.
 (c) **Review of Clauses of Purpose and Result.**

1. Dareus, since many of his friends urged¹ him to send an army into Greece, got ready a fleet. 2. Datis, a man of brave spirit,² was in command³ of it. 3. He⁴ was ordered to take Eretria. 4. When this city had been captured, the Persians tried⁵ to capture Athens.⁶ 5. Their forces advanced to Attica in order that they might decide (the matter) by a contest of arms.⁷ 6. The Athenians were roused to so great fear that they made ready 10,000 foot-soldiers. 7. They sent a messenger⁸ to ask help of the Lacedaemonians. 8. He was of the kind that are called couriers. 9. Ten generals were chosen whom the Athenians placed in command⁹ of the army. 10. And so it happened¹⁰ that they defended themselves by means of the walls.

¹ See Ex. VIII, Grammar Lesson, b.

² Cf. p. 36, l. 12.

³ Cf. p. 78, l. 12.

⁴ Cf. Hint XV. Use the word *imperō*.

⁵ *cōnor*.

⁶ *Athēnae*. See Vocab.

⁷ Cf. p. 39, ll. 3, 4.

⁸ *nūntius*.

⁹ Cf. p. 77, ll. 27, 28.

¹⁰ Cf. p. 76, l. 11.

XIV. NEPOS, MILTIADES, V, VI.

GRAMMAR LESSON.

- (a) **Dative of Reference.** B. 188; A. 235; H. 384, II, 4.
 (b) **Dative of Possession.** B. 190; A. 231; H. 387.
 (c) **Uses of the Subjunctive and Imperative.** B. 272-281; A. 265-269; H. 483-489.

1. The Plataeans sent a thousand soldiers to help¹ the Athenians. 2. Athenians, lead out your forces and pitch

a camp! 3. Let them join battle with this purpose, that they may overcome the forces of the enemy. 4. The leader² of the latter³ had the name Datis. 5. May the Athenians be superior in valor! 6. The Persians were so frightened that they ran for their ships. 7. Let us bestow a great reward upon Miltiades. 8. For he freed all Greece for the sake of the Athenians. 9. Therefore⁴ let him be considered more famous than the other generals.⁵ 10. These same Athenians, though, who gave so much honor to Miltiades, were afterwards corrupted by bribery.

¹ 'to help.' Cf. p. 78, ll. 21, 22.

³ Cf. Ex. v, n. 3.

² Not the nom. case.

⁴ *ergō*.

⁵ See Ex. ix, Grammar Lesson, c.

XV. NEPOS, MILTIADES, VII, VIII.

GRAMMAR LESSON.

(a) Ablative of Agent. B. 216; A. 246; H. 415, I.

(b) Ablative of Place Where and Locative. B. 228, 232, 1; A. 258, c, 1, 2; H. 425, II.

(c) Causal Clauses. B. 286, 1; A. 321; H. 516.

1. A large number of ships was given to Miltiades by the Athenians, because he was a man of great influence.¹ 2. With these he went to the island of Paros. 3. When the people of that island refused² to surrender themselves,³ he led out his forces. 4. The Parians remained in their city, which was besieged⁴ by the Athenian general. 5. Because of the fire that was seen on the mainland, Miltiades believed⁵ that⁶ the royal fleet was approaching. 6. And so they burned the works and set out for Athens. 7. The Athenians were very much displeased⁷ because (as they said) Miltiades had been

bribed by the king. 8. And so, because he could not pay the money (with) which⁸ he was fined, the Athenians threw him into chains. 9. The Athenians did this because (in reality) Miltiades was drawn towards a desire for power. 10. Nevertheless, he possessed a famous name.

¹ Cf. p. 81, ll. 2, 5, 6.

⁸ Cf. p. 76, l. 16.

² See Ex. XII, N. 7.

⁴ *obsideo*.

⁵ Cf. p. 80, l. 7.

⁶ Omit and express the fol. with inf. and subject acc.

⁷ *offendo*.

⁸ See B. 208, 2, b; A. 220, b, 1; H. 410, III.

XVI. NEPOS, THEMISTOCLES, I, II.

GRAMMAR LESSON.

(a) **Dative of Purpose.** B. 191, 2; A. 233, a; H. 390, I.

(b) **Ablative with Deponents.** B. 218, 1; A. 249; H. 421, I.

(c) **Cum-Clauses.** B. 286, 2, 288, 1, B; A. 325, 326; H. 517, 521, II, 2.

1. It was not a disgrace¹ to Thucydides that² he was disinherited by his father. 2. But he rather³ for that reason⁴ served the state faithfully. 3. Thus afterwards he obtained possession⁵ of great power. 4. When in the Corcyraean War he had been appointed general, he was of great assistance to his citizens. 5. For he had persuaded the Athenians to construct a fleet with which they might make war upon Xerxes.⁶ 6. Thus, when the latter entered Europe with all his soldiers, the Greeks⁷ were prepared.⁸ 7. For it happened⁹ that messengers¹⁰ were sent to Delphi to consult the Pythia. 8. The reply is given for them to fortify themselves with wooden walls. 9. But since the Athenians did not under-

stand this, Themistocles told them that ships were meant by the god. 10. Thus they built a hundred ships, which they soon after ¹¹ made use of.¹²

¹ Dat.² *quod*.³ *potius*.⁴ See Ex. XII, Grammar Lesson, a.⁵ Cf. p. 80, l. 4.⁶ See Ex. XI, Grammar Lesson, a.⁷ *Graeci*, -*orum*.⁸ *parātus*, adj.⁹ Cf. Ex. XIII, n. 10.¹⁰ Cf. Ex. XIII, n. 9.¹¹ Cf. p. 35, l. 21.¹² Cf. p. 81, l. 3.

XVII. NEPOS, THEMISTOCLES, III, IV.

GRAMMAR LESSON.

- (a) Questions, Method of Asking and Answering. B. 162; A. 210-212; H. 351, 352.
- (b) Pronouns, Personal and Indefinite. B. 84, 91; A. 98, 104; H. 184, 189-191.
- (c) Temporal Clauses, *postquam*, *ut*, *ubi*, *cum* *primum*. B. 287; A. 324; H. 518.

1. Since this plan was pleasing in no respect¹ to many states, the latter² decided to fight on land. 2. After men had been sent to fight at Thermopylae, the remaining Greeks take³ the fleet away to Artemisium. 3. Did not the barbarians, by means of their great forces, overcome the fleet of the Greeks? 4. No, the latter withdrew after an indecisive battle, nor was there any danger⁴ lest they would be overwhelmed. 5. But did the barbarians pursue⁵ them? 6. Yes, they did; the Greeks formed their fleet opposite Athens and⁶ near Salamis. 7. The Persian⁷ king first advanced to Athens, where he killed the priests who were defending the citadel. 8. Themistocles, as soon as he was

able, sent one of his slaves to the king. 9. The slave announced to the latter that⁸ it would be easy to overcome the enemy all together. 10. Did Xerxes conquer the Greeks in that battle?

¹ *nil*.² Translate by a pronoun. Cf. Ex. v, n. 3.³ 'take away.' Cf. p. 82, l. 27.⁵ Cf. p. 82. l. 8.⁴ Partitive gen.⁶ Omit.⁷ Either the adj. *Persicus* or the gen. pl. of *Persae*. ⁸ Cf. Ex. xv, n. 6.

XVIII. NEPOS, THEMISTOCLES, V, VI.

GRAMMAR LESSON.

(a) Adjectives, Various Uses with Nouns. B. 192, 204, 214, 226, 2; A. 218, 234, 243, 245, a; H. 391, 399, 414, III, 421, III.

(b) Temporal Clauses, *antequam*, *priusquam*; *dum*, *dōnec*, *quoad*. B. 291-293; A. 327, 328; H. 519, 520.

1. While Xerxes was delaying¹ in Greece, Themistocles, full² of schemes,³ informed the barbarian king that⁴ the bridge by which he had crossed into Greece was being destroyed by pirates.⁵ 3. The result was⁶ that Xerxes was so terrified that he did not cease in his flight⁷ before⁸ he had arrived in Asia. 4. Thus Europe was a match⁹ for Asia. 5. Themistocles was equally¹⁰ great in peace, being¹¹ always hostile to all other states except¹² Athens. 6. For through his wisdom the Athenians surrounded the Piraeus with walls. 7. Through his artifice,¹³ too, the Athenians constructed walls from their city to the Piraeus. 8. The Lacedaemonians were annoyed¹⁴ at this. 9. The Athenians, as¹⁵ they thought, had already¹⁶ gained great renown on account of their victories. 10. Therefore, ambassadors were sent to Athens by the Lace-

daemonians, but the Athenians did not cease to collect what was suitable for a wall.

¹ *moror*.

² *plēnus*.

³ *i.e.* plans.

⁴ Cf. Ex. xv, n. 6.

⁵ Separate the conjunction *priusquam*, putting the *prius* before the verb *dēsistere*.

⁹ *pār*.

¹⁰ *pārīter*.

¹¹ Omit.

¹² *praeter*, prep.

⁵ Cf. p. 82, l. 8.

⁶ *i.e.* 'it happened that.'

⁷ *fugā dēsistere*.

¹³ *dolus*.

¹⁴ *graviter ferre*.

¹⁵ *ut*.

¹⁶ *iam*.

XIX. NEPOS, THEMISTOCLES, VII, VIII.

GRAMMAR LESSON.

Substantive Clauses. B. 295, 1, 297, 2; A. 331, 332, a, 2; H. 497, 498, I, 501, I, 1.

1. At first Themistocles, who went to Lacedaemon as ambassador, did not present himself to the magistrates, because (as he said) he was waiting for his colleagues. 2. But the Lacedaemonians complained that he was trying to deceive them in this matter. 3. At last¹ the rest of the ambassadors arrived. 4. Themistocles then asked the Spartans themselves² to send³ men to Athens to examine⁴ the matter. 5. The Athenian ambassadors set out with them, and Themistocles was retained in the meantime as hostage. 6. After the former⁵ had arrived in Attica,⁶ he called upon the magistrates of the Lacedaemonians, so that he might make a most frank declaration. 7. He took pains⁷ to inform them concerning⁸ the matter. 8. By means of those walls, he said,⁹ Greece can be more easily defended from the enemy. 9. Yet afterwards Themistocles was condemned, though¹⁰ absent, by

the Athenians, on a charge of alliance with the Persian king.
10. Thus all leaders fear that they will be at last driven out of their state.

¹ Cf. Ex. XI, N. 9.

² Use the intensive pron., *ipse*.

³ Cf. Ex. XI, N. 4.

⁴ Not to be translated by the infinitive.

⁵ Cf. Ex. V, N. 3.

⁶ Cf. p. 30, l. 1.

⁷ P. 85, l. 19.

⁸ *dē*, prep.

⁹ Cf. Ex. IX, N. 1.

¹⁰ Omit.

XX. NEPOS, THEMISTOCLES, IX, X.

GRAMMAR LESSON.

Indirect Question. B. 300, 4; A. p. 367, N., § 334; H. 529, I, II, 3.

1. After many years Themistocles sent a letter to the Persian king, in which he said: 2. "Formerly, when I was warring against your father, I was defending my fatherland. 3. Nevertheless, in order to be of assistance¹ to him, I advised² him to return home before the bridge which he had constructed over the Hellespont should be destroyed. 4. Now, moreover, I ask you that you free me from danger." 5. Why³ did the king look with admiration upon a man so learned? 6. I ask, why the king looked with admiration upon Themistocles. 7. Tell me what the Greek promised the king. 8. He promised that by means of his own plans Greece could be overwhelmed by the Persians. 9. Therefore, Artaxerxes presented Themistocles with many gifts, among which were cities which should furnish him bread and wine. 10. In what way⁴ he died, the authorities have written various accounts.

¹ What case? See Ex. XVI, Grammar Lesson, a.

² *moneō*.

³ *cūr*.

⁴ *quō modō*.

XXI. CAESAR, BOOK I, CHAPS. I, II.

GRAMMAR LESSON.

Conditional Sentences—Simple. B. 301, 302; A. 304, 305, *a*, 306; H. 506, 507, I, 508.

The Belgae and Aquitani, who inhabit Gaul, differ from each other in laws and language. If the Belgae are braver than the Aquitani,¹ it is because the traders do not often visit them. Since² they carry on war incessantly with the Germans, all the Belgae who dwell across the Seine excel the rest of the Gauls in bravery. The part that the Gauls inhabit begins³ with the river Rhine, and is bounded by the ocean. The part of Gaul which is inhabited by the Aquitani⁴ extends to the Pyrenees mountains. Orgetorix, who was the richest of all the Helvetians, formed a conspiracy⁵ and easily persuaded the citizens⁶ to bring⁷ war upon their neighbors and get possession of all Gaul,⁸ because (as he said⁹) the territory of the Helvetians was confined within narrow limits.¹⁰

¹ 'than the Aquitani.' See Ex. ix, Grammar Lesson, *c*.

² See Ex. xvi, Grammar Lesson, *c*. What mood should be used?

³ 'begins,' *i.e.* 'takes (its) beginning.'

⁴ See Ex. xv, Grammar Lesson, *a*.

⁵ 'formed a conspiracy,' express according to Ex. viii, Grammar Lesson, *b*.

⁶ Use the proper case of *civis*.

⁷ 'to bring,' etc. Cf. p. 115, l. 9.

⁸ 'all Gaul,' not to be expressed by the acc. case.

⁹ '(as he said),' do not translate lit., but express in the *mood* of the verb. See Ex. xv, Grammar Lesson, *c*.

¹⁰ Express according to p. 115, l. 22.

XXII. CAESAR, BOOK I, CHAPS. III, IV.

GRAMMAR LESSON.

Conditional Sentences—Future. B. 302, 303; A. 305, b, 307; H. 507, I, II, 508, 509.

The Helvetians were moved by the influence of Orgetorix, and decided to depart from their territory.¹ After they had established² peace with the rest of the Gauls, the departure was determined on for the third year. Orgetorix said as follows³: "If I should undertake an embassy to the neighboring states, we should very easily accomplish our⁴ attempts. Let us persuade Casticus, the Sequanian, to seize⁵ the sovereignty which his father held many years." The result was that⁶ Orgetorix gave his daughter in marriage to Dumnorix. The Helvetians had the greatest influence in Gaul. But, when this matter had been reported, Orgetorix was compelled to plead his cause in chains. If a Helvetian is condemned he is burned with fire. Orgetorix committed suicide.

¹ See Ex. x, Grammar Lesson, b.

⁴ Omit.

² See Ex. xvii, Grammar Lesson, c.

⁵ See Ex. xxi, n. 7.

³ 'as follows,' *ita*. Put before the verb.

⁶ 'The result was that,' *factum est ut*. See Ex. xix, Grammar Lesson.

XXIII. CAESAR, BOOK I, CHAPS. V, VI.

GRAMMAR LESSON.

Conditional Sentences—Contrary to Fact. B. 304; A. 305, c, 308; H. 507, III, 510.

After the death of Orgetorix, the Helvetians decided to go forth from their territories. But they would have taken away the hope of returning home if they had set on fire all their

towns and villages, and had burned all the corn which they did not intend¹ to carry with them. The Rauraci, their² neighbors, were willing to adopt this plan and set out together with them. The Boii, who live across the Rhine, are received as allies. The Helvetii could not go out by the route which was between the Jura mountain and the river Rhone, because it was too narrow³ and difficult. So they decided⁴ to go through the Roman province. But first⁵ they had to cross the Rhone and go through the territory of the Allobroges. On the day appointed they all came to the bank of the river.

¹ 'intend,' *i.e.* 'were about to.'

² Omit.

³ 'too narrow,' etc. Cf. Ex. VII, N. 8.

⁴ Cf. p. 115, ll. 25, 26.

⁵ *Primum*.

XXIV. CAESAR, BOOK I, CHAPS. VII, VIII.

GRAMMAR LESSON.

Concessive Clauses. B. 309; A. 313; H. 514, 515.

Since the Helvetii were attempting¹ to march² through the province, Caesar set out from Rome. He quickly arrived at Geneva, although he levied a large number of soldiers on the province. In the first place he cut down the bridge which reached³ from the territory of the Helvetii to the town of Geneva.⁴ The Helvetii, having been informed of Caesar's arrival, sent ambassadors to him to ask⁵ that they be allowed to march through the province. Caesar did not grant it, because the army of Lucius Cassius, the consul, had been sent under the yoke by the Helvetii. If the opportunity should be⁶ given to men of hostile disposition of marching through

the Roman province, they would not keep from mischief. Wherefore¹ Caesar took time to deliberate, and in the meantime constructed a wall in order that he might more easily check the enemy. Afterwards² they tried to cross³ the Rhone by the fords.

¹ What mood is required if *cum* be used?

² 'march,' express by two words.

³ Cf. p. 117, ll. 23, 24.

⁴ 'of Geneva,' not the gen. case.

⁵ See Ex. XI, Grammar Lesson, b.

⁶ For the condition, cf. Grammar Lesson of Ex. XXII.

⁷ *Quā rē.*

⁸ *Postea.*

⁹ Cf. p. 117, l. 21.

XXV. CAESAR, BOOK I, CHAPS. IX, X.

GRAMMAR LESSON.

Infinitive without Subject Accusative. B. 326-328; A. 270, 271; H. 533.

Since there was left¹ only the way through the Sequani, the Helvetii sent Dumnorix to them, to obtain² from them permission³ for the Helvetii to pass through their territory. Dumnorix was friendly to the Helvetii, since he had married the daughter of Orgetorix,⁴ and hence was able to obtain this from the Sequani. When Caesar was informed⁵ of this, he first put a lieutenant in charge of the Roman camp. He said to Labienus: "If the Helvetii intend to march into the territory of the Aedui, it will be very dangerous to the Roman province." Accordingly,⁶ Caesar hastened into Italy in order that he might⁷ enroll two legions and lead three out of winter quarters. Although the Ceutrones tried to keep him from the march, he quickly⁸ led the army into the territory of the

Allobroges, through whose territory the Helvetii were attempting to go.

¹ Cf. Ex. xxiv, n. 1.

² Cf. Ex. xiii, Grammar Lesson, c.

³ i.e. 'obtain that they permit the Helvetii to pass,' etc.

⁴ 'Since he had . . . Orgetorix,' express by the abl. abs. constr.

⁵ Cf. n. 4.

⁷ See Ex. xi, Grammar Lesson, b.

⁶ *quā rē*.

⁸ *celeriter*.

XXVI. CAESAR, BOOK I, CHAPS. XI, XII.

GRAMMAR LESSON.

Indirect Discourse. B. 313, 314, 317, 318; A. 335, 336; H. 522-526.

Caesar was informed that the Helvetii had already led their troops through the territory of the Sequani. The Aedui, into whose territory they had come, said to Caesar that their towns were being stormed and their fields laid waste. The Allobroges too¹ sent ambassadors to Caesar, who said: "If you wait, we shall have nothing left² except the bare ground." Scouts informed Caesar that many of the Helvetians had crossed the river Arar, which empties into the Rhone. Therefore Caesar attacked those who had not yet crossed the river, and would have destroyed them all if a part had not hidden themselves in the nearest forests. And so it happened³ that those who had killed Lucius Cassius were the first to pay the penalty. Lucius Piso, the grandfather of Lucius Piso, was killed in the same battle.

¹ *etiam*.

² See Ex. xiii, Grammar Lesson, a.

³ See Ex. xxii, n. 6.

XXVII. CAESAR, BOOK I, CHAPS. XIII, XIV.

GRAMMAR LESSON.

Numerals. B. 78-81; A. 94-97; H. 171-181.

The Helvetians were informed that Caesar had built a bridge over the Arar river, and had led his army across in this way. Although¹ they themselves had been unable² to accomplish this in twenty-five days, Caesar had done it in five days. Divico, the ambassador, spoke as follows:³ "If⁴ you should make peace with us, we would go into that district where you would wish us to be. Because you attacked one canton unexpectedly, do not presume⁵ upon your valor." Caesar replied that he remembered what the Helvetians had done, but that he did not fear without a reason. "You are the first,"⁶ he said,⁷ "who have harassed the Aedui, but if you had⁸ given hostages, I would have made peace with you." Divico replied⁹ and departed.

¹ See Ex. xxiv.³ 'as follows, *ita*.² *i.e.* 'had not been able.'⁴ See Ex. xxii.⁵ 'do not presume,' express by *nē* with the present subjunctive.⁶ Cf. *primus*, p. 30, l. 3, and note.⁸ See Ex. xxiii.⁷ 'he said,' *inquit*. See Hint XIV.⁹ use abl. abs. constr.

XXVIII. CAESAR, BOOK I, CHAPS. XV, XVI.

GRAMMAR LESSON.

(a) The Gerund and Gerundive. B. 337, 7-339; A. 294-301; H. 541-544.

(b) Dative of Agent. B. 189; A. 232; H. 388.

On the same day Caesar had to move the camp.¹ He had seven thousand cavalry² in his army. In the first place³ he sent men⁴ forward to see where the enemy were. A battle

was fought with the Helvetians, and since⁵ they had routed our men with a handful of cavalry,⁶ the enemy were elated. (Caesar saw that the grain, which the Aedui had to bring in boats, was not at hand. They put him off day after day. And so he called together all the leaders of the Aedui and complained because he was not supported by them. Among these⁷ was Liscus, whom Caesar severely reproached, although he⁸ was at the head of the highest magistracy.

¹ i.e. 'the camp had to be moved by Caesar.'

² Cf. note to p. 30, l. 3.

² Partitive gen.

⁴ 'men,' *eōs*.

⁵ 'Since they routed,' etc., express either by the abl. abs. constr. (changing to the passive), or by the *cum*-constr.

⁶ i.e. 'by a few cavalry.'

⁸ 'he,' *ille*.

⁷ 'these,' use the rel. pron.

XXIX. CAESAR, BOOK I, CHAPS. XVII, XVIII.

Then at length Liscus, who had been silent as long as he was able, was influenced by the words of the commander,¹ and said² that some had greater influence privately than the magistrates themselves; that these assert³ that the Romans wish to take away from the Aeduans their freedom, and that for this reason the corn is not collected. Caesar quickly dismissed the meeting, for although he thought that Dumnorix himself was meant, he wished to ask the truth of Liscus alone. He found out that this man⁴ had great influence⁵ with the populace. The wife of Dumnorix was a Helvetian,⁶ and for this reason also he favored them. On account of the arrival of the Romans, however, he despaired of his influence among the Helvetians.

¹ 'commander,' *imperātor*.

² 'was influenced and said,' express by a participle and a finite verb.

³ 'assert,' *affirmō*.

⁴ 'this man,' *illum*.

⁵ 'had great influence,' i.e. 'was of great influence' (abl. of quality).

⁶ i.e. 'was had from the Helvetians.'

XXX. CAESAR, BOOK I, CHAPS. XIX, XX.

Therefore¹ there was sufficient reason for Caesar's punishing² Dumnorix. Besides,³ he was informed that Dumnorix⁴ had led the Helvetians through the territory of the Sequani. And so before he punishes⁵ Dumnorix, he summons Diviciacus to him so that he may have a talk with him. C. Valerius Troucillus was the interpreter. Caesar begged that Diviciacus command the state to punish his brother. Diviciacus, weeping, said that although Dumnorix did not avoid suspicions, still he himself was moved by love of his brother,⁶ and he urged Caesar to pardon the wrong to the republic in answer to his wish. When Diviciacus had ceased pleading, Caesar summoned his (*i.e.* Diviciacus') brother and said he pardoned bygones.⁷

¹ 'Therefore,' *i.e.* 'wherefore.'

² Study carefully p. 126, ll. 7, 8, for the Latin idiom.

³ *Praetereā.*

⁴ Use a pronoun.

⁵ 'punish any one,' *supplicium dē aliquō sūmere.*

⁶ 'love of his brother.' See note to p. 126, l. 30.

⁷ *praeterita.*

ABBREVIATIONS.

a.	= <i>active.</i>
abl.	= <i>ablative.</i>
abs.	= <i>absolute.</i>
acc.	= <i>accusative.</i>
adj.	= <i>adjective.</i>
adv.	= <i>adverb, adverbial.</i>
causat.	= <i>causative.</i>
chap.	= <i>chapter.</i>
coll.	= <i>collective, collectively.</i>
comp.	= <i>comparative.</i>
conj.	= <i>conjunction.</i>
dat.	= <i>dative.</i>
decl.	= <i>declension.</i>
def.	= <i>defective.</i>
dem.	= <i>demonstrative.</i>
dep.	(in vocabulary) = <i>deponent.</i>
desid.	= <i>desiderative.</i>
dim.	= <i>diminutive.</i>
distrib.	= <i>distributive.</i>
e.g.	= <i>exempli gratia</i> = <i>for example.</i>
Eng.	= <i>English.</i>
et al.	= <i>et alibi</i> = <i>and elsewhere.</i>
et seq.	= <i>et sequentia</i> = <i>and what follows.</i>
etc.	= <i>et cetera</i> = <i>and so forth.</i>
excl.	= <i>exclamation.</i>
f.	= <i>feminine.</i>
fol.	= <i>following, and what follows.</i>
freq.	= <i>frequentative.</i>
fut.	= <i>future.</i>
gen.	= <i>genitive.</i>
Ger.	= <i>German, Germanic word.</i>
ibid.	= <i>ibidem</i> = <i>in the same place.</i>
id.	= <i>idem</i> = <i>the same.</i>
i.e.	= <i>id est</i> = <i>that is.</i>
imp.	= <i>imperative.</i>
impers.	= <i>impersonal, impersonally.</i>
impf.	= <i>imperfect.</i>
incho.	= <i>inchoative.</i>
indecl.	= <i>indeclinable.</i>
indef.	= <i>indefinite.</i>
indic.	= <i>indicative.</i>

inf.	= <i>infinitive.</i>
insep.	= <i>inseparable.</i>
intens.	= <i>intensive.</i>
inter.	= <i>interrogative.</i>
interj.	= <i>interjection.</i>
intr.	= <i>intransitive.</i>
irr.	= <i>irregular.</i>
Kel.	= <i>Keltic, Keltic word.</i>
lit.	= <i>literally.</i>
loc.	= <i>locative.</i>
m.	= <i>masculine.</i>
mss.	= <i>manuscripts.</i>
n., neut.	= <i>neuter.</i>
nom.	= <i>nominative.</i>
num.	= <i>numeral.</i>
opp.	= <i>opposite.</i>
ord.	= <i>ordinal.</i>
p., pp.	= <i>page, pages.</i>
part.	= <i>participle.</i>
pass.	= <i>passive.</i>
patr.	= <i>patronymic.</i>
pers.	= <i>person, personal.</i>
pf.	= <i>perfect.</i>
pl.	= <i>plural.</i>
plup.	= <i>pluperfect.</i>
pos.	= <i>positive.</i>
pred.	= <i>predicate.</i>
prep.	= <i>preposition.</i>
pres.	= <i>present.</i>
pron.	= <i>pronoun, pronominal.</i>
reflex.	= <i>reflexive.</i>
rel.	= <i>relative.</i>
semi-dep.	= <i>semi-deponent.</i>
sing.	= <i>singular.</i>
subj.	= <i>subjunctive.</i>
subst.	= <i>substantive.</i>
sup.	= <i>superlative.</i>
trans.	= <i>transitive.</i>
v.	= <i>verb.</i>
voc.	= <i>vocative.</i>
1, 2, 3, 4, with verbs	= <i>1st, 2d, 3d, or 4th conjugation.</i>

* Implies that the form before which it stands is hypothetical.

Roots are printed in small capitals, as DIC, CAP.

VOCABULARY.

A.

A., with proper names = **Aulus**, a Roman *praenomen*, or forename.

a. d. = *ante diem*; see **n.** to p. 117, l. 28.

ā, ab, abs, [cf. ἀπό, Eng. *o f, o f f*], prep. with abl., originally implying separation, *from, away from, out of*; of place or direction, *from, out of, at, on*; of agency, with the passive voice, *by, on the part of*; of time, *from, since, after*. **ā dextrō cornū**, *on the right wing*. **ā fronte**, *in front*. **ā tergō**, *in the rear*. **ab infimō**, *at the bottom*. **ab utrōque latere**, *on both sides*. **ab milibus passuum octō**, *eight miles off*.

abaliēnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 1, *convey away, remove; estrange, make hostile*.

abdō, -dere, -didī, -ditus, [ab + dō], 3, *put away, remove; conceal, hide*. **sē abdere**, *to put oneself out of sight, to hide oneself*. **abdūcō**, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, [ab + dūcō], 3, *withdraw, lead away, take off*.

abeō, -ire, -ivī or -iī, —, fut. part. **abitūrus**, [ab + eō], irr., *go away, depart*.

abhorreō, -horrēre, -horruī, —, [ab + horreō], 2, *shrink from; be averse to, be disinclined to, disagree with*.

abiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus, [ab + iaciō], 3, *throw away, throw down, throw; give up, lay aside*.

abripīō, -ripere, -ripuī, -reptus, [ab + rapiō], 3, *take forcibly away; tear away; carry off, remove; drag away, hurry off*.

abrogō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [ab + rogō], 1, of a law, *repeal, annul*. **alicui magistrātum abrogāre**, *to depose any one from office*.

abscēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessus, [abs + cēdō], 3, *go away, depart, withdraw; desist, give up*.

abscidō, -cidere, -cidi, -cīsus, [abs + caedō], 3, *hew off, cut off*.

absēns, -entis, [part. of absum], adj., *absent, away*.

absolvō, -solvere, -solvi, **absolūtus**, [ab + solvō], 3, *set free, acquit, declare innocent*.

absorbeō, -sorbēre, -sorbui or -sorpsi, -sorptus, [ab + sorbeō], 2, *swallow down, swallow*.

abstinentia, -ae, [abstinēns, part. of abstīneō], f., *abstinence, self-restraint, integrity*.

abstīneō, -tinēre, -tinui, -tentus, [abs + teneō], 2, *keep back, hold off; refrain from, abstain, absent oneself*.

abstuli, see **auferō**.

absum, **abesse**, **āfui**, —, fut. part. **āfutūrus**, [ab + sum], irr., *be away, be absent, be distant, be far from; be free from, be want-*

ing, be lacking; be disinclined to; be unsuitable to, be inappropriate. longē abesse, to be far away.

absūmō, -ere, absūmpsī, absūptus, [ab + sūmō], 3, take away, use up, destroy, consume.

ac, see atque.

Acar-nānus, -a, -um, adj., Acarnanian, of Acarnania, the most westerly province of central Greece. See map opp. p. 75.

Acca, -ae, f., Acca, forename of Acca Lārentia, the foster-mother of Romulus and Remus.

accēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessūrus, [ad + cēdō], 3, go to, come to, approach; be added; assent, approve; enter upon, undertake; happen, befall. ad amicitiam accēdere alicūius, to become a friend of any one. propius accēdere, to come nearer.

accendō, -ere, accendī, accēnsus, [ad + unused candō], 3, set fire to; inflame, arouse, excite.

acceptus, pf. pass. part. of accipio, used as an adj., acceptable, welcome, beloved. As part., see accipio.

accidō, -cidere, -cidī, —, [ad + cadō], 3, fall, fall to, befall, happen, occur, fall to the lot of, turn out. Impers., accidit, it happens.

accingō, -ere, accinxī, accinctus, [ad + cingō], 3, gird on, bind on, gird.

accipio, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus, [ad + capio], 3, take to oneself, receive, accept; welcome, take in, understand, hear, learn; deal with, treat; suffer, undergo. male acceptus, roughly handled, defeated. accipiter, -tris, m., hawk.

acclivis, -e, [ad + clivus], adj., sloping upwards, rising, ascending.

acclivitas, -tātis, [acclivis], f., upward slope, ascent.

accommodō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ad + commodus], 1, fit, put on, adjust; accommodate to.

accurrō, -currere, -cucurrī or -currī, -cursus, [ad + currō], 3, run to, run up to, hasten to.

accūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ad + causa], 1, call to account, accuse, reproach, blame, censure. Of things, find fault with, throw blame on.

acer, ācris, ācre, comp. ācrior, sup. ācerrimus, adj., sharp, piercing; bitter; eager, fierce, vigorous.

acerbē, comp. acerbius, sup. acerbissimē, [acerbus], adv., bitterly, cruelly, severely.

acerbus, -a, -um, [cf. ācer], adj., sharp to the taste, bitter; severe, harsh, cruel.

ācerrimē, see ācritēr.

acervus, -ī, m., a heap, pile.

acētum, -ī, [cf. ācer], n., vinegar.

aciēs, -ēī, f., (old gen. aciēs occurs, p. 163, l. 11), edge; of the eye, keenness or fierceness; of an army, line, line of battle, a battle.

acquiescō, -quiescere, -quievī, —, [ad + quiescō], 3, come to rest, rest; be at rest; die.

ācritēr, comp. ācris, sup. ācer-rimē, [ācer], adv., sharply, fiercely, energetically.

Actiacus, -a, -um, adj., of Actium, at Actium.

Actium, -ī, n., Actium, a promontory and town of Epirus on the Ambracian Gulf, celebrated for the naval victory of Octavianus

over Antony and Cleopatra, in 31 B.C. See map opposite p. 75.

actus, see **agō**.

ad, prep. with acc., *to*; of motion and direction, *to, towards, up to*; of place, *in the vicinity of, at, near to, by, in the presence of, among, on*; of time, *till, to, up to, until*; of purpose, especially with the gerundive constr., *for, in order to, for the purpose of, in*; of other relations, *with regard to, according to, in respect to, in consequence of, as to, in*; with words of number, *about*. **ad Genavam**, *in the vicinity of Geneva*. **ad multam noctem**, *till late at night*. **ad extrēmum**, *at last, finally*. **ad hunc modum**, *after this manner*. **ad vesperum**, *towards evening*. **ad duodecim**, *about twelve*.

adaequō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [**ad** + **aequō**, from **aequus**], 1, *make equal to, bring up to a level with; become equal (to), attain to equality (with)*. **adaequāre cursum**, *to keep up with*.

adamō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [**ad** + **amō**], 1, *conceive an eager desire for, covet*.

addō, -dere, -didī, -ditus, [**ad** + **dō**], 3, *put to, add*. **addere in aliquid**, *to make additions to anything*.

addūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, [**ad** + **dūcō**], 3, *lead to, bring, bring up to a place, lead, draw; induce, prevail upon, influence*.

adēptus, part. of **adimō**.

adeō, -īre, -īvi or -iī, -itus, [**ad** + **eō**], irr., *go to, approach, draw near, reach, visit; enter upon, take possession of; undergo, submit to, expose oneself to*.

adeō, [**ad** + **eō**], adv., *to this, so far; so, so much, so very, to such a degree; even, indeed*. **adeō nōn**, *so little*.

adequitō, -āre, -āvi, —, [**ad** + **equitō**, from **eques**], 1, *ride towards; ride up to*.

Adherbal, -alis, m., *Adherbal*, a Numidian prince, son of Micipsa. He was slain by Jugurtha.

adhibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, [**ad** + **habeō**], 2, *hold to, apply; bring forward, bring in, call in, summon, admit; furnish, bestow; employ, use; invite to a dinner; turn to for counsel, consult*.

adhortātiō, -ōnis, [**adhortor**], f., *exhortation, encouragement*.

adhūc, [**ad** + **hūc**], adv., *until now, heretofore, hitherto, as yet*.

adiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus, [**ad** + **iaciō**], 3, *throw to; add to, add, join to*.

adigō, -igere, -ēgī, -actus, [**ad** + **agō**], 3, *drive (to), drive in*.

adimō, -imere, -ēmī, -ēptus, [**ad** + **emō**], 3, *take to oneself, take away, deprive of*.

adipiscor, -ipisci, -eptus sum, [**ad** + **apiscor**], 3, dep., *arrive at; obtain by effort, get, acquire, win*.

aditus, -ūs, [**adeō**], m., *approach, access; way of approach, means of access*. **aditum petere**, *to ask for a hearing, ask for an interview*.

adiungō, -iungere, -iūnxī, adiūncus, [**ad** + **iungō**], 3, *join to, add to, add; win over, gain as a friend*.

adiuvō (**adjuvō**), -iuvāre, -iūvi, adiūtus, [**ad** + **iuvō**], 1, *help, aid, assist, support; render assistance, be of assistance*.

Admagetobirga, -ae, [Kel., = 'Stronghold of Admagetos'], f.,

a town in Gaul. See *n.* to p. 134, l. 11, and map opposite p. 114.

Admētus, -ī, [Ἀδμητος], *m.*, *Admetus*, a king of the Molossians in Epirus, a contemporary of Themistocles.

administrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ad + ministrō], 1, *render assistance; manage, carry on, administer; arrange for, get ready; of orders, execute, carry out.*

admirandus, -a, -um, [part. of admiror], *adj.*, *to be wondered at, wonderful, strange.*

admiratīō, -ōnis, [admiror], *f.*, *wonder, admiration, surprise.*

admiror, -ārī, -ātus sum, [ad + miror], 1, *dep.*, *wonder at, admire; be astonished at.*

admittō, -mittere, -misi, -missus, [ad + mittō], 3, *let go; admit, receive; become guilty of, commit. amicitias admittere, to form friendships. equo admissō, with his horse at full speed.*

admodum, [ad + modum], *adv.*, *to the limit; quite, very.*

admoneō, -monēre, -monuī, admonitus, [ad + moneō], 2, *remind, admonish, warn.*

admoveō, -ēre, admōvī, admōtus, [ad + moveō], 2, *move towards, bring up, bring near, apply.*

adolēscō, -olēscere, -olēvī, adultus, 3, *grow up.*

adolēvī, see adolēscō.

adoptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ad + optō], 1, *choose; adopt.*

adorior, -oriri, -ortus sum, [ad + orior], 4, *dep.*, *approach as an enemy, fall upon, attack; accost, address; undertake, engage in.*

adortus, *pf.* part. of adorior, *having attacked, attacking.*

adsum, -esse, affui, [ad + sum], *irr.*, *be at hand, be present; assist, help; give attention, take part in.*

adsurgō, -ere, adsurrēxi, adsurrēctus, [ad + surgō], 3, *rise up, stand up.*

Aduatuci, -ōrum, *m.*, *pl.*, a warlike people on the left bank of the Meuse, descended from the Cimbri and Teutones. See map opp. p. 114.

adolēscēns, -entis, [part. of adolēscō], *adj.*, *young.* As *subst.*, *m.* and *f.*, *a youth.*

adolēscēntia, -ae, [adolēscēns], *f.*, *youth.* adolēscēntia iniēns, *early youth.*

adolēscēntulus, -ī, [dim. of adolēscēns], *m.*, *very young man, youth.*

adulterium, -ī, [adulter], *n.*, *adultery.*

adveniō, -venire, -vēnī, -ventus, [ad + veniō], 4, *come to, arrive.*

adventō, -āre, —, —, [intens. of adveniō], 1, *advance, press forward, come quickly.*

adventus, -ūs, [cf. adveniō], *m.*, *coming, approach, arrival.*

adversārius, -a, -um, [adversor], *adj.*, *opposed, opposite; hostile.* As *subst.*, adversārius, -ī, *m.*, *opponent, enemy.*

adversus, -a, -um, *sup.* -issimus, part. of advertō], *adj.*, *turned towards, fronting, in front, facing, opposite; unfavorable, adverse, unsuccessful.* adversō colle, *up the hill.* adversis hostibus occurrunt, *they meet the enemy face to face.*

adversus and **adversum**, *adv.* and *prep.*:

(1) As *adv.*, *opposite, against; to meet.*

(2) As prep. with acc., *opposite to, against*.

advertō, -tere, -tī, -sus, [ad + vertō], 3, *turn to, direct, turn. animum advertō, perceive, notice, observe.*

advocātiō, -ōnis, [advocō], f., *summoning as counsel. venire in advocatiōnem, to act as an advocate.*

advocātus, -ī, [advocō], m., *one called to aid, adviser, advocate.*

aedēs, see aedis.

aedificium, -ī, [aedificō], n., *building; house.*

aedificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [aedis, cf. faciō], 1, a., *build, construct.*

aedilicius, -a, -um, [aedilis], adj., *of an aedile. As subst., one who has been an aedile, ex-aedile.*

aedilis, -is, [aedis], m., *aedile, commissioner of public works, the designation of certain magistrates at Rome, who had charge of buildings and public works, and had an oversight of public exhibitions and dramatic performances.*

The **aedilēs plēbēi** had as their special duty the keeping of the decrees of the senate and other public documents; they were two in number, as were also the **aedilēs curulēs**.

aedis or **aedēs**, -is, f., *temple; pl., house, dwelling.*

Aeduus, -a, -um, [Kel., = 'Fiery'], adj., *Aeduan. As subst., Aeduus, -ī, m., an Aeduan; pl., Aeduans, the Aedui, a powerful Gallic people, between the upper waters of the Sequana (Seine) and the Liger (Loire), in alliance with the Romans before Caesar's arrival in Gaul. Their influence was in-*

creased by him. See map opp. p. 114.

Aegātēs, -ium, f., pl., *the Aegates, three islands in the Mediterranean Sea, west of Sicily, near the promontory of Lilybaeum. They were celebrated for the naval victory of the Romans over the Carthaginians (241 B.C.), through which the first Punic war was brought to an end. See map opp. p. 30.*

aeger, -gra, -grum, adj., *unwell, sick, feeble.*

aegerrimē, see aegrē.

aegrē, comp. **aegrus**, sup. **aegerrimē**, [aeger], adv., *with difficulty, scarcely, hardly; reluctantly. aegerrimē, with the greatest difficulty. aliquid aegrē ferre, to feel distress, to be vexed at anything.*

aegrōtō, -āre, -āvī, —, [cf. aeger], 1, *be ill, lie sick.*

Aegyptius, -a, -um, [Aegyptus], adj., *Egyptian, of Egypt, with Egypt. As subst., Aegyptius, -ī, m., Egyptian, inhabitant of Egypt.*

Aegyptus, -ī, f., *Egypt, a country in northeastern Africa, about the lower course of the Nile.*

Aemilius, -a, the name of a celebrated Roman gens. In this book are mentioned:

(1) *L. Aemilius Paulus*, who fell in the battle of Cannae, 216 B.C.

(2) *L. Aemilius Paulus*, consul in 182 B.C.

(3) *Lucius Aemilius*, a decurion in charge of a squad of Gallic cavalry.

aemulātiō, -ōnis, [aemulor], f., *rivalry, emulation, competition.*

aemulor, -ārī, -ātus sum, [aemulus], 1, dep., *rival, vie with, emulate.*

Aenēās, -ae, m., *Aenēās*, son of Venus and Anchises, native of Troy, and ancestor of the Romans.

aēnetis, -a, -um, [aes], adj., of copper, of bronze.

Aeolia, see *Aeolis*.

Aeolis, -idis, or *Aeolia*, -ae, [Αἰολίς, Αἰολία], f., *Aeolis*, *Aeolia*, a country of Asia Minor, north of Ionia. See map opp. p. 93.

aequālis, -e, [aequus], adj., equal, of the same age. As subst., **aequālis**, -is, m., companion of equal age, comrade, contemporary.

aequāliter [aequālis, equal], adv., evenly, uniformly.

aequō, comp. **aequius**, sup. **aequisimē**, [aequus], adv., equally, in a like manner.

aequiperō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [aequus + pār], 1, compare, liken; equal, rival.

aequitās, -ātis, [aequus], f., evenness; equity, fairness. **animi aequitās**, calmness, equanimity.

aequō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [aequus], 1, equalize, make equal, put on an equality with.

aequus, -a, -um, comp. **aequior**, sup. **aequissimus**, adj., level, even, flat; fair, just, equitable; like, equal; favorable, advantageous. **aequō animō**, without anxiety, with equanimity, calmly.

aerārium, -i, [aes], n., treasury, state-treasury; public money.

aes, **aeris**, n., copper, bronze; money. **aes aliēnum**, debt.

aestās, -tātis, f., summer.

aestimō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 1, determine the value of; estimate, value.

aestuārium, -i, [aestus], n., place overflowed at high tide, (salt) marsh.

aetās, -ātis, [for *aevitās* from *aevum*], f., life, age, time of life; time. **ā primā aetate**, from early youth.

afferō, **afferre**, **attuli**, **allātus**, [ad + ferō], irr., bring to, bring; announce, report; produce, cause; introduce; bring forward, allege, assign. **vim afferre**, **manūs afferre**, to use force, offer violence, do violence.

afficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus, [ad + faciō], 3, do something to, treat, use; visit with, afflict, trouble, weaken, impair. **exsiliō afficere**, to banish. **mūneribus afficere**, to reward. **beneficiō afficere**, to treat with kindness. **māgnō dolore affici**, to be greatly annoyed. **supplicio afficere**, **poenā afficere**, to punish.

affinis, -e, [ad + finis], adj., bordering on, related to; as subst., **affinis**, -is, m. and f., relation by marriage.

affinitās, -tātis, [affinis, from ad + finis], f., relationship by marriage, kinship, connection.

affirmō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [ad + firmō], 1, strengthen; assert positively, declare.

affligō, -fligere, -flixi, -flictus, 3, dash at, overthrow; afflict, damage, injure, shatter; subdue, defeat.

affui, see *adsum*.

Āfrica, -ae, f., *Africa*, at first referring only to the dominions of Carthage; afterwards to the Roman province of Africa; then to the whole continent.

Africānus, -a, -um, adj., *African*. As subst., m., surname of *Pūblius Cornēlius Scipiō Africānus*, the conqueror of Hannibal.

āfutūrus, fut. part. of **absum**.

Agamemnōn, -onis, [*Ἀγαμέμνων*], m., *Agamemnon*, king of Mycenae, commander-in-chief of the Greeks during the siege of Troy.

ager, **agri**, m., *land* under cultivation, *field*, *territory*, *domain*; pl., *lands*, *territory*, *country*, *the country*. **agri** **cultūra**, *farming*, *agriculture*.

agger, -geris, [**ad** + **GES**, in **gerō**], m., *rampart*, *mole*, *mound*, *dike*; *material for a mound* (earth, timber), *earth*. **aggerem** **petere**, *to get materials for the rampart*.

aggredior, -gredi, -gressus, [**ad** + **gradior**, *walk*, *go*], 3, dep., *approach*; *go against*, *attack*, *fall upon*; *attempt*.

agitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [*intens. of agō*], 1, *set in violent motion*; *drive onward*, *drive about*, *row about*; *rouse*, *excite*; *disturb*, *distress*; *consider*, *meditate*.

agmen, -minis, [**agō**], n., *troop*, *crowd*; *army on the march*, *marching column*; *line of march*. See pp. 29-31. **agmen** **claudere**, *to bring up the rear*. **novissimum agmen**, *the rear*. **primum agmen**, *the van*. See INTRO., pp. 18, 19.

agnitus, see **agnōscō**.

agnōscō, -nōscere, -nōvī, -nitus, [**ad** + **gnōscō**], 3, *recognize*, *acknowledge*.

agō, **agere**, **ēgī**, **actus**, 3, *set in motion*, *drive*, *lead*, *move forward*; *direct*, *conduct*, *guide*; *incite*, *urge*; *press forward*, *chase*, *pursue*; *drive off as plunder*, *rob*; *do*, *act*, *transact*, *perform*; *manage*, *carry on*, *accomplish*; *treat*, *deal with*, *confer*, *plead with*; of time, *spend*, *pass*, *live*; pass., *be in*

question, *be at stake*. **actum est dē**, *it was all over with*. **vitam agere**, *to pass one's life*. **cum aliquō agere**, *to try to persuade any one*. **conventūs agere**, *to hold court*. **grātiās agere**, *to thank*. **vineās agere**, *to bring up the vineae*. **cuniculōs agere**, *to extend the mines*.

agricola, -ae, [**ager**, cf. **colō**], m., *husbandman*, *farmer*.

agri **cultūra**, see **ager**.

Agrigentum, -ī, n., *Agrigentum*, a large, wealthy city on the south coast of Sicily. See map opp. p. 30.

aiō, pres. ind. **aiō**, **aīs**, **aīt**, **aiunt**, impf. **aiēbam**, 3, def., *say yes*, *assent*; *assert*, *say*, *tell*.

āla, -ae, f., *wing*.

alacer, -cris, -cre, comp. **alacrior**, adj., *brisk*, *lively*; *eager*, *ardent*, *spirited*.

alacritās, -tātis, [**alacer**], f., *liveliness*; *eagerness*, *ardor*, *readiness*.

ālārius, -a, -um, [**āla**, *wing*], adj., *of the wing*. As subst., **ālārii**, -ōrum, m. pl., *auxiliary troops*, placed on the wings of the army.

Alba, -ae, f., *Alba*. See **albus**.

Albānus, -a, -um, adj., *of Alba*, *pertaining to Alba*. As subst., **Albāni**, -ōrum, m. pl., *inhabitants of Alba*.

albus, -a, -um, adj., *white*. As subst., **Alba**, -ae, f., *Alba* or *Alba Longa*, 'the long white city,' an ancient town in Latium, fifteen miles southeast of Rome. See map, frontispiece.

Alcmaeōn, -ōnis, [*Ἀλκμαίων*], m., *Alcmaeon*, son of Amphiaraus and Eriphyle. In obedience to the command of his father he killed

- his mother, who by treachery had caused Amphiarus to take part in the expedition of the Seven against Thebes, during which he met his death.
- alea**, -ae, f., *game of dice; die; by metonymy, chance, hazard, risk, venture.*
- Alexander**, -dri, m., *Alexander*, in this book referring to Alexander III., surnamed the Great, king of Macedonia from 336 to 323 B.C.
- Alexandrēa**, -ae, f., *Alexandria*, a city in Egypt, at the mouth of the Nile, founded by Alexander the Great. See map opp. p. 93.
- aliās**, [acc. pl. of *alius*], adv., *at another time; at other times; in other respects, otherwise.* *aliās . . . aliās, at one time . . . at another, sometimes . . . sometimes, now . . . now.*
- aliēnus**, -a, -um, comp. *aliēnior*, sup. *aliēnissimus*, [*alius*], adj., *of another, another's; foreign, strange; unfitting, unfavorable, unseasonable, improper.*
- aliō**, [old dat. of *alius*], adv., *to another place, elsewhere.* *longē aliō spectāre, to have a very different purpose.*
- aliquam** [acc. of *aliqui*, sc. *partem*], adv., *in some degree.* *aliquam diū, for some time, for a while.*
- aliquamdiū**, [*aliquam + diū*], adv., *for a while, for some time.*
- aliquandō**, [*alius + quandō*], adv., *at some time or other, once; at length, at last.*
- aliquantum**, -ī, [*aliquantus*], n., *a little, a considerable amount, something.*
- aliqui**, *aliqua, aliquod*, [*ali- + qui*], indef. pron. adj., *some, any, some other.*
- aliquis**, *aliqua, aliquid*, nom. and acc. pl. n. *aliqua*, [*ali- + quis*], indef. pron., *some one, any one, anybody; pl., some, any.* Neut., *aliquid, something, anything.* *aliquid sublevāre, to help somewhat.*
- aliquot**, [*ali-*, *quot*], indef. num. adj., indecl., *some, several.*
- aliquotiens**, [*aliquot*], adv., *several times.*
- aliter** [*ali-*], adv., *otherwise, differently.* *aliter ac, otherwise than, different from what.*
- alius**, -a, -ud, gen. *alius*, dat. *alii*, adj., *another, some other, other, different, else; the rest of.* *alius . . . alius, one . . . another, the one . . . the other; pl., alii . . . alii, some . . . other; often as subst., alius, another, alii, others.* *aliā rē, with anything else.* *alius aliā causā illātā, one alleging one reason, another, another.* *longē alius atque, very different from.*
- allātus**, see *afferō*.
- Allia**, -ae, f., *the Allia*, a small river in the country of the Sabines, about twelve miles northward from Rome. See map, frontispiece.
- alligō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [*ad + ligō*], 1, *bind to, bind fast.*
- Allobrogēs**, -um, (acc. *Allobrogas*, i. 14), m. pl., *a Gallic people in the northeastern part of 'the Province,' between the Rhone and the Alps.* See map opp. p. 114.
- allocūtus**, see *alloquor*.
- alloquor**, -loquī, -locūtus sum, [*ad + loquor*], 3, dep., *speak to, address.*

alō, alere, aluī, altus or alitus, 3, *nourish, increase, maintain, keep, rear, foster, raise.*

Alpēs, -ium, f. pl., *Alps*, general term for the mountains separating Cisalpine Gaul from Transalpine Gaul and Germany.

Alpicus, -a, -um, a rare form for **Alpinus**, [Alpēs], adj., *Alpine*. As subst., **Alpicī**, -ōrum, m. pl., *dwellers among the Alps, inhabitants of the Alpine regions.*

altē, comp. altius, sup. altissimē, [altus], adv., *high, on high, deeply, far; profoundly, highly.*

alter, -era, -erum, gen. alterius or alterius, adj., often with the force of a subst., *one of two, the other, another; second.* alter . . . alter, *the one . . . the other.* alteri . . . alteri, *the one division, party . . . the other.*

alteruter, -utra, -utrum, gen. alterutrus, dat. alterutri, [alter + uter], pron. adj., *one of the other, one of two.*

altitūdō, -inis, [altus], f., *height, loftiness; depth; thickness.*

altus, -a, -um, comp. altior, sup. altissimus, [part. of alō], adj., *nourished, grown great; high, tall, deep.* As subst., altum, -ī, n., (sc. mare), *the deep, the sea; pl. alta, -ōrum, greatness; sup. altissimum, -ī, n., top.*

amāns, -antis, comp. amantior, sup. amantissimus, [part. of amō], adj., *loving, fond, affectionate; with gen., fond of.*

Ambarrī, -ōrum, [Kel. ambi, = Lat. ambi- + Arar], m. pl., a people on both sides of the Arar (*Saône*) near its junction with the Rhone; intimately connected

with the Aedui. See map opp. p. 114.

Ambiānī, -ōrum, [Kel.], m. pl., a small state in Belgic Gaul, south of the Morini. See map opp. p. 114.

ambitiō, -ōnis, [ambiō], f., *a going around; desire for favor, ambition.*

ambō, ambae, ambō, acc. m. ambō or ambōs, num. adj., *both.* **āmentia**, -ae, [āmēns, from ā + mēns], f., *madness, folly.*

amicō, [amicus], adv., *in a friendly manner.*

amicitia, -ae, [amicus], f., *friendship; of a state, friendship, alliance.*

amicus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, [amō], adj., *loving, friendly, faithful, well-disposed.*

amicus, -ī, [amō], m., *loving one, friend, ally.*

āmittō, -mittere, -misi, -missus, [ā + mittō], 3, *send away; let go, let slip, lose.*

amnis, -is, m., *river, stream.*

amō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 1, *love, be fond of.*

amor, -ōris, [amō], m., *love, affection; desire, passion.*

amphora, -ae, [ἀμφορεύς], f., *amphora*, a long, pointed jar, with two handles at the top; *wine-jar.*

amplificō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [amplus + faciō], 1, *make large, increase, extend.*

ampliō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [amplus], 1, *widen, enlarge, extend.*

amplius, [comp. of amplus and amplē], indecl. subst., adj., and adv., *more, further; besides, more than.*

Amūlius, -ī, m., *Amūlius*, a son of

Proca, king of Alba Longa. He usurped the throne which rightfully belonged to his elder brother Numitor, but was deposed and slain by Romulus and Remus.

an, conj., introducing the second part of a double question, *or, or rather, or indeed*. The first member ordinarily has *utrum* or *-ne*, but is sometimes omitted. In direct questions **an** is often not translated; in indirect questions, *whether*.

anceps, *-cipitis*, [**an** = *ambi-*, cf. *caput*], adj., *two-headed; double, two-sided; uncertain, indecisive; dangerous, perilous*. **anceps proelium**, *battle on two fronts*, i.e. *both in front and in the rear*.

Anchisēs, *-ae*, m., *Anchisēs*, father of Aeneas.

ancora, *-ae*, [ἀγκυρα], f., *anchor*. in *ancoris*, *at anchor*.

Ancus, *-i*, m., *Ancus*, forename of *Ancus Mārcius*, the fourth king of Rome.

Andecumborius, *-i*, m., a prominent man among the Remi.

Andēs, *-ium*, or **Andī**, *-ōrum*, m., pl., a Gallic people north of the Liger (*Loire*). The name survives in *Anjou*. See map opp. p. 114.

Andriscus, *-i*, m., *Andriscus*, who claimed to be Philip, son of King Perseus of Macedonia.

angor, *-ōris*, [cf. *angō*], m., *strangling; torment, anguish, grief*.

angustiae, *-ārum*, [*angustus*], f., pl., *narrow place, narrow part, defile, narrowness; straits, difficulties, perplexity; scarcity*.

angustus, *-a, -um*, comp. *-ior*, sup. *-issimus*, [cf. *angō*, *squeeze*], adj., *contracted, narrow, close*. Neut.

as subst., *rēs erat in angustō*, *matters had reached a crisis*. **angustum mare**, *strait*.

anima, *-ae*, f., *air; breath, spirit; life, soul*.

animadvertō, or **animus advertō**, *-tere, -tī, -sus*, [*animus* + *advertō*], 3, *turn the mind to, attend to; notice, observe, perceive; censure, punish*. in *eum animadvertere*, *to punish him, 'attend to him.'*

animus, *-ī*, m., *soul, life; mind, reason; courage, spirit; inclination, purpose; feeling*. *esse alicuī in animō*, *to intend*. **animus advertere**, see **animadvertō**.

Aniō, *-ēnis*, m., *Aniō*, a river in Latium, a tributary of the Tiber. See map, frontispiece.

annālis, *-is*, abl. **annālī**, [*annus*], m., *record of events, chronicles, annals*.

annōna, *-ae*, [*annus*], f., *year's produce, harvest; grain*.

annuō, *-ere, -ui, —*, 3, *nod to, give assent, promise*.

annus, *-ī*, m., *year*.

annuus, *-a, -um*, [*annus*], adj., *for a year, lasting a year*.

anser, *-eris*, m., *goose*.

ante, adv. and prep., *before*.

(1) As adv., of space, *before, in front; of time, before, previously, ago*. **ante quam** or **antequam**, *sooner than, before*; often separated by intervening words. **paulō ante**, *a little while before, a short time previously*. **paucis ante diēbus**, *a few days before*.

(2) As prep. with acc., of space and time, *before*; in comparisons, *before, superior to, in*

comparison with. *ante diem*, see N. to p. 117, l. 28.

anteā, [ante + eā], adv., *before, formerly, previously*.

antecēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, —, [ante + cēdō], 3, *go before, precede; surpass, excel*.

anteēō, -īre, -ivī, or -iī, —, [ante + eō], irr., *go before, precede; surpass, excel*.

anteferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, [ante + ferō], irr., *bear before; place before, prefer*.

antepōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, antepositus, [ante + pōnō], 3, *set before; prefer*.

ante quam, see *ante*.

Antiochus, -ī, [Ἀντίοχος], m., *Antiochus*, the name of several kings of Syria. In this book refers to

- (1) Antiochus III., surnamed the Great; he was induced by Hannibal to declare war against the Romans, but was defeated near Mt. Sipylus, in Magnesia, in 190 B.C.

- (2) A philosopher of Ascalon, the teacher of Cicero during his studies at Athens in 79 B.C.

antiquitās, -ātis, [antīquus], f., *age, antiquity; ancient times, history of ancient times*.

antiquitus, [antīquus], adv., *in former times, long ago, anciently*.

antīquus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, [ante], adj., *old, former, old-time, ancient, early*.

Antōnius, -a, the name of a Roman gens. In this book are mentioned:

- (1) *Mārcus Antōnius*, Mark Antony, the triumvir.

- (2) *C. Antōnius Hybrida*, the colleague of Cicero in his consulship.

ānulus, -ī, m., *ring, finger-ring*.

aperiō, -īre, -uī, -tus, 4, *uncover; open, disclose, show; disclose, reveal, make known*.

apertus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, [part. of aperiō], adj., *unclosed, open, uncovered; exposed, unprotected; clear, manifest. latus apertum, open flank, exposed flank*.

Apollō, -inis, [Ἀπόλλων], m., *Apollo*, son of Zeus and Latona, god of divination, of the healing art, of poetry and music.

Apollōnia, -ae, f., *Apollōnia*, a city in southwestern Illyria. See *map, frontispiece*.

Apollōnius, -ī, m., *Apollōnius*, surnamed *Molō*, a teacher of rhetoric, under whom Cicero studied at Rhodes.

apparātus, -ūs, [apparō], m., *preparation; implements, supplies, engines, instruments; magnificence*.

appāreō, -pārere, -pārui, —, fut. part. appāritūrus, [ad + pārēō], 2, *appear, come in sight; be plain, be manifest; appear as servant, serve, attend*.

apparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ad + parō], 1, *prepare, make ready*.

appellātiō, -ōnis, [appellō, -āre], f., *designation, name*.

appellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus, [ad + pellō], 3, *drive to, bring to, land*.

appellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 1, *address, accost, call to, appeal to; call by name, name; term, entitle*.

Appennīnus, -ī, m., *the Apennines*, a long range of mountains running the length of the Italian peninsula.

appetō, -ere, -ivī, -itus, [ad + petō], 3, *strive for, desire, seek; approach, draw near*.

Appius, -ī, m., *Appius*, a Roman forename, especially common in the Claudian gens.

applaudō, -plaudere, -plausī, -plausus, [ad + plaudō], 3, *strike upon, beat; applaud.*

appōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus, [ad + pōnō], 3, *put at, place near, set before.*

apprehendō, -ere, -dī, -sus, [ad + prehendō], 3, *seize, lay hold of, grasp.*

appropinquō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [ad + propinquō], 1, *approach, come near, draw near.*

appulsus, see **appellō**.

April, or **Apr.** = **Aprilis**.

Aprilis, -e, [aperiō], adj., of *April*.

apud, prep. with acc. only, *at, with, near, close to, by; among, in the presence of; at the house of; in the works of.*

Apūlia, -ae, f., *Apūlia*, one of the divisions of Italy, in the south-eastern part, north of Calabria, east of Lucania and Samnium. See map opp. p. 30.

aqua, -ae, f., *water, spring.*

aquila, -ae, f., *eagle*; by metonymy, *eagle*, made of metal and carried on a pole as the standard of a Roman legion. See **INTRO.**, p. 17.

Aquilēia, -ae, f., a city at the head of the Adriatic Sea. See **N.** to p. 120, l. 5, and map opp. p. 30.

aquillifer, -erī, [aquila, cf. ferō], m., *bearer of the eagle, standard-bearer.* Cf. **aquila**.

aquilō, -ōnis, also **aquilō ventus**, m., *the north wind.*

Aquitānia, -ae, f., one of the three main divisions of Gaul. See map opp. p. 114.

Aquitānus, -a, -um, adj., of *Aquitania*. As subst., **Aquitānus**, -ī, m., *Aquitanian*; pl., *Aquitani*, inhabitants of *Aquitania*.

āra, -ae, f., *altar.*

Arar, -aris, acc. -im, [Kel., = 'Sluggish'], m., *Arar River*, now the *Saône*. It rises in the Vosges Mts., and flows southward into the Rhone. See **N.** to p. 121, l. 1, and map opp. p. 114.

arbitrium, -i, [arbiter, judge], n., *judgment, decision; authority, power.*

arbitror, -ārī, -ātus sum, [arbiter], 1, dep., *testify; be of an opinion, think, consider.*

arbor, -oris, f., *tree.*

Arcas, -adis, ['Apkās], adj., of *Arcadia*, *Arcadian*. As subst., m., *Arcadian, inhabitant of Arcadia.*

arceō, -ēre, -uī, —, 2, *shut up, enclose; keep off, avert; hinder, prevent.*

arcessō, -sere, -sivī, -situs, 3, *cause to come, fetch; send for, summon, call in, invite.*

Ardea, -ae, f., *Ardea*, a town in Latium, about twenty miles south of Rome. See map, frontispiece.

ardeō, -ēre, ārsī, ārsus, 2, *be on fire, burn, glow; be inflamed, desire eagerly.*

arduus, -a, -um, adj., *steep, high; hard, difficult.*

argentum, -ī, n., *silver*; by metonymy, *money*. **argentum factum**, *wrought silver, silver-plate.*

Argilius, -a, -um, adj., of *Argilius*, a city in Thrace, *Argilian*. As subst., **Argilius**, -ī, m., *Argilian, inhabitant of Argilius*. See map opp. p. 75.

Argīvus, -a, -um, adj., of *Argos*, *Argive*. As subst., **Argīvus**, -ī, m., inhabitant of *Argos*, *Argive*.

Argos, only nom. and acc. n., also **Argī**, -ōrum, m. pl., [*Ἄργος*], *Argos*, a city in *Argolis*, in the northeastern part of the *Peloponnesus*. See map opp. p. 75.

ariēs, -ietis, m., ram; *battering-ram*; *prop*, *buttress*.

Ariovistus, -ī, [Ger. A ar, for *Adler*, + *v*irst, for *Horst*, 'Eagle-eyrie' ?], m., a German king, who had conquered a part of *Gaul* near the *Rhine*, but was defeated by *Caesar*, B.C. 58.

arma, -ōrum, n., pl., *implements*; *implements of war*, *arms*, *armor*, *weapons*. ad arma concurrere, to rush to arms.

armātūra, -ae, [armō], f., *armor*, *equipment*. levis armātūrae peditēs, light infantry. levis armātūrae Numidae, light-armed Numidians.

armātus, -a, -um, sup. armātissimus, [part. of armō], adj., armed, in arms, equipped. As subst., armātī, -ōrum, m., pl., armed men; warriors, soldiers.

Armenia, -ae, f., *Armenia*, a country in the northeastern part of *Asia Minor*.

armilla, -ae, [armus, shoulder, arm], f., *bracelet*, *armlet*.

armō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [arma], 1, furnish with arms, arm, equip.

Arpīnum, -ī, n., *Arpīnum*, a town in the *Sabine* district, about fifty miles southeast of *Rome*, the birthplace of *Marius* and *Cicero*. See map, frontispiece.

arripō, -ripere, -ripuī, repta, [ad + rapiō], 3, catch hurriedly, seize,

snatch; seize upon, take up, learn with avidity.

arroganter, comp. -ius, [arrogāns], adv., presumptuously, arrogantly, haughtily.

arrogantia, -ae, [arrogāns], f., presumption, arrogance, insolence.

Arrūns, -untis, m., *Arrūns*, a son of *Tarquinius Superbus*.

ars, artis, f., art, skill; knowledge, accomplishment; device, stratagem.

arsit, see ardeō.

Artabāzus, -ī, [*Ἀртаβᾶζος*], m., *Artabazus*, prefect of *Phrygia* under *Xerxes*.

Artaphernēs, -is, [*Ἀρταφέρνης*], m., *Artaphernes*, nephew of *Darius Hystaspis*. With *Datis* he commanded the *Persian* forces at *Marathon*.

Artaxerxēs, -is, [*Ἀρταξέρξης*], m., *Artaxerxes*, the name of two *Persian* kings.

(1) *Artaxerxēs Macrochīr*, or 'long-handed' son of *Xerxes*, reigned from 465 to 424 B.C.

(2) *Artaxerxēs Mnēmōn*, or 'of the good memory,' son of *Darius Nothus*, reigned from 405 to 362 B.C.

Artemisium, -ī, [*Ἀρτεμίσιον*], n., *Artemisium*, a promontory forming the northern end of the island of *Euboea*, famous for the sea-fight between the fleet of *Xerxes* and that of the *Greeks* under *Eurybiades* in 480 B.C. See map opp. p. 75.

Arvernus, -a, -um, adj., of the *Arverni*, *Arvernian*. As subst., **Arvernī**, -ōrum, m., pl., *Arvernians*, the *Arverni*, a powerful people about the upper part of the *Elaver*

(*Allier*), whose chief city, Gergovia, was unsuccessfully besieged by Caesar. See map opp. p. 114.
arx, *arcis*, f., *citadel, fortress, stronghold*; *the acropolis of Athens*.

Ascanius, -ī, m., *Ascanius*, the son of Aeneas.

ascendō, -scendere, -scendi, -scēnsus, [ad + scandō, climb], 3, *ascend, climb up*; *mount, scale*; *embark*.

ascēnsus, -ūs, [ascendō], m., *ascent, climbing*; *way up, approach*.

asciscō, asciscere, ascivī, ascitus, [ad + sciscō, approve], 3, *admit to association with oneself, receive, accept*.

Asia, -ae, f., *Asia*, referring to Asia as distinguished from Europe, to Asia Minor, or to the Roman province of Asia.

Asiaticus, -a, -um, adj., *of Asia, Asiatic*. As subst., **Asiaticus**, -ī, m., surname of *L. Scipiō Asiaticus*, the conqueror of Antiochus.

Asina, -ae, m., *Asina*, surname of *Cn. Cornēlius Asina*.

asinus, -ī, m., *an ass, donkey*.

asper, -era, -erum, comp. *asperior*, sup. *asperimus*, adj., *adverse*; *rough, harsh, violent, cruel*.

asperitās, -ātis, [asper], f., *roughness, harshness, asperity, cruelty*; *acidity*.

āspernor, -āri, -ātus sum, [ā + spernor], 1, dep., *disdain, despise*.

aspiciō, -spicere, -spēxī, *aspectus*, [ad + speciō], 3, *look upon*; *regard, inspect*.

aspis, -idis, f., *asp, viper*.

assequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, [ad + sequor], 3, dep., *follow up, overtake*; *reach, attain*.

assidō, -ere, -sēdī, —, 3, *sit down*.

assiduus, -a, -um, [ad, cf. sedeō], adj., *attending, continually present*; *continual*.

astō, -āre, -stiti, —, [ad + stō], 1, *stand near, stand by*.

astū, [ἀστυ], n., indecl., *city, especially Athens*.

asylum, -ī, n., *place of refuge, asylum*.

at, conj., *but, but yet*; *however, nevertheless*; *but on the contrary*.

Athēnae, -ārum, f. pl., *Athens*, chief city of Greece, situated in Attica, in the southeastern part of central Greece. See map opp. p. 75.

Athēniēnsis, -is, adj., *of Athens, Athenian*. As subst., m., *an Athenian, inhabitant of Athens*.

āthlēta, -ae, [ἀθλητής], m., *wrestler, athlete, competitor in public games*.

Attilius, -ī, m., gentile name of *M. Attilius Rēgulus*.

atque, ac, [ad + -que], conj.:

(1) Copulative, *and, and also, and even, and in particular*.

(2) Comparative, after words of likeness or unlikeness, *as, than. idem atque, par atque, the same as. simul atque, as soon as*.

Atrebās, -ātis, [Kel. = 'Possessor'], m., *an Atrebatian*; pl., *Atrebatians, the Atrebatians*, a Belgic people west of the upper part of the Scaldis (Scheldt). See map opp. p. 114.

atrōciter, [atrōx], adv., *fiercely, cruelly*.

atrōx, -ōcis, comp. *atrōcior*, sup. *atrōcissimus*, adj., *savage, fierce, cruel, harsh, horrible*.

Attica, -ae, [Ἀττική], f., *Attica*, a division of central Greece.

Atticus, -ī, m., *Atticus*, surname of *T. Pompōnius Atticus*, a friend of Cicero.

attingō, -tingere, -tigī, -tāctus, [ad + tangō], 3, *touch upon, touch; reach; of territorial divisions, border on, extend to, adjoin.*

attuli, see *afferō*.

auctor, -ōris, [augeō], m., *producer; promoter, adviser; authority, narrator; originator, cause.*

auctoritās, -ātis, [auctor], f., *authority, power; influence, dignity; weight, prestige, importance.*

auctus, -a, -um, comp. *auctior*, [part. of augeō], adj., *increased, rich.*

aucupium, -ī, [avis, cf. capiō], n., *bird-catching, fowling.*

audācia, -ae, [audāx], f., *daring, boldness; audacity, rashness, presumption; insolence.*

audācter, comp. *audācius*, sup. *audācissimō*, [audāx], adv., *boldly, courageously, fearlessly.*

audeō, audēre, ausus sum, 2, semi-dep., *venture, dare, risk; attempt.*

audiō, -īre, -īvi or -ii, -ītus, 4, *hear, listen to; assent to; be called, be named, be regarded; learn by hearing, hear of. dictō audiēns esse, to be obedient to the word of command, to obey.*

auferō, auferre, abstuli, ablātus, [ab + ferō], irr., *take away, carry away, remove; steal.*

aufugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, —, [ab + fugiō], 3, *flee away, escape; flee from.*

augeō, augēre, auxi, auctus, 2, *increase, enlarge, advance; add to.*

augurium, -ī, [augur], n., *observ-*

ance of omens, divination, augury; omen.

Augustus, -ī, [augustus], m., *Augustus*, a title given to Octavianus Caesar as emperor.

Aulercus, -ī, m., *an Aulercan*; pl., *the Aulerci*, a people of central Gaul. See map opp. p. 114.

Aurēlius, -a, the name of a Roman gens. In this book refers to *C. Aurēlius Cotta*, consul B.C. 200.

aureus, -a, -um, [aurum], adj., *of gold, golden.*

auriga, -ae, m., *charioteer, driver.*

auris, -is, [cf. audiō], f., *ear.*

aurum, -ī, n., *gold.*

Aurunculēius, -ī, m., *Lucius Aurunculēius Cotta*, a lieutenant of Caesar, killed by the Eburones.

ausus, see *audeō*.

aut, conj., or; *corrective or emphatic, or at least, or rather, or else. aut . . . aut, either . . . or. aut . . . aut . . . aut, either . . . or . . . or.*

autem, conj., *but, however, on the contrary; and now, moreover.*

auxilium, -ī, [cf. augeō], n., *help, aid, assistance; relief, remedy, resource. Pl., auxilia, auxiliary troops, auxiliaries, allied forces.*

avāritia, -ae, [avārus, greedy], f., *greed, avarice, covetousness.*

Aventīnus, -ī, m., (sc. mōns), *the Aventine*, the most southern of the seven hills of Rome. See map opp. p. 53.

Aventīnus, -a, -um, adj., *of the Aventine, on the Aventine.*

aveō, -ere, —, —, imper. *avē, avētō*, 2, only in salutations, *be well, fare well; hail!*

āversus, -a, -um, sup. *āversissimus*, [part. of āvertō], adj., *turned*

away; behind, in the rear. **āver-**
sum hostem, a retreating enemy,
an enemy in flight. **āversī ab**
hoste circumveniri, to be sur-
rounded in the rear by the enemy,
i.e. with their backs to the enemy.
āvortō, -tere, -tī, -sus, [ā + vertō],
3, turn away, turn aside, avert;
divert, alienate, estrange. **sē**
āvertere, to turn aside.
avidus, -a, -um, adj., desirous,
eager, greedy.
avis, -is, f., bird; sign, omen.
āvocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ā + vocō],
1, call off, call away.
āvold, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ā + volō],
1, fly away; flee, hasten away;
withdraw; divert, turn.
avunculus, -ī, [dim. of avus], m.,
uncle.
avus, -ī, m., grandfather.
Axona, -ae, f., a river in the south-
ern part of Belgic Gaul, flowing
into the Isara (Oise), a tributary
of the Sequana (Seine); now
Aisne. See map opp. p. 114.

B.

Baculus, -ī, m., *Publius Sextius*
Baculus, one of the bravest of
Caesar's centurions.
Baebius, -a, the name of a Roman
gens. In this book are mentioned:
(1) *Cn. Baebius Tamphilus*, consul
in B.C. 182.
(2) *M. Baebius Tamphilus*, consul
in B.C. 181.
Baleārēs, -ium, [= βαλαρεῖς, sling-
ers], m., pl., natives of the Ba-
learic Islands (Majorca, Minorca,
Yviza, and two others), off the
east coast of Spain; famous as
slingers. See map, frontispiece.

barba, -ae, f., beard.
barbarus, -a, -um, adj., of strange
speech, foreign, strange; barba-
rous, uncivilized. As subst., **bar-**
barī, -ōrum, m., pl., strangers,
foreigners; natives, barbarians.
Barca, -ae, [Bάρκας], m., Barca,
surname of Hamilcar, the father
of Hannibal.
Belgae, -ārum, m., pl., the Belgians,
Belgae, inhabitants of one of the
three main divisions of Gaul; di-
vided into many states or tribes.
See map opp. p. 114.
bellicōsus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup.
-issimus, [bellicus], adj., warlike,
fierce, fond of war.
bellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [bellum], 1,
wage war, carry on war, fight.
Bellovacī, -ōrum, m., pl., a power-
ful Belgic people, between the Se-
quana (*Seine*), Samara (*Somme*),
and the Isara (*Oise*) Rivers. See
map opp. p. 114.
bellum, -ī, (for duellum, from duo),
n., war, warfare. Loc. **bellī,**
in war. **bellum gerere**, to wage
war. **bellum inferre**, to make
war. **bellum parāre**, to make
preparation for war, prepare for
war.
bene, comp. melius, sup. optimē,
[bonus], adv., well, ably, success-
fully; very.
beneficium, -ī, [bene, cf. faciō], n.,
kindness, favor, service, benefit.
benignē, [benignus], adv., in a
friendly manner, kindly, courte-
ously.
bēstia, -ae, f., beast, animal.
Bēstia, -ae, m., *Bēstia*, surname of
L. Calpurnius Bēstia, consul 111
B.C.
bibliothēca, -ae, f., library.

Bibracte, -is, [Kel., from *bebrois, 'beaver'], n., capital of the Aedui, situated on a mountain now called Mont Beuvray (2690 ft.). See map opp. p. 114.

Bibrax, -actis, [Kel., from *bebrois 'beaver'], f., a town of the Remi, north of the Axona (*Aisne*). See map opp. p. 114.

Bibulus, -ī, m., *Bibulus*, the name of a family of the Calpurnian gens. In this book, *L. Calpurnius Bibulus*, the colleague of Julius Caesar in his consulship, as well as in his aedileship and praetorship. Being in sympathy with the aristocratic party, he opposed Caesar to the best of his ability.

bīdūm, -ī, [bis + diēs], n., *space of two days, two days*.

biennium, -ī, [bis + annus], n., *period of two years, two years' time*.

binī, -ae, -a, [cf. bis], distr. num., *two by two, two at a time*.

bipertitō, [bipartitus, bis + partitus], adv., *in two divisions*.

bis, num. adv., *twice, on two occasions*.

Bithynia, -ae, f., *Bithynia*, a province in the northern part of Asia Minor.

Bithynus, -a, -um, adj., *of Bithynia, Bithynian*. As subst., *Bithynus*, -ī, m., *Bithynian, inhabitant of Bithynia*.

Bītūrigēs, -um, [Kel., = 'World-kings,' or 'Ever kings'], m., pl., a people in central Gaul, across the Liger (*Loire*) from the Aedui. See map opp. p. 114.

Blithō, -ōnis, m., *Blithō*, surname of *Sulpicius Blithō*, a Roman historian.

Boduognātus, -ī, [Kel., = 'Inured to Battle'], m., a leader of the Nervii.

Boeōtus, -a, -um, [Βοιωτός], adj., *Boeotian, of Boeotia*, a province of central Greece, northwest of Attica. As subst., *Boeōtus*, -ī, *Boeotian, inhabitant of Boeotia*. See map opp. p. 75.

Bōfi, -ōrum, m., pl., a Celtic people widely diffused over central Europe, whose name survives in *Bohemia*; 32,000 joined the Helvetii in their migration, the remnant surviving being settled with the Aedui. See map opp. p. 114.

bonitās, -ātis, [bonus], f., *goodness, friendliness, kindness; virtue, blamelessness; of land, fertility*.

bonus, -a, -um, comp. *melior*, sup. *optimus*, adj., *good, advantageous; pleasant, well-disposed, friendly*. *bonō animō esse*, to be favorably disposed. As subst., *bonum*, ī, n., *good thing, the good; profit, advantage*; pl., *bona*, -ōrum, *goods, property, possessions*. *bonī*, -ōrum, m. pl., *the good, good men*, a term applied to themselves by the *optimatēs*, or aristocracy.

boreās, -ae, m., also *boreās ventus*, *the north wind*.

bōs, *bovis*, gen. pl. *boum*, dat. *bōbus* or *būbus*, m. and f., *ox, bull, cow*.

bracchium, -ī; n., *forearm, arm*.

Brātuspantium, -ī, [Kel., = 'Valley of Judgment'], n., a stronghold of the Bellovaci. See map opp. p. 114.

brevī, [brevis], adv., *in a little while, in a short time, soon*.

brevis, -e, adj., *short, brief; short-lived.*

brevitās, -tātis, [brevis], f., *shortness; smallness, small stature; brevity, conciseness.*

Britanni, -ōrum, m., pl., *the inhabitants of Britain, British.*

Britannia, -ae, f., *Britain.* See map, frontispiece.

Brundisium, -ī, *Brundisium*, a seaport in Calabria in southeastern Italy, the usual point of departure for Greece; modern *Brindisi*. See map opp. p. 30.

Bruttii, -ōrum, m., *Bruttii*, a district in southern Italy. See map opp. p. 30.

Brūtus, -ī, m., *Brūtus*, a surname of the Junian gens. In this book are mentioned:

- (1) *L. Iūnius Brūtus*, the liberator and first consul of Rome.
- (2) *M. Iūnius Brūtus*, the leader, with Cassius, of the assassins of Julius Caesar.
- (3) *Decimus Brūtus*, the opponent of Antony in the war at Mutina.

Byzantium, -ī, [Βυζάντιον], n., *Byzantium*, a city of Thrace on the Bosphorus, now *Constantinople*. See map opp. p. 93.

C.

C, in expressions of number, = 100.

C, originally = C and G; with proper names = *Gāius*, a Roman forename.

Cabūrus, -ī, m. See *Valerius*.

cadāver, -eris, [cf. cadō], n., *corpse, dead body.*

Cadmēa, -ae, properly adj., supply *arx*, [Καμῆα], f., *the Cadmea, the citadel of Thebes.*

cadō, *cadere*, cecidī, cāsūrus, 3, *fall; be slain, die; take place, happen.*

cadūceus, -ī, [κηρύκειον], m., *herald's staff.*

Caecilius, -ī, m., *Caecilius*, name of a Roman gens. In this book refers to:

- (1) *Q. Caecilius Metellus Macedonicus*, who defeated *Andronicus* in 148 B.C. P. 48, l. 24.
- (2) *Q. Caecilius Metellus Numidicus*, consul in 109 B.C. P. 50, l. 3.

caedēs, -is, [cf. caedō], f., *killing, slaughter, murder, massacre.*

caedō, *caedere*, cecidī, *caesus*, 3, *cut, cut down; cut to pieces, slay; vanquish, destroy.*

caelum, -ī, n., *the sky, heaven, heavens.*

Caemani, -ōrum, m., pl., a small state in Belgic Gaul. See map opp. p. 114.

Caepiō, -ōnis, m., *Caepiō*, family name of *Cn. Servilius Caepiō*, consul 140 B.C.

caerimōnia, -ae, f., *religious usage, sacred rite; veneration, reverence.*

Caerōsi, -ōrum, m., pl., a small state in Belgic Gaul. See map opp. p. 114.

Caesar, -aris, m., *Caesar*, the name of a famous family of the Julian gens. In this book are mentioned:

- (1) *C. Iūlius Caesar*, the dictator. See p. 53.
- (2) *C. Iūlius Caesar Octaviānus Augustus*, the first emperor of Rome. See p. 67.

calamitās, -tātis, f., *loss, damage; misfortune, disaster, defeat.*

Caletī, -ōrum, also *Caletēs*, -um,

[Kel., from *caeto*-, 'hard'], m., pl., a people living on the sea-coast at the mouth of the Sequana (*Seine*). See map opp. p. 114.

callidē, comp. **callidius**, sup. **callidissimē**, [callidus], adv., *shrewdly, skilfully, cunningly*.

callidus, -a, -um, comp. **callidior**, sup. **callidissimus**, [calleō], adj., *practised, shrewd, cunning; calculating*.

Calliphron, -onis, [Καλλιφρων], m., *Calliphron*, a teacher of dancing, from whom Epaminondas learned the art.

Callistratus, -ī, [Καλλιστρατος], m., *Callistratus*, an Athenian orator, a contemporary of Epaminondas.

cālō, -ōnis, m., *soldier's servant, camp servant*.

Calpurnius, -a, the name of a Roman gens. In this book are mentioned:

(1) *L. Calpurnius Bēstia*, consul 111 B.C.

(2) *Calpurnia*, wife of Julius Caesar.

(3) *L. Calpurnius Bibulus*. See *Bibulus*.

calvitium, -ī, [calvus], n., *baldness, a bald-spot*.

calvus, -a, -um, adj., *bald*. As subst., **Calvus**, -ī, m., a Roman surname, in this book referring to *C. Licinius Macer Calvus*, the orator and poet, a contemporary of Catullus. He lampooned Julius Caesar.

Camillus, -ī, m., *Camillus*. See *Fūrius*.

Campānia, -ae, f., *Campānia*, a district in central Italy, southeast of Latium, noted for its beauty and fertility. See map opp. p. 30.

Campānus, -a, -um, adj., of *Campānia*, *Campanian*. As subst., **Campānus**, ī, m., a *Campanian*.

campus, -ī, m., *plain, level field*; often = **Campus Mārtius**, the *Campus Mārtius*, a grassy plain in the northwestern part of Rome lying along the Tiber, the place where reviews and the elections were held. See map opp. p. 53.

Canīnius, -ī, m., gentile name of *C. Canīnius Rēbilus*, who held the consulship for a few hours in 45 B.C. See pp. 66-67.

canis, -is, m. and f., *dog*.

Cannae, -ārum, f., pl., *Cannae*, a town in Apulia, in southeastern Italy, the scene of the defeat of the Romans by Hannibal in 216 B.C. See map opp. p. 30.

Cannēnsis, -e, adj., of *Cannae*, at *Cannae*.

cantō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [freq. of **canō**], 1, *sing, play*.

cantus, -ūs, [canō], m., *song, chant; cry, note*.

capessō, -ere, -ivī, -itūrus, [desid. of **capīō**], 3, *eagerly sieze, lay hold of; betake oneself, resort to; rem publicam capessere, to undertake public business, to serve one's country*.

capillus, -ī, [cf. **caput**], m., *hair of the head, hair*.

capīō, **capere**, **cēpī**, **captus**, 3, *take hold of, take, seize; take captive, make prisoner; occupy, take possession of; captivate, charm; cheat, deceive, betray; choose, select; affect, move, influence; receive, obtain. initium capere, to begin. cōsiliū capere, to form a plan. dolōrem capere, to be grieved.*

Capitōlium, -ī, [caput], n., *the Capitol*, a temple on the southern apex of the Capitoline Hill, dedicated to Jupiter, Juno, and Minerva; often *the Capitoline Hill*, the hill on which the Capitol stood. See map opp. p. 53.

capitulātīm, [caput], adv., *by heads, summarily*.

capra, -ae, f., *she-goat*. **Caprae palūs**, *the Goat's Pool*, a marsh in the Campus Martius.

captivus, -a, -um, [capiō], adj., *taken prisoner, captive*. As subst., m. and f., *prisoner, captive*.

captō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [freq. of capiō], 1, *seize eagerly, strive to seize; snatch at, strive for*.

captus, -a, -um, sc. capiō.

Capua, -ae, f., *Capua*, a city in Campania, 136 miles southeast of Rome, noted for its luxury. See map opp. p. 30.

capulus, -ī, [capiō], m., lit. *that which is grasped; handle, hilt of a sword*.

caput, -itis, n., *head*; by metonymy, *person, man, life, safety*; of a river, *mouth*. **capitis absolūtus**, *not condemned to death*. **capite dēmissō**, *with the head bowed down*. **duo milia capitum**, *two thousand souls*.

Cār, **Cāris**, [Cāria], m., *a Carian, inhabitant of Caria*.

carcer, -eris, m., *prison, dungeon*; especially the **Tullianum**, the Roman state-prison.

carēō, **carēre**, **caruī**, **caritūrus**, 2, *be without, be free from, be destitute of; do without, refrain from; hold aloof from, be absent from*. **patriā carēre**, *to be in exile*.

Cāria, -ae, [Kāpla], f., *Caria*, a province in the southwestern part of Asia Minor, south of Lydia. See map opp. p. 93.

cāritās, -ātis, [cārus], f., *affection, love*.

carnifex, -ificis, [carō, cf. faciō], m., *executioner, butcher*.

Carnutēs, -um, m., pl., a state in central Gaul, north of the Liger (*Loire*); chief city, Cenabum. See map opp. p. 114.

carpentum, -ī, n., *carriage*; at Rome a covered vehicle with two wheels.

carrus, -ī, m., *cart, wagon*. Cf. n. to p. 115, l. 26.

Carthāginiēnsis, -e, adj., *of Carthage, Carthaginian*. As subst., **Carthāginiēnsis**, -is, m., *Carthaginian, inhabitant of Carthage*.

Carthāgō, -inis, f., *Carthage*, a city on the northern coast of Africa, near the modern Tunis. See map, frontispiece.

Carthāgō Nova, *New Carthage*, a city in eastern Spain. See map, frontispiece.

Casca, -ae, m., *Casca*, surname of *C. Servilius Casca*, one of the assassins of Caesar.

Cassiānus, -a, -um, [Cassius], adj., *of Cassius*.

Cassius, -ī, m., name of a Roman gens, refers in this book to:

- (1) *C. Cassius Longinus*, originator of the conspiracy against Caesar.
- (2) *Lucius Cassius Longinus*; praetor B.C. 111; when consul, 107 B.C., he engaged in battle with the Tigurini in the territory of the Allobroges, and was defeated and slain.

castellum, -ī, [dim. of *castrum*], n., *redoubt, fortress, stronghold, citadel*.

Casticus, -ī, m., a prominent Sequanian.

castrum, -ī, n., *fortress, castle*; pl. *castra*, -ōrum, *camp, encampment*. *castra movēre*, to break camp. *castra pōnere*, to pitch camp. *in castris ūsum habēre*, to have experience in military service.

cāsū, [cāsus], adv., *by chance, accidentally*.

cāsus, -ūs, [cadō], m., *fall; event, occurrence; chance, fortune; overthrow, destruction; misfortune, mischance, calamity*.

Catamantāloedis, -is, [Kel., = 'Man of Even Temper'], m., foremost man of the Sequani before Caesar's time.

catēna, -ae, f., *chain; fetter*.

Catilīna, -ae, *Catilīna, Catiline*, family name of *L. Sergius Catilīna*, who formed a dangerous conspiracy against the state, which was suppressed by Cicero.

Catō, -ōnis, [catus, *shrewd*], m., *Cato*, name of a noted family of the Porcian gens. In this book are mentioned:

(1) *M. Porcius Catō*, the censor. Born B.C. 234; died in 149.

(2) *M. Porcius Catō Uticēnsis*, so called from Utica in Africa, where he committed suicide in 46 B.C. rather than surrender to Caesar.

Catullus, see *Valerius*.

Catulus, see *Lutātius*.

Caturigēs, -um, [Kel., = 'Battle-Kings'], m., pl., a Gallic people in the eastern part of the Province. See map opp. p. 114.

causa, -ae, f., *cause, reason; opportunity; excuse; condition, situation; case at law, suit; abl. causā*, with preceding gen., *for the sake of, for the purpose of*. *causam dicere*, to plead a case.

caveō, cavēre, cāvī, cautus, 2, *be on one's guard, beware of, take precaution; give security*.

cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessūrus, 3, *go away, depart, retire, withdraw, retreat; yield, give up to; abandon; fall to the lot of; result, happen, turn out*. *cēdentēs insequī*, to follow up the retreating enemy.

celeber, -bris, -bre, comp. *celebrior*, sup. *celeberrimus*, adj., *frequented, thronged, crowded, populous; renowned, famous*.

celer, -eris, -ere, comp. *celerior*, sup. *celerrimus*, adj., *quick, swift, sudden*.

celeritās, -tātis, [celer], f., *speed, quickness, swiftness, rapidity, despatch*.

celeriter, comp. *celerius*, sup. *celerrimē*, [celer], adv., *quickly, speedily, at once, immediately*.

cēlō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 1, *conceal, hide, keep secret*.

Celtae, -ārum, [Kel.], m., pl., *Celts*, inhabitants of that part of Gaul between the Garonne and the Seine, extending from the Atlantic to the Alps. They belonged to the great Keltic family, and were divided into many states or tribes.

cēna, -ae, f., *dinner*, the principal meal of the Romans, taken in the early times at noon, afterwards later in the day.

cēnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [cēna], 1, *dine, eat dinner; eat, dine upon*.

cēnseō, -ēre, -ui, -us, 2, *estimate; think, hold, judge; decree, resolve upon, determine; vote for, favor.*

cēnsor, -ōris, [cēnseō], m., *censor, a Roman magistrate. Two censors were chosen every five years, and served for eighteen months. They held the census, or rating of the citizens; chose the members of the senate from those eligible to that dignity, and removed them for cause; exercised a general supervision over public morals; and administered the finances of the state.*

Cēnsōrīnus, -ī, m., *Cēnsōrīnus, family name of L. Mārcius Cēnsōrīnus, consul 149 B.C.*

cēnsōrius, -a, -um, [cēnsor], adj., *of the censor, censorial.* Assubst., **cēnsōrius**, -ī, m., *one who has been censor, ex-censor.*

cēnsūra, -ae, [cēnsor], f., *office of censor, censorship.*

cēnsus, -ūs, [cēnseō], m., *registration of citizens and property by the censors; census, rating; count, enumeration.*

Centēnius, -ī, m., *Centēnius, gentile name of C. Centēnius, a Roman praetor, defeated by Hannibal in 216 B.C.*

centiēns, [centum], adv., *a hundred times.* **centiēns sēstertium** (sc. *centēna mīlia*), *ten million sesterces.*

centum or **C**, num. adj. indecl., *a hundred.*

centuriō, -ōnis, [centuria], m., *commander of a century, centurion, captain.* See INTRO., p. 10.

certāmen, -inis, [certō], n., *contest, battle; match, trial of strength or skill; rivalry, competition.*

certō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [certus], 1, *vie with; contend, struggle; rival, emulate.*

certus, -a, -um, [old part. of cernō], adj., *determined, fixed, certain; definite, specified; certain, assured; reliable, trustworthy.* **aliquem certiōrem facere**, *to inform any one.* **certior fieri**, *to be informed.*

cervix, -īcia, f., *neck, throat.*

cessō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [freq. of cēdō], 1, *be remiss; delay, be inactive.*

cēterus, -a, -um, nom. sing. m. not in use, adj., *other, the other, the rest, remainder; pl., the rest, all the others, the other.* As subst., **cēteri**, -ōrum, m., pl., *the others, all the rest, every one else; cētera, -ōrum, n., pl., *the rest, all else, everything else.**

Cethēgus, -ī, m., *Cethēgus, cognomen of P. Cornēlius Cethēgus, consul in 181 B.C.*

Centronēs, -um, m., pl., *a people in the eastern part of 'the Province.'* See map opp. p. 114.

Chabriās, -ae, [Χαβρίας], m., *Chabrias, an Athenian general.*

Chalcioicos, -ī, [Χαλκιοικος], f., *the Goddess of the Brazen House, a surname of Minerva derived from a brazen temple erected to her in Sparta.*

charta, -ae, f., *leaf of the Egyptian papyrus, paper; writing.*

Chersonēsus, -ī, [Χερσόνησος], f., *the Chersonese, a peninsula of Thrace west of the Hellespont.* See map opp. p. 75.

chorda, -ae, [χορδή], f., *string, of a musical instrument.*

Chrēsogonus, -ī, m., *Chrēsogono-*

nus, surname of *L. Cornēlius Chrēsogonus*, a freedman of Sulla. He accused *S. Roscius Amerinus* of parricide. Cicero defended Roscius in his first public oration.

cibāria, -ōrum, [cibārius, from *cibus*], n., pl., provisions, rations.

cibus, -ī, m., food, victuals.

cicātrix, -icis, f., scar.

cicer, -eris, n., the chickpea.

Cicerō, -ōnis, [cicer], m., Cicero, name of a family of the Tullian gens. In this book, *M. Tullius Cicerō*, the orator and statesman. See p. 61.

Cimbrī, -ōrum, m., pl., a Germanic people, originally in the Cimbric peninsula (the present Jutland), that joined with the Teutones in the invasion of Gaul. They were annihilated by Marius near Verzellae in 101 B.C. See *n.* to p. 140, l. 13.

Cimberius, -ī, m., a leader of the Suebi.

Cimōn, -ōnis, [Κίμων], m., Cimon, referring to:

(1) the father of Miltiades.

(2) the son of Miltiades.

Cineās, -ae, m., Cineās, a friend and counsellor of Pyrrhus, famed for his eloquence.

cingō, cingere, cīnxī, cīnetus, 3, surround, enclose, encircle; invest.

Cinna, -ae, m., family name of *L. Cornēlius Cinna*, leader of the popular party B.C. 87-84, and associated with Marius in a massacre of the aristocracy.

cippus, -ī, m., stake, post.

circinus, -ī, [=κίρκινος], m., pair of compasses.

circiter, [circus, circle], adv. and prep.:

(1) As adv., about, not far from, near.

(2) As prep. with acc. only, about.

circuitus, -ūs, [circumeō], m., a going around; circuit, winding path, way around.

circulus, -ī, [dim. of circus], m., circular figure, circle; company, social gathering.

circum, [acc. of circus, circle], adv. and prep.:

(1) As adv., about, around.

(2) As prep. with acc., around, about; in the neighborhood of, near, near by.

circumdō, -dare, -dedī, -datus, [circum + dō], 1, place around, encompass, surround, encircle; envelop.

circumdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, [circum + dūcō], 3, lead around, conduct around, draw around; trace.

circumeō, -ire, -ivī, or ii, circumitus or circuitus, [circum + eō], irr., go around, surround, enclose.

circumiciō (circumjiciō), -icere, -iēcī, -iectus, [circum + iaciō], 3, throw around, place around.

circummūnīō, -ire, -ivī, -itus, [circum + mūnīō], 4, surround with walls, fortify; hem in.

circumsistō, -sistere, -stetī, or -stitī, —, [circum + sistō], 3, stand around, surround, take (their) stand around, take a position around.

circumstō, -stāre, -stetī, —, [circum + stō], 1, stand around; encompass, surround; besiege.

circumveniō, -venire, -vēni, -ventus, [circum + veniō], 4, *come around, go around; surround, encompass.*

cis, prep. with acc. only, *on this side of.*

citerior, -us, [citer, from cis], adj. in comp. degree, *on this side, hither; nearer, next.* Gallia

citerior, *Cisalpine Gaul.*

citharizō, -āre, —, —, [κίθαριζω], 1, *play on the cithara.*

citrā, [citer, from cis], prep. with acc. only, *on this side of.*

citrō, [citer, from cis], adv., *hither.*
ultrō citrōque, *to and fro, back and forth.*

cīvicus, -a, -um, [cīvis], adj., *of citizens, civil, civic.* **corōna cīvica**, *civic crown.* See n. to p. 53, l. 19.

cīvīlis, -e, [cīvis], adj., *of citizens, civic, civil; courteous, polite, civil.*

cīvis, -is, m. and f., *citizen, fellow-citizen.*

cīvītās, -tātis, [cīvis], f., *body of citizens, state, nation; standing of a citizen, citizenship.*

clādēs, -is, f., *destruction, disaster, overthrow, defeat.*

clam, [cf. cēlō], adv. and prep. with acc., *secretly, without the knowledge of.*

clāmō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 1, *cry, shout; call upon, invoke; proclaim.*

clāmor, -ōris, [cf. clāmō], m., *outcry, loud call, shout, din.*

clandestīnus, -a, -um, [clam], adj., *secret, concealed, clandestine.*

clārus, -a, -um, comp. **clārior**, sup. **clārissimus**, adj., *clear, bright; conspicuous, celebrated, famous, illustrious.*

classiārius, -a, -um, adj., *of the fleet.* As subst., **classiārīi**, -ōrum, m. pl., *marines, naval forces.*

classis, -is, f., *class, division of the people; army; fleet.*

Clastidium, -ī, n., *Clastidium*, a town in Cisalpine Gaul. See map opp. p. 30.

Claudius, -ī, m., gentile name of *Appius Claudius Caecus*, celebrated for his eloquence, who in his old age was carried into the senate and prevailed on the members not to listen to the terms of peace offered by Pyrrhus. See *Mārcellus*, *Nerō.*

claudō, *claudere*, **clausi**, **clausus**, 3, *shut, close; shut in, surround; imprison, besiege.* **agmen claudere**, *to bring up the rear.*

clausula, -ae, [claudō], f., *close, conclusion, finish; of a play, 'tag.'*

clāva, -ae, f., *cudgel, club; despatch-staff*, a staff used by the Spartans for cipher despatches. See n. to p. 90, l. 28.

clēmēns, -entis, adj., *mild, gentle, kindly, compassionate.*

clēmēnter, [clēmēns], comp. **clēmēntius**, sup. **clēmēntissimē**, adv., *quietly, with forbearance, mildly.*

clēmēntia, -ae, [clēmēns], f., *forbearance, mercy, clemency.*

Cleopatra, -ae, f., *Cleopatra*, queen of Egypt, famous for her wit and beauty, who with Mark Antony was defeated by Octavianus Caesar at Actium in 31 B.C.

cliēns, -entis, [= cluēns, from clueō, hear], m., *retainer, dependant, client, adherent, vassal, follower.*

clipeus, -ī, m., round shield of metal.

cloāca, -ae, f., sewer.

Clōdīus, -ī, m., form of *Claudius*, gentile name of *P. Clōdīus Pulcher*, a bitter enemy of *Cicero*. He was active in promoting the exile of *Cicero*.

Cluentius, -ī, m., *Cluentius*, the name of an opponent of *Sulla* in the Social Wars.

Clūsium, -ī, n., *Clūsium*, an old and powerful town of Etruria. See map opp. p. 30.

Cn., see *Gnaeus*.

coacervō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [com- + acervō], 1, heap up, pile up.

coāctus, pf. pass. part. of *cōgō*.

coarguō, -arguere, -argui, —, [com- + arguō], 3, overwhelm with proof, refute, prove guilty; prove, show.

Coclēs, -itis, m., *Coclēs*, (one-eyed), a surname of *Horātius Coclēs*. See *Horātius*.

cōgī, see *cōgō*.

coēmō, -emere, -ēmī, -ēmtus, [com- + emō], 3, buy up, purchase.

coepiō, coepere, coepī, coeptus, pres. not found in classical Latin, 3, def., begin, commence. With a pass. infinitive the pass. form, coeptus est, coeptus erat, is used.

coērcēō, -ercēre, -ercuī, -ercitus, [com- + arceō, shut up], 2, confined on all sides, shut in; restrain, repress, check.

cōgitātiō, -ōnis, [cōgitō], f., consideration, thought, reflection; resolution, plan, project.

cōgitātum, -ī, [cōgitō], n., thought, idea; in pl. often purpose.

cōgitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [com- +

agitō], 1, consider thoroughly, ponder, reflect on, think; have in mind, design, plan.

cognitus, -a, -um, [part. of *cognōscō*], adj., known, acknowledged, approved.

cognōmen, -inis, [com- + *gnōmen*], n., surname, family name; name.

cognōscō, -gnōscere, -gnōvī, *cognitus*, [com- + (g) *nōscō*], 3, become acquainted with, learn, learn of, ascertain; be familiar with, know, recognize; spy out, examine, investigate; take cognizance of.

cōgō, cōgere, cōgī, coāctus, [com- + *agō*], 3, drive together, bring together, collect, gather, assemble; compel, force, oblige.

cohībēō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, [con + *habeo*], 2, hold together, embrace; keep back, restrain.

cohors, -hortis, f., cohort, company, the tenth part of a legion.

cohortātiō, -ōnis, [cohortor], f., encouraging, exhortation.

cohortor, -āri, -ātus, [com- + *hortor*], 1, dep., encourage, animate, urge, exhort, address with encouraging words. cohortāti inter sē, urging one another on.

Collātīnus, -a, -um, [Collātia], adj., of *Collatia*.

Collātīnus, -ī, m., *Collātīnus*, family name of *L. Tarquīnius Collātīnus*, husband of *Lucretia*, and colleague of *Brutus* in his consulship.

collātus, see *cōnferō*.

collaudō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [com- + *laudō*], 1, praise highly, extol.

collēga, -ae, m., colleague, associate

colligō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [com- + ligō, bind], 1, bind together, fasten together.

colligō, -ligere, -lēgi, -lēctus, [com- + legō, gather], 3, gather together, collect, assemble; obtain, get. **sē colligere**, to gather themselves together, to come together; to recover oneself, rally.

collis, -is, m., hill, height, elevation.

collocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [com- + locō, place], 1, place, set, post, station; set in order, arrange; with or without **nūptum**, give in marriage.

colloquium, -i, [colloquor], n., conference, interview.

colloquor, -loquī, -locūtus, [com- + loquor], 3, dep., talk with, hold a conference, hold a parley. **inter sē collocūtī**, having conferred together.

collum, -i, n., neck.

colō, -ere, coluī, cultus, 3, till, cultivate; dwell in, inhabit; clothe, adorn; honor, revere, esteem.

Colōnae, -ārum, [Κολωνάι], f. pl., Coloniae, a town in the Troad, in northwestern Asia Minor.

colōnus, -i, [cf. colō], m., tiller of the soil, husbandman; settler, colonist.

columba, -ae, f., dove, pigeon.

columbārium, -i, [columba], n., dove-cot, pigeon-house.

com-, prep., old form of **cum**, found only in composition; see **cum**.

combūrō, -ūrere, -ussi, -ustus, [com- + būrō, burn], 3, burn up, consume.

comes, -itis, [com-, cf. eō], n., companion, comrade; retainer.

cōmitās, -ātis, [cōmis], f., courtesy, kindness, affability.

comitātus, -ūs, [comitor], m., escort, train, retinue.

comitium, -i, [com- + eō], n., place of meeting; at Rome, the *Comitium*, an open place in which assemblies were held; it was north of the Forum, from which it was separated by the rostra.

comitor, -āri, -ātus sum [comes], 1, dep., attend, accompany.

commeātus, -ūs, [commeō], m., passing to and fro, trip, voyage; leave of absence, furlough; supplies, provisions, often including (but sometimes exclusive of) grain, **frūmentum**.

commemorō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [com- + memorō], 1, call to mind, recount, mention, relate.

commendō, āre, -āvi, ātus, [com- + mandō], 1, entrust, commit; recommend, ask favor for, defend.

commeō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [com- + meō, go], 1, go to and fro, visit, resort to.

comminus [com- + manus], adv., hand to hand, at close quarters.

commissum, -i, [committō], n., undertaking; fault, crime, offence.

committō, -mittere, -misi, commissus, [com- + mittō], 3, bring together, unite; match, engage in; entrust, commit; commit, do, be guilty of. **proelium committere**, to join battle, fight.

commodē, comp. **commodius**, sup. **commodissimē**, [commodus], adv., conveniently, to advantage; properly, rightly, suitably; appropriately, well, skilfully. **nōn minus commodē . . . quam**, just as readily as.

commodus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, [com- + modus, i.e.

having full measure], adj., *convenient, advantageous, easy; good, favorable; suitable, fit*. As subst., *commodum*, -i, n., *convenience, advantage, profit*.

commonefaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factus, [commoneō + faciō], 3, *remind; impress upon one*.

commoror, -ārī, -ātus, [com- + moror], 1, dep., *stay, linger, remain, stop*.

commoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, commōtus, [com- + moveō], 2, *disturb, disquiet, alarm; move, excite, rouse, stir, influence*. *bellum commovēre*, to begin war. *sē commovēre*, to undertake anything.

commūniō, -īre, -īvī or ii, -ītus, [com- + mūniō], 4, *fortify on all sides, strongly fortify, intrench*.

commūnis, -e, [com- + mūnus], adj., *common, in common, general, public*. *commūnī cōnsiliō*, in accordance with the general plan, by common consent. *in commūnī conciliō*, at a general council. *ex commūnī cōnsensū*, by general agreement.

commūnitās, -ātis, [commūnis], f., *community, fellowship; courtesy, affability*.

commūtātiō, -ōnis, [commūtō], f., *change, alteration*.

commūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [com- + mūtō], 1, *change, wholly change, alter; exchange, substitute*.

cōmō, cōmere, cōmpsī, cōmptus, [com- + emō], 3, *comb, arrange, dress*.

compāreō, -ēre, -uī, —, [com- + pāreō], 2, *appear, be visible, be shown*.

comparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [com- + parō], 1, *prepare, make ready, get together; acquire, secure, get*.

comparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [compār], 1, *bring together as equal, pair, match, compare; count equal, rank with*.

compellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsus, [com- + pellō], 3, *drive together, collect; drive, force, compel*.

compellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [com- + pellō], 1, *accost, address; reproach, call to account; summon, arraign*.

comperiō, -perīre, -perī, -pertus, 4, *obtain knowledge of, find out, learn*.

compēs, -pedis, f., *fetter for the feet; pl., bonds, chains*.

complector, -plectī, -plexus sum, [com- + plectō, braid], 3, dep., *clasp, embrace, encircle, surround; include*.

compleō, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētus, [com- + pleō], 2, *fill full, fill; complete, fill up, make full*.

complūrēs, -a and -ia, [com- + plūrēs from plūs], adj., pl., *several, a number of; many*. As subst., *complūrēs*, -ium, m., pl., *a great many, quite a number, many*.

compōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, compositus, [com- + pōnō], 3, *put together, unite; set in order, arrange; compose, settle, end*. *pācem compōnere*, to conclude peace, to come to terms.

comportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [com- + portō], 1, *bring in, carry, convey, bring over*.

compos, -potis, [com-, cf. possum], adj., *master of, powerful over, participating in*. *vōtī compotem fieri*, to attain one's wish.

comprehendō, -hendere, -hendī, -hēnsus, [com- +prehendō], 3, *bind together; seize, catch, grasp; understand, comprehend.*

comprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressus, [com- +premō], 3, *press together, compress; restrain, check, curb, subdue.*

comprobō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [com- +probō], 1, *approve, assent to; prove, confirm.*

cōnātum, -ī, [n. of cōnātus, from cōnor], n., *attempt, undertaking.*

cōnātus, -ūs, [cōnor], m., *attempt.*

cōnātus, pf. part. of cōnor.

concedō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessūrus, [com- +cēdō], 3, *withdraw, depart; give up, yield, bow, submit; allow, grant; grant permission, permit.*

concidō, -cidere, -cidi, —, [com- +cadō], 3, *fall together, fall down; be slain; be overthrown, be defeated, go to ruin.*

concidō, -cidere, -cidi, -cīsus, [com- +caedō], 3, *cut to pieces, kill.*

conciliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [conciliū], 1, *win over, make friendly, reconcile; win, gain, procure.*

concilium, -i, [com-, cf. calō, call], n., *meeting, assembly; council.*

concinuus, -a, -um, adj., *neat, elegant, pleasing; apt, happy.*

concoitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [freq. of concio], 1, *put in motion; drive, spur; rouse, excite; move, instigate.*

concolor, -ōris, m., *one who excites or stirs up.*

conclāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [com- +clāmō, shout], 1, *cry aloud together, shout, cry out.*

concludō, -clūdere, -clūsī, conclūsus, [com- +claudō], 3, *shut up, imprison, confine; include, comprise; end, close; conclude.*

concordia, -ae, [concor], f., *union, harmony, concord.*

concupiscō, -cupiscere, -cupivī, -cupitus, [com- +cupio], 3, *incl., greatly desire, long for, strive after.*

concurrō, -currere, cucurrī or -currī, -cursus, [com- +currō], 3, *run together, assemble; rush together, engage in combat, fight; coincide, happen. eo concursus est, a rush was made to that point.*

concursum, -ūs, [concurrō], m., *running together, concourse, throng; attack; meeting, collision, shock.*

concutiō, -cutere, -cussī, -cussus, [com- +quatiō], 3, *strike together; shatter, impair; terrify, alarm.*

condiciō, -ōnis, [com-, cf. dico], f., *agreement, condition, terms.*

condiscipulus, -i, [com- +discipulus], m., *schoolmate, fellow-pupil.*

condō, -dere, -didi, -ditus, [com- +dō], 3, *put together, found, build; lay away, conceal.*

condōnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [com- +dōnō], 1, *give up, forgive, overlook, excuse, pardon.*

Condriusī, -ōrum, m., pl., a Belgic tribe on the right bank of the Mosa (*Meuse*), south of the Eburones; the name survives in that of the district Condroz. See map opp. p. 114.

condūcō, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductus, [com- +dūcō], 3, *bring together,*

collect; hire; contribute to, profit, serve. *conducit* (impers.), *it is profitable.*

cōnfectus, see **cōnficiō**.

cōnferō, -ferre, -tulī, collātus, [com- + ferō], irr., *bring together, gather, collect, convey; contribute; compare; consult, confer; devote, apply; bestow; ascribe, refer; put off, postpone.* *sē cōnferre*, to betake one's self, turn, proceed. *arma cōnferre*, to engage in battle.

cōnfertus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, [part. of **cōnferciō**], adj., *crowded together, close, dense, compact.*

cōnfestim, adv., *immediately, at once, speedily.*

cōnficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus, [com- + faciō], 3, *do thoroughly, complete, finish, accomplish, do; compose, write; bring to an end, wear out, exhaust; kill; of troops, furnish.* *bellō Helvētiōrum cōnfectō*, when the war with the Helvetii was over. *māgnō itinere cōnfectō*, having made a forced march.

cōnfidō, -fidere, -fīsus sum, [com- + fidō, trust], 3, semi-dep., *trust firmly, rely upon, have confidence in; believe, be confident.*

cōnfirmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [com- + firmus], 1, *confirm, strengthen; set, arrange for, establish; reassure, encourage; assert, declare; assure.* *iūreiūrāndō cōnfirmāre*, to bind by an oath.

cōnfīsus, -a, -um, see **cōnfidō**.

cōnfiteor, -fītērī, -fessus, [com- + fateor, confess], 2, dep., *confess, acknowledge.*

cōnfligō, -fligere, -flīxī, -flīctus.

[com- + fligō], 3, *dash together, collide; contend, fight.*

cōnflō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [com- + flō], 1, *blow up; kindle; bring together; cause.* *aes aliēnum cōnflāre*, to contract debt.

cōnfluō, -fluere, -flūxī, —, [com- + fluō], 3, *flow together, flock together, assemble.*

cōnfodiō, -fodere, -fodī, -fossus, [com- + fodiō], 3, *dig up; stab, pierce.*

cōnfugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, —, [com- + fugiō], 3, *flee, take refuge; have recourse, resort.*

congerō, -gerere, -gessī, -gestus, [com- + gerō], 3, *bring together, heap together, accumulate; build, construct.*

congregior, -gredi, -gressus, [com- + gradior, step], 3, dep., *come together, meet, unite with; join battle, engage, contend.*

congressus, -a, -um, see **congregior**.

coniciō (**conjiciō**), -icere, -iēcī, -iectus, [com- + iaciō], 3, *throw together, hurl, cast; throw up, throw; place, put.* *conicere in fugam*, to put to flight.

coniungō, -ere, **coniūnxī**, **coniūctus**, [com- + iungō], 3, *fasten together, join, unite.*

coniūnx, or **coniux**, -ugis, [cf. **coniungō**], m. and f., *married person, husband, wife.*

coniūrātiō (**conjūrātiō**), -ōnis, [b. **coniūrō**], f., *union bound by oath, sworn union; conspiracy, plot.*

coniūrātus, -a, -um, [part. of **coniūrō**], adj., *bound together by an oath, allied, conspiring.* *Assubst.*, pl., m., *conspirators.*

coniūrō (**conjūrō**), -āre, **āvī**, -ātus,

[com- + iūrō], 1, *take oath together; form a conspiracy, conspire, plot.*

cōnor, -ārī, -ātus, 1, dep., *endeavor, attempt, undertake, try.* *idem* cōnārī, *to make the same attempt.*

conqueror, -querī, -questus sum, [com- + queror], 3, dep., *complain, lament, deplete.*

conquirō, -quīrere, -quīsivī, -quīstus [com- + quaerō], 3, *seek out, hunt up, bring together.*

cōnsanguineus, -a, -um, [com- + sanguineus, from sanguis], adj., *of the same blood.* As subst., m. and f., *relative, kinsman; pl., kinsfolk, blood-relations.*

cōnscendō, -scendere, -scendī, -scēsus, [com- + scandō], 3, *mount, ascend; go on board a ship.*

cōnscientia, -ae, [cōnsciō], f., *joint knowledge, knowledge shared by others; consciousness; conscience.*

cōnsciscō, -ere, cōnscivī, cōnscītus, [com- + sciscō], 3, *approve of, decree, determine.* *mortem sibi cōnsciscere, commit suicide.*

cōnscius, -a, -um, [com- + sciō], adj., *conscious, knowing in common, aware of, privy, accessory.* As subst., cōnscius, -ī, m., *partaker, accomplice.*

cōnscrībō, -scribere, -scripsī, -scriptus, [com- + scribō], 3, *write together, enroll, enlist; draw up, compose, write.* *patrēs cōnscriptī, see pater.*

cōnscriptus, see cōnscrībō.

cōnsector, -ārī, -ātus sum, [freq. of cōnsequor], 1, dep., *follow eagerly, pursue, overtake.*

cōnsecūtus, see cōnsequor.

cōnsenēscō, -ere, -senui, —, [con-, senex], 3, *grow old.*

cōnsēnsus, -ūs, [cōnsentiō], m., *agreement, unanimity, concord.*

cōnsentiō, -ire, cōnsēnsī, cōnsēnsus, [com- + sentiō], 4, *agree together, be in accord; conspire, plot.*

cōnsenuī, see cōnsenēscō.

cōnsequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, [com- + sequor], 3, dep., *follow, follow up; overtake, come up with; acquire, get, gain; accomplish; result, arise from; perceive, learn.*

cōnserō, -serere, -seruī, -sertus, [com- + serō], 3, *connect, join.* *pūgnam or manum cōnserere, to join battle.*

cōnservō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [com- + servō], 1, *retain, keep safe, preserve, keep.*

cōnsiderō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 1, *look closely at, examine; consider, reflect upon.*

Cōnsidius, -ī, m., *Publius Considius*, an officer in Caesar's army who made an unfortunate mistake. See p. 127, l. 24 fol.

cōnsidō, -sīdere, -sēdī, -sessus, [com- + sīdō, sit], 3, *sit down, seat one's self; halt, encamp; take up an abode, establish one's self, settle.*

cōnsillium, -ī, [cf. cōnsulō], n., *consultation, deliberation, counsel; gathering for deliberation, council; advice; plan, design, purpose, scheme; judgment, sense, prudence, discretion.* *cōnsilium inire or habere, to form a plan.*

cōnsimilis, -e, [com- + similis], adj., *very like, quite like.*

cōnsistō, -sistere, -stiti, -stitus, [com- + sistō, *set, place*], 3, *stand, stop, halt; post one's self, take a position, be posted, make a stand; stay, remain; sojourn, settle; be firm, endure, continue; consist (in), depend (on).*

cōnsōlor, -āri, -ātus, [com- + sōlor, *comfort*], 1, dep., *comfort, cheer, console, encourage.*

cōnspectus, -ūs, [cōnspectiō], m., *sight, view. ē cōnspectū, out of sight.*

cōnspectiō, -spicere, -spēxi, cōnspectus, [com- + spectiō], 3, *observe, perceive, see; pass., be in sight, be conspicuous.*

cōnspicor, -ārī, -ātus sum, [com-, cf. spectiō], 1, dep., *get sight of, perceive, see.*

cōnspiciuus, -a, -um, [cf. cōnspectiō], adj., *in view, apparent; conspicuous, illustrious.*

cōnstanter, comp. cōnstantius, sup. cōnstantissimō, [cōnstāns], adv., *firmly, steadfastly, resolutely; uniformly, unanimously.*

cōnstantia, -ae, [cōnstāns], f., *firmness, steadiness; perseverance; faithfulness.*

cōnsternō, -ārē, -āvi, -ātus, [com- + sternō], 1, *confound, terrify, affright.*

cōnstiti, see cōnstō and cōnsistō.

cōnstituō, -stituere, -stitui, cōnstitutus, [com- + statuō], 3, *put, place; set in order, draw up, form, organize; found, build, construct; make, prepare, establish; resolve, determine.*

cōnstō, -stāre, -stiti, -stāturus, [com- + stō], 1, *agree; stand firm, be fixed; consist of. sibi cōnstāre, to be consistent. Im-*

pers. cōnstat, it is agreed, it is well known.

cōnsuēscō, -suēscere, -suēvi, -suētus [com- + suēscō], 3, *accustom, inure; accustom one's self, be accustomed; be wont.*

cōnsuētūdō, -inis, [cōnsuēscō], f., *custom, habit; character; social intercourse, companionship, familiarity; practice in speaking a language.*

cōnsuētus, see cōnsuēscō.

cōnsul, -ulis, m., *consul*, one of the chief magistrates at Rome, of whom there were two chosen annually. In dates the names of the consuls, usually in the abl. abs., are used to designate their year of office.

cōnsulāris, -e, [cōnsul], adj., *of a consul, consular, of consular rank.* As subst., cōnsulāris, -is, m., *a man of consular rank, ex-consul.*

cōnsulātus, -ūs, [cōnsul], m., *consulship.*

cōnsulō, -ere, -ui, -tus, [com-, cf. saliō], 3, *take counsel, consult, take care; be mindful; conclude, determine; with dat., have regard for, look out for.*

cōnsultum, -ī, [cōnsultus], n., *deliberation; decree, plan, resolution.* senātus cōnsultum, see senātus.

cōnsultus, -a, -um, [part. of cōnsulō], adj., *well considered; skilful, experienced, learned.* iūris cōnsultus, *a lawyer, counsellor.*

cōnsūmō, -sūmere, -sūmpsi, -sūmptus, [com- + sūmō], 3, *use up, devour, eat up; consume; waste, destroy; pass, consume; spend.*

contemnendus, -a, -um, [part. of **contemnō**], adj., *contemptible, unworthy of notice.*

contemnō, -temnere, -tempsī, -temptus, [com- + temnō], 3, *value little, disdain, despise.*

contemptus, -ūs, [contemnō], m., *contempt, scorn.* **contemptui esse**, to be an object of contempt.

contendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentus, [com- + tendō], 3, *put forth effort, strive for, make effort, strive; demand; hasten, make haste, push forward; fight, contend, vie; defend an action; maintain, insist, protest.*

contentiō, -ōnis, [contendō], f., *effort; struggle, fight, contest; dispute, controversy.*

contentus, -a, -um, [part. of **contineō**], adj., *satisfied, content.*

continēns, -entis, [part. of **contineō**], adj., *bounding, limiting; bordering, adjacent; connected, continuous; moderate, temperate.* **continēns terra**, or **continēns** (sc. *terra*), *the mainland.*

continenter, [continēns], adv., *constantly, incessantly, without interruption, continually.*

contineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentus, [com- + teneō], 2, *hold together, contain; hold; hold back, keep, retain, detain, shut in; embrace, include; curb, rule; of places and regions, hem in, bound, border; of space, fill; of a rite, consist of.* **sē continēre**, *to hold one's self, keep one's self, remain.*

contingō, -tingere, -tigī, -tactus, [com- + tangō], 3, *touch, extend to, reach; happen, fall to the lot of.*

continuō, [continuus], adv., *forthwith, straightway.*

continuus, -a, -um, [cf. **contineō**], adj., *continuous, uninterrupted, successive.*

cōntiō, -ōnis, [for **conventiō**, from **conveniō**], f., *meeting, assembly; harangue, speech.*

contrā, [comp. of **com-**], adv. and prep.:

(1) As adv., *opposite, in opposition, on the other side, in front of, face to face; on the contrary.*

(2) As prep. with acc. only, *opposite, facing, over against, contrary to; against, in hostility to, to the disadvantage of, in spite of; in reply to.*

contrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -tractus, [com- + trahō], 3, *bring together, collect; draw in, contract, make smaller.*

contrārius, -a, -um, [contrā], adj., *opposite, contrary.* As subst., **contrārium**, -ī, n., *the opposite, contrary, reverse.* **ē contrāriō**, *on the other hand, on the contrary.*

contubernālis, -is, [com- + **taberna**], m., *tent-companion; comrade, companion.*

contumēlia, -ae, f., *insult, abuse, indignity; violence, injury.*

convalēscō, -valēscere, -valuī, —, [com- + valeō], 3, *inch., recover, grow strong, gain strength.*

conveniō, -venīre, -venī, **conventus**, [com- + **conveniō**], 4, *come together, assemble; meet; fall in with, meet; be fit, be suitable, belong, correspond; be agreed, be settled.* Impers. **convenit**, *it is agreed.*

conventus, -ūs, [cf. **conveniō**], m., *assembly, meeting; court.*

conversus, see **convertō**.

convertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versus,

[com- + vertō], 3, *turn, direct, turn about, wheel around; change; of the sight, fix, rivet, attract; use for, use as; divert, misuse. conversa signa inferre, to face about and advance. itinere conversō, turning about.*

convictus, see **convincō**.

convincō, -vincere, -vici, -victus, [com- + vincō], 3, *conquer completely, overcome; convict, prove guilty, refute; prove clearly, establish, prove.*

convocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [com- + vocō], 1, *call together, summon, assemble.*

coorior, -oriri, -ortus sum, [com- + orior], 4, dep., *come forth, arise, appear.*

cophinus, -ī, m., *basket.*

cōpia, -ae, [= co-opia, from com- + ops], f., *quantity, abundance, supply, plenty; opportunity.* Pl., **cōpiae**, -ārum, *means, resources, wealth; forces, troops.*

cōpiōsus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, [cōpia], adj., *well supplied, wealthy, rich.*

cōram, [com-, cf. ōs], adv. and prep. with abl., *before:*

(1) As adv., *before the eyes, present, in person.* **cōram adesse**, *to be present.*

(2) As prep. with abl., *before, in the presence of.*

Corcȳra, -ae, [Képȳpa], f., *Corcyra*, an island in the Ionian Sea west of Epirus, the modern Corfu. See map opp. p. 75.

Corcȳraeus, -a, -um, adj., *of Corcyra, at Corcyra, Corcyraean.* As subst., **Corcȳraei**, -ōrum, m., pl., *Corcyraeans, inhabitants of Corcyra.*

Corinthus, -ī, [Kόρινθος], f., *Corinth*, a city of Greece, situated on the Isthmus of Corinth. See map opp. p. 75.

Corinthius, -a, -um, [Corinthus], adj., *of or belonging to Corinth, Corinthian.* As subst., **Corinthius**, -ī, m., *an inhabitant of Corinth, a Corinthian.*

Coriolānus, -ī, [Corioli], m., *Coriolanus*, surname of *C. Mārcius Coriolānus*.

Coriolī, -ōrum, m., pl., *Corioli*, a town of Latium, about sixteen miles southeast of Rome. See map, frontispiece.

Coriosolitēs, -um, m., pl., *a people along the northwest coast of Gaul, north of the Veneti; the name survives in Corseult, near St. Malo.* See map opp. p. 114.

Cornēlius, -a, the name of a Roman gens which contained a number of distinguished families. See *Cethēgus*, *Cinna*, *Lentulus*, *Scipiō*, *Sulla*. To this gens belonged *Cornēlia*, -ae, f., *Cornēlia*, the daughter of Scipio Africanus the elder, and mother of the Gracchi; and *L. Cornēlius*, consul in 193 B.C.

cornū, -ūs, n., *horn; trumpet; of an army, wing.*

corōna, -ae, f., *crown, wreath.* See **civicus**.

corpus, -oris, n., *body; person; dead body, corpse.*

corrēxi, see **corrīgō**.

corrīgō, -rigere, -rēxi, -rēctus, [com- + regō], 3, *make straight; correct, improve; restore, calm.*

corrōdō, -ere, -si, -sum, [com- + rōdō], 3, *gnaw.*

corrōsus, see **corrōdō**.

corrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, corruptus, [com- + rumpō], 3, *destroy, ruin, spoil; corrupt, seduce, mislead, bribe.*

corruptus, see **corrumpō**.

cortex, corticis, m. and f., *bark of a tree.*

Corvinus, -ī, m., *Corvinus*, surname of *M. Valerius Corvinus*, an early Roman.

corvus, -ī, m., *raven.*

coss., = cōsulibus.

cotidiānus, or **cottidiānus**, -a, -um, [cotidiē], adj., *daily; ordinary, usual.*

cotidiē, or **cottidiē**, [quot + diēs?], adv., *daily, every day.*

Cotta, -ae, see **Aurunculēius**.

Crassus, -ī, m.:

(1) *Marcus Licinius Crassus*, surnamed *Dives*, consul in 70 B.C. member of the triumvirate with Caesar and Pompey, consul again in 55; perished in the disastrous Parthian expedition, 53 B.C.

(2) *Publius Licinius Crassus*, younger son of the triumvir; lieutenant of Caesar, in Gaul, 58-56 B.C., where he distinguished himself; he returned to Rome in 55, followed his father to the East, and fell in the same battle.

crēber, -bra, -brum, adj., *thick, frequent, numerous, abundant.*

crēdō, crēdere, crēdidī, crēditus, 3, *give as a loan, lend; trust, believe, think, suppose; intrust, consign.*

Cremera, -ae, f., *the Cremera*, a small river in Etruria, near Veii. See map, frontispiece.

cremō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 1, *burn. igni cremāre, to consume by fire, burn to death.*

Cremōna, -ae, f., *Cremōna*, a town in Cisalpine Gaul, on the Po. See map opp. p. 30.

creō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 1, *create, make; choose, elect, appoint.*

crēscō, crēscere, crēvi, crētus, 3, *inch., grow, increase; become great, become powerful; of a river, become swollen.*

Crēta, -ae, [Κρήνη], f., *Crete*, a large island in the Mediterranean southeast of Greece, now called Candia. See map opp. p. 75.

Crētēnsis, -e, adj., *of Crete, Cretan.* As subst., *Crētēnsis*, -is, m., *Cretan, inhabitant of Crete.*

Crētēs, -um, [Κρήνες], m., pl., *Cretans, inhabitants of Crete, now Candia.*

crīmen, -inis, [cf. cernō], n., *judgment, accusation, charge; crime, offence.*

cruciātus, -ūs, [cruciō, torture], m., *torture, cruelty, torment, suffering.*

cruciō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [crux], 1, *torture, torment; grieve, afflict.*

crūdēlis, -e, comp. *crūdēlior*, sup. *crūdēlissimus*, adj., *rude, unfeeling, cruel.*

crūdēlitas, -ātis, [crūdēlis], f., *cruelty, barbarity.*

crūdēliter, comp. *crūdēlius*, sup. *crūdēlissimē*, [crūdēlis], adv., *cruelly, with cruelty.*

cruentō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [cruentus], 1, *make bloody, stain with blood, stain.*

crumēna, -ae, f., *money-bag, purse.*

crux, crucis, f. *gallows, cross.*

crystallinus, -a, -um, adj., *of crystal, crystal.* As subst., *crystallinum*, -ī, n., (sc. *vās*), *a vase of crystal.*

cubiculum, -ī, [cubō], n., *sleeping-chamber, bedchamber.*

cui, see **quī**.

cuius, see **quīvis**.

cultūra, -ae, [cf. colō], f., a *cultivating, cultivation.* See **ager**.

cultus, -ūs, [colō], m., *labor, care, cultivation; civilization, refinement, luxury; dress, attire.*

cum, prep. with ablative only, *with; of association, with, along with, in the company of, together with; of comparison, with, as over against, compared with; of manner and circumstance, with, under, amid, at; of time, together with, at the same time with.* With the personal pronouns and with **quī**, **cum** is enclitic; as, **mēcum**, **nōbiscum**, **quibuscum**.

In composition the earlier form **com-** is used, which remains unchanged before **b**, **p**, **m**, but is changed to **col-** or **con-** before **l**, **cor-** or **con-** before **r**, **con-** before other consonants, and **co-** before vowels and **h**; it implies doing anything in concert with others, or thoroughly and completely.

cum, conj., *when; of definite time, at the time when, when, while, as long as, after; of indefinite time or repeated action, whenever, as often as, at times when; of relative time, descriptive or circumstantial, when, while, after, on the occasion that, under the circumstances that, at the moment when; of cause and concession, with subj., since, inasmuch as, although, notwithstanding.* **cum . . . tum**, both . . . and, not only . . . but also, while . . .

especially. **cum primum**, *as soon as.*

cunctātiō, -ōnis, [cunctor], f., *delaying, lingering, hesitation, delay.*

cunctor, -ārī, -ātus sum, 1, *delay, linger, hesitate.*

cūnctus, -a, -um, [coniūnctus], adj., *altogether; the whole, all.*

cupidē, comp. -ius, sup. -issimē, [cupidus], adv., *eagerly, ardently, earnestly.*

cupiditās, -tātis, [cupidus], f., *ardent desire, longing, eagerness, ambition.*

cupidus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, [cf. cupiō], adj., *desirous, eager for, fond of; greedy, covetous.*

cupiō, cupere, cupivī, cupitus, 3, *long for, ardently wish, desire; wish well to.*

cūr, [for quōr, = quoi + rei], adv., *why? wherefore? for what purpose?*

cūra, -ae, f., *care, attention, anxiety, trouble; diligence.*

Curēs, -ium, f., pl., *Curēs*, a town of the Sabines, the birthplace of Numa Pompilius. See **map**, **frontispiece**.

cūria, -ae, f., *curia*, association, one of the ten divisions of each of the original three Roman tribes; by metonymy, *senate-house, place of meeting of the senate*, either the *Cūria Hostilia*, in the Forum, named from Tullus Hostilius, or the *Cūria Pompeia*, in the Campus Martius.

Curiātius, -ī, m., *Curiātius*, the name of three brothers of Alba, who fought with the Horatii.

cūrō -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [cūra], 1,

take care, provide for, superintend, arrange; with gerundive, see to it that. *nāvēs aedificandās cūrāre*, to have ships built.

currō, currere, cucurrī, cursus, 3, run.

currus, -ūs, [currō], m., chariot, car.

cursor, -ōris, [cf. currō], m., runner, courier, messenger.

cursus, -ūs, [currō], m., running; passage, course; speed. *māgnō cursū*, at full speed.

cūstōdiā, -ae, [cūstōs], f., a watching; guard, watch.

cūstōdiō, -ire, -īvi, -itus, [cūstōs], 4, watch, guard, defend.

cūstōs, -ōdis, m. and f., guard, protector, keeper, watch.

Cyclades, -um, [Κύκλάδες], f., pl., the Cyclades, the islands about Delos in the Aegean Sea, east of Greece.

Cynoscephalae, -ārum, f., Cynoscephalae, hills near Scotassa in Thessaly, where T. Quinctius Flaminius defeated Philip, king of Macedonia, 197 B.C.

Cyprus, -ī, [Κύπρος], f., Cyprus, a large island at the eastern end of the Mediterranean, south of Asia Minor. See map opp. p. 93.

Cyrēnae, -ārum, [Κύρηνη], f., pl., Cyrene, a city on the northern coast of Africa south of Greece. See map, frontispiece.

Cyrēnaeus, -a, -um, adj., of Cyrene. As subst., *Cyrēnaeus*, -ī, m., inhabitant of Cyrene.

Cyrus, -ī, m., Cyrus, the founder of the Persian monarchy.

Cyzicēnus, -a, -um, adj., of Cyzicus, a city in the northwestern part of Asia Minor. As subst.,

Cyzicēnus, -ī, m., inhabitant of Cyzicus. See map opp. p. 93.

D.

d, see **a. d.**

Dacus, -ī, m., Dacian, an inhabitant of Dacia, on the northern bank of the Danube; pl., the Dacians. See map, frontispiece.

damnātiō, -ōnis, [damnō], f., condemnation, conviction.

damnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [damnum], 1, judge guilty, condemn, sentence. *vōtī damnārī*, to be rendered liable to fulfil a vow, to have one's prayer granted.

Dāmōn, -ōnis, [Δάμων], m., Damon, an Athenian musician, the teacher of Socrates.

Dārēus, -ī, [Δαρείος], m., the names of several kings of Persia. In this book refers to:

(1) *Dārēus Hystaspis*, or *Dārēus I.*, who ruled from 521 to 485 B.C.

(2) *Dārēus Nothus*, or *Dārēus II.*, who ruled from 424 to 405 B.C.

Dātis, -idis, [Δάτις], m., Datis, a Mede who with Artaphernes was in command of the Persians defeated at Marathon in 490 B.C.

dē, prep. with abl., denoting separation, from; of place and motion, from, away from, out of; of source, of, from, out of, proceeding from, sprung from; of the whole, partitively, of, out of, from among; of material, made of, out of, from; of cause, on account of, for, through, by; of relation, concerning, about, in respect to, of, in the matter of; of

time, away from, after, during, in the course of, in. **dē imprōvisō**, unexpectedly.

dēbeō, **dēbere**, **dēbuī**, **dēbitus**, [dē + habēō], 2, withhold; owe, be in debt, be under obligation; pass., be due; followed by infin., ought, must, should.

dēbilis, -e, [dē + habilis], adj., lame, weak, disabled, crippled, helpless.

dēbilitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [dēbilis, feeble], 1, lame, cripple, weaken, crush, disable; dishearten.

dēcēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessūrus, [dē + cēdō], 3, go away, retire, withdraw; avoid, shun; cease, die.

decem, or **x**, indecl. num., ten.

December, -bris, -bre, [decem], adj., of the tenth; of the tenth month (counting from March), of December.

decemplex, -icis, [decem, cf. plicō], adj., ten-fold.

decemvirī, -um or -ōrum, [decem, vir], m., a board consisting of ten men, *decemviri*, *decemvirs*.

dēceptus, see **dēcipiō**.

dēcernō, -cernere, -crēvī, -crētus, [dē + cernō], 3, pass judgment, decide; resolve upon, resolve, decree, intrust by a decree, determine; contend, fight.

dēcertō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [dē + certō, contend], 1, fight to a finish, fight it out. **proeliō dēcertainē**, to fight a decisive battle.

dēcīdō, -cidere, -cidi, —, [dē + cadō], 3, fall down, fall off.

decimus, -a, -um, [decem], adj., tenth.

Decimus, -ī, abbreviated **D.**, [deci-

mus], m., *Decimus*, a Roman forename. See **Brūtus**.

dēcipiō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptus, [dē + capiō], 3, catch; deceive.

dēclārō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [dē + clārō, from **clārus**], 1, make clear, declare, announce, show.

dēclīvis, -e, [dē + clīvus], adj., sloping, descending.

dēcōrus, -a, -um, [decor], adj., becoming, fitting; adorned, fine, handsome, beautiful.

dēcrētum, -ī, [dēcernō], n., decree, decision, vote; determination.

dēcristus, part. of **dēcernō**.

decumānus, -a, -um, [decimus], adj., of a tenth part, *decuman*. **decumāna porta**, main entrance of the Roman camp, opposite the **porta praetōria**. See p. 20.

decuriō, -ōnis, [decem], m., *decurion*, a cavalry officer in charge of a *decuria* (10 horsemen).

dēcurrō, -currere, -cucurrī or -currī, -cursus, [dē + currō], 3, run down, rush down, hasten.

dedī, see **dō**.

dēditicius, -ī, [dēditus, from **dēdō**], adj., that has surrendered, subject. As subst., **dēditiciū**, -ōrum, m., pl., prisoners of war, captives.

dēditio, -ōnis, [dēdō], f., surrender. **accipere** or **recipere** in **dēditionem**, to receive by capitulation.

dēdō, -dere, -didi, -ditus, [dē + dō], 3, give up, surrender; devote.

dēdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductus, [dē + dūcō], 3, lead down; lead away, lead off, withdraw; lead, induce; conduct, bring; escort, attend.

dēfatigō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [dē + fatigō, weary], 1, *tire out, exhaust, fatigue.*

dēfendō, -fendere, -fendī, -fēnsus, 3, *ward off, repel; defend, guard, protect.*

dēfēnsiō, -ōnis, [dēfendō], f., *defence.*

dēfēnsor, -ōris, [dēfendō], m., *defender, protector.*

dēfēnsus, see dēfendō.

dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, [dē + ferō], irr., *bring away, carry off, remove; carry; transfer, deliver; confer upon, bestow; drive away, give, allot, offer; report, submit.*

dēfessus, -a, -um, [part. of dēfētiscor], adj., *wearied, worn out, exhausted.* As subst., dēfessus, -i, m., *one exhausted; pl., the exhausted.*

dēficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus, [dē + faciō], 3, *fail, begin to be lacking, be exhausted; fall away, revolt, rebel.*

dēfōrmitās, -ātis, [dēfōrmis], f., *ugliness, disfigurement.*

dēfungor, -fungī, -fūctus sum, [dē + fungor], 3, dep., *have done with, perform, finish; have done with life, die.*

dēhonestō, -āre, —, —, 1, *disgrace, dishonor; disfigure.*

dēiciō (dējiciō), -icere, -iēcī, -iectus, [dē + iaciō], 3, *throw down, cast down, lay down; dislodge, drive from, rout; kill, destroy; disappoint. eā spē dēlectī, disappointed in this expectation.*

dēlectus, see dēiciō.

dēlectus, -ūs, [dēiciō], m., *descent, slope, declivity.*

dein, see deinde.

deinde, or **dein**, [dē + inde], adv., *thereafter, afterwards, then, next.*

dēlātus, see dēferō.

dēlēctus, see dēligō.

dēlēctus, -a, -um, [part. of dēligō], adj., *picked, select, chosen.* As subst., dēlēctī, -ōrum, m., pl., *picked men, delegates.*

dēlēgō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [dē + lēgō], 1, *send away, despatch; refer.*

dēleō, -ēre, -ēvi, -ētus, 2, *erase; blot out, destroy, annihilate, overthrow; finish, put an end to; of disgrace, wipe out.*

dēlīberō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [dē, cf. libra, balance], 1, *weigh well, consider, deliberate; consult an oracle.*

dēliciae, -ārum, [cf. delectō], f., pl., *delight, pleasure; allurements; luxury.*

dēligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctus, [dē + legō], 3, *choose, pick out, select.*

dēligō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [dē + ligō], 1, *bind together, bind fast.*

Delphī, -ōrum, [Δελφοί], m., pl., *Delphi*, a town of Phocis in central Greece, the modern Castri; it was the seat of a famous oracle of Apollo. See map opp. p. 75.

Delphicus, -a, -um, adj., *of Delphi, Delphic.*

Dēmarātus, -ī, m., *Dēmarātus*, the father of Tarquinius Priscus.

dēmēns, -mentis, [dē + mēns], adj., *out of one's senses; mad, insane; wild, foolish.*

dēmergō, -ere, -sī, -sus, [dē + mergō], 3, *sink, submerge.*

Dēmētrius, -ī, [Δημήτριος], m., *Demetrius*. In this book refers to:

- (1) *Dēmētrius*, father of Philip, king of Macedonia.
 (2) *Dēmētrius*, son of the above.
 (3) *Dēmētrius Phalēreus* or *Demetrius of Phalerum*, a famous orator, statesman, philosopher, and poet. He was born 345 B.C., and died about 283.
 (4) *Dēmētrius I.*, king of Macedonia, surnamed *Poliorcētēs*, or 'the Besieger'; he ruled from 294 to 283 B.C.
- dēmigrātiō**, -ōnis, [dēmigrō], f., emigration.
dēmigrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [dē + migrō], 1, migrate, depart, go away.
dēminuō, -minuere, -minui, -minūtus, [dē + minuō], 3, lessen, make smaller; impair.
dēmittō, -mittere, -misi, -missus, [dē + mittō], 3, send down, let down, let fall; put; of the head, bow.
dēmōlior, -iri, -itus sum, [de + mōlior], 4, dep., throw down, demolish, raze.
dēmōnstrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [dē + mōnstrō, show], 1, point out, show, state, mention; explain.
dēmum, [dē], adv., at length, at last, finally. **tum dēmum**, then, indeed, then at last, not till then.
dēnārius, -a, -um, [dēni], adj., of ten each, worth ten asses. As subst., **dēnārius**, -ī, m., *denarius*, a silver coin originally worth ten, afterward sixteen, *asses*; = about §0.16.
dēnegō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [dē + negō], 1, reject, refuse, deny; say no.
dēnī, -ae, -a, [decem], distrib. num. adj., ten each, ten apiece.

dēnique, adv., and thereafter; at last, finally; in a word, in short; at any rate.

dēns, dentis, m., tooth.

dēnsus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, adj., thick, closely packed, dense, crowded.

dēnūntiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [dē + nūntiō], 1, announce, declare; make a threat, threaten; order.

dēpellō, -pellere, -puli, -pulsus, [dē + pellō], 3, drive out, expel, dislodge; avert, remove.

dēperdō, -dere, -didi, -ditus, [dē + perdō, destroy], 3, destroy, lose.

dēpingō, -pingere, -pinxi, dēpictus, [dē + pingō], 3, depict, paint, draw.

dēpōnō, -pōnere, -posui, dēpositus, [dē + pōnō], 3, lay down, set down, place; lay aside, give up, resign.

dēpopulor, -ārī, -ātus sum, [dē + populor], 1, dep., lay waste, ravage, pillage. Part. **dēpopulātus**, pass., laid waste, devastated.

dēportō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [dē + portō], 1, carry off, take away; bring home; acquire, obtain.

dēposcō, -poscere, -poposci, —, [dē + poscō], 3, demand, request earnestly.

dēpositus, see dēpōnō.

dēprecātor, -ōris, [dēprecor], m., intercessor, mediator. **eō dēprecātōre**, by his intercession.

dēprecor, -ārī, -ātus, [dē + precor, pray], 1, dep., pray to be delivered from, beg to escape, plead against; ask for quarter.

dēprehendō, -hendere, -hendī, -hēnsus, [dē +prehendō], 3, take away; seize, catch; surprise; detect, discover.

dēpūgnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [dē +

- pūgnō**, 1, *fight decisively, fight out, join battle, contend.*
- dērigō**, -rigere, -rēxī, -rēctus, [dē + regō], 3, *set straight, direct, steer.*
- dēscendō**, -scendere, -scendi, -scēnsus, [dē + scandō], 3, *climb down, come down, descend; march down; dismount.*
- dēsciscō**, -sciscere, -scivī, dēscītus, [dē + sciscō], 3, *withdraw, desert, depart, rebel.*
- dēscribō**, -scribere, -scripsī, -scriptus, [dē + scribō], 3, *copy off, write down; describe; mark off, define.*
- dēserō**, -serere, -seruī, -sertus, [dē + serō, join], 3, *leave, forsake, abandon.*
- dēsertus**, see dēserō.
- dēsertus**, -a, -um, [part. of dēserō], adj., *deserted, desert, solitary; lonely.*
- dēsīderium**, -ī, [dēsīderō], n., *longing, desire; grief, regret.*
- dēsīderō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 1, *long for; ask, demand, need, require; miss, lack.*
- dēsīgnō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [dē + signō, mark], 1, *mark out, point out, mean, designate.*
- dēsīnō**, -sinere, -siī, -situs, [dē + sinō], 3, *cease, give up, leave off.*
- dēsīstō**, -sistere, -stitī, -stitus, [dē + sistō], 3, *stand off from; leave off, cease, desist from, stop, give up.*
- dēspērātiō**, -ōnis, [dēspērō], f., *desperation, despair.*
- dēspērātus**, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, [part. of dēspērō], adj., *without hope, beyond hope, desperate, abandoned.*
- dēspērō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [dē + spērō], 1, *be hopeless; despair of, give up hope of; give up.*
- dēspiciō**, -spicere, -spexī, -spectus, [dē + speciō, look], 3, *look down upon, look down; despise, disdain.*
- dēspoliō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [dē + spoliō], 1, *despoil, rob.*
- dēstinō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 1, *make fast, fix; resolve, design, intend; assign, devote.*
- dēstitī**, see dēsistō.
- dēstituō**, -stituere, -stituī, -stitutus, [dē + statuō], 3, *desert, abandon, leave.*
- dēstrictus**, see dēstringō.
- dēstringō**, -stringere, -strīnxī, -strictus, [dē + stringō, pluck off], 3, *strip off; of a sword, unsheathe, draw.*
- dēsum**, deesse, dēfui, —, fut. inf., dēfutūrum esse or dēfore, [dē + sum], irr., *be away; be wanting, be absent, be missing; fail, abandon, desert.*
- dēsuper**, [dē + super], adv., *from above.*
- dētegō**, -tegere, -tēxī, -tēctus, [dē + tegō], 3, *uncover, expose; reveal, betray.*
- dēterior**, -us, adj. in comp. degree, sup. dēterrimus, [dē], *worse, poorer.*
- dēterreō**, -terrere, -terruī, -territus, [dē + terreō], 2, *frighten off, prevent, deter; repress. dēterrere nē, quō minus or quīn, to prevent from.*
- dētīnēō**, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentus, [dē + teneō], 2, *hold off; check, hinder, detain.*
- dētrāctus**, see dētrahō.
- dētrahō**, -trahere, -trāxī, dētrāctus, [dē + trahō], 3, *draw off,*

drag off, remove; withdraw, subtract, deprive; disparage, detract.
dētrimentum, -ī, [dē, cf. *terō*, wear away], n., loss, damage, injury; loss in war, repulse, reverse, defeat.

dēus, -ī, m., god, deity.

dēvehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectus, [dē + vehō], 3, carry away, remove, convey. *equīs dēvexerat*, he had brought on horseback.

dēvolō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventūrus, [dē + veniō], 4, come down (to), come, reach.

dēvictus, part. of *dēvincō*.

dēvincō, -ere, dēvici, dēvictus, [dē + vincō], 3, conquer completely, subdue, overthrow.

dēvolō, -āre, —, fut. part. *dēvolātūrus*, [dē + volō], 1, fly down; fly away, hasten.

dēvorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 1, swallow down, devour, consume.

dexter, -tera or -tra, -terum or -trum, adj., to the right, on the right; skilful. As subst., *dextera* or *dextra*, -ae, f., (sc. manus), the right hand.

dextra, -ae, see *dexter*.

diadēma, -atis, [διαδῆμα], n., diadem, royal crown.

Diāna, -ae, f., Diana, an ancient Italian goddess of the moon, later identified by the Romans with the Greek Artemis, goddess of the chase.

dicō, -ōnis, pl. and nom. sing. not in use, f., sway, dominion, sovereignty, authority, lordship.

dicō, *dicere*, dixī, dictus, 3, say, speak, mention; tell, name, call; mean; appoint; speak in public, plead. *iūs dicere*, administer justice, hold court. *causam di-*

cere, to plead one's cause, to defend oneself. *diem dicere*, to set a day.

dictātor, -ōris, [dictō], m., dictator, a Roman magistrate of unlimited power, at first appointed only in great emergencies.

dictātūra, -ae, [dictātor], f., office of dictator, dictatorship.

dictiō, -ōnis, [cf. *dicō*], f., speaking, pleading.

dictitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [dicō], 1, intens., say often, assert, insist.

dictū, supine of *dicō*.

dictum, -ī, [dicō], n., saying, word; command, order. *dictō audientēs*, obedient to (his) order.

diēs, diēi, m. and f., day; time.

multō diē, late in the day.

in diēs, day by day, every day.

diem ex diē, day after day.

in diem, at a date, i.e. for payment.

diem dicere alicui, to bring a complaint against, arraign.

diffērō, *differe*, distulī, dilātus, [dis + ferō], irr., carry different ways, spread, scatter; put off, delay; differ, be different.

difficilis, -e, comp. *difficilior*, sup.

difficillimus, [dis + facilis], adj., hard, difficult; troublesome; morose, ill-natured, surly. *iter difficile*, a road difficult to pass over, impracticable.

difficultās, -tātis, [difficilis], f., difficulty, trouble, distress.

dignitās, -ātis, [dignus], f., worth, merit, grandeur; rank, eminence; reputation, honor. *corporis dignitās*, presence.

dignor, -ārī, -ātus sum, [dignus], 1, dep., deem worthy, deign, condescend.

dignus, -a, -um, adj., worthy, de-

serving; fitting, suitable, proper, becoming.

dilēctus, -ūs, [diligō], m., *choosing, selecting; enrolment, draft.*

diligēns, -entis, [part. of diligō], adj., *industrious, attentive, diligent; scrupulous.*

diligenter, comp. diligentius, sup. diligentissimē, [diligēns], adv., *industriously, assiduously, carefully, punctually.*

diligentia, -ae, [diligēns], f., *attentiveness, activity, diligence, industry.*

diligō, -ligere, -lēxi, -lēctus, [dis- + legō], 3, *single out; value, prize, love.*

dimēnsus, see dimētiōr.

dimētiōr, -mētīri, -mēnsus, [dis- + mētiōr], 4, dep., *measure, measure off; of work, lay out.* Part. dimēnsus, pass., *Caes. bk. II. cp. 19.*

dimicātiō, -ōnia, [dimicō], f., *fight, struggle; contest.*

dimicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 1, *fight, struggle, contend.*

dimittō, -mittere, -misi, -missus, [dis- + mittō], 3, *send in different directions, send about; dismiss, send off; let go, let slip, lose; abandon, leave; give up.*

Diomedōn, -ontis, [Διομέδων], m., *Diomedon, an inhabitant of Cyzicus, sent to bribe Epaminondas.*

Dionysius, -ī, [Διονύσιος], m., *Dionysius, a music teacher of Thebes.*

dirigō, -ere, -rēxi, -rēctus, [dē + regō], 3, *direct, steer.*

dirimō, -imere, -ēmi, -ēemptus, [dis- + emō], 3, *take apart, separate; interrupt, break off, put an end to.*

diripiō, -ripere, -ripui, -reptus,

[dis- + rapiō], 3, *tear asunder; plunder, pillage; take away.*

diruō, -ruere, -rui, -rutus, [dis- + ruō], 3, *tear asunder; overthrow, demolish, destroy.*

dis- or **dī-**, inseparable prep., used only as a prefix with other words, adding the force of *apart, asunder, in different directions; between, among; not, un-; utterly, entirely.* **dis-** becomes **dif-** before **f**, **dir-** before vowels, **dī-** before **d, g, l, m, n, r,** and **v.**

discēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessus, [dis- + cēdō], 3, *go apart, disperse, scatter, separate; go away, withdraw; come off, remain; give up, resign.*

discessus, -ūs, [discēdō], m., *departure, going away; marching off, decamping.*

discidium, -ī, n., *separation, disagreement, dissension.*

disciplina, -ae, [discipulus], f., *instruction, teaching, training, education; learning, knowledge, science, culture.*

discipulus, -ī, [discō], m., *learner, scholar, pupil, follower.*

discō, discere, didici, —, 3, *learn, learn to know, become acquainted with; learn how.*

disertē, [disertus], adv., *clearly, eloquently.*

disertus, -a, -um, comp. disertior, sup. disertissimus, [part. of disserō, argue], adj., *skilful; clear, well-spoken, fluent, eloquent.*

disiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus, [dis- + iaciō], 3, *throw asunder, disperse, scatter; rout; dash to pieces, ruin, destroy.*

dispālatus, -a, -um, adj., *straggling, astray.*

dispēnsātor, -ōris, [dispēnsō], m., *steward, attendant; treasurer.*

dispergō, -spargere, -spersā, -persus, [dis- + spargō, scatter], 3, *scatter, scatter about, disperse.*

dispersus, see **dispergō**.

dispiciō, -ere, dispexī, dispectus, [dis- + speciō], 3, *descry, perceive; consider, reflect upon.*

displiceō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, [dis- + placeō], 2, *displease, be unsatisfactory.*

dispōnō, -ere, disposuī, dispositus, [dis- + pōnō], 3, *place here and there, distribute, scatter; array, arrange; station, post; adjust, order, dispose.*

disputō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [dis- + putō], 1, *weigh, examine, discuss; argue.*

dissentiō, -sentire, -sēnsī, dissēsus, [dis- + sentiō], 4, *differ, disagree, dissent; be at odds, quarrel.*

dissideō, -sidere, -sēdī, -sessus, [dis- + sedeō], 2, *sit apart; be at variance, differ.*

dissipō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 1, *scatter, disperse.*

dissolvō, -solvere, -solvī, -solūtus, [dis- + solvō], 3, *disunite, destroy; abolish, annul.*

distineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentus, [dis- + teneō], 2, *keep apart, hold apart, separate; hinder, delay.*

distribuō, -ere, distribuī, distribūtus, [dis- + tribuō], 3, *divide, distribute, apportion, spread.*

districtus, -a, -um, [part. of **distringō**], adj., *drawn in opposite ways, hesitating; harassed, distracted, busy.*

distringō, -stringere, -strinxī, -strictus, [dī- + stringō], 3, *draw asunder; keep busy, engage.*

dītissimus, see **dīves**.

dīū, comp. **dīūtius**, sup. **dīūtissimē**, adv., *by day, all day; long, for a long time. quam dīū, as long as.*

dīurnus, -a, -um, [cf. **dīēs**], adj., *of the day, by day.*

dīūtinus, -a, -um, [dīū], adj., *of long duration, lasting, long.*

dīūturnitās, -ātis, [dīūturnus], f., *length of time, long duration.*

dīūturnus, -a, -um, comp. -ior [dīū], adj., *long, prolonged, long continued.*

diversus, -a, -um, sup. **diversissimus**, [part. of **dīvertō**], adj., *opposite, contrary; separate, apart; in different directions, different. in diversa, apart, asunder.*

dīvertō, -ere, -tī, -sus, [dis- + vertō], 3, *go different ways, separate.*

dīves, -itis, comp. **dītior**, sup. **dītissimus**, adj., *rich, wealthy.*

Dīviciācus, -ī, [Kel. *Deiviciācos*, from *deivos*, 'god'], m.:

- (1) An Aeduan of great influence, loyal to Caesar, who at his intercession pardoned Dumnorix, his brother, leader of the Aeduan national party which was hostile to Rome and the Bellovaci. Cf. n. to p. 125, l. 20.

- (2) A chief of the Suessiones.

Dīvicō, -ōnis, [Kel., from *deivos*, 'god'], m., leader of the Helvetii in their war with Cassius, 107 B.C., and head of an embassy to Caesar, 58 B.C.

dīvidō, -videre, -vīsī, -vīsus, 3, *separate, divide, force asunder, part; distribute, share.*

dīvīnus, -a, -um, [dīvus], adj., *of a god, godlike, divine; divinely inspired, prophetic.*

divitiae, -ārum, [dīves], f., pl., *riches, wealth*.

divum, -ī, [dīvus], n., *the sky*.
Only with sub in sub dīvō, *under the sky, in the open air*.

dīvus, -a, -um, adj., *of a deity, godlike; deified, sainted*, a term applied to Julius Caesar, and to many of the Roman emperors, after death.

dō, dare, dedī, datus, irr., *give, give up, give over, grant, confer; hand over, surrender; offer, furnish, allow*. poenās dare, *to suffer punishment*. negōtium dare, *to commission, direct*. in fugam dare, *to put to flight*.

doceō, docēre, docuī, doctus, 2, *teach; inform; point out, state; show, tell*.

doctor, -ōris, [doceō], m., *teacher, instructor*.

doctrīna, -ae, [doceō], f., *teaching, instruction; learning*.

doctus, -a, -um, comp. doctior, sup. doctissimus, [part. of doceō], adj., *learned, skilled, experienced*.

doleō, dolēre, dolui, dolitūrus, 2, *suffer; be grieved, be annoyed*.

dolor, -ōris, [doleō], m., *pain, suffering; grief, distress, vexation*.

dolus, -ī, m., *device; cunning, fraud, deceit*.

domesticus, -a, -um, [domus], adj., *of the house; of the family, private, domestic; home, native, internal, their own; at home, in one's own country*.

domicilium, -ī, [domus], n., *habitation, dwelling; dwelling-place*.

domina, -ae, f., *mistress*.

dominātiō, -ōnis, [dominor], f., *rule, dominion, supremacy, despotism*.

dominātus, -ūs, [dominor], m., *rule, command, mastery*.

dominor, -ārī, -ātus sum, [dominus], 1, dep., *be lord, rule, have dominion*.

dominus, -ī, [domō], m., *master, ruler, lord; of a ship, captain*.

domō, -āre, domuī, domitus, 1, *domesticate; tame, subdue, master*.

domus, -ūs, f., *house, dwelling, home*. Loc. domī, *at home*. Acc. domum, *homewards, home, to the house*. Abl. domō, *from home, from the house*.

dōnātivum, -ī, [dōnō], n., *largess, gift, distribution of money*.

dōnec, conj., *as long as, while, until*.

dōnicum, conj., *while, until*.

dōnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [dōnum], 1, *give as a present, present, bestow; endow, gift*.

dōnum, -ī, n., *gift, present, reward*.

dorsum, -ī, n., *back of a beast of burden; range, ridge, cliff*.

Dubis, -is, [Kel., = 'the Black'], m., *a river of Gaul, tributary of the Arar (Saône); now the Doubs*. See map opp. p. 114.

dubitātiō, -ōnis, [dubitō], f., *doubt, hesitation*.

dubitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [dubius], 1, *be uncertain, doubt; hesitate, delay; deliberate*.

dubius, -a, -um, adj., *doubtful, uncertain; critical*. nōn est dubium quīn, *there is no doubt that*. sine dubiō, *without doubt, certainly*.

ducentī, -ae, -a, [duo + centum], adj., *two hundred*.

dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus, 3, *lead, guide, conduct, bring, take; of a trench, make; protract, prolong*.

put off; think, consider, reckon.
uxōrem dūcere, in **mātrīmōnium**
dūcere, and sometimes **dūcere**
 alone, *to marry*.

ductus, -ūs, [dūcō], m., *lead, generalship, command.*

Duilius, -ī, m., *Duilius*, the family name of C. Duilius, the conqueror of the Carthaginians in the famous sea-fight off Mylae in 260 B.C.

dulcis, -e, comp. **dulcior**, sup. **dulcissimus**, adj., *sweet; agreeable, pleasant.*

dum, conj., *while, as long as; until; provided, if only.*

dum modo, [dum + modo], conj., *provided, if only.*

Dumnorix, -īgis, [Kel., = 'Great King'], m., an Aeduan, brother of Diviciacus, and son-in-law of Orgetorix; a bitter enemy of Caesar, and apparently leader of the Aeduan anti-Roman party, until slain by Caesar's orders while trying to escape from him, 54 B.C.

duo, -ae, -o, acc. m., **duo**, adj., *two; both.*

duodecim, or **xii**, [duo, + decem], indecl. num., *twelve.*

duodecimus, -a, -um, [duodecim], num. adj., *twelfth.*

duodēni, -ae, -a, [cf. duodecim], distrib. num. adj., *twelve at a time, twelve each, by twelves.*

duodēquadrāgēsīmus, -a, -um, [duo + dē + quadrāgēsīmus], num. adj., *the thirty-eighth.*

duodēseptuāgintā, or **lxviii**, [duo + dē + septuāgintā], indecl. num. adj., *sixty-eight.*

duodēviginti, -ae, -a, or **xviii**, [duo + dē + viginti], adj., *eighteen.*

duplex, -icis, [duo, cf. plicō, fold], adj., *twofold, double.*

dūrus, -a, -um, adj., *hard, severe, difficult; rough, rude, uncultivated; pitiless, unfeeling, cruel.*

dux, ducis, [cf. dūcō], m., *leader, conductor, guide; commander, general.*

Dyrrachium, -ī, n., *Dyrrachium*, formerly called *Epidamnus*, a town in Illyria, nearly opposite Brundisium. See map, frontispiece.

E.

ē, prep., see **ex**.

eā, [abl. f. of **is**; sc. **viā**], adv., *on that side, there.*

Eburōnēs, -um, [Kel., from Eburōs, a proper name], m., pl., a Belgic people north of the Treveri, of whom they were clients. In 54 B.C. they destroyed a detachment of Caesar's army under Sabinus and Cotta, and were in consequence almost entirely exterminated by him. See map opp. p. 114.

ecquid, inter. adv., *at all?* merely emphasizing the question, and often not translated in words.

ēdictus, -ī, [ēdicō], n., *proclamation, edict.*

ēditus, -a, -um, [part. of ēdō], adj., *elevated, high, lofty.*

ēdō, ēdere, ēdidi, ēditus, [ē + dō], 3, *give out, give, put forth, exhibit; give birth to, bear; publish, announce; perform, perpetrate, cause, inflict.*

ēducō, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductus, [ē + dūcō], 3, *lead forth, lead out; bring up, rear.*

ēducō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [ē, cf.

- dūcō**, 1, bring up, rear, train, educate.
- effēminō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ex + fēmina], 1, make womanish, weaken, enervate.
- offerō**, offerre, extulī, ēlātus, [ex + ferō], irr., carry out, take away; spread abroad, publish; carry out for burial, bury; raise, lift; laud, praise, extol; elate.
- efficiō**, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus, [ex + faciō], 3, work out; bring to pass; make, cause, effect, accomplish; make, render; build, construct.
- efflō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ex + flō], 1, blow out, breathe out.
- efflagitō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ex + flāgitō], 1, demand earnestly, solicit, insist on.
- effugiō**, -fugere, -fūgī, —, [ex + fugiō], 3, flee away, escape; avoid, shun.
- effundō**, -fundere, -fūdī, -fusus, [ex + fundō], 3, pour out, shed; pour forth, spread, spread abroad; throng; squander, lavish, waste.
- effusus**, -a, -um, [part. of effundō], adj., poured out; unrestrained, lavish.
- Ēgeria**, -ae, f., *Ēgeria*, one of the *Camēnae*, or Muses, from whom, according to the legend, Numa received counsel.
- ēgī**, see agō.
- ego**, mei, personal pron., I; pl. nōs, nostrum, nōbīs, we.
- ēgredior**, -gredi, -gressus, [ex + gradior, step], 3, dep., go out, go forth, come forth, leave; from a ship, land, disembark.
- ēgregiē**, [ēgregius], adv., remarkably well, admirably, splendidly.
- ēgregius**, -a, -um, [ex + greg, herd, crowd], adj., eminent, marked, distinguished, excellent.
- ēgressus**, see ēgredior.
- ēiciō**, ēicere, ēiēcī, ēiectus, [ē + iaciō], 3, cast out; drive out, expel; cast ashore.
- ēlābor**, ēlābi, ēlāpsus sum, [ē + lābor], 3, dep., slip away, glide off; escape.
- ēlabōrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ē + labōrō], 1, labor, endeavor; work out.
- ēlātē**, comp. ēlātius, sup. ēlātissimē, [ēlātus], adv., loftily, proudly.
- ēlātus**, see offerō.
- ēlātus**, -a, -um, [part. of offerō], adj., exalted, lofty, high; elated.
- ēlēctus**, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, [part. of ēligō], adj., chosen, picked.
- ēlegantia**, -ae, [ēlegāns], f., taste, propriety, grace, elegance.
- elephantus**, -ī, nom. sing. usually elephās or elephāns, [-antis], m., elephant.
- ēligō**, ēligere, ēlēgī, ēlēctus, [ē + legō], 3, pick out; choose, select.
- ēloquentia**, -ae, [ēloquēns], f., eloquence.
- ēlūceō**, -lūcēre, -lūxī, —, [ē + lūceō], 2, shine out, shine forth; be apparent, be conspicuous, be manifest.
- ēmendō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ē + mendum, fault], 1, free from faults, correct; atone for, compensate for.
- ēmigrō**, -āre, āvī, —, [ex + migrō, depart], 1, go forth to remain, remove, emigrate.
- ēmineō**, -minēre, -minuī, —, 2, stand out, project; be prominent, be conspicuous.

ēminus, [ē + manus], adv., *beyond reach, aloof, at a distance; from afar.*

ēmīttō, ēmittere, ēmīsī, ēmissus, [ē + mittō], 3, *send out, send forth; drive, hurl, shoot, discharge; let loose, set free; let escape, lose; throw away, let go; give utterance to.*

emō, emere, ēmī, ēemptus, 3, *buy, purchase; acquire, obtain.*

ēnāscor, -nāscī, -nātus, [ex + nāscor], 3, dep., *grow out; of branches, shoot out.*

enim [nam], conj., postpositive, *for, for in fact; and in fact. neque enim, and (with good reason) for . . . not, for in fact . . . not.*

ēnītor, ēnītī, ēnīxus or ēnīsus sum [ē + nītor], 3, dep., *force a way up, mount; make an effort, strive.*

Ennius, -ī, m., *Ennius*, gentile name of Q. *Ennius*, the famous epic and dramatic poet; he lived from 239 to 169 B.C.

ēnumerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ē + numerō], 1, *reckon up, count over; recite, relate, detail, describe.*

ēnūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ē + nūntiō], 1, *speak out, say, assert; disclose, reveal, report.*

eō, ire, ivī or ii, itus, irr., *go; walk, ride, march, move, advance. infitiās ire, to deny. obviam ire, go to meet.*

eō, [cf. is], adv., *on that account; to that place, thither; to that degree, so far.*

eōdem, [cf. idem], adv., *in the same place; to the same place; to the same purpose; thereto, besides.*

Epaminōndās, -ae, [Ἐπαμεινώνδας],

m., *Epaminondas*, the celebrated Theban general and statesman.

ephēbus, -ī, [ἔφηβος], m., *a youth*, strictly a Greek youth from sixteen to twenty years of age, *ephebus*.

Ephesus, -ī, [Ἐφεσος], f., *Ephesus*, a celebrated Ionian city on the western coast of Asia Minor, celebrated for its magnificent temple of Artemis (Diana). See map opp. p. 93.

ephorus, -ī, [ἑφορος], m., *ephor*, one of a board of five magistrates at Sparta. They were chosen by lot, and the first chosen, or chief ephor, gave his name to the year. Besides certain judicial functions, they exercised a censorship over all the other magistrates, including even the kings. They gradually became the real heads of the state, and brought the kings completely under their authority.

epigramma, -atis, [ἐπίγραμμα], n., *inscription; epigram, poem.*

Ēpīrus, -ī, [Ἠπειρος], m., *Epirus*, a country northwest of Greece and west of Thessaly. See map opp. p. 75.

epistula or **epistola**, -ae, [ἐπιστολή], f., *letter, epistle.*

epulor, -ārī, -ātus sum, [epulum], 1, dep., *feast, banquet, dine.*

eques, -itis, m., *horseman, rider; cavalryman, trooper; knight, member of the equestrian order.*

equester, -tris, -tre, [eques], adj., *of a horseman, equestrian; of cavalry, cavalry-; of the knights.*

equitātus, -ūs, [equitō, ride], m., *cavalry.*

equitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [eques], 1, *ride.*

equus, -ī, m., *horse, steed*.

ēreptus, see **ēripiō**.

Eretria, -ae, [Ἐρέτρια], f., *Eretria*, a city of Euboea. See map opp. p. 75.

Eretriēnsis, -e, adj., *of Eretria, Eretrian*. Assubst., **Eretriēnsis**, -is, m., *inhabitant of Eretria, Eretrian*.

ergā, prep. with acc., *towards, to, with respect to*.

ergō, adv., *consequently, therefore*. With preceding gen., *in consequence of, on account of*.

ērigō, ērigere, ērēxi, ērēctus, [ē + regō], 3, *raise up, erect; rouse, stir up*.

ēripiō, -ripere, -ripiui, -reptus, [ex + rapiō, *seize*], 3, *take away, snatch away; wrest, take away; remove; deprive; rescue, save*. sē ēripere, *to rescue oneself, make one's escape*.

error, -ōris, [cf. **errō**], m., *wandering, straying; error, mistake*.

ērubescō, ērubescere, ērubui, —, 3, incl., *grow red, blush; feel ashamed*.

ērudīō, -ire, -īvi, -ītus, [ē, **rudis**], 4, *polish; educate, instruct, teach*.

ērumpō, ērumpere, ērūpi, ēruptus, [ē + rumpō], 3, *cause to break out; break out, burst forth*.

ēruō, ēruere, ēruī, ērutus, [ē + ruō], 3, *cast forth, throw out; dig up; destroy utterly*.

ēruptiō, -ōnis, [cf. **ērumpō**], f., *bursting forth; sally*.

Eryx, Erycis, [Ἐρυξ], f., *Eryx*, a high mountain in the northwestern part of Sicily; famous for a temple of Venus on it. See map opp. p. 30.

ēscendō, -scendere, -scendi, -scēn-

sus, [ē + scandō], 3, *climb up, mount, ascend, embark*.

ēasca, -ae, f., *food, bait*.

Esuvii, -ōrum, [Kel., from *Esus*, the Gallic Mars; 'Sons of Esus'], m., pl., a Gallic people, between the Carnutes and the Lexovii. See map opp. p. 114.

et, adv. and conj.:

(1) *As adv., also, too, even*.

(2) *As conj., and; and yet, but*. et . . . et, *both . . . and*.

etiam, [et + iam], adv. and conj., *and also, also, even*. etiam tum, *even then*. etiamnum, *still, even yet*. nōn solum . . . sed etiam, *not only . . . but also*.

Etrūria, -ae, f., *Etruria*, a country in Italy, northwest of Rome; modern Tuscany. See map opp. p. 30.

Etrūscī, -ōrum, m., pl., *the Etruscans, Tuscans, the inhabitants of Etruria*.

etāi, [et + si], conj., *although, even if, and yet*.

Euboea, -ae, [Εὐβοία], f., *Euboea*, a large island off the eastern shore of Boeotia. See map opp. p. 75.

Eumenēs, -is, [Εὐμένης], m., *Eumenes*, referring to:

(1) *Eumenes of Cardia, one of Alexander's generals*.

(2) *Eumenes II*, king of Pergamum in Asia Minor from 197 to 158 B.C.

Euripidēs, -is, m., *Euripides*, a great tragic poet of Athens, born 480 B.C., died 406.

Eurōpa, -ae, f., *Europe*.

Eurybiadēs, -is, [Εὐρυβιάδης], m., *Eurybiades*, a Spartan admiral, commander of the Lacedaemonian fleet at Salamis.

ēvādō, *ēvādere*, *ēvāsī*, *ēvāsus*, [ē + vādō], 3, *go away, go forth; get away, escape; turn out, come to be, become.*

ēvellō, *-vellere*, *-vellī*, *-vulsus*, [ex + vellō, *pluck*], 3, *pull out.*

ēventus, *-ūs*, [cf. *ēveniō*], m., *outcome, issue, result; chance, fortune; fate, accident.*

ēversus, see *ēvertō*.

ēvertō, *ēvertere*, *ēverti*, *ēversus*, [ē + vertō], 3, *overturn, overthrow; destroy, ruin.*

ēvocō, *-āre*, *-āvī*, *-ātus*, [ē + vocō], 1, *call out, call forth, summon, evoke.*

ēvolō, *-āre*, *-āvī*, *-ātus*, 1, *fly out, fly away, fly up.*

ex, often before consonants ē, prep. with abl., *out of, out from; of place, from, out of, down from; of time, from, since, after; of source and material, from, of; of partition, of, out of, from among; of transition, from, out of; of cause, from, by reason of, by, in consequence of; of measure and correspondence, according to, with, in, by, on.* **ex ūnā parte**, *on one side.*

In composition **ex** becomes *ef* before *f*, *ē* before *b, d, g, i* consonant, *l, m, n*, and *v*.

exāctus, see *exigō*.

exacuō, *-acuere*, *-acuī*, *-acūtus*, [ex + acuō], 3, *sharpen, excite, inflame.*

exadversum, [ex + *adversum*], adv. and prep. with acc., *opposite, over against.*

exagitō, *-āre*, *-āvī*, *-ātus*, [ex + agitō], 1, *rouse, keep in motion, harass, persecute; irritate, excite.*

exanimō, *-āre*, *-āvī*, *-ātus*, [ex-

animus, from **ex** + *anima*, *breath*], 1, *put out of breath, deprive of life, kill.* Pass., *be weakened, be exhausted, be out of breath.*

exārdescō, *-ere*, *exārsī*, *exārsus*, [ex + *ārdescō*], 3, *inch., blaze out; break out; be provoked, rage.*

exarō, *-āre*, *-āvī*, *-ātus*, [ex + arō], 1, *plough out; raise; compose.*

exasperō, *-āre*, *-āvī*, *-ātus*, [ex, *asper*], 1, *make rough; irritate, provoke, exasperate.*

exaudiō, *-īre*, *-īvī*, *-ītus*, [ex + *audiō*], 4, *hear clearly, distinguish; discern, hear.*

excēdō, *-cēdere*, *-cessī*, *-cessus*, [ex + *cēdō*], 3, *go out, go forth, depart, withdraw; go beyond, surpass.*

excellēns, *-entis*, comp. *excellēntior*, sup. *excellēntissimus*, [part. of *excellō*], adj., *towering, prominent; distinguished, surpassing, excellent.*

excellō, *-cellere*, —, *-celsus*, 3, *be eminent, surpass, excel.*

excelsus, *-a*, *-um*, adj., *lofty, elevated, high; distinguished, noble.* As subst., *excelsus*, *-ī*, n., *an elevated station, height.*

exceptus, see *excipiō*.

excerpō, *-ere*, *excerpsī*, *excerptus*, [ex + *carpō*], 3, *pluck out, extract; choose, select.*

excidium, *-ī*, n., *overthrow; ruin, destruction.*

excitō and **excitō**, *-cīre*, *-cīvī*, *-cītus* or *-cītus*, [ex + *ciō*], 4, *call out, summon; rouse, excite.*

excipiō, *-cipere*, *-cēpī*, *-ceptus*, [ex + *capiō*], 3, *take out, withdraw; take up; take in; cut off, catch;*

receive; withstand; capture, take; encounter; take the place of, succeed, follow.

excitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [freq. of **excīō**], 1, call forth, bring forth; rouse, excite.

exclāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ex + **clāmō**], 1, call out, cry aloud, exclaim.

exclūdō, -ere, **exclūsī**, **exclūsus**, [ex + **claudō**], 3, shut out, exclude; hinder, prevent.

excōgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ex + **cōgitō**], 1, think out, contrive, invent.

excolō, -colere, -coluī, -cultus, [ex + **colō**], 3, cultivate, improve; enoble, refine.

excubiae, -ārum, [ex + **cubō**], f., pl., lying out on guard, watching; watch, watchman.

excursiō, -ōnis, [ex, cf. **currō**], f., a running out; sally, sortie, expedition.

excūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ex, **causa**], 1, excuse, make excuse for.

exemplum, -ī, n., specimen, copy, example, precedent. **bonī exemplī servi**, slaves of high character.

exeō, -īre, -iī, -itus, [ex + **eō**], irr., go out, go away, go forth, retire; march out; withdraw, leave; pass away, perish; turn out, result, become public.

exerceō, -ercēre, -ercuī, -ercitus, [ex + **arceō**], 2, drive, keep busy; exercise, employ, drill, train; follow out, carry into effect, administer.

exercitātiō, -ōnis, [**exercitō**], f., practice, exercise, training, discipline.

exercitātus, -a, -um, comp. **exercitātior**, sup. **exercitātissimus**, [**exercitō**, freq. of **exerceō**], adj., well exercised, trained, disciplined.

exercitus, -ūs, [**exerceō**], m., disciplined body of men, army.

exhauriō, -īre, **exhausī**, **exhaustus**, [ex + **hauriō**], 4, draw out, empty, exhaust; impoverish; bring to an end.

exhērēdō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 1, disinherit.

exhibeō, -ēre, **exhibuī**, **exhibitus**, [ex + **habeō**], 2, hold forth, present; show, display, exhibit.

exhorrēscō, -ere, **exhorruī**, —, [ex + **horrēscō**], 3, inch., tremble, shudder, be afraid, shrink from.

exigō, -igere, -ēgi, -āctus, [ex + **agō**], 3, drive out, expel; finish; pass, spend; consider.

exiguus, -a, -um, adj., scanty, small, short, brief; poor.

exiguitās, -ātis, [**exiguus**], f., smallness; scantness; small number, fewness; shortness.

eximius, -a, -um, [cf. **eximō**], adj., taken out; select, choice; distinguished, excellent, remarkable.

eximō, -imere, -ēmi, -ēemptus, [ex + **emō**], 3, take out, remove; free, release, deliver.

existimātiō, -ōnis, [**existimō**], f., opinion, judgment; reputation, good name.

existimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ex + **aestimō**], 1, value, estimate; esteem, appreciate; suppose, think.

exitus, -ūs, [**exeō**], m., going out, departure; outlet, passage; close, conclusion, result; end of life, death.

exitium, -ī, [**exeō**], n., destruction, ruin, mischief, death.

exorior, -oriri, -ortus sum, [ex + orior], 4, dep., come forth, rise, appear; begin.

exōrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [ex + ōrō], 1, prevail upon, persuade by entreaty, induce.

expediō, -īre, -īvi, -ītus, [ex, pēs], 4, disengage, let loose, set free; prepare, procure; be serviceable, be advantageous, be expedient.

expeditus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, [part. of expediō], adj., unincumbered, unfettered, light-armed; ready, easy, unembarrassed. **legiōnēs expeditae**, legions without baggage. As subst., **expeditus**, -ī, m., light-armed soldier.

expellō, -pellere, -puli, -pulsus, [ex + pellō], 3, drive out, drive away, remove, expel.

experior, -periri, -pertus sum, 4, dep., try, prove, test; experience, know by experience; find; try, attempt, make trial of.

explicō, -plicāre, -plicāvi or -plicui, -plicātus or -plicitus, [ex + plicō], 1, unfold; spread out, extend, deploy; disclose, display; set forth, explain.

explōrātor, -ōris, [explōrō], m., spy, scout.

explōrātus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, [part. of explōrō], adj., established, certain, settled, sure.

explōrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 1, search out, investigate, explore; spy out, reconnoitre; try, test.

expōnō, -ere, exposui, expositus, [ex + pōnō], 3, set forth, exhibit; land, disembark; abandon, expose; set forth, relate, explain.

exposcō, -poscere, -poposci, —,

[ex + poscō], 3, ask urgently, request, demand.

expulsus, see **expellō**.

exprimō, -ere, expressi, expressus, [ex + premō], 3, press out, force out; wrest, elicit, extort; utter, express, portray, model, form.

exprobrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [ex + probrum], 1, reproach with, blame for, charge, upbraid.

expūgnātiō, -ōnis, [expūgnō], f., taking by storm, storming; winning over by entreaties.

expūgnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [ex + pūgnō], 1, take by storm, capture; overcome.

exquirō, -quirere, -quisivi, -quisitus, [ex + quaerō, seek], 3, seek out, search out; ask for, inquire into.

exquisitus, see **exquirō**.

exsequor, -sequi, -secutus, [ex + sequor], 3, dep., follow up, maintain, enforce.

exculpō, -sculpere, -sculpsi, exsculptus, [ex + sculpō], 3, dig out, cut out; erase.

exsilium, -i, [exsul], n., exile, banishment.

existō, -sistere, -stiti, —, [ex + sistō], 3, step out, come forth; arise, become, come to be; exist, be.

expectō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [ex + spectō], 1, look out for, wait to see, wait for, await; look to see, expect.

exsplendescō, -splendescere, -splendui, —, [ex + splendescō], 3, inch., shine forth, be distinguished.

exstinguō, -stinguere, -stinxi, exstinctus, [ex + stinguō, quench],

3, put out, extinguish; abolish, annul, blot out; kill, destroy.

exstiti, see **existō**.

exstō, -stāre, —, —, [ex + stō], 1, stand out, stand forth; exist, be.

exstruō, -ere, -extrūxī, extrūctus, [ex + struō], 3, pile up, heap up, build.

exsul, **exsulis**, [ex, cf. **salio**], m., exile, wanderer.

externus, -a, -um, [exter], adj., outward, external; of another country, foreign.

exter or **exterus**, -a, -um, comp. **exterior**, sup. **extrēmus**, [ex], adj., outward, outer, foreign. Comp. **exterior**, -us, outer, exterior. Sup. **extrēmus**, last, last part of, at the end; extreme, uttermost. As subst., **extrēmī**, -ōrum, m., pl., the rear.

exter or **exterus**, -tera, -terum, [ex], used only in the pl., adj., on the outside, foreign.

extimēscō, -timēscere, -timui, —, [ex + timēscō], 3, inch., be greatly terrified; fear greatly, await with fear, dread.

extrā, [exter], adv. and prep.:

(1) As adv., on the outside, without.

(2) As prep. with acc., outside of, beyond, except.

extrahō, -ere, extrāxī, extrāctus, [ex + trahō], 3, draw out, pull out; protract, prolong.

extrēmō, [extrēmus], adv., at last, finally.

extrēmus, -a, -um, see **exter**.

exuō, -uere, -ui, -ūtus, 3, a., draw out, pull off; strip, despoil.

exūrō, -ūrere, -ussī, -ūstus, [ex + ūrō], 3, burn up.

F

Fabius, -ī, m., the name of a distinguished Roman gens, in this book refers to:

(1) *Q. Fabius Rullianus*.

(2) *Q. Fabius Maximus*.

(3) *Quintus Fabius Maximus*, called *Allobrogicus* in honor of his victory over the Allobroges, Arverni, and Ruteni in the year of his consulship, 121 B.C.; he celebrated a splendid triumph, and erected a triumphal arch in Rome across the Via Sacra near the temple of Vesta.

Fabricius, -ī, m., *Fabricius*, gentile name of *C. Fabricius Luscinius*.

fabricō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [cf. **faber**], 1, make, build, construct. **fābula**, -ae, [cf. **for**, **speak**], f., narration, story; play; fable.

facētē, [facētus], adv., wittily.

facētus, -a, -um, adj., witty, humorous.

facile, comp. **facilius**, sup. **facillimē**, [facilis], adv., easily, readily, with no trouble.

facilis, -e, comp. **facilior**, sup. **facillimus**, [cf. **faciō**], adj., easy, convenient, not difficult, not hard.

facinus, -oris, [cf. **faciō**], n., action, deed; misdeed, crime. **facinus** **admittere** or **in sē admittere**, to become guilty of (a) crime.

faciō, **facere**, **fēcī**, **factus**, 3, make; do, perform, accomplish, form; bring about, cause; incur, suffer; act, conduct one's self; choose, appoint; grant, furnish, give. For pass., **fiō**, **fierī**, **factus sum**, see **fiō**. **verba facere**, to speak. **certiōrem facere**, to inform. **iter facere**, to march. **vim fa-**

cere, to use violence. **imperāta facere**, to obey commands. **frūmentī cōpiam facere**, to furnish a supply of grain. **stipendia facere**, see **stipendium**.

factiō, -ōnis, [faciō], f., party, side, political party.

factū, pass. supine of **faciō**.

factum, -ī, [faciō], n., lit. what is done; deed, action, achievement.

factus, see **faciō** and **fiō**.

facultās, -ātis, [facilis], f., ability, capability; opportunity, chance; abundance, supply, store; pl., resources.

fācundia, -ae, [fācundus], f., eloquence, fluency.

Falērii, -ōrum, m., *Falērū*, the capital city of the Falisci, situated in southern Etruria. See map, frontispiece.

Falernus, -a, -um, adj., *Falernian*, of the *Ager Falernus*, a district in Campania famous for its wine.

Faliscus, -a, -um, [Falērii], adj., of or belonging to *Falērū*. As subst., **Faliscus**, -ī, m., an inhabitant of *Falērū*, a *Faliscan*.

fallō, fallere, fefelli, falsus, 3, trip, cause to fall; deceive, cheat; fail, disappoint.

falsus, -a, -um, [part. of fallō], adj., feigned, false, pretended.

fāma, -ae, [cf. for, speak], f., report, rumor, tradition; public opinion, fame, reputation.

famēs, -is, f., hunger; famine, want.

familia, -ae, [famulus, servant], f., body of slaves in one household, family servants; estate; household, family; including the whole body of serfs and retainers under the authority of a noble-

man, retinue. **mātrēs familiae**, matrons.

familiāris, -e, [familia], adj., of a house or household; familiar, intimate. **rēs familiāris**, private property, estate. As subst., **familiāris**, -is, m., friend, intimate acquaintance.

familiāritās, -tātis, [familiāris], f., familiarity, intimacy, friendship.

fāmōsus, -a, -um, [fāma], adj., much talked of, famed, renowned; slanderous, scandalous.

famula, -ae, f., [famulus, servant], f., maid-servant, handmaid.

fānum, -ī, [cf. for, speak], n., shrine, sanctuary, temple.

fās, only nom. and acc. sing. in use, [cf. fāri, to speak], indecl., n., right, allowable, lawful, according to the laws of God and nature.

fascis, -is, m., bundle, fagot; pl., the *fascēs*, a bundle of rods tied about an axe, carried before the highest Roman magistrates as a symbol of authority.

fāsti, -ōrum, [fāstus, sc. diēs], m., register of court days, calendar, annals.

fastigātus, -a, -um, [cf. fastigium], adj., sloping, sloping down.

fātālis, -e, [fātum], adj., of fate, fated; fatal; deadly, destructive.

fātum, -ī, [cf. fāri, to speak], n., what is declared, ordained in accordance with the laws of God and nature; fate, destiny.

faucēs, -ium, f., pl., throat; narrow way, pass.

Faustulus, -ī, [dim. of faustus], m., *Faustulus*, name of the shepherd who found and reared *Romulus* and *Remus*.

faveō, *favēre*, *fāvī*, fut. part. *fautūrus*, 2, *be favorable, favor, be propitious.*

favor, *-ōris*, [*faveō*], m., *favor, good-will.*

fēlicitās, *-ātis*, [*fēlix*, *happy*], f., *happiness, good fortune; success.*

fēliciter, comp. *fēlicius*, sup. *fēlicissimē*, [*fēlix*], adv., *with good fortune, luckily, happily; successfully.*

fēmina, *-ae*, f., *female, woman.*

fera, *-ae*, f., [*ferus*], *wild beast, wild animal.*

ferāx, *-ācis*, comp. *ferācior*, sup. *ferācissimus*, [*ferō*], adj., *fertile, productive.*

ferē, adv., *almost, nearly; with words denoting time, about; for the most part, as a rule, usually, generally.*

ferō, *ferre*, *tulī*, *lātus*, irr., *bear, carry, bring; lead, drive; prompt, impel, urge; bring forth, produce; endure, support, suffer, hold out against; bear away, obtain, receive; assert, report, say, permit; move, propose; demand, require; pass., be borne, rush. signa ferre, to advance. lēgem ferre, to pass a law.*

ferōcia, *-ae*, [*ferōx*], f., *wildness, fierceness, bravery, courage.*

ferōx, *-ōcis*, comp. *ferōcior*, sup. *ferōcissimus*, [cf. *ferus*], adj., *wild, bold; confident, high-spirited; courageous, warlike.*

ferreus, *-a, -um*, [*ferrum*], adj., *made of iron, iron; hard, cruel; firm, enduring.*

ferrum, *-ī*, n., *iron; figuratively, iron point, sword.*

fertilitās, *-ātis*, [*fertilis*], f., *fertility, productiveness.*

ferus, *-a, -um*, adj., *wild, untamed; uncultivated; waste, desolate; rude, savage, barbarous.*

festinō, *-āre*, *-āvī*, *-ātus*, 1, *hasten, make haste; do speedily.*

fēstum, *-ī*, n., *holiday, festival.*

fictilis, *-e*, [*figō*], adj., *of clay, earthen.*

fidēlis, *-e*, comp. *fidēlior*, sup. *fidēlissimus*, [*fidēs*], adj., *faithful, trustworthy.*

fidēliter, [*fidēlis*], adv., *faithfully.*

fidēs, *-ei*, f., *trust, credence, belief; good faith, fidelity, loyalty; pledge of good faith, promise; in business, credit; confidence, trust; protection, alliance.*

fidēs, *-entis*, [part of *fidō*], adj., *confident, courageous, bold.*

fidūcia, *-ae*, [*fidus*], f., *trust, confidence, reliance; self-confidence, courage, boldness.*

filia, *-ae*, f., *daughter.*

filius, *-ī*, m., *son.*

figō, *ingere*, *fīnxī*, *fīctus*, 3, *form, shape; conceive, imagine, think of; invent, devise; of the features, change, control.*

finiō, *finire*, *finīvī*, *finitus*, [*finis*], 4, *limit, bound, define; end; finish.*

finis, *-is*, m., *limit, border, boundary, end, degree, extent; purpose, object. Pl., borders, hence territory, country, land.*

finitimus, *-a, -um*, [*finis*], adj., *bordering on, neighboring, adjoining. As subst., finitimī, -ōrum*, m., pl., *neighbors, neighboring peoples.*

fīō, *fieri*, *factus*, irr., used as pass. of *faciō*, *be made, be done; become, take place, happen; come about, come to pass. certior fieri, to be informed.*

firmē, comp. *firminus*, sup. *firmisimē*, [*firmus*], adv., *firmly, strongly*.

firmitās, -ātis, [*firmus*], f., *firmness, durability, strength, vigor; endurance, constancy*.

firmus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, adj., *strong, firm; steadfast, powerful*.

Flaccus, -ī, m., see *Valerius*.

flāgitiosus, -a, -um, [*flāgitium*], adj., *shameful, disgraceful*.

flāgitium, -ī, n., *disgraceful deed, outrage; shame, disgrace*.

flāgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 1, *demand urgently, require, solicit*.

flagrō, -āre, -āvī, *flagrātūrus*, 1, *blaze, burn; be inflamed, be excited, be stirred; be afflicted, suffer*.

Flāminius, -ī, m., *Flamininus*, family name of:

(1) *T. Quinctius*, who was sent against the Gauls in 360 B.C.

(2) *C. Quinctius Flāminius*, consul in 192 B.C.

(3) *T. Quinctius Flāminius*, the conqueror of Philip, king of Macedon, in 197 B.C.

Flāminius, -ī, m., *Flāminius*, gentile name of *C. Flāminius*, defeated and slain by Hannibal at Lake Trasimenus in 217 B.C.

flamma, -ae, f., *blazing fire, blaze, flame*.

flectō, *flectere*, *flexī*, *flexus*, 3, *bend, turn; persuade, influence*.

fleō, *flere*, *flēvi*, *flētus*, 2, *weep; weep for, bewail*.

flētus, -ūs, [*flēō*], m., *weeping, wailing*.

flōrēns, -ntis, comp. *flōrentior*, sup. *flōrentissimus*, [part. of *flōreō*, bloom], adj., *blooming, flourishing, prosperous; influential*.

flōreō, *flōrere*, *flōrui*, —, [*flōs*, flower], 2, *bloom, blossom; flourish, be prosperous, be successful; be eminent, be distinguished*.

fluctus, -ūs, [cf. *fluō*], m., *flood, tide, wave, billow; commotion*.

flūmen, -inis, [cf. *fluō*], n., *flowing stream, river*.

fluō, *fluere*, *fluxī*, *fluxus*, 3, *flow*.

fluvius, -ī, [cf. *fluō*] m., *river, stream*.

foedē, [*foedus*], adv., *foully, basely*.

foederātus, -a, -um, [cf. *foedus*], dj., *leagued, allied*.

foedus, -eris, [cf. *fidō*], n., *league, treaty; agreement*.

fore = *futūrum esse*; see *sum*.

forem = *essem*; see *sum*.

foris, -is, f., *door, gate*; pl., *folding-door, entrance*.

fōrma, -ae, f., *form, shape, figure, appearance, looks; beauty*.

fōrmōsitās, -ātis, [*fōrmōsus*], f., *beauty*.

fōrmōsus, -a, -um, comp. *fōrmōsior*, sup. *fōrmōsissimus*, [*fōrma*], adj., *finely formed, beautiful, handsome*.

fors, *fortis*, [cf. *ferō*, bring], f., *chance, luck, accident*.

fortasse, adv., *perhaps, possibly*.

forte [abl. of *fors*], adv., *by chance, by accident; perchance, perhaps*.

fortis, -e, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, adj., *strong; brave, courageous, valiant*.

fortiter, comp. *fortius*, sup. *fortissimē*, [*fortis*], adv., *bravely, boldly, courageously*.

fortitūdō, -inis, [*fortis*], f., *strength, courage, bravery*.

fortuitō, [abl. of *fortuitus*, from *forte*], adv., *by chance*.

fortūna, -ae, [*fors*], f., *chance*,

- luck, fortune; position, lot, rank, circumstances; good fortune; ill fortune; personified, Fortune.*
- forum**, -ī, [foris], n., open place, market-place; esp. **Forum Rōmānum**, the Roman Forum, the Forum, an open space between the Palatine and Capitoline hills, surrounded by public buildings and shops, where the political and commercial life of the Roman world centred. See map opp. p. 53.
- fossa**, -ae, [cf. fodiō], f., ditch, trench, intrenchment, fosse.
- foveō**, fovēre, fōvi, fōtus, 2, warm, keep warm; cherish, favor.
- frangō**, frangere, frēgī, frāctus, 3, break in pieces, break; break down, dishearten, subdue, overcome.
- frāter**, -tris, m., brother; name of honor applied to allies, brethren.
- frāternus**, -a, -um, [frāter], adj., of a brother, brotherly.
- fremitus**, -ūs, [cf. fremō, roar], m., uproar, noise, din.
- Fregellae**, -ārum, f., Fregellae, a city of the Volscians in Latium, on the river Liris. See map opp. p. 30.
- frequēns**, -entis, comp. frequentior, sup. frequentissimus, adj., often, regular, repeated, constant; in great numbers, crowded, filled, populous.
- frētus**, -a, -um, adj., leaning, supported; trusting, relying, confiding.
- frīgus**, frigoris, n., cold, cold weather. Pl., seasons of cold, cold spells.
- frōns**, frontis, f., forehead; front. ā mediā fronte, in the middle of the forehead.
- frūctuōsus**, -a, -um, sup. -issimus, [frūctus], adj., fruitful, fertile.
- frūgēs**, -um, f., pl., produce, products of the soil, fruits.
- frūmentārius**, -a, -um, [frūmentum], adj., having to do with grain or supplies; productive of grain. rēs frūmentāria, supply of grain, supplies.
- frūmentum**, -ī, [fruor], n., corn, grain; standing corn. Pl. often crops of grain, grain-crops.
- fruor**, fruī, frūctus sum, fut. part. fruitūrus, 3, dep., enjoy, delight in.
- frūstrā**, [fraus], adv., in error; without effect, in vain.
- frūstror**, -ārī, -ātus sum, [frūstrā], 1, dep., deceive, trick, disappoint.
- Fūfētius**, -ī, m., Fūfētius, gentile name of Mettius Fūfētius, leader of the Albans against Tullus Hostilius.
- fuga**, -ae, f., flight. in fugam dare, to put to flight, rout.
- fugīēns**, -entis, [part. of fugiō], adj., flying, fleeing. As subst., m., a fugitive.
- fugiō**, fugere, fūgī, —, 3, flee, run away, make off; avoid, shun; escape.
- fugitivus**, -a, -um, [cf. fugiō], adj., fleeing. As subst., fugitivus, -ī, m., runaway.
- fugō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [fuga], 1, put to flight, rout.
- fulmen**, -inis, [cf. fulgeō], n., lightning flash, thunderbolt; crushing blow.
- Fulvius**, -ī, m., Fulvius, gentile name of A. Fulvius, put to death by the order of his own father, because he joined Catiline's conspiracy.

fūmus, -ī, m., *smoke*.

fūnāle, -is, [fūnis], n., *torch*.

fundāmentum, -ī, [fundō], n.,
foundation, basis.

funditor, -ōris, [cf. funda], m.,
slinger.

fundō, fundere, fūdī, fūsus, 3, *pour*,
pour out; *scatter, rout*.

fūnestus, -a, -um, [fūnus], adj.,
deadly, destructive, fatal.

fungor, fungī, fūctus sum, 3, dep.,
be engaged in, perform, observe;
do, execute, administer.

fūnus, -eris, n., *funeral procession*,
funeral.

furcula, -ae, [furca], f., *a little fork*
or forked prop. In pl., **Furculae**
Caudinae, the *Caudine Forks*,
narrow passes in the mountains
near Caudium, a town in Sam-
nium. See map opp. p. 30.

Fūrius, -ī, m., name of a Roman
gens, refers in this book to :

(1) *M. Fūrius Camillus*, the de-
liverer of Rome from the Gauls.

(2) *P. Fūrius Philus*, who, after
the battle of Cannae, formed a
conspiracy among the young
nobles to leave Italy.

(3) *L. Fūrius*, consul in 196 B.C.

furor, -ōris, [furō, rage], m., *rage*,
madness, fury.

futūrus, -a, -um, [part. of sum],
adj., *going to be, yet to be, to*
come, future. As part. see sum.

G

Gabīnius, -ī, m., *Aulus Gabinius*,
consul with Lucius Calpurnius
Piso, 58 B.C.

Gādēs, -ium, f., pl., *Gādēs*, a town
on the southern coast of Spain,
the modern Cadiz. See map,
frontispiece.

Gāius, -ī, abbreviation C., m., a
Roman forename.

Galba, -ae, m. :

(1) *Servius Sulpicius Galba*, prae-
torian governor of Lusitania in
151 B.C.

(2) *P. Sulpicius Galba*, consul in
200 B.C.

(3) *Galba*, a chief of the Sues-
siones.

galea, -ae, f., *helmet*, usually of
leather.

Gallia, -ae, f., *Gaul*, comprising the
regions now occupied by France,
Belgium, Holland, and the west-
ern parts of Germany and Switz-
erland. See INTRO. p. 25.

Gallicus, -a, -um, [Gallus], adj., of
Gaul, Gallic.

gallina, -ae, f., *hen*.

Gallus, -a, -um, adj., *Gallic*. As
subst., m., *a Gaul*; pl., *Galli*,
-ōrum, Gauls.

Garumna, -ae, f., *Garonne*, the great
river of southwestern France,
which rises in the Pyrenees Moun-
tains and flows in a northwesterly
direction to the Atlantic Ocean,
after a course of about 350 miles.
See map opp. p. 114.

gaudeō, gaudere, gāvīsus sum, 2,
semi-dep., *be glad, rejoice*.

gaudium, -ī, [gaudeō], n., *joy*,
gladness.

gāvīsus, see gaudeō.

Geminus, see Servilius.

geminus, -a, -um, adj., *born to-*
gether, twin; *twofold*. As
subst., **geminī**, -ōrum, m., pl.,
twins.

Genava, -ae, [Kel. genavā,
'mouth'], f., a city of the
Allobroges, on the **lacus Le-**
mannus; now *Geneva*. See N.

to p. 118, l. 4, and map opp. p. 114.

gener, generi, m., *son-in-law*.

generātim, [genus], adv., *by kind; by peoples, by tribes, nation by nation*.

generōsus, -a, -um, [genus], adj., *of noble birth, well-born; magnanimous, generous*.

genitus, see **gignō**.

gēns, gentis, f., *clan, gens*, composed of families having a common ancestor, a common name, and certain religious rights in common; *tribe, people, nation*.

genūi, see **gignō**.

genus, -eris, n., *race, birth, descent; kind, class, rank, order; method, nature; sort, description, style*.

Germāni, -ōrum, m., pl., *Germans, natives of Germany*.

Germānia, -ae, f., *Germany*. See map, frontispiece.

gerō, gerere, gessī, gestus, 3, *bear, carry; manage, transact, do, carry on; wear; carry out, perform, accomplish; of an office, fill; of war, wage. sē gerere, to conduct one's self, act, behave. mōrem gerere alicui, to gratify any one, follow one's suggestion. rēs gestae, exploits, deeds, work.*

gestō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [freq. of **gerō**], 1, *bear, carry, wield; wear*.

gestus, -ūs, [gerō], m., *bearing, carriage; gesture, movement*.

gignō, gignere, genui, genitus, 3, *produce, give birth to, beget; pass, be born, spring*.

gladius, -i, m., *sword*.

glōria, -ae, f., *glory, fame, renown; vainglory, pride, boasting*.

glōrior, -ārī, -ātus sum, [glōria], 1, dep., *boast, brag, pride one's self*.

glōriōsus, -a, -um, comp. **glōriōsior**, sup. **glōriōsissimus**, [glōria], adj., *glorious, famous, renowned; to be proud of, conferring honor, honorable; boastful, conceited*.

Gnaeus, -ī, abbreviated **Cn.**, m., *Gnaeus, a Roman forename*.

Gongylus, -ī, [Γογγύλος], m., *Gongylus, name of an Eretrian*.

Gortynius, -a, -um, adj., *of Gortyn, a city in Crete, Gortynian*. As subst. **Gortynius**, -ī, m., *Gortynian, inhabitant of Gortyn*. See map opp. p. 93.

Gracchus, see **Semprōnius**.

gradus, -ūs, m., *step, pace; gait; station, position, ground; stage, period, degree; pl., steps, stairs*.

Graecō, [Graecus], adv., *in the Greek language, in Greek*.

Graecia, -ae, f., *Greece*.

Graeculus, -ī, [dim. of **Graecus**], m., *a poor Greek*.

Graecus, -a, -um, adj., *Grecian, Greek*. As subst., **Graecus**, -ī, m., *a Greek*.

Graioceli (or **Grai Oceli**), -ōrum, m., pl., *a Gallic tribe in the Graian Alps, in the neighborhood of Mt. Cenis*. See map opp. p. 114.

Grāius, -a, -um, adj., *of the Greeks, Grecian*. As subst., **Grāius**, -ī, m., *a Greek*.

grandis, -e, adj., *full-grown, large, great*.

grānum, -ī, n., *grain, seed*.

graphium, -ī, n., *stylus for writing, pen, pencil*.

grātia, -ae, [grātus], f., *favor, esteem, regard, friendship; recompense, requital; kindness, courtesy, influence*. Pl., **grātiae**, -ārum, *thanks*. **grātiā**, with preceding gen., *for the sake of*. **grā-**

tiam habēre, to feel gratitude. grātiās agere, to express gratitude, to thank. grātiām referre, to show gratitude, to requite.

grātīās, [abl. pl. of grātia], adv., out of favor, without pay, for nothing.

grātulātiō, -ōnis, [grātulor], f., rejoicing, congratulation. fit grātulātiō, congratulations are offered.

grātulor, -ārī, -ātus, [grātus], 1, dep., offer congratulations, congratulate.

grātus, -a, -um, comp. grātor, sup. grātissimus, adj., pleasing, dear, acceptable; thankful, grateful; strong, influential. Neut. as subst., grātum facere, to do a favor.

gravis, -e, comp. gravior, sup. gravissimus, adj., heavy, ponderous; severe, difficult; painful, disagreeable, unpleasant; strong, great; of weight, of authority. proelium grave, a decisive battle.

gravitās, -ātis, [gravis], f., weight, heaviness; importance, dignity, influence; seriousness, deliberateness.

graviter, comp. gravior, sup. gravissimē, [gravis], adv., heavily; severely, warmly, bitterly; with dignity; seriously, with great displeasure.

gravō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [gravis], 1, load, weigh down. Pass. as dep., feel displeasure, hesitate, be unwilling.

grūs, gruis, m. and f., crane.

gubernātor, -ōris, [gubernō], m., steersman, helmsman; director, ruler.

H.

habēō, habēre, habuī, habitus, 2, have, hold, possess, keep; treat, use; regard, think, consider, account, repute, reckon, render. cēsum habēre, to take a census, make an enumeration. ōrātiōnem habēre, to deliver an address, make a speech. senātum habēre, to hold a meeting of the senate.

habitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [freq. of habēō], 1, dwell, abide, reside; inhabit; be housed.

habitus, -ūs, m., condition, state, habit; dress, attire.

Hadrūmētum, -ī, [Ἰδρούμητος], n., Hadrumetum, a city in northern Africa, not far from Carthage. See map, frontispiece.

Hamīcar, -aris, m., Hamīcar, brother of Hannibal.

Hannibal, -alis, m., Hannibal, a famous general of the Carthaginians, who waged war against the Romans from 218 to 202 B.C.

Hannō, -ōnis, m., Hannō, a Carthaginian statesman, a contemporary of Hannibal. He was the leader of the party opposed to Hannibal.

Harūdēs, -um, m., pl., a Germanic people between the Danube and the upper part of the Rhine; apparently a remnant from the Cimbric migration, and originally from Jutland. See map. opp. p. 114.

haruspex, -icis, [cf. speciō], m., soothsayer, diviner.

Hasdrubal, -alis, m., Hasdrubal, a Carthaginian name. In this book refers to:

(1) Hasdrubal, brother-in-law of Hannibal.

(2) *Hasdrubal*, brother of Hannibal.

hasta, -ae, f., *staff, pole; spear.*

hastile, -is, [hasta], n., *spear-shaft; spear, javelin.*

haud, adv., *not, not at all, by no means.*

Hellēspontus, -ī, [Ἑλλήσποντος], m., *the Hellespont, the strait between the Aegean Sea and the Propontis, now the Dardanelles.* See map opp. p. 93.

Helvētius, -a, -um, adj., *of the Helvetii, Helvetian.* civitas Helvētia, *the State of the Helvetii, Helvetian State, divided into four cantons, the names of two of which, pāgus Tigurinus, pāgus Verbigenus, are known.* As subst., Helvētīi, -ōrum, m., pl., *the Helvetians, Helvetii.* See map opp. p. 114.

Helvius, -ī, m., *Helvius*, gentile name of C. *Helvius*, Cato's colleague in his aedileship.

hēmerodromus, -ī, [ἡμεροδρόμος], m., *courier.*

herbidus, -a, -um, [herba], adj., *grassy.*

Herculēs, -is, m., *Hercules*, the Roman name of the Greek *Heracles*, famed for his strength and mighty deeds. He was said to have passed through Italy, and is mentioned in the legends connected with the founding of Rome.

hērēditās, -ātis, [hērēs], f., *heirship, inheritance; an inheritance.*

hērēdium, -ī, [hērēs], n., *hereditary estate.*

Herennius, -ī, m., *Herennius*, forename of *Herennius Pontius*.

hērēs, -ēdis, m. and f., *heir, heiress.*

hibernus, -a, -um, [hiems], adj., *of winter.* As subst., *hiberna*, -ōrum (sc. castra), n., pl., *winter-quarters.*

hic, haec, hōc, gen. hūius, dem. pron., used with or without a subst., *this, this . . . here; the following, the one*, referring to that which follows; *he, she, it.* When contrasted with ille, hic usually means *the latter, ille, the former.* When followed by ut, hic frequently = *such.*

hic, [hic], adv., *here; in this particular, herein; now, hereupon, then.*

hiemō, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus, [hiems], 1, *pass the winter, winter.*

Hiempsal, -alis, m., *Hiempsal*, son of Micipsa.

hiems, hiemis, f., *winter; wintry storm, stormy weather.*

Hierō, -ōnia, m., *Hiero*, king of Syracuse.

hilaritās, -ātis, [hilaris], f., *cheerfulness, merriment, hilarity.*

Hilōtae, -ārum, [ἐλῶται], m., pl., *Helots*, the serfs of the Spartans.

hinc, [hic], adv., *from this place, hence; on this account, from this; henceforth; next, afterwards.*

hinc . . . hinc, *on this side . . . on that, on the one side . . . on the other.*

Hippō, -ōnis, [ἵππος], m., *Hippo*, a city in northern Africa on the coast, west of Carthage.

Hispānī, -ōrum, m., *Spaniards.*

Hispānia, -ae, f., *Spain.*

Hispāniēnsis, -e, [Hispānia], adj., *in Spain, Spanish.* As subst., *Hispāniēnsis*, -is, m., *a Spaniard.*

Hister, -trī, [Ἰστρος], m., *the Hister or Ister*, a name applied by the

Greeks to the Danube, and by the Romans to the lower part of the same river. See map, frontispiece.

Histiaeus, -ī, [*Ἱστιαῖος*], m., *Histiaeus*, tyrant of Miletus in the time of Miltiades.

historia, -ae, [*ἱστορία*], f., *history*; *narrative, account*; pl., *a work of history, history*.

hodiē, [ho=hōc, diē], adv., *to-day*; *now*.

homō, hominis, m. and f., *human being, man, person, fellow*. Pl., hominēs, -um, m., *men, people, mankind*.

honestās, -ātis, [honōs], f., *honor received from others, repute, reputation*; *uprightness, integrity*.

honestē, comp. honestius, sup. honestissimē, [honestus], adv., *honorably, properly, virtuously*.

honestus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, [honōs], adj., *regarded with honor*; *worthy of honor, honorable, upright, noble*.

honōrificē, [honōrificus], adv., *honorably, with honor, with respect*.

honōrificus, -a, -um, comp. honōrificentior, sup. -centissimus, [honōs, cf. faciō], adj., *conferring honor, full of honor, honorable*; *in one's honor*.

honōs, or honor, -ōris, m., *honor, esteem, respect, dignity*; *public office, office, post*; *mark of honor, honor*.

hōra, -ae, [= ὥρα], f., *hour, a twelfth part of the day, from sunrise to sunset, or of the night, from sunset to sunrise, the Roman hours varying in length with the season of the year*; *time, season*.

Horātius, -a, the name of a Roman

gens. In this book are mentioned:

(1) *The Horātii*, triplets, *praenōmina* not given, who fought with the Curiatii.

(2) *Horātius Coclēs*, *praenōmen* not given, who defended the bridge against the Etruscans.

(3) *M. Horātius Pulvillus*, consul 509 B.C.

horreō, horrēre, horruī, —, 2, *tremble at, shudder at, dread*.

hortātus, -ūs, [hortor], (the nom. is not found), m., *encouragement, exhortation*.

hortor, -ārī, ātus, 1, dep., *urge, encourage, exhort, incite, press*.

hospes, hospitis, m., *host*; *guest*; *friend bound by ties of hospitality, guest-friend*.

hospitium, -ī, [hospes], n., *relation of guest and host, tie of hospitality, hospitality, friendship*; *lodging, inn*.

hostia, -ae, f., *animal sacrificed, victim*.

hostilis, -e, [hostis], 'adj., of an enemy, hostile.

hostiliter, [hostilis], adv., *like an enemy, in a hostile manner*.

Hostilius, -a, name of a Roman gens. In this book are mentioned:

(1) *Tullus Hostilius*, the third king of Rome.

(2) *C. Hostilius Mancinus*, consul 137 B.C. who conducted the war against the Numantines.

hostis, -is, m., *stranger, public enemy, foe*; in this book both the sing. and the pl., *hostēs*, -ium, in most cases = *the enemy*. Cf. inimicus.

hūc, [hic], adv., *hither, to this place, on this; to this, besides*.

hūmānitās, -ātis, [hūmānus], f., *humanity; kindness; elegance; refinement, culture.*

hūmānus, -a, -um, [homō], adj., *of man, human; humane, kind.*

humilis, -e, [humus], adj., *low, lowly; small, slight; common, humble; low, base, mean.*

I.

iaceō, iacēre, iacuī, --, 2, *lie, be prostrate; lie dead; be situated; be despised.* Pres. part. as subst., iacentēs, -ium, m., pl., *the fallen.*

iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactus, 3, *throw, hurl, cast; throw up, construct.*

iactātiō, -ōnis, [iactō], f., *tossing, shaking; boasting, display.*

iactō (jactō), -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [freq. of iaciō], 1, *throw, cast; throw about, jerk back and forth; discuss, agitate.*

iactus, part. of iaciō.

iam (jam), adv., *of time, already, now; at once, immediately; soon, presently; at length; actually; of assurance, in fact, indeed. nōn iam, no longer. iam pridem, long ago, long since.*

Iāniculum, -ī, [Iānus], n., *the Janiculum, a hill lying across the Tiber from Rome, connected with the city by a wooden bridge called the Pōns Sublicius. It was the seat of a mythical citadel of Janus. See map opp. p. 53.*

iānuā, -ae, f., *door; entrance.*

Iānus, -ī, [cf. iānuā], m., *Janus, an old Italian god of beginnings.*

Ibērus, -ī, m., *the Ibērus, a river in Spain. See map, frontispiece.*

ibi, adv., *in that place, there; on that occasion, thereupon.*

ibidem, adv., *in the same place, just there.*

Iccius, -ī, m., *a leader of the Remi. icō, icere, icī, ictus, in classical prose only in the perf. system, 3, a., hit, strike. foedus icere, to make a league, make a treaty.*

ictus, -ūs, [icō], m., *blow, stroke, wound.*

Id, abbreviation for **Idūs**.

Idem, eadem, idem, gen. **ēiusdem**, [is], dem. pron., *the same; often with the force of an adv., also, besides, too.*

identidem, [idem et idem], adv., *repeatedly, again and again.*

ideō, [id + eō], adv., *for that reason, on that account, therefore.*

idōneus, -a, -um, adj., *fit, proper, suitable, convenient, apt.*

Idūs, -uum, f., pl., *the Ides, the fifteenth day of March, May, July, and October; the thirteenth day of other months.*

igitur, adv., *then, therefore.*

ignāvia, -ae, [ignāvus], f., *inactivity, idleness, sloth.*

ignāvus, -a, -um, adj., *inactive, slothful, lazy, cowardly.*

Ignis, -is, m., *fire. Pl., ignēs, watchfires.*

ignōrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [cf. ignōscō], 1, *be ignorant of, not to know, be unaware; overlook.*

ignōscō, -gnōscere, -gnōvī, -gnōtus, [in- + (g) nōscō, know], 3, *pardon, overlook, forgive, excuse.*

ignōtus, [in- + (g) nōtus], adj., *unknown, strange; unacquainted with, ignorant of.*

Illicō, [in + locō], adv., *on the spot, there; straightway, immediately.*

illātūrus, see **inferō**.

ille, illa, illud, gen. **illius**, dem.

pron., *that; he, she, it; the famous, the well-known.*

illīc, [ille], adv., *in that place, there, yonder.*

illūdō, -ludere, -lūsi, -lūsus, [in + laedō], 3, *dash against, crush.*

illūc, [ille], adv., *to that place, thither, there; thereto; to such a point.*

illūdō, -ludere, -lūsi, -lūsus, [in + lūdō], 3, *sport with; make fun of, ridicule, mock; deceive, baffle.*

illūstris, -e, comp. **illūstrior**, sup. **illūstrissimus**, adj., *bright; clear; distinguished, illustrious, renowned; evident, plain.*

illūstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [in + lūstrō], 1, *light up, illuminate; make clear, illustrate; render famous, distinguish.*

imāgō, -inis, [cf. imitor], f., *imitation, likeness, image, representation; statue, bust.*

Illyricum, -i, n., *Illyricum, a region along the east coast of the Adriatic Sea, belonging to Caesar's province; now Istria and Dalmatia.*
See map, frontispiece.

imber, -bris, m., *rain, shower.*

imitātiō, -ōnis, [imitor], f., *a copying, imitation.*

immēnsus, -a, -um, adj., *immeasurable, immense.*

immeritus, -a, -um, adj., *undeserving, innocent.*

immittō, -ere, **immisi**, **immissus**, [in + mittō], 3, *send in, admit, introduce.*

immo, adv., *no indeed, by no means, nay; yes indeed, certainly.*

immolō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [in, cf. mola, sacred meal], 1, *sprinkle with sacrificial meal; sacrifice, immolate.*

immortālis, -e, [in- + mortālis], adj., *immortal, imperishable, eternal.*

immōtus, -a, -um, [in- + mōtus], adj., *unmoved, motionless; steadfast, firm.*

impatiēns, -entis, [in- + patiēns], adj., *intolerant, impatient.*

impedimentum, -i, [impediō], n., *hindrance, interference.* Pl. **impedimenta**, -ōrum, *heavy baggage, baggage.* See INTRO., p. 12.

impediō, -pedire, -pedivī, -peditus, [in, cf. pēs], 4, *hinder, obstruct, interfere with, prevent, disorder.*

impeditus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, [part. of impediō], adj., *encumbered with baggage, hindered, obstructed, embarrassed; difficult, hard; of places, hard to reach, inaccessible.*

impellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsus, [in + pellō], 3, *strike against, drive; put to rout; set in motion, impel, drive forward; urge, induce, persuade.*

impendeō, -pendere, —, —, [in + pendeō], 2, *overhang; be at hand, be imminent, threaten.*

impendium, -i, [impendō], n., *money laid out, outlay, cost.*

impēnsa, -ae, [impendō], f., *outlay, cost.*

imperātor, -ōris, [imperō], m., *commander-in-chief, commander, general; emperor, emperor.*

imperātum, -i, [imperō], n., *command, order.* **imperāta facere**, *to do what has been commanded, carry out orders.* **ad imperātum**, *in accordance with his command.*

imperfectus, -a, -um, [in- + perfectus], adj., *unfinished, incomplete.*

imperitus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup.

- issimus, [in- + perītus], adj., *inexperienced, unskilled, unacquainted with*. tam imperitus rērum, of so little experience.
- imperium**, -i, [cf. imperō], n., *command, order; control, government, dominion; military authority; the state, state*. nova imperia, a revolution.
- imperō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 1, *command, order; exercise authority; order to furnish, levy, draft, demand*. After imperō, ut is ordinarily to be translated by *to*, and nē by *not to*.
- impetrō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [in + patrō, execute], 1, *obtain by request, procure, get, accomplish, bring to pass; gain one's request*. rē impetrātā, the request having been granted, after the request had been granted.
- impetus**, -ūs, [in, cf. petō], m., *attack, assault, onset, charge; vehemence, impulse, excitement; fury, impetuosity, force*.
- impietās**, -ātis, [impius], f., *irreverence, impiety; undutifulness*.
- implicātus**, -a, -um, [part. of implicō], adj., *entangled, involved, connected with*.
- implicō**, -āre, -āvi or -ui, -ātus or -itus, [in + plicō], 1, *infold, envelop; involve, implicate, embarrass*. in morbum implicitus, taken sick, fallen ill.
- implōrō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [in + plōrō, cry out], 1, *beseech, implore; invoke, appeal to*. auxilium implōrāre, to beg for help.
- impōnō**, -pōnere, -posui, -positus, [in + pōnō], 3, *put on, place on, put; impose, dictate terms of peace; mount*.
- importō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [in + portō], 1, *bring in, import*.
- impraesentiārum**, adv., *for the present, under present circumstances, now*.
- imprimis**, [in, primis], adv., *especially*.
- improbō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 1, *disapprove, reject*.
- improbus**, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, [in- + probus, good], adj., *bad, shameless*.
- imprōvisō**, [imprōvisus], adv., *unexpectedly, suddenly*.
- imprōvisus**, -a, -um, comp. -ior, [in- + part. of prōvideō], adj., *unforeseen, unexpected*. Neut. as subst. in dē imprōvisō, *unexpectedly, suddenly*. See n. to p. 152, l. 6.
- imprūdenter**, [imprūdēns], adv., *without foresight, ignorantly, inconsiderately*.
- imprudentia**, -ae, [imprūdēns], f., *want of foresight, imprudence, ignorance*.
- impūgnō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [in + pūgnō], 1, *fight against, attack; oppose*.
- impulsus**, see impellō.
- impūne**, [impūnis, from in- + poena], adv., *without punishment, with impunity*.
- impūnitās**, -ātis, [impūnis from in- + poena], f., *exemption from punishment, impunity*.
- impūnitus**, -a, -um, [in- + pūnitus], adj., *unpunished, secure*.
- in**, prep. with acc. and abl.:
- (1) With the acc.: of place, after verbs implying motion, *into, to, up to, towards, against*; of time, *into, till, to, unto, for*; of purpose, *for, with a view to*;

of other relations, *to, in, respecting, concerning, according to, after, over.*

- (2) With the abl.: of place, *in, within, on, upon, among, over*; of time, *in, in the course of, within, during, while*; of other relations, *involved in, under the influence of, in case of, in relation to, respecting.*

In composition *in* retains its form before the vowels and most of the consonants; is often changed to *il-* before *l*, *ir-* before *r*; usually becomes *im-* before *m, b, p*. *in-*, inseparable prefix, = *un-*, *not*, as in *inauditus, unheard*.

inānis, -e, adj., *empty, void; lifeless; worthless, vain.*

incēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessus, [in + cēdō], 3, *advance, march, walk; approach; happen.*

incendium, -ī, [incendō], n., *burning, fire, flame.*

incendō, -ere, -cendi, -cēsus, 3, *set fire to, kindle, burn; rouse, excite.*

inceptum, -ī, [incipiō], n., *beginning, attempt, undertaking; purpose, subject.*

incidō, -cidere, -cidi, —, [in + cadō], 3, with *in* and the acc., *fall in with, come upon, happen upon, meet, happen in the time of; occur, happen; of war, break out.*

incidō, -cidere, -cidi, -cisus, [in + caedō], 3, *cut into.*

incipiō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptus, [in + capiō], 3, *begin, commence, undertake; instigate.*

incitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [in + citō, move rapidly], 1, *urge, urge on, hurry; of horses, urge on, spur; run in; of men, rouse, stir up, excite, spur on.*

inclūdō, -clūdere, inclūsī, inclūsus, [in + claudō], 3, *shut up, enclose, imprison; include.*

incognitus, -a, -um, [in + cognitus], adj., *not examined, untried; unknown.*

incohō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 1, *begin, commence.*

incola, -ae, [incolō], m. and f., *inhabitant, resident.*

incolō, -colere, -colui, —, [in + colō], 3, intrans., *live, dwell*; trans., *inhabit, dwell in, live in.*

incolumis, -e, adj., *safe, unharmed, uninjured, unhurt.*

incommodum, -ī, [incommodus], n., *inconvenience, disadvantage; misfortune, disaster, injury, defeat.*

incrēdibilis, -e, [in + crēdibilis], adj., *beyond belief, extraordinary, incredible.*

increpitō, -āre, —, —, [freq. of increpō, chide], 1, *reproach, rebuke; taunt.*

increpō, -āre, -uī, -itus, 1, *sound, resound, clash; upbraid, scold.*

incumbō, -ere, -cubui, -cubitus, [in + cumbō], 3, *lie upon, lean; press upon; make an effort, apply one's self; incline, choose.*

incūriōsus, -a, -um, [in + cūriōsus], adj., *careless, negligent.*

incursiō, -ōnis, [incurrō], f., *running against; onset, attack, incursion.*

incursus, -ūs, [cf. incurrō], m., *onrush; assault, attack.*

incūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [in + causa], 1, *find fault with, accuse, chide, rebuke.*

inde, adv., *from that place, thence; from that time; after that, thereupon; from that, therefore.*

index, -icis, [cf. indicō], m. and f., one who points out, informer; index, mark, sign, proof.

indiciūm, -ī, [cf. indicō], n., notice, sign, indication, proof, evidence, information.

indicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [index], 1, point out, inform; make known, show, reveal; betray, accuse.

indico, -dicere, -dixi, -dictus, [in + dico], 3, declare publicly, declare, proclaim, announce; of a council, convoke, call, appoint; impose, inflict.

indictus, -a, -um, [in- + dictus], adj., unsaid. **indictā causā**, without a hearing.

indidem, [inde], adv., from the same place. **indidem Thēbis**, likewise from Thebes.

indigeō, -ēre, -uī, —, [indu, old form of in, + egeō], 2, need, want; demand, require.

indignātus, -a, -um, [part. of indignor], adj., angered, indignant.

indignitās, -ātis, [indignus], f., unworthiness, disgracefulness, shamefulness; indignity, ill-treatment.

indignor, -ārī, -ātus sum, [indignus], 1, dep., deem unworthy, be indignant at, resent.

indignus, -a, -um, [in- + dignus], adj., undeserving, unfit, unworthy; shameful.

indiligenter, comp. -ius, [indīligēs], adv., carelessly, heedlessly.

indō, -dere, -didī, -ditus, [in + dō], 3, insert, put into; give, confer.

indolēs, -is, f., inborn quality, character, disposition.

inducō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductus,

[in + dūcō], 3, lead in, bring in, introduce; lead, induce, influence; cover.

indulgeō, -dulgēre, -dulsī, -dultus, 2, be kind to, favor.

induō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, 3, put on, dress in; clothe, cover.

industria, -ae, [industrius], f., diligence, industry, activity.

ineō, -īre, -ivī or -iī, -itus, [in + eō], irr., go into, enter; begin; enter upon, undertake; with grātiam, acquire, obtain. **ineūns adulescentia**, early youth. **initā aestāte**, in the beginning of summer. **cōnsilium inire**, to form a plan.

inermis, -e, [in- + arma], adj., unarmed, without weapons, defenceless.

ineūns, see ineō.

infāmis, -e, [in- + fāma], adj., of ill repute, notorious, infamous.

infectus, -a, -um, [in- + factus], adj., not done, unaccomplished.

inferō, -ferre, intulī, illātus, [in + ferō], irr., bring in, import; throw upon, throw into; of injuries, inflict; of hope and fear, inspire, infuse; of an excuse, offer, allege; of wounds, make, give. **bellum inferre**, to make war. **signa inferre**, to advance.

inferus, -a, -um, comp. inferior, sup. infimus or imus, adj., below, underneath; comp., lower, inferior; sup., lowest, at the bottom.

infestus, -a, -um, adj., unsafe, disturbed; hostile, threatening.

infimus, see inferus.

infinītus, -a, -um, [in, cf. finis], adj., not limited, boundless, endless.

infirmus, -a, -um, comp. **infirmior**, sup. **infirmissimus**, [in- + firmus], adj., not strong, weak, feeble.

infitiæ, -arum, [in-, cf. fateor], f., pl., found only in the acc. in the phrase **infitiās ire**, to deny.

infitiōr, -āri, -ātus sum, [infitiæ], 1, deny, disown.

inflātus, -a, -um, [part. of inflō], adj., blown up, inflated; puffed up, proud.

inflectō, -flectere, -flexi, -flexus, [in + flectō], 3, bend.

inflexus, see **inflectō**.

inflō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [in + flō], 1, blow into, inflate; inspire, encourage.

influō, -fluere, -fluxi, -fluxus, [in + fluō], 3, flow into, flow.

infodiō, -fodere, -fodi, -fossus, [in + fodiō], 3, bury, inter.

informō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [in + formō], 1, shape, mould, fashion; organize; inform, instruct.

infra, adv. and prep. with acc., below, underneath; inferior to.

infrendō, -ere, —, —, 3, gnash.

infringō, -ere, -frēgi, -fractus, [in + frangō], 3, break off, break; subdue, overcome.

ingemiscō, -gemiscere, —, —, [ingemō], 3, inch., groan; groan over.

ingemō, -ere, -ui, —, 3, groan over, mourn over, lament, bewail.

ingenium, -i, [in, cf. gignō], n., innate quality, nature; character, disposition; talents, ability, intellect.

ingēns, -entis, [in-, cf. gignō], adj., beyond the natural size; prodigious, vast, great; mighty, remarkable.

ingenuus, -a, -um, [in, cf. gignō],

adj., native; free-born, noble, ingenuous, liberal.

ingrātis, [in-, grātis], adv., without thanks, unwillingly, on compulsion.

ingredior, -gredi, -gressus, [in + gradior, step], 3, dep., advance; enter, go into; enter upon, undertake.

inhaerēō, -ēre, -haesi, -haesus, 2, stick fast, cling, adhere.

inhiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 1, gape at, gaze at, regard with longing.

iniciō (iniciō), -icere, -iēcī, -iectus, [in + iaciō], 3, throw in; lay on; place on, put on; inspire, infuse, cause; strike into.

inlectus (injectus), see **iniciō**.

inimicitia, -ae, [inimicus], f., enmity; hostility.

inimicus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, [in- + amicus], adj., unfriendly, hostile. As subst., **inimicus**, -i, m., enemy, personal enemy as distinguished from **hostis**, a public enemy.

iniquē, [iniquus], adv., unequally, unfairly, unjustly.

iniquitās, -ātis, [iniquus], f., unevenness; unfairness, unreasonable. **iniquitās loci**, unfavorableness of (the) position, disadvantageous position.

iniquus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, [in- + aequus], adj., uneven, sloping; unfavorable, disadvantageous; unfair, unjust.

initium, -i, [ineō], n., going in, entrance; beginning. **initio**, in the beginning, at first.

initus, see **ineō**.

iniūria (injūria), -ae, [iniūrius, in- + iūs], f., wrong, outrage, injustice, injury.

inissus, -ūs, [in- + iussus], m., only abl. in use, *without command, without orders*.

iniūstō, [iniūstus], adv., *unjustly*.

innāscor, -nāsci, -nātus, [in + nāscor], 3, dep., *be born in, spring up in, arise in*.

innītor, -nīti, -nīxus or -nīsus sum, [in + nītor], 3, dep., *support one's self with, lean upon*.

innīxus, see **innītor**.

innocēns, -entis, adj., *harmless; blameless, innocent*.

innocentia, -ae, [innocēns], f., *blamelessness, innocence; integrity*.

innoxius, -a, -um, [in- + noxius], adj., *harmless; blameless, innocent*.

inopia, -ae, [inops], f., *want, lack; need, poverty, scarcity*.

inopīnāns, -antis, [in- + opīnāns], adj., *not expecting, taken by surprise, off one's guard*.

inopīnātus, -a, -um, [in- + opīnātus], adj., *unexpected, surprising*.

inquam, inquis, inquit, def., always postpositive, *say*.

inquiētus, -a, -um, [in- + quiētus], adj., *restless, unquiet, disturbed*.

insciēns, -entis, [in- + sciēns, from sciō], adj., *not knowing, unaware*. **insciente** **Caesare**, *without Caesar's knowledge*.

inscientia, -ae, [insciēns], f., *want of knowledge, inexperience, ignorance*.

inscītia, -ae, [inscītus], f., *ignorance, inexperience, unskilfulness*.

inscribō, inscribere, inscripsi, inscriptus, [in + scribō], 3, *write upon, inscribe*.

insecūtus, see **insequor**.

Insequor, -sequi, -secūtus sum, [in

+ sequor], 3, dep., *follow up, pursue, follow in pursuit*.

insideō, -sidēre, -sēdi, -sessus, [in + sedeō], 2, *sit upon; settle on, occupy; be fixed, be inherent in, adhere to*.

insidia, -arum, [cf. insideō], f., pl., *ambush, ambushcade; artifice, device, trap, snare*. **per insidiās**, *by stratagem*.

insidior, -āri, -ātus sum, [insidia], 1, dep., *lie in wait for, watch for, plot against*.

insigne, -is, [insignis], n., *mark, signal, indication; badge; honor; illustrious deed*.

insignis, -e, [in + signum], adj., *distinguished by a mark, conspicuous; remarkable, noteworthy; noted, eminent, prominent*.

insiliō, -silire, -silui, —, [in + salio, leap], 4, *leap upon*.

insistō, -sistere, -stiti, —, [in + sistō], 3, *stand, stand upon; press on; follow, pursue*.

insolēns, -entis, [in + solēns, part. of soleō], adj., *unaccustomed; immoderate, haughty, insolent*.

insolenter, comp. **insolentius**, sup. **insolentissimē**, [insolēns], adv., *unusually; haughtily, insolently*.

insolentia, -ae, [insolēns], f., *unusualness; arrogance, insolence, extravagance*.

instāns, -antis, [part. of instō], adj., *present, immediate; pressing, urgent*.

instar, n., indecl., *image; followed by gen., like*.

instituō, -stituere, -stitui, -stitutus, [in + statuō], 3, *of troops, draw up, arrange, form; build, construct, make; make ready, furnish; purpose, resolve; establish,*

institute; undertake, commence, begin; teach, instruct.

īnstitūtum, -ī, [īnstituō], n., *plan; custom, usage; institution.*

īnstitūtus, see *īnstituō*.

īnstō, -stāre, -stitī, -statūrus, [in + stō], 1, *be near at hand, approach; press on, press forward, menace, threaten.*

īnstruō, -struere, -strūxī, -strūctus, [in + struō, build], 3, *build, construct, equip, make ready, provide; of troops, draw up, form; fit out, equip.*

īnsuber, -bris, adj., *of or belonging to Insubria, a country in northern Italy. As subst., an Insubrian.*

īnsula, -ae, f., *an island.*

īnsum, -esse, -fui, [in + sum], irr., *be in, be upon; belong to.*

īnsusurrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 1, *whisper to; suggest.*

īntelligō, -legere, -lēxī, -lēctus, [inter + legō], 3, *understand, see clearly, perceive, ascertain.*

inter, prep. with acc., *among; of position and relation, between, among, into the midst of; of time, between, during, in, within. inter sē, with each other, among themselves, with one another. cohortātī inter sē (= sē inter sē), urging one another on. inter iocum, in joke, jestingly.*

intercēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessūrus, [inter + cēdō], 3, *go between, be placed between; lie between; of time, intervene, pass; take place, occur.*

intercalārius, -a, -um, adj., *for insertion, intercalary.*

intercalō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 1, *insert in the calendar, intercalate.*

intercipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus,

[inter + capiō], 3, *seize in passing, cut off; intercept; usurp; interrupt.*

interclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsus, [inter + claudō], 3, *shut off, cut off, block up, blockade, hinder.*

interdicō, -dicere, -dixī, -dictus,

[inter + dicō], 3, *interpose by speaking, forbid, interdict, prohibit.*

interdiū, [inter + diū], adv., *in the daytime, by day.*

interdum, [inter + dum], adv., *for a time, for a season; sometimes, occasionally, now and then.*

interēā, [inter + eā], adv., *meanwhile, in the meantime.*

intereō, -īre, -iī, -itus, [inter + eō], irr., *go among; be lost; perish, die.*

interfector, -ōris, [interficiō], m., *slayer, assassin.*

interficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus, [inter + faciō], 3, *put out of the way, destroy, kill.*

intericiō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus, [inter + iaciō], 3, *throw between, set between; interpose, intervene. Pass. part., interiectus, tying between, intervening.*

interim, adv., *meanwhile, in the meantime.*

interimō, -imere, -ēmī, -ēemptus, [inter + emō], 3, *take away; kill, destroy.*

interior, -ius, gen. *ōris*, [inter], adj., comp., (sup. *intimus* or *īmus*), *inner, interior, middle; more hidden, more profound; more intimate, more confidential.*

interitus, -ūs, [intereō], m., *overthrow, fall, destruction.*

intermittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus, [inter + mittō], 3, *leave an*

- interval, leave vacant, leave off, leave, stop, break, discontinue; interrupt, suspend; pass., of fire, abate; of wind, be intermittent. quā flūmen intermittit, where the river does not flow. nocte intermissā, a night intervening.*
- interneciō, -ōnis**, [cf. *internecō, destroy*], f., *slaughter, massacre, utter destruction, annihilation.*
- internūtiūs, -ī**, [inter + *nūtiūs*], m., *go-between, messenger.*
- interpellō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus**, [inter + *pellō*], 1, *interrupt; disturb, hinder.*
- interpōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positus**, [inter + *pōnō*], 3, *place between, put between, interpose; put forward; introduce, insert; present; of time, let pass, suffer to elapse; allege, deduce. sē interpōnere, to lend one's aid.*
- interpretēs, -pretis, m.**, *interpreter.*
- interrēgnū, -ī**, [inter + *rēgnū*], n., *an interval between two reigns, interregnum.*
- interrogō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus**, [inter + *rogō*], 1, *ask question, examine.*
- interscindō, -scindere, -scidi, -scisus**, [inter + *scindō*], 3, *cut down; cut through, divide by cutting.*
- interserō, -serere, —, —**, [inter + *serō*], 3, *place between, interpose; allege.*
- intersum, -esse, -fui, irr.**, *be between, lie between; be present at, take part in. Impers., interest, it concerns, is important; it makes a difference. magnī interesse, to be of great importance.*
- intervallū, -ī**, [inter + *vāllū*], n., *properly room between two palisades; interval, space, distance. parī intervāllō, at an equal distance.*
- intestīnus, -a, -um**, [intus], adj., *inward, internal, intestine.*
- intexō, -texere, -texui, -textus**, [in + *texō, weave*], 3, *weave in, interweave.*
- intrā, adv. and prep. with acc.** only, *within; of time, during.*
- intrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus**, [cf. *intrā*], 1, *go into, enter; penetrate, reach.*
- intrōdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductus**, [intrō + *dūcō*], 3, *lead into, bring into.*
- introitus, -ūs**, [intrō, cf. *eō*], m., *going in, entering, entrance.*
- intrōmissus**, see *intrōmittō*.
- intrōmittō, -mittere, -misi, -missus**, [intrō + *mittō*], 3, *send into, send in, let in.*
- intrōrsus**, [intrō + *versus*], adv., *within, inside.*
- intueor, -tuēri, -tuitus sum**, [in + *tueor*], 2, dep., *look upon, look closely at; regard, consider.*
- intuleram**, see *inferō*.
- intumescō, -tumescere, -tumui, —**, 3, *inch., swell up, swell, rise; become angry; swell with pride.*
- intus, adv., within, on the inside.**
- inūaltātus, -a, -um, comp. -ior**, [in- + part. of *ūsitor*, freq. of *ūtor*], adj., *unusual, unfamiliar, novel, strange.*
- inūtilis, -e, comp. -ior**, [in- + *ūtilis*], adj., *useless, unserviceable, of no use; hurtful, injurious.*
- invādō, -vādere, -vāsī, -vāsus**, [in + *vādō*], 3, *go into, enter; attack, invade; seize, take possession of.*
- invalidus, -a, -um**, [in- + *validus*], adj., *not strong, weak, feeble.*
- invehō. -vehere, -vexī, -vectus**, [in + *vehō*], 3, *carry in, carry*

to; pass., ride into, sail to; fall upon, attack; attack with words, inveigh against.

inveniō, -venire, -vĕnī, -ventus, [in + veniō], 4, come upon, find, meet with; discover; learn, find out; acquire.

inveterāscō, -veterāscere, -veterāvī, —, [in + veterāscō, from vetus], 3, grow old; become established, become fixed; establish one's self.

invicem or **in vicem**, adv., by turns, one after the other.

invictus, -a, -um, [in + victus], adj., unconquered; unconquerable, invincible.

invidēō, -vidēre, -vidī, -visus, [in + videō], 2, look askance at; envy, be prejudiced against.

invidia, -ae, [cf. invidēō], f., envy, jealousy; ill-will, odium, unpopularity.

inviolātus, -a, -um, [in + violātus], adj., unhurt, uninjured, inviolate; inviolable.

invisus, -a, -um, [part. of invidēō], adj., hated, detested, hateful.

invītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 1, invite, ask; feast, entertain; allure, attract.

invītus, -a, -um, adj., against the will, unwilling. **sē invītō**, against his will.

locus, -ī, m., pl. **iocī** or **ioca**, -ōrum, jest, joke.

Iōnes, -um, [Iōnes], m., pl., inhabitants of Ionia, Ionians.

Iōnia, -ae, [Iōnia], f., Ionia, the west-central part of Asia Minor, bordering on the Aegean Sea. See map opp. p. 93.

Iovis, Iovī, see Iuppiter.

ipse, -a, -um, gen. **ipsius**, dem.

pron., self; himself, herself, itself, themselves; he, they (emphatic); very; often best rendered freely, very, just, mere, in person. **ipsius castra**, his own camp. **ipsum esse Dumnorigem**, that Dumnorix was the very man.

Irācundus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, [īra, wrath], adj., irascible, passionate.

Irāscor, **irāsci**, **irātus sum**, [īra], 3, dep., be angry.

Irātus, -a, -um, [part. of irāscor], adj., angered, enraged, violent, furious.

irrētiō, -ire, -īvī, -ītus, 4, entrap, entangle, catch.

Irīdeō, -rīdēre, -rīsī, -rīsus, [in + rīdeō, laugh], 2, laugh at, make fun of, ridicule.

irridiculē, [in- + ridiculē], adv., without wit. **nōn irridiculē**, humorously.

irruō, -ruere, -ruī, —, [in + ruō], 3, rush in, invade, make an attack.

is, **ea**, **id**, gen. **ēius**, dem. pron., he, she, it; that, this, the, the one; before **ut**, **is** = **tālis**, such; after **et**, and that too; after **neque**, and that not; with comparatives **abl. eō** = the, all the; as **eō magis**, all the more.

iste, **ista**, **istud**, gen. **istius**, dem. pron., that of yours, that, this; he, she, it; such.

ita, [cf. **is**], adv., in this way, so, thus; in the following manner, in such a way, accordingly; of this kind.

Italia, -ae, f., Italy.

Italicus, -a, -um, adj., of Italy, Italian. As subst., **Italici**, -ōrum, m., pl., the Italians, as distin-

guished from the Roman citizens.

Italus, -a, -um, [Italia], adj., of Italy, Italian. As subst., Italus, -ī, m., an Italian.

itaque, = et ita, and so.

itaque, [ita + que], adv., and thus, accordingly, therefore, consequently.

item, adv., also, further; just so, in like manner.

iter, itineris, [cf. eō, ire], n., journey, line of march, march; road, route. **māgnum iter**, forced march, from 20 to 25 miles a day.

iterum, adv., again, a second time.

iuba (juba), -ae, f., mane.

Iuba, -ae, m., Juba, the name of a king of Numidia, who sided with Pompey and was defeated by Caesar.

iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussus, 2, order, give orders, bid, command, decree, enact.

iūcundus, -a, -um, comp. iūcundior, sup. iūcundissimus, adj., pleasant, agreeable, delightful.

iūdex, -icis, [iūs, cf. dicō], m. and f., judge, juror.

iūdictum (iūdicium), -ī, [iūdex], n., legal judgment, decision, decree; place of judgment, court, trial; opinion, judgment. **optimum iūdicium facere**, to pass a very favorable opinion.

iūdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [iūdex], 1, examine judicially, judge; judge of, think, form an opinion of, infer; proclaim, declare, resolve, conclude.

iugulum, -ī, (dim. of iugum), n., collar bone; throat, neck.

iugum (jugum), -ī, [iug, cf. iungō],

n., yoke; of mountains, ridge, summit, chain. sub iugum mittere, to send under the yoke. See x. to p. 118, l. 15.

Iugurtha, -ae, m., Jugurtha, king of Numidia, who carried on war with the Romans between 111 and 106 B.C. He was defeated by Marius.

Iūlius, -a, name of a celebrated Roman gens. See Caesar. To this gens belonged Iūlia, -ae, f., Julia, daughter of Caesar, and wife of Pompey.

iumentum (jumentum), -ī, [for *iugimentum, root iug in iungō], n., yoke-animal, beast of burden, draught-animal, used of horses, mules, and asses.

iungō (jungō), iungere, iūnxī, iūnc-tus, 3, join together, join, connect, unite.

iūnior, -ius, comp.; see iuvenis.

Iūnius, -a, name of a prominent Roman gens. See Brūtus.

Iūnō, -ōnis, f., the goddess Jūnō, sister and wife of Jupiter.

Iuppiter, Iovis, m., Jupiter, the highest of the gods.

Iūra (Jūra), -ae, m., Jura, a range of mountains extending from the Rhine to the Rhone (about 170 miles), and forming the boundary between the Helvetians and the Sequanians. See map opp. p. 114.

iūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [iūs], 1, swear, take oath; swear to; swear by, call to witness.

iūs, iūris, n., that which is binding, right, justice; court of justice, place of trial; legal right, authority, permission, law; abl., iūre, justly. **iūs gentium**, universal law, the law of nations. **iūris**

cōsultus, a lawyer. **iūre belli**, by the laws of war. **in suō iure**, in the exercise of his own rights.

iūs iurandum, or **iūsiurandum**, **iūris iurandi**, [iūs + gerundive of iūrō], n., oath.

iussus, -ūs, only abl. sing. in use, [iubeō], m., order, command.

iūstitia, -ae, [cf. iūs], f., justice, uprightness.

iūstus (jūstus), -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, [iūs], adj., just, rightful, fair; proper, suitable, due.

iuvencus, -ī, [iuvenis], m., young bullock.

iuvenis, -is, comp. iūnior, adj., young, youthful. As subst., **iuvenis**, -is, m., young person, youth (between twenty and forty years). **iūniōrēs**, -um, m., pl., those eligible for military service, the members of each century who were under forty-six years of age.

Iuventius, -ī, m., *Iuventius*, family name of *P. Iuventius*, defeated by *Andiscus* in 149 B.C.

iuvō (juvō), -āre, iūvī, iūtus, 1, help, aid, assist.

iuxtā, adv. and prep. :

(1) As adv., near, by the side of.

(2) As prep., with acc., very near, close to.

ivissem, see **eō**.

K.

Kal. = **Kalendae**.

Kalendae, -ārum, f., pl., *Calends*, the first day of the month. **Kalendae Aprilēs**, the first of April.

L.

L., with proper names = *Lūcius*, a Roman forename.

Labeō, -ōnis, m., *Labeo*, surname of *Q. Fabius Labeo*, consul 183 B.C.

Lābiēnus, -ī, m., *Titus (Attius?) Labienus*, the most prominent of Caesar's lieutenants in the Gallic War. Labienus gained important successes over the Treveri (54-53 B.C.), and the Parisii (52 B.C.). In the Civil War he went over to the side of Pompey, but displayed small abilities as a commander, and fell at the battle of Munda, 45 B.C.

labor, -ōris, m., labor, toil, exertion; hardship, distress.

labōriōsō, comp. **labōriōsius**, sup. **labōriōsissimō**, [labōriōsus], adv., laboriously.

labōrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [labor], 1, labor, toil; make effort, strive; work out, produce by toil; suffer, be afflicted; be hard pressed.

Lacedaemōn, -ōnis, [Λακεδαίμων], f., *Lacedaemon, Sparta*, the chief city of Laconia, in the southeastern part of the Peloponnesus. See map opp. p. 75.

Lacedaemonius, -a, -um, adj., of *Lacedaemon, Lacedaemonian*. As subst., **Lacedaemonii**, -ōrum, m., pl., the *Lacedaemonians*, inhabitants of *Lacedaemon*.

lacerō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 1, tear to pieces; slander, asperse, abuse.

lacessō, -ere, -ivi, -itus, 3, excite, provoke, challenge; annoy, assail, attack, urge, stimulate.

lacrima, -ae, f., tear.

lacrimō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [lacrima], 1, shed tears; lament, bewail.

lacus, -ūs, lake, pond, pool.

laetitia, -ae, [laetus], f., joy, exultation, rejoicing.

laetus, -a, -um, adj., *cheerful, joyful, glad*.

Laevinus, see **Valerius**.

lāmina, -ae, f., *thin slice; plute, leaf*.

Lamprus, -ī, [Λάμπρος], m., *Lamprus*, a teacher of music at Athens. He is said to have been the instructor of Socrates in music and dancing.

Lampsacus, -ī, [Λάψακος], f., *Lampsacus*, a city of Asia Minor, situated in Mysia on the Hellespont. See map opp. p. 93.

laniō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [lanius], 1, *tear in pieces, mangle, lacerate*.

lapis, -idis, m., *stone; mile-stone*.

laqueus, -ī, m., *noose, snare, halter*.

Lārentia, -ae, f., see **Acca**.

largior, **largiri**, **largitus** sum, [largus, abundant], 4, dep., *give freely, impart, bestow; bribe*.

largiter, [largus, abundant], adv., *abundantly, much*. **largiter** posse, *to have great influence*.

largitiō, -ōnis, [largior], f., *giving freely, generosity, largess; bribery*.

lassitūdō, -inis, [lassus, weak], f., *faintness, weariness, exhaustion*.

lātē, comp. **lātius**, sup. **lātissimē**, [lātus], adv., *widely, broadly, extensively*. **longē lātēque**, *far and wide*. **quam lātissimē**, *as far as possible*.

latebra, -ae, [lateō], f., usually pl., *hiding-place, retreat*.

lateō, -ēre, -uī, —, 2, *lie hid, be concealed; escape notice*.

latericius, -a, -um, [later, brick], adj., *made of bricks, brickwork*.

Latinus, -a, -um, adj., *of Latium, Latin*. As subst., **Latīnī**, -ōrum, m., pl., *the Latins*.

Latīnus, -ī, m., *Latīnus*, mythical king of Latium.

lātitudō, -inis, [lātus], f., *width, breadth, extent*.

lātius, see **lātē**.

Latobrigī, -ōrum, m., pl., a tribe about the headwaters of the Danube, bordering on the Tulingi. See map opp. p. 114.

lātrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 1, *bark; bark at*.

latrō, -ōnis, m., *freebooter, highwayman, robber, brigand*.

lātūrus, see **ferō**.

lātus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, adj., *broad, wide; of territory, extensive*.

latus, -eris, n., *side; of an army, flank*. **latus apertum**, *exposed flank*. **ab latere**, *on the flank*.

laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [laus], 1, *praise, extol*.

laurea, -ae, f., *laurel-tree, bay; laurel crown*.

laus, **laudis**, f., *praise, glory, renown; title to praise, merit, excellency*.

Lāvīnia, -ae, f., *Lāvīnia*, daughter of King Latinus.

Lāvīnium, -ī, n., *Lāvīnium*, a town in Latium. See map, frontispiece.

laxitās, -ātis, f., *width, spaciousness*.

laxō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [laxus], 1, *extend, open, expand, spread out; open, undo*.

lectica, -ae, f., *litter, sedan-chair*.

lectulus, -ī, [dim. of lectus], m., *small couch, bed*.

lēctor, -ōris, [cf. legō], m., *reader*.

lēgātīō, -ōnis, f., *embassy, legation, office of ambassador; generally referring to persons (= lēgātī), deputation, embassy, envoys*.

lĕgātus, -ī, m., *ambassador, legate, envoy*; of the army, *lieutenant, deputy*.

legiō, -ōnis, [cf. *legō*, *collect*], f., *legion*. See Intro. p. 9, fol.

legiōnārius, -a, -um, [*legiō*], adj., of a *legion, legionary*.

legō, *legere*, lēgi, lēctus, 3, *bring together, gather, collect*; *choose, appoint*; *review, read*.

Lemannus, -ī, m., in Caesar always with *lacus, Lake Geneva*.

Lēmnius, -a, -um, adj., of *Lemnos, Lemnian*. As subst., *Lēmnius*, -ī, m., *inhabitant of Lemnos, Lemnian*.

Lēmnus, -ī, [Λῆμνος], f., *Lemnos*, an island in the northern part of the Aegean Sea. See map opp. p. 75.

lēnitās, -ātis, [lēnis], f., *smoothness, gentleness*.

lēniter, comp. *lēnius*, sup. -issimē, [lēnis], adv., *mildly, gently, slightly*.

lēnōcinium, -ī, n., *allurement, enticement, charm*; *personal adornment*.

Lentulus, -ī, m., *Lentulus*, name of a distinguished family of the Cornelian gens; in this book, *P. Cornēlius Lentulus Sūra*, a prominent member of the Catilinarian conspiracy.

lentus, -a, -um, [cf. *lēnis*], adj., *pliant, flexible, tough*; *slow, sluggish*; *easy, calm*.

leō, -ōnis, [λέων], m., *lion*.

Leōnidās, -ae, [Λεωνιδās], m., *Leonidas*, a king of Sparta, who fell at Thermopylae while defending the pass against the Persians, in 480 B.C.

Lepidus, -ī, m., *Lepidus*, family

name of *M. Aemilius Lepidus*, a member, with Antony and Octavianus, of the second triumvirate.

lētālis, -e, [lētum], adj., *deadly, fatal*.

Leuci, -ōrum, [Kel., = 'bright'], m., pl., a Gallic state between the Mediomatrici and the Lingones; the name of their chief city, Tullum, survives in *Toul*.

Leuctra, -ōrum, [Λευκτρα], n., pl., *Leuctra*, a small town in Boeotia, the scene of the defeat of the Lacedaemonians by Epaminondas in 371 B.C. See map opp. p. 75.

Leuctricus, -a, -um, adj., of *Leuctra, at Leuctra*.

levis, -e, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, adj., *light, slight*; *slight, trivial*; *fickle, untrustworthy, false*; of a report, *baseless, unfounded*; of an engagement, *unimportant*. Comp., *more capricious*; *less serious*.

levitās, -ātis, [levis], f., *lightness*; *fickleness, instability*.

lēx, lēgis, f., *enactment, law, rule*; *condition, stipulation*.

libēns, -entis, [part. of *libet*], adj., *willing, with good will, with pleasure, glad*.

libenter, comp. *libentius*, sup. *libentissimē*, [libēns, *glad*], adv., *willingly, gladly, cheerfully*.

liber, -era, -erum, comp. -ior, sup. *liberrimus*, adj., *free, independent*; *unimpeded, unrestricted*; *generous*. As subst., *liber*, -eri, m., *freeman*.

liber, -bri, m., *inner bark of a tree*; *book, work, volume*.

liberālitās, -ātis, [liberālis], f., *geniality, kindness, courtesy*; *generosity, liberality*.

liberaliter, comp. **liberalius**, sup. **-issimē**, [**liberalis**], adv., *graciously, courteously, kindly*.

liberē, comp. **-ius**, sup. **liberrimē**, [**liber**], adv., *freely, without hindrance; boldly; openly; without restraint, licentiously*.

liberī, **-ōrum**, [from **liber**; i.e. the free part of the family], m., pl., *children*.

liberō, **-āre**, **-āvi**, **-ātus**, [**liber**], 1, *set free, liberate, free; absolve, acquit*.

libertās, **-ātis**, [**liber**], f., *freedom, liberty; freedom of speech*.

libertus, **-ī**, [**liber**], m., *freedman*.

liceor, **licērī**, **licitus sum**, 2, dep., *bid, make a bid, at an auction*.

licet, **licēre**, **licuit** and **licitum est**, 2, impers., *it is allowed, lawful, permitted. licet mihi, I am allowed, I may. petere ut liceat, to ask permission*.

Licinius, **-ī**, m., *Licinius*, family name of *P. Licinius Crassus*, cos. 171 B.C.

ligneus, **-a**, **-um**, [**lignum**], adj., *of wood, wooden*.

Ligus, **-uris**, m., *Ligurian, inhabitant of Liguria*, a country in the western part of Cisalpine Gaul. See map opp. p. 30.

Lilybaeum, **-ī**, n., *Lilybaeum*, a promontory on the southern coast of Sicily. See map opp. p. 30.

Lingonēs, **-um**, m., pl., a Gallic state separated from the Sequani by the Arar. See map opp. p. 114.

lingua, **-ae**, f., *tongue*; by metonymy, *language*.

linter, **-tris**, f., *boat, skiff*.

liquefaciō, **-ere**, **-feci**, **-factus**, [**liqueō** + **faciō**], 3, *make liquid, melt; enervate*.

lis, **litis**, f., *strife, dispute, quarrel; suit at law, process; subject of an action, matter in dispute; damages. lis aestimāta est, damages were assessed*.

Liscus, **-ī**, m., chief magistrate (*vergobret*) of the Aedui, 58 B.C.

litigātor, **-ōris**, m., *party to a lawsuit, litigant*.

littera, **-ae**, f., *letter of the alphabet; writing, document; pl., litterae, -arum, writing; letter, despatch; literature*.

litterārius, **-a**, **-um**, [**littera**], adj., *of or belonging to reading and writing. lūdus litterārius, an elementary school*.

litus, **-ōris**, n., *seashore, beach, strand*.

locuplētō, **-āre**, **-āvi**, **-ātus**, [**locuplēs**], 1, *make rich, enrich*.

locus, **-ī**, m., *place, ground; position, situation; room; social position, rank. Pl. loci, -ōrum, m., single places; loca, -ōrum, n., places connected, region, place, spot, locality, region; station, post*.

locūtus, see **loquor**.

longē, comp. **longius**, sup. **longissimē**, [**longus**], adv., *a long way off, at a distance; far; greatly by far. Comp., of space, further; of time, further, longer. quam longissimē, as far as possible. See lātē*.

longinquus, **-a**, **-um**, comp. **-ior**, [**longus**], adj., *far removed, remote, distant; long-continued, prolonged, lasting*.

longitūdō, **-inis**, [**longus**], f., *length*.

longus, **-a**, **-um**, comp. **longior**, sup. **longissimus**, adj., *long, extended; lasting, prolonged; distant, remote*.

Longus, -ī, m., *Longus*, surname of *Ti. Sempronius Longus*, colleague of P. Cornelius Scipio in the consulship, 218 B.C.

loquor, loquī, locūtus sum, 3, dep., *speaking, talk; say, tell.*

Lūcānus, -a, -um, adj., *Lucanian*, of *Lucania*, a province in south-western Italy. As subst., *Lūcānus*, -ī, m., *Lucanian, inhabitant of Lucania.*

Lūcius, -ī, abbreviated *L.*, m., *Lucius*, a Roman forename.

Lucrētia, -ae, f., *Lucretia*, wife of *Tarquinius Collatinus*, and a type of the Roman matron of the olden time.

Lucrētius, -ī, m., *Lucretius*, the father of *Lucretia*.

lūctor, -ārī, -ātus sum, 1, dep., *wrestle, struggle, strive, contend.*

lūctus, -ūs, [cf. *lugeō*], m., *sorrow, mourning, grief.*

lūcus, -ī, m., *sacred grove; wood, grove.*

lūdus, -ī, m., *game, play; public game; sport, jest.*

lūgeō, -ēre, lūxi, lūctus, 2, *grieve, lament; deplore.*

lūgubris, -e, [cf. *lugeō*], adj., of *mourning, mourning; doleful, mournful.*

lūmen, -inis, n., *light; light of the eye, eye; glory, ornament.*

lūna, -ae, f., *the moon.*

lupa, -ae, f., *she-wolf.*

lupus, -ī, m., *wolf.*

luscīnia, -ae, f., *nightingale.*

Lūsītānia, -ae, f., *Lusitania*, a district in Spain corresponding very nearly to modern Portugal. See map, frontispiece.

Lūsītānus, -a, -um, adj., of *Lusitania*. As subst., m., pl.,

people of Lusitania, Lusitanians.

lūstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [lūstrum], 1, *light up, illuminate; review, inspect, survey, examine; purify.*

Lutātius, -ī, m., *Lutatius*, name of a Roman gens. In this book refers to :

(1) *C. Lutatius Catulus*, consul in 241 B.C. He brought the first Punic war to an end by his naval victory near the Aegates Islands.

(2) *Q. Lutatius Catulus*, who aided *Marius* in defeating the Cimbri at *Vercellae* in 101 B.C.

lūx, lūcis, f., *light, daylight. primā lūce, at daybreak.*

lūxi, see *lugeō*.

lūxuria, -ae, [lūxus, excess], f., *high living, luxury; extravagance.*

lūxuriōsē, comp. *lūxuriōsius*, sup. *lūxuriōssimē*, [lūxuriōsus], adv., *luxuriously, voluptuously.*

lūxuriōsus, -a, um, [lūxuria], adj., *luxuriant; excessive; luxurious, voluptuous.*

lūxus, -ūs, m., *excess, indulgence, luxury; splendor.*

Lŷsis, -idis, [Λŷsis], m., *Lysis*, a Pythagorean philosopher from *Tarentum*, a teacher of *Epaminondas*.

M.

M., with proper names = *Mārcus*, a Roman forename.

M', with proper names = *Mānius*, a Roman forename.

M as a designation of number = 1000.

Macedonia, -ae, f., *Macedonia*, a country north of Greece. See map opp. p. 75.

Macedonicus, -a, -um, [Macedonia], adj., of or belonging to Macedonia, Macedonian.

māchinātīō, -ōnis, [māchinor, contrive], f., contrivance, machine.

māctō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [māctus], 1, magnify, glorify; offer sacrifice; kill.

maculō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [macula, spot], 1, spot, stain; dishonor, defile.

Maecēnās, -ātis, m., Maecenas, family name of C. Cilnius Maecēnās, an intimate friend and trusted counsellor of Augustus.

maestus, -a, -um, adj., full of sadness, sad, gloomy, dejected.

magis, sup. **māximē**, [cf. māgnus], adv. in comp. degree, more, rather. **eō magis**, all the more. Sup. **māximē**, very greatly, exceedingly, chiefly, especially. **quam māximē**, as much as possible. **ūnus omnium māximē**, most of all.

magister, -trī, [cf. māgnus], m., master, chief; teacher, guardian. **magister equitum**, master of the horse.

magistrātus, -ūs, [magister], m., office of master, civil office, magistracy; magistrate, public officer.

Māgnēsia, -ae, [Μαγνησία], f., Magnesia, a city on the river Meander in Caria, in southwestern Asia Minor. See map opp. p. 93.

māgnificus, -a, -um, comp. **māgnificentior**, sup. **māgnificentissimus**, [māgnus, cf. faciō], adj., great, noble, distinguished; splendid, magnificent.

māgnificentissimē, [māgnificus], adv., sup., most grandly, most splendidly.

māgnitūdō, -inis, [māgnus], f., greatness; size, bulk; great number.

māgnopere, [for māgnō opere, abl. of māgnum + opus], adv., very much, greatly, specially, deeply; earnestly, urgently.

māgnus, -a, -um, comp. **māior** (māior), sup. **māximus**, adj., great, large, powerful; noble, great; mighty, loud; important, weighty; comp., more; sup., greatest, very great, largest, very large. As subst., **māiōrēs**, -um, m., pl., forefathers, ancestors. **māiōrēs nātū**, lit., those older by birth, the old men, elders. **Māgnus**, -ī, m., the Great, surname of Cn. Pompēius.

Māgō or **Māgōn**, -ōnis, [Μάγων], m., Mago, a brother of Hannibal.

māiestās, -ātis, [māior], f., greatness, dignity; authority, sovereign power. **crimen māiestātis**, charge of high treason.

māior, -ius, see māgnus.

male, [malus], comp. **pēius**, sup. **pessimē**, adv., badly, wickedly; imperfectly, barely, scarcely, with difficulty; unsuccessfully, unfortunately.

maleficium, -ī, [maleficus], n., mischief, outrage, harm.

mālō, **mälle**, **mālui**, —, [magis + volō], irr., prefer, choose rather, had rather.

malum, -ī, [malus], n., evil, mischief, misfortune, calamity; wrong-doing, evil deed.

malus, -a, -um, comp. **pēior**, sup. **pessimus**, adj., bad, wicked; unfavorable, unfortunate.

Mancinus, -ī, m., Mancinus, surname of C. Hostilius Mancinus.

mandātum, -ī, [part. of **mandō**], n., *commission, order, command, injunction, instruction.*

mandō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [manus + dō], 1, *commit, entrust, commission; order, command, direct.*

maneō, **manēre**, **mānsī**, **mānsus**, 2, *remain, tarry; abide, pass the night; last, endure, continue; wait for.*

Mānilius, -ī, m., *Mānilius*, family name of *M'*. *Mānilius*, consul in 149 B.C.

manipulus, -ī, [manus + **PLE** in **pleō**, because the first standard of a manipule was a *handful* of hay raised on a pole], m., *company* of soldiers, *maniple*, one-third of a cohort.

Mānlius, -ī, m., *Mānlius*, name of a Roman gens. In this book refers to :

(1) *T. Mānlius Torquātus*, who distinguished himself in the war against the Gauls in 361 B.C.

(2) *Cn. Mānlius Volsō*, consul in 189 B.C.; he was victor over the Galatians, the allies of Antiochus.

mānō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 1, *flow, run, trickle; give forth; extend, be diffused, spread.*

mānsuētūdō, -inis, [mānsuētus, *tame*], f., *tameness, mildness, gentleness, compassion.*

Mantinēa, -ae, [Μαντινεία], f., *Mantinēa*, a city of Arcadia, near which Epaminondas defeated the Lacedaemonians in 362 B.C. See map opp. p. 75.

manūmittō, -ere, -misi, -missus, [manus + mittō], 3, *release, emancipate, set free.*

manus, -ūs, f., *hand; work, skill;*

force, strength; band, troops. ad manum, near, close. ad manum scriba, private secretary. manūs dēdere, to yield.

Marathōn, -ōnis, acc. **Marathōna**, [Μαραθών], f., *Marathon*, a town on the eastern shore of Attica, the scene of the defeat of the Persians by the Athenians in 490 B.C. See map. opp. p. 75.

Marathōnius, -a, -um, adj., of *Marathon*, at *Marathon*, *Marathonian*.

Mārcellus, -ī, [dim. of **Mārcus**], m., *Mārcellus*, family name. In this book refers to :

(1) *M. Claudius Mārcellus*, the 'Sword of Rome,' who captured Syracuse in 212 B.C.

(2) *M. Claudius Mārcellus*, consul in 183 B.C.

Mārcius, -a, name of a Roman gens. In this book are mentioned :

(1) *Ancus Mārcius*, fourth king of Rome.

(2) *C. Mārcius Coriolānus*. See p. 37.

(3) *L. Mārcius Cēnsōrinus*, consul in 149 B.C.

Marcomanī, -ōrum, [Ger. = 'Men of the Border,' 'Frontier-guard'], m. pl., Germanic people the location of which is doubtful. Cf. Mommsen, *History of Rome*, ed. of 1895, vol. v., p. 31, n.

Mārcus, -ī, abbreviated **M.**, m., *Marcus*, a Roman forename.

Mardonius, -ī, [Μαρδόνιος], m., *Mardonius*, a Persian general under Xerxes; he was defeated at Plataea in 479 B.C. by Pausanias.

mare, **maris**, n., *the sea. Mare Superum, the upper sea, the Adriatic.*

margarīta, -ae, f., *pearl.*

maritimus, -a, -um, [mare], adj., *of the sea, by the sea, near, bordering on, the sea; maritime, sea.*

maritus, -a, -um, adj., *of marriage, nuptial.* As subst., **maritus**, -ī, m., *married man, husband.*

Marius, -ī, m., *Gaius Marius*, one of the greatest Roman generals; born 157 B.C., near Arpinum, died 86 B.C.; famous for his victories over Jugurtha and the Cimbri and Teutones; seven times consul, remaining to the end the bitter foe of the aristocratic party and the most formidable opponent of Sulla.

marmoreus, -a, -um, [marmor], adj., *of marble, marble.*

Mars, **Mārtis**, m., *Mars*, the Roman god of war; by metonymy, *war, battle.* **dubiō Mārte**, *in an indecisive contest.*

Marsī, -ōrum, m., *the Marsī*, a people living in a district just east of Latium.

Mārtius, -a, -um, adj., *of Mars, to Mars, martial; of the month of March, of March.*

māssa, -ae, f., *lump, mass.*

matara, -ae, [Kel., = 'missile'], f., *javelin, spear.*

māter, -tris, f., *mother.* **mātrēs familiae**, *matrons.*

mātricida, -ae, [māter, cf. caedō], m., *murderer of a mother, matricide.*

mātrimōnium, -ī, [māter], n., *marriage.* *in mātrimōnium dare*, *to give in marriage.* *in mātrimōnium dūcere*, *to marry.*

Matrona, -ae, f., *Marne*, which rises near the head-waters of the Meuse (*Mosa*) and flows to the northwest, joining the Seine (*Se-*

quana) four miles above Paris, after a course of more than two hundred miles. See map opp. p. 114.

mātrōna, -ae, [māter], f., *a married woman, wife, matron.*

mātūrō, comp. **mātūrius**, sup. **mātūrrimē**, [mātūrus], adv., *early.* *quam mātūrrimē*, *as early as possible.*

mātūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [mātūrus], 1, *make haste, hasten.*

mātūrus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. **mātūrrimus**, adj., *ripe; early.*

māximē, [māximus], see *magis*.

māximus, see *māgnus*.

Māximus, see *Fabius*.

Mēdicus, -a, -um, adj., *of Media.*

mēdicus, -ī, m., *doctor, physician, surgeon.*

mediocriter, comp., **mediocrius** [mediocris], adv., *moderately, in a slight degree.* *nōn mediocriter*, *in no moderate degree.*

meditor, -ārī, -ātus sum, 1, dep., *reflect, consider, meditate; plan, devise; practise.*

medium, -ī, [medius], n., *middle, centre, intervening space.* *in medium prōferre*, *to produce, offer, bring out.*

medius, -a, -um, adj., *in the middle, in the midst, middle, mid-; moderate.* *medius utriusque*, *half-way between both.* *media nox*, *midnight.* *dē mediā nocte*, *just after midnight.*

Mēdus, -ī, [Mēdos], m., *inhabitant of Media, Mede.*

melior, adj., see *bonus*.

melius, adv., see *bene*.

membrum, -ī, n., *member (of the body), part, limb.*

Memmius, -ī, m., *Memmius*, gen-

tile name of *C. Memmius Gemellus*, an opponent of Julius Caesar. He secured the consulship, however, by Caesar's aid, in 54 B.C.

memorābilis, -e, [memorō], adj., worth telling, memorable; remarkable.

memoria, -ae, [memor, mindful], f., memory, recollection, remembrance; account, narration. *memoriā tenēre*, to recollect. *nostrā memoriā*, in our own day. *memoriā prōditum*, reported, handed down by tradition.

Menapii, -ōrum, m., pl., a Belgic people between the Mosa (*Meuse*) and the Scaldis (*Schelde*). See map opp. p. 114.

Meneclidēs, -is, [Μενεκληδης], m., *Meneclides*, a Theban orator, an opponent of Epaminondas.

Menēnius, -ī, m., *Menēnius*, family name of *Menēnius Agrippa*.

mēns, *mentis*, f., mind, intellect; feeling, attitude of mind; judgment, intelligence; purpose, intent, meaning; plan.

mēnsa, -ae, f., table; course at dinner.

mēnsis, -is, m., month.

mentio, -ōnis, f., a calling to mind, mention.

mentior, -īrī, -itus sum, 4, dep., invent, lie, assert falsely.

mercātor, -ōris, [mercor, trade], m., trader, merchant.

mercennārius, -a, -um [mercēs], adj., serving for pay, hired, mercenary. As subst., *mercennārius*, -ī, m., hireling.

mercēs, -ēdis, [cf. mereō, earn], f., pay, hire, wages, reward.

mereō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, and mereor,

-ērī, -itus sum, 2, dep., deserve, be entitled to, be worthy of, merit; earn, acquire, gain, obtain; render service.

mergō, -ere, -sī, -sum, 3, dip, plunge in, swallow up; sink, overwhelm.

merīdiēs, -ōi, [merī-diē, loc., = 'in the clear day'], m., mid-day; south.

meritō, [meritum], adv., justly.

meritum, -ī, [mereō], n., merit, service; worth, value.

meritus, see mereor.

merx, *mercis*, f., goods, wares, merchandise.

Messāla, -ae, m., *Messāla*, family name of *Marcus Valerius Messāla*, consul 61 B.C.

Messēna, -ae, or *Messēnē*, -ēs, [Μεσσηνη], f., *Messēna*, a city in the northeastern part of Sicily. See map opp. p. 30.

metallum, -ī, [μέταλλον], n., metal; mine.

Metellus, see Caecilius.

mētior, mētīrī, mēnsus sum, 4, dep., measure, measure out, distribute.

Metius, -ī, m., *Marcus Metius*, an envoy of Caesar to Ariovistus.

Mettius, -ī, m., *Mettius*, forename of *Mettius Fufetius*, leader of the Albans in the time of Tullus Hostilius.

metus, -ūs, m., fear, dread; terror. mī, voc. of meus.

Micipsa, -ae, m., *Micipsa*, a king of Numidia, died in 118 B.C., leaving the kingdom to his sons, Adherbal and Hiempsal.

Micythus, -ī, [Μίκυθος], m., *Micythus*, a Theban youth, a contemporary of Epaminondas.

migrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 1, depart, remove.

mihī, see ego.

miles, -itis, m., soldier, foot-soldier; coll. by metonymy, soldiery, soldiers.

Milēsius, -a, um, [Milētus], adj., Milesian, of Milētus, an Ionian city on the western coast of Asia Minor, near Ephesus.

Milētus, -i, f., Milētus, an Ionian city on the western coast of Asia Minor, near Ephesus. See map opp. p. 93.

mīlārium, -ī, [mille], n., milestone.

mīliēns, [mille], num. adv., a thousand times. miliens sēstertium, see n. to p. 55, l. 6.

militāris, -e, [miles], adj., of a soldier, soldierly; of war, war, military, warlike. rēs militāris, art of war; military operations.

militia, -ae, [miles], f., military service, warfare, war. Loc., militiae, in the field, in war; often contrasted with domī, at home, in peace.

militō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [miles], 1, be a soldier, perform military service, make war.

mille, indecl. in sing., pl. milia or millia, num. adj., a thousand. Used as subst. with gen., usually in the plural. As subst., n., (sc. passuum), mile.

Miltiadēs, -is, [Μιλτιάδης], m., Miltiades. See p. 75.

mīlvus, -i, m., kite, a bird of prey.

mīmus, -ī, m., comic actor, mimic; farce.

Mīnerva, -ae, [cf. mēns], f., Mīnerva, a Roman goddess corre-

sponding in some respects to the Greek Athena, and afterwards identified with her. She was the patroness of the arts and sciences, and goddess of scientific warfare.

minimē, see parum.

minimus, -a, -um, see parvus.

minister, -tra, -trum, adj., subordinate, ministering. Assubst., minister, -trī, m., attendant, waiter, servant, helper.

minitor, -ārī, -ātus sum, [freq. of minor], 1, dep., threaten, menace.

minor, -ārī, -ātus sum, 1, dep., jut forth; threaten, menace.

minor, -us, see parvus.

Minucius, -a, Gentile name of:

(1) *M. Minucius Rūfus*, master of horse under Fabius Maximus.

(2) *Q. Minucius Thermus*, consul in 193 B.C.

minuō, -uere, -uī, -ūtus, 3, lessen, diminish, reduce; of the tide, ebb; of controversies, settle, put an end to.

minus, see parum.

mīrābilis, -e, [mīror], adj., wonderful, extraordinary, amazing.

mīrificus, -a, -um, [mīrus, cf. faciō], adj., wonderful, marvellous, strange.

mīror, -ārī, -ātus sum, [mīrus], 1, dep., wonder, marvel; wonder at; admire, esteem.

mīrus, -a, -um, adj., wonderful, amazing, extraordinary. mīrum in modum, in a surprising manner.

miscēō, miscēre, miscuī, mixtus, 2, mix, mingle, blend; throw into confusion, disturb.

miser, -era, -erum, comp. -ior, sup. miserrimus, adj., wretched, un-

fortunate, pitiable; poor. As subst., **miseri**, -ōrum, m., pl., *the wretched.*

misericordia, -ae, [misericors], f., *pity, compassion, mercy.* ūtī misericordiā, *to exercise compassion.*

miseror, -ārī, -ātus sum, [miser], 1, dep., *lament, deplore.*

missiō, -ōnis, [mittō], f., *sending; release, liberation; discharge from service, dismissal.*

missus, -a, -um, see mittō.

Mithridātēs, -is, m., *Mithridātēs*, the name of several kings of Pontus; in this book refers to Mithridates VI., surnamed the Great.

Mithridāticus, -a, -um, adj., of *Mithridates*, with *Mithridates*, *Mithridatic.*

mittō, mittere, mīsi, missus, 3, *cause to go, send, send off, despatch; dismiss; of weapons, hurl, throw; shoot.*

Mitylēnae, -ārum, f., pl., *Mitylēne*, chief city of the island of Lesbos, in the northeastern part of the Aegean Sea. See map opp. p. 75.

mōbilitās, -tātis, [mōbilis], f., *quickness of movement, speed; fickleness, changeableness.*

moderātiō, -ōnis, [moderor], f., *controlling, guidance; moderation, self-control.*

modestia, -ae, [modestus], f., *moderation; discretion, sobriety; shame, modesty; honor, dignity.*

modestus, -a, -um, [modus], adj., *moderate, modest, temperate, sober, discreet.*

modicus, -a, -um, [modus], adj., *in proper measure, moderate,*

modest, temperate; middling, mean, mediocre.

modius, -ī, [modus], m., *corn-measure, peck, modius*, containing sixteen sextārii, about two gallons.

modo, [modus], adv., *only, merely; of time, just now, but now.* modo . . . modo, *now . . . now.* nōn modo . . . sed etiam, *not only . . . but also.* dum modo, *provided only, if only.*

modus, -ī, m., *measure, amount; limit, end; manner, fashion, style.* ad hunc modum, *after this manner, in this way.* quem ad modum, *in what way, how; in whatever way, just as.*

moenia, -ium, n., pl., *defensive walls, ramparts, city walls; by metonymy, walled town.*

molestē, comp. -ius, sup. -issimē, [molestus, troublesome], adv., *with trouble or annoyance.* ferre molestē, *to be annoyed, be vexed.*

molestia, -ae, [molestus], f., *trouble, uneasiness, annoyance.*

molestus, -a, -um, [mōlēs], adj., *troublesome, irksome, annoying, disagreeable.*

mōlimentum, -ī, [cf. mōlior, from mōlēs], *great effort, great exertion.*

molitus, see molō.

mōlior, -īrī, -itus sum, [mōlēs], 4, dep., *make an exertion, struggle, toil; build, construct; undertake.*

molliō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, [mollis], 4, *make soft, soften; tame, restrain, render milder, civilize.*

Molō, -ōnis, m., *Molō*, surname of Apollōnius Molō. See Apollōnius.

molō, -ere, -uī, -itus, 3, *grind*.
molita cibāria, meal, coarse flour.

Molossī, -ōrum, [Μολοσσοί], m., pl., the *Molossians*, a people of Epirus, northwest of Greece. See map opp. p. 75.

mōmentum, -ī, [moveō], n., *movement, motion; brief space of time, moment; cause, circumstance*.

moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, 2, *remind, admonish; advise, warn, teach; predict, foretell*.

mōns, montis, m., *mountain, mountain-range, elevation, height*.
summus mōns, top of the height.
rādīcēs montis, foot of the mountain or height. *sub monte*, at the foot of the height.

mōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 1, *point out, indicate, show*.

monumentum, -ī, [cf. moneō], n., *memorial, monument; memorial offering*.

mora, -ae, f., *delay, procrastination; obstruction, cause of delay*.

morātus, -a, -um, see *moror*.

morbus, -ī, [cf. morior, mors], m., *disease, sickness*.

Morinī, -ōrum, [Kel., from mori, = Lat. mare; 'Dwellers by the Sea'], m., pl., a powerful Belgic people, on the sea-coast north of the Lys River and opposite Kent. See map opp. p. 114.

morior, morī and morirī, mortuus sum, fut. part. moritūrus, [cf. mors], 3, dep., *die*.

moror, -ārī, -ātus sum, [mora], 1, dep., *delay, tarry, linger; delay, hinder*.

mors, mortis, f., *death*.

morus, -ūs, [mordeō], m., *biting, bite; pain*.

mortifer, -fera, -ferum, [mors, cf.

ferō], adj., *death-bringing, fatal, deadly*.

mortuus, -a, -um, [part. of morior], adj., *dead*.

mōs, mōris, m., *usage, habit, custom, manner; caprice, humor; pl., customs, manners, conduct; character*. *mōrem gerere*, see gerō.

moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtus, 2, *move, stir, set in motion; remove; affect, stir, influence*. *castra movēre*, to break camp.

mox, adv., *soon, presently; thereupon, next*.

Mūcius, -ī, m., *Mūcius*, family name of Q. Mūcius Scaevola.

mulier, -ieris, f., *woman, female; wife*.

multimodis, [multis, modis], adv., *in many ways, variously*.

multiplex, -icis, [multus, cf. plicō], adj., *with many folds, manifold, repeated, many; many times as great; of many parts*.

multitūdō, -inis, [multus], f., *large number, multitude, throng; the common people*.

multō, [multus], adv., *by much, much, a great deal, far*.

multō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [multa, *fine*], 1, *punish, sentence to pay, fine*.

multum, [multus], adv., *greatly, much*. *multum posse or valēre*, to have great power, influence.

multus, -a, -um, adj., comp. plūs, sup. plūrimus, *much*; pl. *many*. As subst., m., pl., *multī*, -ōrum, *many people*; *plārēs*, -ium, *more, quite a number, several*; neut., sing., *multum*, *much*; *plūs*, *more*; *plūrimum*, *very much*; gen. of

value, *plūrimī*, of very great worth; neut., pl., *multa*, many things, many considerations. *multō diē*, late in the day, when the day was far spent.

Mummius, -ī, m., *Mummius*, family name of *L. Mummius Achaius*, who took and sacked Corinth in 146 B.C.

municipium, -ī, [*mūniceps*], n., free town, town.

mūnimentum, -ī, [*mūniō*], n., fortification, defence.

mūniō, -īre, -ivī, -itus, [*moenia*], 4, defend by a wall, fortify, protect; guard, secure; of roads, make, build.

mūnitiō, -ōnis, [*mūniō*], f., a fortifying, building of fortifications; works of fortification, fortification, intrenchment, defences; defence, protection.

mūnitus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, [part. of *mūniō*], adj., fortified, protected, secure.

mūnus, -eris, n., duty, service, function; present, gift.

mūraena, -ae, f., *muraena*, a kind of sea-fish.

mūrus, -ī, m., wall; rampart, line of works.

mūs, *mūris*, m. and f., mouse.

mūsculus, -ī, [*mūs*], m., a little mouse.

mūsicus, -a, -um, [*μουσικός*], adj., of music. As subst., *mūsica*, -ōrum, n., pl., music.

mūsica, -ae, and *mūsicē*, -ēs, [*μουσική*], f., the art of music, music, often including poetry, according to the Greek conception.

Mutina, -ae, f., *Mutina*, an important city in Cisalpine Gaul,

the modern *Modena*, where *Antony* was defeated by *Octavianus* in 43 B.C. See map opp. p. 30.

Mutinēnsis, -e, adj., of *Mutina*, at *Mutina*.

mūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [freq. of *moveō*], 1, move, remove; change, alter, exchange.

Myūs, -ūntis, [*Μυοῦς*], f., *Myus*, a city of *Ionia*, in the southwestern part of *Asia Minor*, on the river *Meander*. See map opp. page 93.

N.

Nābis, -īdis, m., *Nābis*, a king of *Sparta*.

nactus, -a, -um, see *nancīscor*.

nam, conj., introducing an explanation or reason, for; as an enclitic with interrogative words, hardly translatable as a separate word, *quibusnam*.

Nammēius (*Nammējus*), -ī, m., a *Helvetian* sent as envoy to *Caesar*.

namque, [*nam + que*], conj., for, and in fact, inasmuch as.

nancīscor, *nancīscī*, *nactus* or *nactus sum*, 3, dep., get, obtain, receive; meet with, find, incur, catch, contract.

nārrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 1, make known, say, tell; recount, describe.

nāscor, *nāscī*, *nātus sum*, 3, dep., be born, be produced; arise, grow; begin.

Nāsica, see *Scipiō*.

Nasua, -ae, m., a chieftain of the *Suebi*.

nāsus, -ī, m., nose; sense of smell.

nātiō, -ōnis, [cf. *nātus*], f., birth; race, kind; nation, people.

nātūra, -ae, [*nātus*, from *nāscor*], f., nature, character; natural

- features, situation; nature of things, Nature.*
- nātus**, -a, -um, [part. of *nāscor*], adj., *born, arisen*. As subst., *nātus*, -ī, m., *son*.
- nātus**, -ūs, [cf. *nāscor*], m., used only in abl. sing., *birth*. *māiōrēs nātū*, see *māgnus*.
- naufragium**, -ī, [*nāvis*, cf. *frangō*], n., *shipwreck; ruin, loss*.
- nauta**, -ae, [for *nāvita* from *nāvis*], m., *sailor*.
- nauticus**, -a, -um, [*ναυτικός*], adj., *of ships, nautical, naval*. *nautica castra*, *naval camp*.
- nāvālis**, -e, [*nāvis*], adj., *of ships, nautical, naval*.
- nāvicula**, -ae, [dim. of *nāvis*], f., *small vessel, boat, skiff*.
- nāvigium**, -ī, [*nāvis*, cf. *agō*], n., *vessel, ship, bark, boat*.
- nāvis**, -is, f., *ship*. *nāvis longa*, *ship of war*. *nāvis onerāria*, *ship of burden, transport*. *nāvis trirēmis*, *ship with three banks of oars, trireme*.
- nāvō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [(g) *nāvus*, *busy*], 1, *do with zeal*. *operam nāvāre*, *to act vigorously, do one's best*.
- Naxus**, -ī, [*Náξos*], f., *Naxos*, an island in the central part of the Aegean Sea, the largest of the Cyclades. See map opp. p. 75.
- nē**, adv. and conj. :
- (1) As adv., *not*. *nē . . . quidem*, *not even*; the word emphasized stands between *nē* and *quidem*.
- (2) As conj., *that . . . not, lest, not to*; after words of fearing, *that*; after words of beseeching, ordering, commanding, *not to*. *nē quis*, *that no one*. *nē qua* spēs, *that no hope*. *dēterrēre nē*, *to frighten from*.
- ne**, enclitic interrogative particle, *whether*. **-ne . . . an**, or **-ne . . . -ne**, *whether . . . or*.
- nec**, conj., see *neque*.
- necessāriō** [*necessārius*], adv., *of necessity, unavoidably*.
- necessārius**, -a, um, [*necesse*], adj., *unavoidable, needful, necessary; urgent, pressing; connected by natural ties, related*. *mors necessāria*, *a natural death*. As subst., *necessārius*, -ī, m., *kinsman, relation*.
- necesse**, adj., only in nom. and acc. sing. n., *necessary*.
- necessitās**, -ātis, [*necesse*], f., *unavoidableness, necessity, urgency; fate, destiny; connection, relationship*.
- necessitūdō**, -inis, [*necesse*], f., *necessity; close connection, relationship, friendship, intimacy*. *sortis necessitūdō*, *close official connection*.
- necne**, [*nec* + *-ne*], conj., *or not*. *utrum . . . necne*, *whether or not*.
- necō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 1, *put to death, kill, destroy*.
- nefās**, [*nē* + *fās*], indecl., n., *something contrary to divine law, sin, crime*.
- neglegēns**, -entis, [part. of *neglegō*], adj., *heedless, negligent, careless*.
- neglegō**, -legere, -lēxi, -lēctus, [*nec* + *legō*], 3, *disregard, leave out of consideration, be indifferent to; neglect; overlook, leave unnoticed; despise*.
- negō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 1, *deny, say not, say no*, often = *dicit nōn*; *refuse*.

negōtium, -ī, [nec + ōtium], n., *business, enterprise; effort, trouble, difficulty*. **neque** . . . **quicquam** **negōtī**, and **not** . . . *any trouble*. **negōtium dare**, to direct, command.

Nemetēs, -um, m., pl., a Germanic people west of the Rhine, east of the Mediomatrici; chief city, Noviomagus, now *Speier (Spires)*. See map opp. p. 114.

nēmō, -inis, [nē + homō], pl. and gen. and abl. sing. **not** in use, being replaced by forms from **nūllus**, m. and f., *no man, no one, nobody*.

Neoclēs, -is or -ī, [Νεοκλῆς], m., *Necles*, father of Themistocles.

nepōs, -pōtis, m., *grandson, descendant*.

neptis, -is, [cf. **nepōs**], f., *grand-daughter*.

Neptūnus, -ī, m., *Neptune*, a god of the Romans corresponding to the Greek Poseidon. He was god of the sea and of all great waters.

neque or **nec** [ne, = nē, + que], adv., *and not, nor, and* . . . *not, but* . . . *not, not yet*. **neque** . . . **neque** or **nec**, *neither* . . . *nor*.

nē . . . **quidem**, see **nē**.

nēquīquam, [nē + quīquam], adv., *in vain, to no purpose*.

Nerō, -ōnis, m., *Nero*, surname of *Ti. Claudius Nero*, emperor from 14-37 A.D., and of *C. Claudius Nero*, who defeated Hasdrubal at Sena, in 207 B.C.

Nerviū, -ī, m., a *Nervian*. Pl. **Nerviī**, -ōrum, *the Nervii*, a warlike people of Belgic Gaul, south of the Scaldis (*Schelde*), defeated by Caesar in 57 B.C. at the Sambre with great slaughter; chief

city Bagacum, now *Bavay*. See map opp. p. 114.

nervus, -ī, m., *sinew, muscle*; pl., *power, force*.

nēsciō, -īre, -īvī or -īī, —, [nē + sciō], 4, *not know, be ignorant*. With **quis** or **quid** forms a compound pron. or adj. pron., *I know not who, some one; I know not what, something, some*.

neu, see **nēve**.

neuter, -tra, -trum, gen. **neutrius**, [nē + uter], adj., *neither the one nor the other, neither*. As subst., **neutrī**, -ōrum, m., pl., *neither side, neither force*.

nēve or **neu**, [nē + ve], adv. and conj., *and not, nor, and that* . . . *not, and lest*. **neu** . . . -que, *and not* . . . *but*.

nex, **necis**, f., *death, violent death, murder*. **vitae necisque potestās**, *power over life and death, absolute power*.

niger, -gra, -grum, adj., *black, dark, dusky; gloomy, ill-omened*.

nihil or **nīl**, [nē + hīlum, *trifle*], indecl., n., *nothing*; acc. often with adverbial force, *not at all, by no means*.

nihildum, [nihil + dum], indecl., n., *nothing as yet*.

nīhilum, -ī, [ne, = nē, + hīlum], n., *nothing*. **nihilō**, abl. of degree of difference, lit. *by nothing*; *not at all, in no way*. **nihilō minus**, *none the less*.

nīmius, -a, -um, [nimis], adj., *beyond measure, excessive, too great*.

nisi, [nē + sī], conj., *if not, unless, except*.

nītēns, -entis, [part. of **niteō**], adj., *shining, brilliant; illustrious, conspicuous*.

niteō, -ēre, -uī, —, 2, *shine, glitter; flourish, look beautiful; be conspicuous.*

nītor, nīti, nīxus or nīsus sum, 3, dep., *press upon, lean, support one's self; strive, labor, endeavor; rely on, depend on.*

nō, nāre, nāvī, —, 1, *swim, float.*

nōbilis, -e, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, [cf. nōscō], adj., *noted, renowned; of high rank, noble.* As subst., **nōbilēs**, -um, m., pl., *nobles, men of rank; nōbilissimus*, -ī, m., *man of highest rank; pl., men of highest rank.* **nōbilissimī cūiusque**, *of all those of highest rank.*

nōbilitās, -tātis, [nōbilis], f., *celebrity, fame; nobility, rank; often collective (= nōbilēs), nobility, nobles, men of rank.*

nōbis, see ego.

noceō, -ēre, -uī, —, fut. part., nocitūrus, 2, *do harm, injure, hurt.*

noctū, [old abl. of noctus = nox], adv., *by night, at night.*

noctua, -ae, [nox], f., *night-owl, owl.*

nocturnus, -a, -um, [nox], adj., *of night, by night, nocturnal.*

Nōla, -ae, f., *Nōla*, a town in the central part of Campania, twenty-one miles from Capua; it played a prominent part in the second Punic and Social Wars. See map, frontispiece.

nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, —, [nē, + volō], irr., n., *wish . . . not, not wish, be unwilling.* **nōlī**, nōlīte, with infin., *do not.*

nōmen, nōminis, [cf. nōscō], n., *means of knowing, name, appellation, title; the gentile name; fame, reputation, renown.* **suō**

nōmine, *on his own account.* **nōmen Rōmānum**, *the Roman nation.*

nōminātīm, [nōminō], adv., *by name, especially, particularly.*

nōminō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [nōmen], 1, *call by name, designate, call, name; mention.*

nōn, adv., *not, no.* **nōn nullus** or **nōnnullus**, *some, several.* **nōn numquam**, *sometimes.*

nōnāgēsīmus, -a, -um, [nōnāgintā], adj., *the ninetyeth.*

nōnāgintā, indecl. num. adj., *ninety.*

nōndum, [nōn + dum], adv., *not yet.*

nōn nullus, -a, -um, see nōn.

nōn numquam, see nōn.

nōnus, -a, -um, [for *novēnus, from novem], num. ord. adj., *ninth.*

Nōrēla (Nōrēja), -ae, f., chief city of the Norici, where the Romans were defeated by the Cimbri 113 B.C.; now *Neumarkt*. See map opp. p. 114.

Nōricus, -a, -um, adj., *of the Norici, Norican.* As subst., **Nōrica**, -ae, f., *Norican woman.*

nōs, see ego.

noster, -tra, -trum, [nōs], pron. adj., *our, our own.* As subst., **nostrī**, -ōrum, m., pl., *our men, our side.*

nota, -ae, [cf. nōscō], f., *means of recognition, mark; brand.*

notō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [nota], 1, *mark; indicate, denote; single out, designate; mention, tell; censure, reprimand.*

novem, or **IX**, indecl. num. adj., *nine.*

Noviodūnum, -ī, [Kel., = 'New-town'], n., city of the Suessiones,

on the Axona (*Aisne*), later called *Augusta Suessio*; now *Soissons*. See map opp. p. 114.

novus, -a, -um, sup. **novissimus**, adj., *new, fresh, strange*. Sup., *last, at the rear*. As subst., **novissimī, -ōrum**, m., pl., *those at the rear, the rear*. **novissimum agmen**, *rear of the line of march, the rear*.

nox, **noctis**, f., *night*. **primā nocte**, *at nightfall*. **multā nocte**, *late at night, when the night was far spent*.

nūbilis, -e, [cf. **nūbō**], adj., *marriageable*.

nūbō, **nūbere**, **nūpsī**, **nūptus**, 3, *veil one's self for marriage, be married; marry, wed*.

nūdō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [**nūdus**], 1, *strip, make bare; expose, leave unprotected*.

nūdus, -a, -um, adj., *unclothed, nude, stripped; destitute, barren; unprotected; mere, pure, sole*.

nūllus, -a, -um, gen. **nūllius**, [**nē + ūllus**], adj., *not any, none, no*. As subst., **nūllus**, -ius, m., *no one, nobody*.

num, inter. adv., *usually introducing a question expecting a negative answer, then, now; . . . not so . . . is it?* in ind. questions, *whether, if*. **num etiam**, etc., *could he also? he could not also . . . could he?*

Numa, -ae, f., *Numa*, a Sabine name, forename of *Numa Pompilius*, the second king of Rome.

Numantia, -ae, f., *Numantia*, a city in Spain, captured and destroyed by P. Scipio Africanus in 133 B.C. See map, frontispiece.

Numantinus, -a, -um, [**Numantia**], adj., *of or belonging to Numantia*. As subst., **Numantinus**, -ī, m., *an inhabitant of Numantia, a Numantine*.

numerō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [**numerus**], 1, *count, number, reckon; count out, pay down*.

numerus, -ī, m., *number, quantity; position, rank*.

Numidae, -ārum, [**νομᾶς**, *wanderer*, pl. **νομᾶδες**], m., pl., *inhabitants of Numidia, Numidians*, a people living in Northern Africa, in the region now called Algeria, famous as archers, and employed by the Romans as light-armed troops, as were also the archers of Crete and slingers from the Balearic Islands.

Numidia, -ae, f., *Numidia*, a country in Northern Africa; modern Algeria. See map, frontispiece.

Numitor, -ōris, m., *Numitor*, a king of Alba Longa, who was driven out by his younger brother Amulius, but restored by Romulus and Remus.

nummus, -ī, m., *piece of money, coin; the Roman unit of coinage, sestertius, sesterce; see sēstertium*.

numquam, [**nē**, = **nē**, + **umquam**], adv., *never, not at any time*.

nunc, adv., *now, at present*.

nūncupō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [**nōmen**, **capiō**], 1, *call by name, call, name*.

nūntiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [**nūntius**], 1, *announce, report; give orders*. **nūntiātur**, *word is brought, it is reported*. **quā rē nūntiātā**, *on hearing this*.

nūntius, -a, -um, adj., *that an-*

nounces, making known, informing. As subst., *nūntius*, -ī, m., messenger; message, news, tidings.

nūper, sup. *nūperrimē*, adv., lately, recently.

nūptum, supine of *nūbō*.

nūsqum, [*nē + usquam*], adv., nowhere, in no place; in nothing; for no purpose.

nūtō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [freq. of *nuō*], 1, nod; waver, give way; doubt, hesitate.

nūtrīō, -īre, -īvi, -ītus, 4, suckle, nourish, bring up, rear.

nūtus, -ūs, [*nuō, nod*], m., nod, nodding; bidding, command.

nympha, -ae, f., nymph.

O.

ob, prep. with acc., on account of, for. *ob eam causam*, for that reason. *ob eam rem*, on that account, therefore. *quam ob rem*, wherefore, for what reason.

obaerātus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, [*ob + aes*], adj., in debt. As subst., *obaerātus*, -ī, m.; debtor.

obducō, -ducere, -dūxi, -ductus, [*ob + ducō*], 3, draw before, bring over; overspread, envelop; of a trench, prolong, extend.

obductus, -a, -um, [part. of *obducō*], adj., overspread, cloudy, gloomy.

obeō, -īre, -īvi, -ītus, [*ob + eō*], irr., go to meet; engage in; perform, discharge; fall, perish, die. *diem obiit suprēmum* or *diem obiit*, met his last day, died.

obicīō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus, [*ob + iaciō*], 3, throw before, throw, cast; offer, give up, put in the

hands of; set against, oppose, put in the way; object, taunt, upbraid with.

obitus, -ūs, [*ob*, cf. *eō*], m., approach; going down; destruction, death.

oblātus, part. of *offerō*.

obligō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [*ob + ligō*], 1, bind up; bind, oblige, make liable.

obliviō, -ōnis, [cf. *obliviscor*], f., forgetfulness, oblivion.

obliviscor, -livisci, -litus, 3, dep., forget; with gen. of thing forgotten, disregard.

obnoxius, -a, -um, [*ob + noxius*], adj., liable, addicted, guilty; exposed; submissive, obedient.

oboediō, -īre, -īvi, -ītus, [*ob + audiō*], 4, give ear, listen; obey, be subject.

obruō, -ruere, -rui, -rutum, [*ob + ruō*], 3, overwhelm, hide, bury; overcome, overpower; destroy; overload, surfeit.

obsecrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [*ob + sacrō*, from *sacer*], 1, beseech in the name of all that is sacred, implore, beg.

observō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [*ob + servō*], 1, watch, observe; keep track of; heed, comply with.

obses, -idis, [cf. *obsideō*], m. and f., hostage; security, pledge. Cf. N. to p. 119, l. 20.

obsideō, -sidēre, -sēdi, -sessus, [*ob + sedeō*], 2, sit, stay; besiege, blockade, render impassable.

obsidiō, -ōnis, [*obsideō*], f., siege, blockade.

obsignō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [*ob + signō*], 1, seal up, seal.

obsistō, -sistere, -stiti, -stitus, [*ob + sistō*], 3, take one's place

before, stand in the way; resist, withstand, oppose.

obsolētus, -a, -um, [part. of ob-solēscō], adj., *old, worn out; common, ordinary, poor, worthless.*

obsōnium, -ī, [ὀψώνιον], n., *relish, side-dish.*

obstrictus, -a, -um, see obstringō.

obstringō, -stringere, -strīnxī, -strictus, [ob+stringō, tie], 3, *bind, lay under obligation.*

obstruō, -struere, -strūxī, obstrūctus, [ob+struō], 4, *build against, barricade, stop up.*

obtestor, -ārī, -ātus, [ob+testor], 1, dep., *call as witness, appeal to; implore, adjure.*

obtestātiō, -ōnis, [obtestor, call as witness], f., *solemn charge; entreaty, supplication.*

obtinēō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentus, [ob+teneō], 2, *hold fast, retain, keep, hold; get possession of, obtain; possess, occupy, inhabit.*

obtingō, -tingere, -tigi, —, [ob+tangō], 3, *fall to the lot of, befall, occur; be assigned.*

obtrectātiō, -ōnis, [obtrectō], f., *belittling, detraction, disparagement.*

obtrectātor, -ōris, [obtrectō], m., *detractor, traducer, disparager.*

obtulī, see offerō.

obveniō, -venire, -vēnī, -ventus, [ob+veniō], 4, *fall in with, meet; go to meet; fall to the lot of, fall to.*

obviam, [ob+viam], adv., *in the way, toward, against, to meet. obviam ire, to go to meet. obviam fieri, to meet.*

obvius, -a, -um, [ob+via], adj., *in the way, so as to meet; against,*

to meet, meeting. obvium fieri, to meet. obvium esse, to be in the way, to meet.

obvolvō, -ere, -volvī, -volūtus, [ob+volvō], 3, *wrap around, envelop, cover over.*

occāsiō, -ōnis, [cf. occidō], f., *opportunity, fit time, occasion.*

occāsus, -ūs, [cf. occidō], m., *going down, setting. sōlis occāsus, sunset; the west.*

occidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cīsus, [ob+caedō], 3, *strike down, kill, slay.*

occidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cāsus, [ob+cadō], 3, *fall down, fall; perish.*

occultō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [freq. of occultō, cover], 1, *hide, conceal; keep secret.*

occultus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, [part. of occultō, cover], adj., *hidden, secret, concealed. As subst., ex occultō, from ambush, in ambush. sē in occultum abdere, to go into hiding. in occultō, in hiding, in concealment, in secret.*

occumbō, -ere, occubui, occubitus, [ob+cumbō], 3, *fall in death, die.*

occupō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [ob, cf. capiō], 1, *seize upon, seize, take possession of; fill, occupy; fall upon, attack; of the attention, engage, occupy. occupārī in, with abl., to be engaged in, busy with.*

occurrō, -currere, -curri, rarely -cucurri, -cursurus, [ob+currō], 3, *run to meet, meet; meet with, fall in with, find, encounter; match, offset; resist, oppose; come into mind, occur.*

Oceanus, -ī, [Ὠκεανός], m., *Ocean, the sea*, looked upon by Caesar as one body of water, including the Atlantic Ocean, the English Channel, and the North Sea.

Ocelum, -ī, [Kel., = 'Main Pass' ?], n., a city of the Graioceli in the Alps, now *Usséau*, west of Turin. See map opp. p. 114.

Octāviānus, -ī, m., *Octāviānus, Octavian, C. Octāvius*, who, after his adoption by Julius Caesar, was called *C. Iūlius Caesar Octāviānus*, in accordance with the Roman usage. The title *Augustus* was added in 27 B.C. See p. 67.

Octāvius, -a, the name of a Roman plebeian gens, made patrician by Julius Caesar. In this book are mentioned :

(1) *C. Octāvius*, see *Octāviānus* above.

(2) *Octāvia*, sister of Octavianus and wife of Mark Antony.

octāvus, -a, -um, [octō], num. ord. adj., *eighth*.

octingentī, -ae, -a, or **DCCC**, [octō + centum], num. adj., *eight hundred*.

octō, or **VIII**, indecl. num. adj., *eight*.

octōdecim, or **XVIII**, [octō + decem], indecl. num. adj., *eighteen*.

octōgintā, or **LXXX**, [octō], indecl. num. adj., *eighty*.

oculus, -ī, m., *eye*.

ōdī, *ōdisse*, *ōsūrus*, def., pf. translated as if present, *hate*.

odium, -ī, [ōdī], n., *hatred*.

Oedipūs, -odis or -ī, [Οἰδίπους], m., *Oedipus*, son of Laius, king of Thebes, and Jocasta. He was exposed for death as a child, but was saved, and grew up in igno-

rance of his parentage. He slew his father unwittingly and married his own mother.

offendō, -fendere, -fendī, -fēnsus, [ob + fendō], 3, *hit, dash against; come upon, light upon, find; offend, be offensive*.

offēnsiō, -ōnis, [offendō], f., *stumbling; disfavor, dislike; hurting, wounding; accident, misfortune*.

offēnsus, -a, -um, [part. of offendō], adj., *offended, displeased, vexed*.

offerō, offerre, obtulī, oblātus, [ob + ferō], irr., *bring before, present, offer; cause, inflict; bestow*.

officiōsus, -a, -um, [officiū], adj., *courteous, obliging; obedient, well-trained*.

officiū, -ī, [opus, cf. faciō], n., *service, kindness, favor; duty; discharge of duty, allegiance; employment, office*.

ōlim, [cf. ollus, old form of ille], adv., *at that time, formerly, long since; now and then; sometime, hereafter*.

Olympiodōrus, -ī, [Ὀλυμπιόδωρος], m., *Olympiodorus*, a teacher of Epaminondas.

omittō, -ere, omīsī, omissus, [ob + mittō], 3, *let go, let loose; lay aside; neglect, give up; pass over, say nothing of; lose sight of*.

omnīnō, [omnis], adv., *altogether, in general; after negatives, at all; with numerals, in all, altogether, only. nihil omnīnō, nothing at all*.

omnis, -e, adj., *every, all. Gallia omnis, Gaul as a whole, Gaul in the broad sense. As subst., pl., omnēs, -ium, m., all men, all. omnia, -ium, n., all things, everything*.

onerārius, -a, -um, [onus], adj., of burden. **nāvis onerāria**, ship of burden, transport.

onus, -eris, n., load, burden, weight; cargo.

opera, -ae, [opus], f., service, work, labor; aid, assistance, attention; means, agency. **operam dare**, to take pains, give attention. **operam nāvare**, to act vigorously.

operiō, **operire**, **operui**, **opertus**, 4, cover, cover over.

opifex, -ficia, [opus, cf. faciō], m. and f., workman, artisan.

opiniō, -ōnis, [opinor, think], f., idea, belief, notion; good opinion, reputation; expectation. **opiniō timōris**, impression of fear. **praeter opiniōnem**, contrary to expectation. **alicui in opiniōnem venire**, to occur to any one.

oportet, **oportere**, **oportuit**, 2, impers., it is necessary, it is needful; it behooves; ought; be proper. Often best translated by ought and must.

oppidānus, -a, -um, [oppidum], adj., of the town. As subst., **oppidāni**, -ōrum, m., pl., townspeople, inhabitants of the town.

oppidum, -i, n., fortified town, city; fortified enclosure, refuge. Cf. n. to p. 158, l. 18.

oppleō, -ēre, -ēvi, -ētus, [ob + pleō], 2, fill completely, fill; cover.

oppōnō, -ere, **opposui**, **oppositus**, [ob + pōnō], 3, set against, place opposite, oppose; bring forward, adduce.

opportūnus, -a, -um, comp. **opportūnior**, sup. **opportūnissimus**, adj., fit, adapted; convenient, seasonable.

oppositus, see **oppōnō**.

opprimō, -ere, **oppressi**, **oppressus**, [ob + premō], 3, press against, press down; overthrow, overwhelm, defeat utterly, crush, destroy; weigh down, burden; fall upon, surprise.

opprobrium, -i, [ob + probrum], n., reproach, scandal, disgrace; taunt, abuse.

oppugnātiō, -ōnis, [oppugnō], f., storming of a city, assault, attack, besieging.

oppugnātor, -ōris, [oppugnō], m., assaulter, assailant, besieger.

oppugnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [ob + pugnō], 1, attack, assault; of a city or camp, storm, besiege.

ops, **opis**, nom. and dat. sing. not in use, f., aid, help; influence; might, power, forces; means, riches, wealth. Pl., **opēs**, -um, help; resources, means, wealth; influence; strength.

optimās, -ātis, [optimus], adj., of the best, aristocratic. As subst., m., an adherent of the nobility, aristocrat.

optimē, see **bene**.

optimus, see **bonus**.

optiō, -ōnis, f., choice, free choice; privilege, option.

optō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 1, choose, select; wish, desire.

opus, n., used only in nom. and acc., necessity, need. **opus est**, there is need, it is necessary.

opus, **operis**, n., work, labor; that produced by labor, structure, works, line of works, fortification. Cf. **quantus**.

ōrāculum, -i, [ōrō], n., divine announcement, oracle; prophecy; oracle, the place where oracular responses were given.

ōrātiō, -ōnis, [ōrō], f., *speech, language; harangue, discourse, oration, address, plea; power of oratory, eloquence.*

ōrātor, -ōris, [ōrō], m., *speaker, orator, ambassador.*

orbis, -is, m., *ring, circle, orbit.*
orbis terrae or terrarum, *the whole earth.*

ōrdinō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [ōrdō], 1, *set in order, arrange, adjust; narrate, record.*

ōrdior, -iri, ōrsus sum, [cf. ōrdō], 4, dep., *begin, commence, undertake; describe, tell in detail.*

ōrdō, -inis, m., *row, series, order; company, class, rank; regular succession.*

Orestēs, -is or -ae, [Opéτρης], m., *Orestes*, son of Agamemnon and Clytemnestra. Because he slew his mother, who had murdered Agamemnon, he was pursued by the Furies.

Orgetorix, -īgis, m., [Kel., = 'The King who slays,' 'All-slaughtering King'], a Helvetian lord who formed a plot to seize the supreme power, but was apprehended and died, or committed suicide, before judgment was pronounced.

oriēns, -entis, [part. of orior], adj., *rising.* orientem sōlem, *the rising sun = the east.*

origō, -inis, [orior], f., *beginning, commencement, origin; race, family, stock.* Pl., **Originēs**, -um, the title of Cato's history.

orior, -iri, ortus sum, fut. part. oriturus, 4, pres. oritur, imp. subj. usually oreretur, dep., *arise; be descended, be born; originate, begin, spring from; start from.*

ōrnāmentum, -ī, [ōrnō], n., *ap-*

paratus, equipment; decoration, ornament, distinction.

ōrnātus, -a, -um, comp. ōrnātiōr, sup. ōrnātissimus, [part. of ōrnō], adj., *fitted out, equipped; adorned, embellished; distinguished, illustrious.*

ōrnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 1, *fit out, furnish, provide, equip; adorn, decorate; embellish, set forth.*

ōrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [ōs], 1, *speak; treat, argue, plead; entreat, beseech.*

ortus, -a, -um, [part. of orior], adj., *sprung, descended, born.*

ōs, ōris, n., *mouth, face, features; mouth of a river.*

os, ossis, n., *bone.*

ōsculor, -ārī, -ātus sum, [ōsculum, kiss], 1, dep., *kiss.*

Osiamī, -ōrum, m., pl., a small state in the extreme northwest corner of Gaul. See map opp. p. 114.

ostendō, -tendere, -tendi, -tentus, [obs. old form of ob + tendō], 3, *stretch out, show, display; produce, furnish; point out, set forth, declare; disclose, manifest, make known.*

Ōstia, -ae, f., *Ostia*, the seaport of Rome at the mouth of the Tiber; according to the tradition it was founded by Ancus Marcius. See map. opp. p. 30.

ōstium, -ī, [cf. ōs], n., *door; mouth, entrance.* More commonly plural, *ōstia*, to indicate the mouth of a river.

ōtiōsus, -a, -um, [ōtium], adj., *at leisure, unoccupied, idle; quiet, peaceful, in retirement.*

ōtium, -ī, n., *leisure, vacant time; idleness; peace, quiet.*

ōvum, -ī, n., *egg.*

P.

P., with proper names = **Pūblius**, a Roman forename.

pābulātiō, -ōnis, [cf. **pābulor**], f., foraging, getting fodder.

pābulum, -ī, n., food, fodder, pasturage.

pācō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [pāx], 1, pacify, subdue.

pactum, -ī, [paciscor], n., agreement, contract, bargain.

Padus, -ī, m., the Po, a large river in Cisalpine Gaul. See map opp. p. 30.

Paelignī, -ōrum, m., the Paelignī, a people of central Italy.

paene, adv., almost, nearly.

paeniteō, -ēre, -ui, —, 2, make sorry, cause to repent. Impers.

paenitet, -ēre, -uit, it repents, makes sorry, it grieves.

pāgus, -ī, m., district, canton, generally referring to the inhabitants rather than to the country.

palaestra, -ae, [παλαστρα], f., wrestling-school, place of exercise, gymnasium.

palam, adv., openly, publicly.

Palātium, -ī, [Palēs, an ancient divinity of shepherds], n., the Palatine hill, on which was the residence of Augustus; hence pl., **palātia**, -ōrum, palace. See map opp. p. 53.

pālus, -ī, m., stake, prop, wooden post.

palūs, -ūdis, f., swamp, marsh, bog.

Pamphylus, -a, -um, adj., Pamphylian, of Pamphylia, a province on the southern coast of Asia Minor, between Lycia and Cilicia.

pandō, **pandere**, **pandī**, **passus**, 3, spread out. **passis manibus**, with hands outstretched.

pānis, -is, [cf. **pābulum**], m., bread, loaf.

Papīrius, -ī, m., *Papīrius*, family name of *L. Papīrius Cursor*.

pār, **paris**, adj., equal, like, similar; well-matched; fit, proper, right.

pār atque, same as. **pār proelium**, an indecisive battle. As subst., **pār**, **paris**, m. and f., equal; mate, companion.

parātus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, [part. of **parō**], adj., ready, prepared; equipped, provided.

parcō, **parcere**, **peperci** and **parsi**, **parsus**, 3, act sparingly, be sparing; treat with forbearance; refrain from, spare.

parcus, -a, -um, comp. **parcior**, sup. **parcissimus**, [cf. **parcō**], adj., sparing, frugal, temperate.

parēns, -entis, [part. of **pariō**], m. and f., parent; father, mother.

pāreō, -ēre, -ui, -itus, 2, appear, be visible; be obedient, obey; submit to, be subject to.

pariō, -ere, **peperi**, **partus**, fut. part., **paritūrus**, 3, bring forth, produce, give birth to, lay; effect, accomplish; acquire, obtain.

pariter, [pār], adv., equally, alike; as well, together.

Parius, -a, -um, adj., *Parian*, of *Paros*, relating to *Paros*. As subst., **Parius**, -ī, m., a *Parian*, inhabitant of *Paros*.

parō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 1, prepare, make ready, make ready for, intend, resolve; obtain, secure, purchase.

Paros, -ī, [Πάρος], f., *Paros*, one of the Cyclades, in the Aegean Sea; it was famous for its beautiful white marble. See map opp. p. 75.

parricidium, -i, [pater, caedō], n., *murder of a father, parricide; treason.*

pars, partis, f., *part, portion, share, number; region, district, division; side, direction; party, faction; character, rôle; pl., coll., party.* **pars maior**, *the majority.* **unā ex parte**, *on one side.* **in omnēs partēs**, *in every direction.*

Parthi, -ōrum, m., pl., *Parthians, a Scythian people dwelling south-east of the Caspian Sea, famous as brave warriors and skilful archers.*

partim, [old acc. of **pars**], adv., *partly, in part.*

parum, comp. minus, sup. minimē, adv., *too little, not enough.* As subst., *too little, not enough.* Comp., less. Sup., least, very little; not at all, by no means.

parvulus, -a, -um, [dim. of **parvus**], adj., *very small, very young; slight, trifling.* As subst., **parvulus**, -i, m., *small child, infant.*

parvus, -a, -um, comp. minor, sup. minimus, adj., *small, trifling, insignificant; small, short; short, brief; of price or value, small, low.* **parvī**, gen. of value, *of little worth, of small account.* Comp., smaller, less. As subst., **minus**, n., *less; minimum, n., *the least.* **minus dubitātiōis**, *less hesitation.**

pāscō, pāscere, pāvī, pāstus, 3, *cause to eat, feed; in pass. reflexive with dep. force, graze, browse, feed.*

passus, -ūs, m., *step, pace; as a measure of length, pace (reckoned as a double step, from the place where either foot is raised to the*

place where the same foot rests on ground again), = 4 feet, 10½ inches by English measurement. **mille passuum**, *thousand paces, mile.* See n. to p. 115, l. 23.

passus, see **pandō**.

pāstor, -ōris, [pāscō], m., *herdsman, shepherd.*

patefaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factus, [pateō + faciō], 3, *lay open, open, disclose, bring to light.*

patēns, -entis, comp. patentior, [part. of pateō], adj., *open, accessible.*

pateō, patēre, patuī, —, 2, *be open, lie open, stand open; extend; be accessible.*

pater, -tris, m., *father.* Pl., **patrēs**, -um, *fathers, forefathers.* **patrēs** or **patrēs cōscriptī**, *senators.*

paternus, -a, -um, [pater], adj., *of a father, father's, paternal.*

patiēns, -entis, [part. of patior], adj., *bearing, enduring, patient.*

patior, pati, passus sum, 3, dep., *suffer, bear, support, endure; allow, permit.*

patria, -ae, [cf. pater], f., *fatherland, native land.*

patrius, -a, -um, [pater], adj., *of a father, fatherly; ancestral, of (their) forefathers.*

patrimōnium, -i, [pater], n., *inheritance from a father, inheritance, patrimony.*

patrōcinium, -i, n., *protection, patronage.*

patrōnus, -i, [pater], m., *protector, defender, patron, advocate.*

patruēlis, -e, [patruns], adj., *of a father's brother, of a cousin.* As subst., **patruēlis**, -is, m., *a cousin.*

paucus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup.

-issimus, adj., *little*; pl., *few*. As subst., paucī, -ōrum, m., pl., *few*, *only a few*; pauca, -ōrum, n., pl., *a few words*.

paulatim, [paulum], adv., *little by little, by degrees; gradually; one by one*.

paulisper, [paulum + per], adv., *for a short time, a little while*.

paulō, [properly abl. of degree of difference, from paulus], adv., *by a little, just a little, somewhat*.

paululum, [paulus], adv., *a very little*.

paulum, [paulus], adv., *a little, somewhat*.

Paulus, see Aemilius.

pauper, -eris, adj., *poor, not wealthy, in moderate circumstances; scanty, small*. As subst., m., *poor man*.

paupertās, -ātis, [pauper], f., *poverty, small means, moderate circumstances*.

Pausaniās, -ae, [Παυσανιάς], m., *Pausanias, the victor at Plataea*.

pāvō, -ōnis, m., *peacock*.

pāx, pācis, f., *peace, treaty, agreement; harmony, quiet*.

peccō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 1, *do wrong*.

pecūnia, -ae, [cf. pecus], f., *property, wealth, money*.

pedes, -itis, [pēs], m., *foot-traveler; foot-soldier*; sing., coll., *foot-soldiers, infantry*. Pl., peditēs, -um, *infantry*.

pedester, -tris, -tre, [pēs], adj., *on foot, pedestrian, of the infantry; on land, by land, land*. exercitus *pedester, land-force, infantry*. pedestrēs cōpiae, *infantry*.

Pedius, -ī, m., *Quintus Pedius*,

grandson of Julia, oldest sister of Julius Caesar, under whom he served as lieutenant in the Gallic and Civil Wars; he was named in Caesar's will an heir to a small portion of the estate, and was consul with Octavius in 43 B.C., but died before completing his term of office.

pēior, see malus.

pētus, see male.

pellexit, see pelliciō.

pelliciō, -licere, -lexi, -lectus, 3, *allure, entice, decoy, coax*.

pellis, -is, f., *skin, hide*.

pellō, pēllere, pepulī, pulsus, 3, *beat, strike; drive out, drive away; defeat, rout*.

Pelopidās, -ae, [Πελοπίδης], m., *Pelopidas*.

Peloponnēsus, -ī, [Πελοπόννησος], f., *the Peloponnesus, southern Greece, now called the Morea*.

Penātēs, -ium, [cf. pāscor], m., pl., *Penates, household gods*, whose images were kept in the principal living-room of the house, near the hearth; by metonymy, *home, hearth*.

pendō, pendere, pependī, pēnsus, 3, *suspend; weigh out; pay, pay out*.

pene, prep. with acc., *with, at the house of; in the possession of, in the power of*.

penetrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 1, *enter, penetrate*.

penna, -ae, f., *feather, plume*.

pepercerat, see parco.

peperit, see pariō.

per, prep. with acc., *through; of space, through, across, along, over, among; of time, through, during, in the course of; of agency, means, and manner*,

through, by, by the hands of, by means of, under pretence of; of cause, by reason of; in oaths, in the name of, by.

In composition, *per* adds the force of *through, thoroughly, perfectly, completely, very much, very.*

peragō, -agere, -ēgi, -āctus, [per + agō], 3, *thrust through; agitate; go through with, finish; carry out, execute; set forth, relate, describe, detail.*

peragrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [per + agrō], 1, *wander through, pass through.*

percontātiō, -ōnis, [percontor], f., *questioning inquiry.*

percontor or **percūctor**, -ārī, -ātus sum, [per + contus, pole], 1, dep., a., lit. *search with a pole; ask, inquire, question, investigate.*

percussor, -ōris, [percutiō], m., *striker, murderer, assassin.*

percutiō, -cutere, percussi, percussus, [per + quatiō], 3, *strike through, pierce; strike, knock at; shock, astound; kill, slay; ruin.*

perdō, -dere, -didī, -ditus, [per + dō], 3, *make way with, destroy, ruin, lose.*

perducō, -ducere, perdūxi, perductus, [per + dūcō], 3, *lead through, lead, conduct, bring; persuade, induce; bring over, win over; prolong; pursue; extend, construct, make.*

peregrīnus, -a, -um, [per + ager], adj., *from foreign parts, foreign.* As subst., **peregrīnus**, -ī, m., *stranger, foreigner.*

perennis, -e, [per + annus], adj., *lasting through the year; perennial; continual, perpetual.*

pereō, -īre, -īvi or -īi, -itus, [per + eō], irr., *pass away; perish, disappear; be lost.*

perfacilis, -e, [per + facilis], adj., *very easy, not at all difficult.*

perfectus, see **perficiō**.

perferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, [per + ferō], irr., lit. *carry through; carry, convey, bring, report; endure, suffer, bear, submit to; complete; retain to the end.*

perficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus, [per + faciō], 3, *finish, complete, perform, accomplish, carry out; cause, effect.*

perfidia, -ae, [perfidus], f., *faithlessness, treachery.*

perfringō, -fringere, -frēgi, -fractus, [per + frangō], 3, *break through.*

perfruo, -frui, fructus sum, 3, dep., *enjoy fully, be delighted.*

perfuga, -ae, [cf. perfugiō], m., *deserter.*

perfugiō, -fugere, -fūgi, —, [per + fugiō], 3, *flee for refuge, desert.*

perfungor, -fungi, -fūctus sum, [per + fungor], 3, dep., *fulfil, perform; go through, undergo, endure.*

Pergamēnus, -a, -um, adj., *of Pergamum, a city in Mysia.* **Pergamēnus**, -ī, m., *a citizen of Pergamum.* See map opp. p. 93.

pergō, -ere, perrēxi, perrēctus, [per + regō], 3, *go on, proceed, hasten, continue, march.*

periclitor, -ārī, -ātus sum, [periculum], 1, dep., *try, prove, test; be in danger, incur danger.*

periculōsus, -a, -um, comp. **periculōsior**, sup. **periculōsissimus**, [periculum], adj., *dangerous, perilous.*

periculum, -ī, n., *trial; risk, danger, peril*.

peritus, -a, -um, comp. **peritior**, sup. **peritissimus**, adj., *experienced, practised, skilled, expert, acquainted with*.

perlātus, see **perferō**.

permaneō, -manēre, -mānsī, -mānsūrus, [per + maneō], 2, *continue, stay, remain*.

permittō, -ere, permīsi, permissus, [per + mittō], 3, *let pass; cast, hurl; hand over, entrust, surrender; permit, allow*.

permōtus, see **permovēō**.

permovēō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, [per + moveō], 2, *deeply move, greatly disturb, alarm; influence, induce*.

permūtātīō, -ōnis, [permūtō], f., *change, exchange*.

permūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [per + mūtō], 1, *change throughout; interchange, exchange*.

perniciēs, -ēī, f., *destruction, death, ruin, overthrow; pest, curse*.

perniciōsus, -a, -um, comp. **perniciōsior**, sup. **perniciōsissimus**, [perniciēs], adj., *destructive, ruinous, pernicious, dangerous*.

perōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [per + ōrō], 1, *speak from the beginning, plead; end, close, finish*.

perpaucī, -ae, -a, [per + paucus], adj., *very few*. As subst., **perpauci**, -ōrum, m., pl., *a very few*.

Perpenna, -ae, m., *Perpenna*, family name of *M. Perpenna*, censor in 86 B.C.

perpetior, -petī, -pessus sum, [per + patior], 3, dep., *bear steadfastly, abide, endure*.

perpetuō, [perpetuus], adv., *continually, uninterruptedly, forever*.

perpetuus, -a, -um, [per, cf., petō], adj., *continuous, unbroken, entire, perpetual*. As subst., in **perpetuum**, *forever, ever after*.

perrumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptus, [per + rumpō], 3, *break through, force a way through, get across; overcome*.

Persae, see **Persēs**.

persaepe, [per + saepe], adv., *very often*.

persequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, [per + sequor], 3, dep., *follow perseveringly, follow up, pursue; assail, attack; overtake; execute, accomplish; set forth, relate, recount*.

Persēs, -ae, dat. ī, [Πέρσης], m., *a Persian*; in pl., by metonymy, *the land of the Persians*. As adj., cum rēge Persō, *with the king of the Persians*.

Perseus, -ī, m., *Perseus*, the last king of Macedonia, conquered by L. Aemilius Paulus, at Pydna, 168 B.C.

persevērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [persevērus], 1, *continue steadfastly, persist, persevere*.

Persicus, -a, -um, adj., *Persian, of Persia, with Persia*.

Persis, -idis, f., *Persis*, a country in Asia, north of the Persian Gulf, now Farsistan, *Persia*.

persōna, -ae, [per, cf. sonō], f., *mask; part, character; person, personage, character*.

persolvō, -solvere, -solvī, -solūtus, [per + solvō], 3, *pay in full, pay*. poenās persolvere, *to pay the penalty*.

perspectus, see **perspicīō**.

perspicīō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectus, [per + specīō, look], 3, *see*,

look; inspect, survey; perceive, observe, ascertain.

persuādēō, -suādēre, -suāsī, -suāsus, [per + suādēō, *persuade*], 2, *convince, persuade, prevail upon, induce. mihi persuādētur, I am convinced.*

pertaedet, -ēre, pertaesum est, [per + taedet], 2, *impers., it wearies, it disgusts.*

perterreō, -terrēre, —, -territus, [per + terreō], 2, *frighten thoroughly, terrify.*

pertimēscō, -timēscere, -timuī, —, [per + timēscō], 3, *inch., be alarmed, fear greatly.*

pertinācia, -ae, [pertināx], f., *perseverance, stubbornness, obstinacy.*

pertināciter, [pertināx], adv., *persistently, obstinately, stubbornly.*

pertināx, -ācis, [per + tenāx], adj., *persevering, obstinate, pertinacious.*

pertineō, -ēre, -uī, —, [per + teneō], 2, *stretch out, extend; reach; pertain to, concern, belong to, have to do with; apply, suit.*

perturbātus, -a, -um, [part. of perturbō], adj., *disturbed, agitated, unsettled.*

perturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [per + turbō, *disturb*], 1, *disturb greatly, disorder, confuse, throw into confusion, embarrass.*

pervenīō, -venīre, -vēmī, -ventus, [per + venīō], 4, *reach, come (to); arrive (at); penetrate, attain.*

pervertō, -vertere, -vertī, perversus, [per + vertō], 3, *overthrow, throw down; destroy, ruin, corrupt.*

pervulgātus, -a, -um, [part. of pervulgō], adj., *very common, widely known.*

pēs, pedis, m., *foot; as a measure of length, = .9708 of the English foot, or 296 millimetres. pedem referre, to retreat.*

petitiō, -ōnis, [petō], f., *thrust, attack; application, candidacy; petition.*

petō, -ere, -ivī or -iī, -itus, 3, *strive for, seek; go to; get, secure; attack; demand, beg, ask, request. petere ut liceat, to ask permission.*

petulantia, -ae, f., *impudence, freakishness, pertness, wantonness.*

phalanx, -angis, Greek acc. sing. (p. 149, l. 19), **phalanga**, [φάλαγξ], f., *compact host, mass, phalanx.*

Phalēreus, -ī, [φαληρεύς], m., of *Phalērum*, a surname of Demetrius, ruler of Athens in 317 B.C.

Phalēricus, -a, -um, adj., of *Phalērum*, one of the seaports of Athens.

Pharnacēs, -is, m., *Pharnacēs*, son of Mithridates the Great, king of Pontus.

Pharsālicus, -a, -um, adj., of *Pharsalus*, at *Pharsalus*.

Phīdippus, -ī, [φειδιππος], m., *Phidippus*, a famous Athenian courier of the time of Miltiades.

Philippus, -ī, [φίλιππος], m., *Philip*, referring in this book to *Philip V.*, king of Macedon from 220 to 179 B.C. He was defeated at Cynoscephalae in 197 B.C.

philosophia, -ae, f., *philosophy.*

philosophus, -a, -um, adj., *philosophical. As subst., philosophus, -ī, m., philosopher.*

Picēns, -entis, [**Picēnum**], adj., of or belonging to *Picēnum*. As subst., **Picentēs**, -ium, m., the inhabitants of *Picēnum*, the *Picenes*. See map opp. p. 30.

pietās, -ātis, [**pius**], f., dutiful conduct, devotion, piety; affection, love, loyalty.

pilleus, -ī, m., and **pilleum**, -ī, n., close-fitting cap; skull-cap.

pilum, -ī, n., javelin, pike.

pilus, -ī, [**pīlum**], m., usually joined with **primus**, *maniple of the triarii*, a division in the army containing the most experienced soldiers. **primi pili centuriō**, *first centurion of the first maniple of the triarii*, the first centurion of the legion in rank.

pingō, -ere, **pīnxi**, **pictus**, 3, *paint, represent, portray*.

Piraeus, -ī, [**Πειραιεύς**], m., the *Peiraeus*, the principal seaport of Athens. See map opp. p. 75.

pirāta, -ae, f., *sea-robber, corsair, pirate*.

piscīna, -ae, [**piscis**], f., *fish-pond*.

piscis, -is, m., *fish*.

Pisistratus, -ī, [**Πεισιστρατος**], m., *Pisistratus*, tyrant of Athens during three periods between 560 and 527 B.C. Though he usurped the chief power, he was a wise and moderate ruler, and did much to increase the power and prosperity of the city.

Pisō, -ōnis, m., name of four persons mentioned in the Gallic War:

- (1) *Lūcius Calpurnius Pisō Caesōninus*, consul 112 B.C.; killed 107 B.C. when serving as lieutenant in Gaul with the consul *Lūcius Cassius Longinus*.

- (2) *Lūcius Calpurnius Pisō Caesōninus*, consul with *Aulus Gabinius*, 58 B.C., and father-in-law of Caesar.

- (3) *Mārcus Pūpius Pisō Calpurniānus*, consul with *M. Valerius Messāla*, 61 B.C.

pīstrīnum, -ī, n., [**pīstor**], *corn-mill, mill*.

Placentia, -ae, f., *Placentia*, a city in Cisalpine Gaul on the Po, the modern *Piacenza*. See map opp. p. 30.

placeō, **placēre**, **placui**, **placitus**, 2, *please, be agreeable, be welcome to*. Used impersonally, **placet**, *it is agreed, it seems good, it is settled; it is resolved, it is decided*. **eī placuit**, *he resolved*.

plācō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [cf. **placēō**], 1, *quiet, soothe, allay, appease; reconcile, conciliate, propitiate*.

plāga, -ae, f., *stroke, blow, thrust; calamity, disaster*.

plaga, -ae, f., *hunting-net, snare*.

Plancus, -ī, m., *Plancus*, family name of *L. Plōtius Plancus*, proscribed and killed by the second Triumvirate in 43 B.C.

plānitīēs, -ae, [**plānus**], f., *level ground, plain*.

Plataeae, -arum, [**Πλαταιαί**], f., pl., *Plataea*, a city in the southern part of Boeotia, the scene of the defeat of the Persians under Mardonius in 479 B.C. See map opp. p. 75.

Plataeēnsēs, -ium, m., pl., *the Plataeans, inhabitants of Plataea*.

plēbs, **plēbis**, and **plēbēs**, -eī or -ī, f., *common people, commons, plebeians, populace*.

plectō, -ere, —, —, [cf. **plāga**],

3, used only in the passive, *be punished, suffer punishment; be blamed, incur censure.*

plēnus, -a, -um, comp. **plēnior**, sup. **plēnissimus**, [cf. **plēō**], adj., *full, filled; plentiful.*

plērumque, [n. acc. of **plērusque**], adv., *commonly, generally, usually, for the most part.*

plērusque, -aque, -umque, [**plērus**, *very many*], adj., *very many, most.* As subst., **plērique**, -ōrumque, m., pl., *the most, the greater part, the majority, most; very many, a good many.*

Plīnius, -ī, m., *Plīnius, Pliny*, gentile name of *C. Plīnius Secundus*, born 23 A.D., author of the famous *Historia Nātūrālīs*. He lost his life in the eruption of Vesuvius, in 79 A.D., by which Pompeii was destroyed.

Plōtius, -ī, m., see **Plancus**.

plumbeus, -a, -um, [**plumbum**], adj., *of lead, leaden; stupid, stolid.*

plumbum, -ī, n., *lead.*

plūrimum, [**plūrimus**], used as sup. of **multum**, adv., *very much, most, especially.*

plūs, [neut. sing. of **plūs**, **plūris**, adj.], used as comp. of **multum**, adv., *more.* **plūs valēre**, *to have more power.* **plūris**, gen. of price, *of more value, dearer, higher.*

plūs, **plūrēs**, **plūrimus**, see **multus**.

Poecilē, -ēs, [Ποικίλη, sc. **στέδ**], f., *the Poecile, gallery of paintings*, a building at Athens adorned with works of art by the celebrated painter Polygnotus.

poena, -ae, [cf. **ποινή**], f., *compensation, fine, punishment, penalty.*

poenās dare, or **persolvere**, *to pay the penalty.*

Poenī, -ōrum, m., pl., *the Carthaginians*, so named from their Phoenician origin.

Poenicus or **Pūnicus**, -a, -um, adj., *Punic, Carthaginian.*

poēta, -ae, m., *poet.*

polliceor, -licēri, -licitus, [**por**, = **prō**, + **liceor**], 2, dep., *promise, offer.* **liberāliter pollicitus**, *with generous promises.*

pollicitus, see **polliceor**.

Pōlliō, -ōnis, m., **Pōlliō**, surname of **Vēdius Pōlliō**, a friend of Augustus, punished by Augustus for his inhumanity to a slave.

Polybius, -ī, [Πολύβιος], m., *Polybius*, a native of Megalopolis in Arcadia, celebrated for his history of Rome. In 169 B.C. he was sent to Rome as a hostage, and became intimate with Scipio Africanus the younger.

Polymnis, -ī or -idis, [Πολύμνις], m., *Polymnis*, father of Epaminondas.

pompa, -ae, f., *public procession; parade, display.*

Pompēiānus, -a, -um, adj., *of Pompey, Pompeian.*

Pompēius, -ī, m., *Pompēius, Pompey*, a Roman gentile name. In this book refers to:

(1) *Pompēius*, consul in 141 B.C.

(2) *Cn. Pompēius Māgnus*, Pompey the Great.

Pompilius, -ī, m., *Pompilius*, gentile name of Numa Pompilius. See **Numa**.

Pompōnius, -ī, m., *Pompōnius*, gentile name of *T. Pompōnius Atticus*.

Pomptinus, -a, -um, adj., *Pomp-*

tine. Pomptinae palūdēs, the Pomptine Marshes, a marshy tract of country on the coast of Latium, about fifty miles south-east of Rome.

pondus, -eris, [cf. *pendō*], n., a weight, burden; importance.

pōnō, -ere, *posuī, positus*, 3, put down, place, fix, deposit; depict, represent; lay aside. give up; spend, employ; set up, build; put, count, reckon, regard. Pass., often be situated; be dependent, depend on. *castra pōnere*, to pitch camp. *rudimentum pōnere*, to learn, to take first steps in.

pōns, *pontis*, m., bridge.

ponticulus, -ī, [dim. of *pōns*], m., little bridge.

Ponticus, -a, -um, of Pontus, to Pontus, Pontic.

Pontius, -ī, m., Pontius, family name of C. Pontius, leader of the Samnites.

Pontus, -ī, m., Pontus, a country in northeastern Asia Minor, south of the Euxine Sea. See map opp. p. 93.

poposcērunt, see *poscō*.

populātio, -ōnis, [populus], f., a laying waste, ravaging, plundering.

populi scitum, see *populus*, scitum.

popular, -ārī, -ātus, 1, dep., lay waste, devastate.

populus, -ī, m., people as a political whole, nation; sing. coll., the people, the citizens.

Porcius, -a, name of a Roman gens. See *Catō*.

porrigō, -rigere, -rēxī, -rēctus, [por = *prō* + *regō*], 3, spread

out, stretch out, extend; offer, present; prolong, extend. *porrēcta loca aperta pertinēbant*, the open places lay extended, i.e., reached.

Porsena, -ae, m., Porsena or Porsenna, king of Clusium, and head of the Etruscan league in the time of Tarquin the Proud.

porta, -ae, f., city gate, gate of a camp, gate, entrance, passage.

portendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentus, [por = *prō* + *tendō*], 3, point out, indicate; predict, presage, foretell.

porticus, -ūs, [porta], f., covered walk between columns, colonnade, portico.

portō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 1, bear, carry, convey, bring.

portōrium, -ī, [cf. porta], n., tax, toll, duty, tariff.

portus, -ūs, [cf. porta], m., harbor, haven, port.

poscō, -ere, *poposci*, —, 3, inch., ask urgently, demand, beg; require, need.

Posidōnius, -ī, m., Posidōnius, a distinguished Stoic philosopher of Apameia in Syria, a contemporary of Cicero and Pompey.

positus, -a, -um, see *pōnō*.

possessio, -ōnis, [cf. *possidō*], f., possession.

possideō, -sidere, -sēdī, -sessus, [por = *prō* + *sedeō*], 2, hold, occupy, possess.

possidō, -sidere, -sēdī, -sessus, [por = *prō* + *sidō*], 3, take possession of, occupy, seize.

possum, *posse*, *potui*, —, [potis, able, + sum], irr., be able; pres. = I can, impf. and pf. = I could. *multum, plurimum posse*, to have great, very great power or influence.

post, adv., *afterwards, later, after*; often with abl. of degree of difference. **annō post**, *a year later, the following year*. **paucis post diēbus**, *a few days later*.

post, prep. with acc. only:

(1) Of place, *behind*. **post tergum**, *in the rear*.

(2) Of time, *after*. **post mediam noctem**, *after midnight*.

postea [post eā], adv., *afterwards*.

postea quam, with the force of a conjunction, *after that, after*.

posterius, [comp. of **posterus**], adv., *later, at a later time*.

posterus, -a, -um, comp. **posterior**, sup. **postrēmus** or **postumus**, [post], adj., *coming after, subsequent, later; next, following*. As subst., **posterī**, -ōrum, m., pl., *descendants, posterity*. Comp. **posterior**, -ius, *later, inferior*. Sup. **postrēmus**, -a, -um, *last; lowest*. **ad postrēmum**, *finally, at last*.

posthāc, [post + hāc], adv., *after this, hereafter, in future*.

posticus, -a, -um, [post], adj., *in the rear, behind, posterior*. As subst., **posticum**, -ī, n., *back door*.

postquam, [post + quam], conj., *after that, after, as soon as; when; since, inasmuch as*. **post** and **quam** are often separated by intervening words.

postrēmō, [abl. of **postrēmus**], adv., *at last, finally, last of all*.

postrēmus, see **posterus**.

postrīdīē, [**posterī diē**], adv., *on the day after, next day*. **postrīdīē eius diē**, *the next day, the following day*.

postulātum, -ī, [postulō], n., *demand, request, claim*.

postulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 1, *claim, demand, ask, request*; of things, *require, make necessary, demand*.

Postumius, -ī, m., *Postumius*, name of a Roman gens. In this book refers to:

(1) *Spurius Postumius Albinus*, consul in 321 B.C.

(2) *A. Postumius Albinus*, consul in 242 B.C.

potēns, -entis, comp. **potentior**, sup. -issimus, [part. of **possum**], adj., *powerful, strong; influential*. As subst., **potentior**, -ōris, m., *one more powerful*; pl., *the more powerful*.

potentātus, -ūs, [potēns], m., *power, headship, supremacy*.

potentia, -ae, [potēns], f., *might, force, power; rule, sway, eminence*.

potestās, -ātis, [potis], f., *ability, power, capacity; self-control; sway, dominion, rule; power, office, magistracy; opportunity*.

potior, **potiri**, **potitus**, [potis, able], 4, dep., *obtain possession of, become master of, acquire, obtain, followed by the abl. or by the gen.; old form of gerundive, potiundī, potiundōrum*.

potissimum, [sup. of **potis**], adv., *chiefly, principally, especially, above all*.

potius, [comp. of **potis**], adv., *rather, preferably, more*. **potius quam**, *rather than*.

prae, prep. with abl., *in comparison with, on account of*.

praeacūtus, -a, -um, [part. of **praeacuō**], adj., *sharpened at the end, sharpened, pointed*.

praebeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, [prae + habeo], 2, hold out, proffer, offer, grant, supply; furnish, provide; yield, surrender; show, exhibit, represent; excite, cause, arouse.

praecaveō, -cavēre, -cāvī, -cautus, [prae + caveō], 2, take precautions.

praecēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessurus, [prae + cēdō], 3, go before; surpass.

praeceps, -cipitis, [prae + CAP in caput], adj., headlong, with great speed, head over heels; steep, precipitous.

praeceptor, -ōris, [praecipio], m., teacher, instructor, preceptor.

praeceptum, -ī, [praecipio], n., maxim, rule, order, direction, command.

praecidō, -cidere, -cīdī, -cīsus, [prae + caedō], 3, cut off in front; cut off, cut short; finish, end, destroy.

praecipio, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus, [prae + capio], 3, take beforehand, anticipate; give rules, admonish, inform, direct; bid, order; direct, instruct.

praecipitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [praeceps], 1, throw headlong, cast down.

praecipuē [praecipuus], adv., especially, specially, particularly.

praecipuus, -a, -um, [prae + capio], adj., taken before others, particular, especial; distinguished, excellent.

praecīlārē, [praecīlārus], adv., very clearly; excellently, gloriously.

praeda, -ae, f., property taken in war; booty, spoil, plunder, prey.

praedicātio, -ōnis, [praedicō], f., public proclamation, praising, praise; assertion, statement.

praedicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [prae + dicō], 1, make known by proclamation, announce, proclaim, declare; praise, commend; boast.

praedicō, -dicere, -dixī, -dictus, [prae + dicō], 3, say beforehand, warn, admonish.

praedō, -ōnis, [praeda], m., one that makes booty, plunderer, robber. **maritimus praedō**, or **praedō** [sc. **maritimus**], pirate.

praedor, -ārī, -ātus, [praeda], 1, dep., obtain booty, pillage, plunder.

praefectus, -ī, [praeficiō], m., overseer, commander, prefect.

praefero, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus, irr., bear before; offer, present; prefer, rate higher; display, reveal. **sē praeferre**, to show one's self superior to.

praeferox, -ōcis, [prae + ferōx], adj., very violent, impetuous, insolent, full of confidence.

praeficiō, -ficere, -feci, -fectus, [prae + facio], 3, place over, place in command of, appoint to command.

praefiniō, -īre, -ivi, -itus, [prae + finio], 4, determine beforehand, ordain, prescribe.

praefor, -fārī, -fātus sum, [prae + for], 1, dep., say before, promise, preface; utter a preliminary prayer.

praemittō, -mittere, -misi, -missus, [prae + mittō], 3, send forward, send on before, send in advance.

praemium, -ī, [prae + emō], n., advantage, favor, reward, recompense; prize, plunder, booty.

Praeneste, -is, n. **Praeneste**, an ancient city of Latium, situ-

ated about twenty miles south-east of Rome. See map, frontispiece.

praeoptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [prae + optō, choose], 1, choose rather. *prefer.*

praeponō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, [prae + pōnō], 3, place in front; put before, set over, appoint, place in command of; *prefer.*

praesaepē, -is, [prae + saepēs], n., an enclosure, stable, stall.

praescribō, -scribere, -scripsī, -scriptus, [prae + scribō], 3, write before, give directions, direct, prescribe.

praescriptum, -ī, [part. of praescribō], n., direction, order, instructions.

praesēns, -entis, [part. of praesum], adj., at hand, present, in person; immediate, instant; favoring, propitious. in praesentī or in praesentia, [sc. tempora], for the present.

praesentia, -ae, [praesēns], f., a being at hand, presence. For in praesentia see praesēns.

praesertim, adv., especially, principally, chiefly.

praesidium, -ī, [praeses], n., defence, protection, help; garrison, post, station; fortress.

praestāns, -antis, comp. praestantior, sup. praestantissimus, [prae, stō], adj., preëminent, excellent, distinguished.

praestitī, see praestō.

praestō, -stāre, -stitī, -stitus, 1, stand out, stand before, be superior, excel; fulfil, discharge, perform, execute; show, exhibit, manifest, assure; answer for, vouch for. Impers., praestat.

it is preferable, it is better.
officium praestāre, to do one's duty.

praesum, -esse, -fui, irr., be before; have command of, rule. have charge of, govern.

praeter, [prae], adv. and prep. with acc., past, by, beyond; above. more than; against, contrary to; except, besides. In composition, past, beyond.

praetereā, [praeter + eā], adv., in addition, further, besides, moreover.

praetereō, -ire, -ivī or -iī, -itus, [praeter + eō], irr., go by, pass by; omit, disregard, leave unnoticed; surpass.

praeteritus, -a, -um, [part. of praetereō], adj., gone by, past, departed.

praetermittō, -mittere, -misi, -missus, [praeter + mittō], 3, let pass, let go; pass over, pass without notice, overlook.

praetor, -ōris, [for praeitor, prae. cf. eō], m., leader, chief; general, commander; praetor, a magistrate at Rome, next to the consul in rank, charged with the administration of justice. At first there was but one praetor, but at an early period two were chosen, then six. Under Sulla there were eight, and the number finally reached sixteen.

praetōrius, -a, -um, [praetor]. adj., of the commander, praetorian. praetōria cohors, general's cohort, the general's body-guard. As subst., praetōrius, -ī, m., one who has been praetor, ex-praetor.

praetuli, see praeferō.

praetūra, -ae, [prae, cf. eō], f.,
office of praetor, praetorship.

praeveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus,
[prae + veniō], 4, come before,
get start of, outstrip, anticipate.

prātum, -ī, n., meadow.

prāvus, -a, -um, adj., crooked;
perverse, irregular, improper,
wrong.

precor, -ārī, -ātus sum, 1, dep.,
ask, beg, supplicate, beseech; call
upon, invoke.

prehendō, see prēndō.

premō, premere, pressī, pressus,
3, press; press hard; oppress,
harass, burden; overwhelm; urge,
drive; pass., be hard pressed, be
weighed down, be oppressed, be in
need, be in danger.

prēndō (forprehendō), -ere, -dī,
-sus, 3, lay hold of, grasp, seize;
check, arrest; comprehend.

pretium, -ī, n., price, money value;
esteem; recompense, reward.

prex, precis, f., generally pl.; nom.
and gen. sing. not in use, prayer,
entreaty, supplication; curse, im-
precation.

prīdem, see iam.

prīdiē, adv., the day before, the pre-
vious day. **prīdiē eius diēi**, the
day before that day, on the pre-
vious day.

prīmpīlus, -ī, [prīmus + pīlus], m.,
= prīmus pīlus, first centurion;
see pīlus.

prīmō, [prīmus], adv., at first, at
the beginning, first.

prīmum, [acc. of prīmus], adv.,
first, before everything else, in the
first place, for the first time.
quam prīmum, as soon as possible.
cum prīmum, as soon as.

prīmus, see prior.

prīnceps, -īpis, [prīmus + CAP in
capīō], adj., first, chief, at the
front. As subst., m., head man,
leader, chief, prince, emperor.

prīncipātus, -ūs, [prīnceps], m.,
beginning; first place, supremacy,
leadership; chief command.

prior, -us, gen. priōris, adj. in comp.
degree, sup. prīmus, [cf. prō],
former, previous, first. As subst.,
priōrēs, -um, m., pl., those in ad-
vance. **prīmus**, first, the first.
prīmus quisque, the first possible,
very first. As subst., **prīmī**,
-ōrum, m., pl., the foremost men,
the first; chief, noble. **prīma**,
-ōrum, n., pl., in the phrase in
prīmīs, especially.

prīstinus, -a, -um, [for priustinus],
adj., former, previous, original.
As subst., **prīstinum**, -ī, n., former
condition.

prīus, adv., comp., before, sooner,
previously; rather.

prīusquam [prīus + quam], conj.,
before, sooner than. **prīus** and
quam are often separated by in-
tervening words.

prīvātīm [prīvātus], adv., pri-
vately, in a private capacity; in-
dividually, as individuals, opposed
in meaning to pūblicō.

prīvātus, -a, -um, [part. of prīvō],
adj., apart, peculiar, personal,
private. As subst., **prīvātus**, -ī,
m., man in private life, private
citizen.

prīvō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 1, bereave,
deprive, rob.

prō, prep. with abl. only, in front
of, before; for, in behalf of; in-
stead of, for, as; on account of,
in return for; in proportion to,
considering, according to.

proavus, -ī, [prō + avus], m., *great-grandfather*.

probābilis, -e, [probō], adj., *worthy of approval, pleasing, agreeable, good; credible, probable*.

probātus, -a, -um, [part. of probō], adj., *approved, pleasing, agreeable*.

probō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [probus], 1, *approve, think highly of; show to be worthy, display; prove, show, demonstrate*.

Proca, -ae, m., *Proca*, or *Silvius Proca*, name of one of the fabulous kings of Alba, the father of Numitor and Amulius.

prōcēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, —, [prō + cēdō], 3, *go before, go forward, march on; advance, make progress*.

Proculus, see *Valerius*.

prōclāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [prō + clāmō], 1, *call, cry out*.

procreō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [prō + creō], 1, *bring forth, produce, procreate*.

procul, adv., *in the distance, far, afar off; of time, long before*.

prōcumbō, -cumbere, -cubui, -cubitus, [prō + cumbō, for cubō, *lie down*], 3, *fall prostrate; sink down; be beaten down; lie down; lean forward*.

prōcūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [pro + cūrō], 1, *take care of, attend to, look after; avert, expiate by sacrifice*.

prōcurrō, -currere, -cucurri or -curri, -cursus, [prō + currō], 3, *run forward, hasten forward, rush forward*.

prōdeō, -īre, -īvi or -iī, -itus, [prōd-, for prō, + eō], irr., *come out, come forth, advance*.

prōdesse, see *prōsum*.

prōdigium, -ī, n., *prophetic sign, omen, portent; monster, prodigy*.

prōditiō, -ōnis, [cf. prōdō], f., *betrayal, treason, treachery*.

prōditor, -ōris, [cf. prōdō], m., *betrayor, traitor*.

prōdō, -dere, -didi, -ditus, [prō + dō], 3, *put forth, exhibit; reveal, disclose; relate, hand down, transmit; surrender, give up, abandon*.

prōdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductus, [prō + dūcō], 3, *lead forth, bring out; lengthen, prolong, extend*.

proelior, -ārī, -ātus, [proelium], 1, dep., *fight*.

proelium, -ī, n., *battle, combat, engagement*.

profectiō, -ōnis, [cf. proficiscor], f., *departure, setting out*.

profectō, [prō + factō], adv., *actually, indeed, really, certainly*.

profectus, see *proficiscor*.

prōferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus, [prō + ferō], irr., *carry out, produce, put forth, put off; make known, mention; present*.

proficiscor, -ficiscī, -fectus sum, 3, dep., *set out, depart, proceed, march*.

profiteor, -fitērī, -fessus sum, [prō + fateor], 2, dep., *declare publicly, profess*. nōmen **profītērī**, *to avow one's self a candidate*.

prōfligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 1, *strike to the ground, overthrow, overcome, rout; ruin, destroy*.

profugiō, -fugere, -fūgi, —, 3, *flee, run away, escape; take refuge*.

profugus, -a, -um, [cf. profugiō], adj., *fugitive, in flight*. As subst., **profugus**, -ī, m., *fugitive, exile*.

profundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsus, [prō + fundō], 3, *pour out; squander, shed; bring forth, utter.* **sē profundere**, to rush forth, rush out.

prōgnātus, -a, -um, [prō + (g)nā-tus, from (g)nāscor], adj., *sprung, descended.*

prōgredior, -gredī, -gressus sum, [prō + gradior], 3, dep., *go forth, go on; advance, make progress, proceed.*

prōgressus, see **prōgredior**.

prōgressus, -ūs, [cf. **prōgredior**], m., *going forward, advance, progress.*

prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, [prō + habeō], 2, *hold back, check; hinder, prevent; forbid, prohibit; cut off, shut off.*

prōiciō (prōjiciō), -icere, -iēcī, -iectus, [prō + iaciō], 3, *throw forward, throw, fling, cast; of arms, throw down; abandon, lose; expel, banish.* **sē prōicere**, to cast one's self down, leap down; to prostrate one's self.

proinde, [prō + inde], adv., *hence, therefore, accordingly; in like manner, equally.*

prōmineō, -ēre, -uī, —, 2, *stand out, project, extend; lean out.*

prōmissum, -ī, [part. n. of prōmittō], n., *a promise.* **prōmissō stāre**, to keep a promise.

prōmittō, -ere, -misi, -missus, [prō + mittō], 3, *let go, put forth; foretell, promise.*

prōmoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, [prō + moveō], 2, *move forward, push forward.*

prōmptus, -a, -um, [part. of prōmō], adj., *set forth, manifest, at hand, ready, quick, prompt.*

prōmunturium, -ī, n., *promontory, headland.*

pronepōs, -ōtis, [prō + nepōs], m., *great-grandson.*

prōnūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 1, *announce, declare.*

prōpāgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 1, *set forward, extend, enlarge; generate, propagate; prolong, preserve.*

prōpatulus, -a, -um, [prō + patulus], adj., *open, uncovered.* As subst., **prōpatulum**, -ī, n., *open place, court.*

prope, comp. **propius**, sup. **proximē**, adv., *near, nearly, almost; followed by the acc., near; comp., propius, nearer.* **proximē**, *nearest, next, very near; last, most recently.*

prōpellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsus, [prō + pellō], 3, *drive away, put to flight, rout, defeat.*

properē, [properus], adv., *hastily, in haste, quickly, speedily.*

properō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [properus, quick], 1, *hurry, make haste, hasten.*

propinquitās, -ātis, [propinquus], f., *nearness, vicinity; relationship.*

propinquus, -a, -um, comp., -ior, [prope], adj., *near, neighboring.* As subst., **propinquus**, -ī, m., *relative; pl., propinquī, -ōrum, m., relatives, kinsfolk; propinqua, -arum, f., female relatives.*

propior, -us, gen. **propioris**, adj. in comp. degree, sup. **proximus**, [cf. prope], positive wanting, *nearer.* **proximus**, -a, -um, *nearest, next, last, of space or time.* **proximā nocte**, *on the following night.* As subst., **proximum**, -ī, n., *neighborhood, vicinity.* in **proximō**, **ex**

proximō, *near by, close at hand.*
proximī, -ōrum, m., pl., *the bystanders.*

propius, *see prope.*

prōpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus, [prō + pōnō], 3, *set forth, put forward, present; declare, explain; propose, offer, intend; raise, display; resolve, determine.*

propter, prep. with acc. only, *near, next to, on account of, in consequence of.*

propterea, [propter + eā], adv., *for this reason, therefore.* **propterea** quod, *because; see n. to p. 114, l. 6.*

prōpugnāculum, -ī, [prōpugnō], n., *bulwark, rampart, defence.*

prōpugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [prō + pugnō], 1, *come forth to fight; fight on the defensive.*

prōpulsō, -āre, —, -ātus, [freq. of prōpellō], 1, *drive off, drive back; ward off, repel.*

prōscribō, -scribere, prōscripsī, prōscriptus, [prō + scribō], 3, *make public; publish, announce; offer for sale; outlaw, proscribe.*

prōscriptiō, -ōnis, [prōscribō], f., *notice of sale; proscription, confiscation.*

prōsequor, -sequī, -secūtus, [prō + sequor], 3, dep., *follow after; follow up, pursue.*

prōsiliō, -īre, -uī, —, 4, *leap forward, spring forth; rush, make haste.*

prōsperē, [prōsperus], adv., *according to hope, favorably, propitiously.*

prōsperus, -a, -um, [prō + spēs], adj., *according to hope; favorable, fortunate, prosperous; propitious, of good omen.*

prōspectus, -ūs, [cf. prōspiciō], m., *view, sight.* in prōspectū, *in sight, visible.*

prōspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, prōspectus, [prō + speciō], 3, *look forward, look out, look; watch, be on the watch; look out for, take care of, provide for.*

prōsternō, -sternere, prōstrāvī, prōstrātus, [prō + sternō], 3, *strew before; cast down, overthrow; ruin, destroy.*

prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, [prō + sum], irr., *be useful, do good; benefit, profit.*

prōtinus, adv., *right on, onward; continuously; immediately, at once.*

prōtrahō, -ere, -trāxī, -trāctus, [prō + trahō], 3, *draw forward, produce; bring to light, disclose; lengthen, protract, prolong.*

prōtulit, *see prōferō.*

prōturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [prō + turbō, disturb], 1, *drive away, repulse.*

prōvehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectus, [prō + vehō], 3, *carry forward; pass., be carried; ride, drive, sail.* **aetāte prōvectus**, *advanced in years.*

prōvideō, -vidēre, -vidī, -visus, [prō + videō], 2, *foresee, perceive in advance; provide for, look out for, prepare.*

prōvincia, -ae, f., *office, charge; province, subject territory, government of a territory outside of Italy by a magistrate of Rome; also the territory itself.* In Caesar often *the province*, the part of Transalpine Gaul subdued by the Romans before B.C. 58, lying between the Mediterranean Sea and

the upper part of the Rhone, the Cévennes Mountains, and the upper part of the Garonne River. See map opp. p. 114.

prōvocātiō, -ōnis, [prōvocō], f., *appeal, challenge.*

prōvocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [prō + vocō], 1, *call forth, call out, summon; make an appeal, appeal; stimulate. stir up; challenge.*

prōvolō, -āre, -āvi, —, [prō + volō, fly], 1, *fly forward, dash forth.*

proximē, see *prope*.

proximus, -a, -um, see *propior*.

prūdēns, -entis, comp. *prūdēntior*, sup. *prūdētissimus*, [for prōvidēns, part. of prōvideō], adj., *foreseeing, knowing; skilful, experienced, prudent, clever, intelligent.*

prūdēntia, -ae, [prūdēns], f., *fore-sight; acquaintance, knowledge, skill; good sense.*

Prūsias, or **Prūsia**, -ae, m., *Prusias*, a king of Bithynia, with whom Hannibal took refuge.

Pseudophilippus, -i, m., *the false Philip, Pseudo-Philip*, i.e. *Andronicus*, who pretended to be Philip, son of Perseus, king of Macedonia.

psittacus, -i, m., *parrot.*

Ptolemaeus, -i, *Ptolemaeus, Ptolemy*, the name of several kings of Egypt.

pūblicē [pūblicus], adv., *in the name of the state, as a state, publicly*, opposed in meaning to *privātim*.

pūblicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [pūblicus], 1, *open to the public, make public, confiscate; publish.*

Pūblicola, -ae, m., *Pūblicola*. See *Valerius*.

pūblicus, -a, -um, [cf. pūbēs], adj., *of the people, of the state, public, common*. As subst., *pūblicum*, -i, n., *public place; possessions of the state, public treasury. rēs pūblica*, *the state, public business, public interest.*

Pūblius, -i, m., a Roman forename. **pudor**, -ōris, [cf. pudeō], m., *shame, sense of shame.*

puer, **puerī**, m., *child, boy; slave.*

puerilis, -e, [puer], adj., *boyish, youthful; childish, trivial, silly.*

pueritia, -ae, [puer], f., *boyhood, childhood, youth.*

puerulus, -i, [dim. of puer], m., *little boy, little slave.*

pūgiō, -ōnis, m., *short dagger, poniard.*

pūgna, -ae, f., *fight, combat, battle; dispute, quarrel.*

pūgnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [pūgna], 1, *fight, contend; oppose, resist, struggle with. pūgnātum est*, *the battle raged.*

pulcher, -chra, -chrum, comp. *pulchrior*, sup. *pulcherrimus*, adj., *beautiful, fair, handsome; excellent, noble, illustrious.*

pullulō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [pullus], 1, *sprout, shoot, come forth.*

pulsus, see *pellō*.

Pulvillus, -i, m., *Pulvillus*. See *Horātius*.

Pūnicus, -a, -um, adj., *Punic, Carthaginian.*

pūniō, -īre, -ivī, -ītus, [poena], 4, *punish, correct, chastise.*

pūpillus, -i, m., *orphan, ward.*

puppis, -is, f., *hinder part of a ship, stern; ship.*

pūrgō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [for *pūrigō; pūrus, cf. agō], 1, *make clean; free from blame, excuse,*

clear. sui pūrgandi causā, in order to excuse themselves.

putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 1, *think, consider, believe, judge.*

Pydna, -ae, [Πύδνα], f., *Pydna*, a city of Macedonia, in Pieria on the Thermaic Gulf, the scene of the defeat of Perseus, king of Macedonia, by the Romans in 168 B.C. See map opp. p. 75.

Pyrēnaeus, -a, -um, [Πυρηναιός], adj., of *Pyrene*; *Pyrenaean*.

Pyrēnaei montēs, the *Pyrenees Mountains*, between Spain and France. **Pyrēnaeus saltus**, the *Pyrenees*.

Pyrrhus, -ī, m., *Pyrrhus*, king of Epirus; one of the greatest generals of antiquity. In 280 B.C. he was called to the aid of the Tarantines, who had become involved in a war with the Romans. After two victories he was defeated at Beneventum and compelled to leave Italy. He was killed in 272 B.C., while storming Argos.

Pythagorēus, -a, -um, adj., *Pythagorean*, of *Pythagoras*. As subst., **Pythagorēus**, -ī, m., *Pythagorean*, follower of *Pythagoras*, a celebrated philosopher, born in Samos about 550 B.C. His philosophy was especially popular in Magna Graecia in southern Italy.

Pythia, -ae, [Πύθια], f., the *Pythia*, the priestess who gave the responses of the oracle in the temple of Apollo at Delphi.

Q.

Q., with proper names = **Quintus**, a Roman forename.

quā, [abl. fem. of **quī**, originally sc. **viā** or **parte**], adv., *where.*

quācumque, [quā + **cumque**], adv., *wherever, wheresoever.*

quadrāgēsīmus, -a, -um, [quadrāgintā], adj., *fortieth.*

quadrāgintā, [quattuor], indecl. num. adj., *forty.*

quadriennium, -ī, [quattuor + **annus**], m., *a period of four years.*

quadrīngentīsimus, -a, -um, [quadrīngentī], adj., *the four hundredth.*

quadrīngentī, -ae, -a, or **CCCC**, [quattuor + **centum**], adj., *four hundred.*

quaerō, -ere, **quaesīvī**, **quaesītus**, 3, *seek, look for; desire, require; inquire, ask.*

quaestor, -ōris, [= **quaesītōr**, from **quaerō**], m., *quaestor*, the name of a Roman magistrate whose duties varied at different periods. At first there were but two *quaestors* each year, but the number was increased from time to time until it reached forty under Caesar's administration. At that time the *quaestors* were engaged in the care of public moneys and of military stores, partly at Rome and partly in the provinces. They were chosen in the *Comitia Tributa*, and were assigned to their provinces by lot.

quaestūra, -ae, [quaestor], f., *office of quaestor, quaestorship.*

quālis, -e, adj., inter., *of what kind? what kind of a ?* rel., *of such a kind, such as, as.*

quam, [quī], adv. and conj., *how much, how; in what manner; with superlatives (with or with-*

out possum), *as possible*; after comparatives and comparative expressions, *than, as*; with expressions of time, *after*. **tam . . . quam**, *so . . . as*. **quam diū**, *as long as*. **quam primum**, *as soon as possible*.

quam diū, see **quam**.

quamquam, [**quam** + **quam**], conj., *though, although; and yet, however*.

quamvis, [**quam** + **vis**, from **volō**], conj., *as much as you will, however much, although*.

quantō, [**quantus**], adv., *by how much, how much*.

quantum, [**quantus**], adv., rel., *so much as, to as great an extent; inter., how much? how far?*

quantō opere, see **quantus**.

quantus, -a, -um, adj., rel., *as great as, as; inter., how great? how much?* **tantum . . . quantum**, *so much, so far . . . as*. As subst., with gen. of the whole, **quantum boni**, *how much advantage*. **quantō opere**, *how much, how deeply*. **quantus . . . tantus**, *as much . . . as, as great . . . as*.

quā rē, see **rēs**.

quartānus, -a, -um, [**quartus**], adj., *of the fourth, occurring on the fourth day*. As subst., **quartāna**, -ae, f., [sc. **febris**], *quartan ague*.

quartus, -a, -um, [**quattuor**], num. adj., *fourth*.

quasi, [**quā** + **sī**], adv. and conj., *as if, just as if, as though; about, nearly, as it were*.

quater, [cf. **quattuor**], num. adv., *four times*.

quattuor, or **IV**, indecl. num. adj., *four*.

quattuordecim, or **XIII**, [**quattuor** + **decem**], indecl. num. adj., *fourteen*.

-que, conj., *and, but*, always appended to another word, which in construction belongs after it.

quem ad modum, see **modus**.

queror, **queri**, **questus**, 3, dep., *complain, lament; complain of, make complaint of*.

questus, see **queror**.

quī, quae, quod, gen. **cūius**, inter. adj. pron., *which? what? what kind of a?*

quī, quae, quod, gen. **cūius**, rel. and inter. pron.:

- (1) As rel. pron., *who, which*; at the beginning of a clause often best rendered by a personal or demonstrative pron., with or without *and*; when with the subj. expressing cause, *since he (or they), because he (or they)*; with the subj. expressing characteristic result, often rendered *as he, so that he (it, they), that he (it, they)*, etc. **idem quī**, *the same as*.

- (2) As inter. adj. pron., *what? what kind of?*

quī, quae or qua, quod, indef. pron., *any, any one, or anything*, used both as subst. and as adj. **sī quī**, *if any one*.

quia, conj., *because, since*.

quicquam, see **quisquam**.

quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, indef. pron., *whoever, whatever, whichever*.

quīdam, quaedam, quiddam, indef. pron., *a certain one, a certain thing*. As adj., **quīdam, quaedam, quoddam**, *a certain, a; some, certain*.

quidem, adv., *indeed, at least*. **nē** . . . **quidem**, *not even*; the word emphasized is always placed between **nē** and **quidem**.

quiescētus, -a, -um, [part. of **quiescō**], adj., *at rest, inactive*; *quiet, peaceful*.

quilibet, **quaelibet**, **quodlibet** and **quidlibet**, indef. pron., *any one, whom you will*.

quīn, [old abl. **quī** + -ne], conj., *why not? that not, but that, without*; after words expressing doubt or suspicion, *that*; after **dēterreō**, **retineō**, etc., trans. by *from* with a participle. **quīn etiam** and **quīn et**, *nay even, moreover*.

Quīnctilius, -ī, m., *Quīnctilius*, gentile name of P. *Quīnctilius Vārus*, a general of Augustus who suffered a disastrous defeat at the hands of the Germans, 9 B.C.

Quīnctius, see **Flāminius**.

quīndecim, or **XV**, [quīque + decem], indecl. num. adj., *fifteen*.

quīngentēsimus, -a -um, [quīngentī], adj., *the five hundredth*.

quīngentī, -ae, -a, or **D**, [quīque + centum], num. adj., *five hundred*.

quīnī, -ae, -a, [quīque], distrib. num. adj., *five each, five at a time*.

quīnquāgēnī, -ae, -a, [quīnquāgintā], distrib. num., *fifty each*.

quīnquāgēsīmus, -a, -um, [quīnquāgintā], adj., *the fiftieth*.

quīnquāgintā, or **L**, [quīque], indecl. num. adj., *fifty*.

quīque, or **V**, indecl. num. adj., *five*.

quīnquennium, -ī, [quīque + annus], n., *a period of five years*.

quīnquēns, [quīque], adv., *five times, for the fifth time*.

quīntum, [quīntus], adv., *for the fifth time*.

quīntus, -a, -um, [quīque], num. adj., *fifth*.

Quīntus, -ī, m., a Roman forename.

quis, —, **quid**, inter. pron., *who? what?* Neut. **quid**, with gen. of the whole, **quid cōsili**, *what plan?* Neut. **quid**, as adverbial acc. (= **cūr**), *why?* **quid secūtamini**, *why do ye pursue?*

quis, —, **quid**, indef. pron., often after **sī**, **nisi**, **nē**, and **num**, *any one, anything*. As adj., **quī**, **quae** or **qua**, **quod**, *any*. **sī quis**, *if any one*. **nē quis**, *that not any one = that no one*. Neut. **quid**, with partitive gen., *any*; as **sī quid cōsili**, *if any plan*.

quisnam, —, **quidnam**, inter. pron., *who, pray? what, pray?* As adj., **quīnam**, **quāenam**, **quodnam**, *of what kind, pray?*

quisquam, —, **quicquam**, indef. pron., *any one, anything*. As adj., *any*.

quisque, —, **quidque**, indef. pron., *each one, each thing*. As adj., **quisque**, **quaeque**, **quodque**, *each*.

quisquis, **quaequae**, **quicquid**, indef. rel. pron., *whoever, whatever*.

quīvis, **quaevis**, **quidvis**, [quī + vis, from **volō**], indef. pron., *any one, anything you please*. As adj., **quīvis**, **quaevis**, **quodvis**, *any whatever*.

quō, adv. and conj.:

(1) **quō**, [dat. or abl. of **quī**], adv., inter., *whither? to what place?* rel., *whither, where, when; by what, by as much as; by reason of which, wherefore*;

to what extent, how far ? indefinite, after si and nō, to any place, at any point, anywhere.

- (2) **quō**, [abl. of **quī**], final conj., used especially with comparatives and followed by subj., in order that, that, that thereby. **quō minus**, *that not*, often best translated by *from* with a participle.

quoad, [**quō** + **ad**], adv. and conj., *as far as ; till, until ; as long as, while.*

quod, adv. and conj. :

- (1) As adv., *with respect to which, in what, as to what.* **quod si**, *but if, and yet if.*

- (2) As conj., *that, in that ; because, inasmuch as, supposing that, as to or in regard to the fact that, so far as.* **propterea quod**, *because ;* see N. to p. 114, l. 6.

quō minus, see **quō**.

quondam, adv., *at some time, at one time ; once, formerly ; of the future, some day, hereafter.*

quoniam, [**quom**, old form of **cum**, + **iam**], conj., *since, as, because, whereas.*

quoque, conj., following the emphatic word of a clause, *also, too.*

quōrsus and **quōrsus**, [**quō**, **versus**], adv., *to what place ? whither ? for what purpose ? for what ?*

quotannis, [**quot** + abl. pl. of **annus**], adv., *yearly, every year.*

quotiens, [**quot**], adv., *as often as ; how often.*

quotienscumque, [**quot**], adv., inter., *how often ? how many times ? rel., as often as.*

R.

rādix, -icis, f., *root ; of an elevation, foot, base ; origin.* **rādicēs collis**, *the foot of the hill.* **rādicēs montis**, *the base of the height, the foot of the mountain.*

raeda, -ae, [Kel.], f., *wagon with four wheels.*

rāmus, -ī, m., *branch, bough.*

rapīna, -ae, [cf. **rapīō**, *seize*], f., *pillage, pillaging, plundering.*

rapīō, **rapere**, **rapuī**, **raptus**, 3, *seize and carry off, snatch, drag ; hasten, hurry ; destroy, pillage.*

raptor, -ōris, [**raptō**, **rapīō**], m., *robber, plunderer, ravisher.*

rārō, [**rārus**], adv., *seldom, rarely, now and then.*

rārus, -a, -um, comp. **rārīor**, sup. **rārissimus**, adj., *thin ; rare, infrequent, few ; scanty, scattered.*

ratīō, -ōnis, [**reor**, *reckon*], f., *reckoning, calculation, account ; plan, theory, method, system, science ; reason, ground ; regard, consideration.*

ratīs, -is, f., *raft.*

Rauracī, (**Rauricī**), -ōrum, m., pl., *a people along the Rhine, north of the Helvetii.* See map opp. p. 114.

re, **red**-, an inseparable particle, used only in composition, *again, back.*

rebellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**re** + **bellō**], 1, *wage war again ; revolt, rebel, renew the combat.*

recēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessus, [**re** + **cēdō**], 3, *go back, retire, withdraw, retreat ; desist.*

recēns, -entis, adj., *fresh ; recent, late.* As subst., **recentēs**, -ium, m., pl., *those who were fresh, the unwearied.*

receptus, see **recipiō**.

recipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus, [re- + capiō], 3, *take back, get back, recover, win; receive, admit. sē recipere, to retreat; to recover one's self. recipere in deditiōnem, to admit to a surrender, receive into submission.*

recognōscō, -ere, -gnōvī, -gnitus, 3, *know again, recognize; examine, inspect.*

reconciliō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [re- + conciliō], 1, *regain; reunite, reconcile; win over again, win back, conciliate.*

recūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [re-, cf. causa], 1, *refuse, make refusal, decline; raise objections.*

reddō, -dere, -didī, -ditus, [red- + dō], 3, *give back, restore, return; represent, imitate; pay back; make, render; surrender; give up; hand over, deliver.*

redēemptus, see **redimō**.

redeō, -ire, -ivī, -itus, [red- + eō], irr., *go back, return, come in, arise, be received; slope back.*

redigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctus, [red- + agō], 3, *drive back, force back, bring back; bring, reduce, force; render, make.*

redimō, -imere, -ēmī, -ēemptus, [red- + emō], 3, *buy back, purchase; ransom; purchase, procure; of revenues, farm.*

redintegrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [red- + integrō, make whole], 1, *commence again, renew; revive.*

reditiō, -ōnis, [cf. redeō], f., *a going back, returning.*

reditus, -ūs, [cf. redeō], m., *going back, return; income, revenue.*

Redonēs, -um, m., pl., *a Gallic people in Brittany (Bretagne);*

the name survives in Rennes. See map opp. p. 114.

redūcō, -ducere, -dūxi, -ductus, [re- + dūcō], 3, *lead back, escort back, accompany; bring off; bring back, restore; reduce.*

referō, -ferre, rettulī, -lātus, [re- + ferō], irr., *bear back, bring; bring, carry, convey to a person or place; raise, bear off, recover; return, pay back, requite; ascribe, refer, attribute; relate, repeat, recount, tell, say. sē referre, go back, return. pedem referre, to retreat. grātiā referre, to make return, requite.*

reficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus, [re- + faciō], 3, *make again, reconstruct, repair, refit; recruit, reënforce.*

refluō, -ere, —, —, [re- + fluō], 3, *flow back, flow away.*

refoveō, -fovēre, -fōvī, -fōtus, [re- + foveō], 2, *warm again; refresh, restore, revive.*

refrāctus, see **refringō**.

refringō, -fringere, -frēgī, -frāctus, [re- + frangō], 3, *break; break down.*

rēgālis, -e, [rēx], adj., *of a king, royal, regal.*

rēgia, -ae, [rēgius], f., *royal palace, castle.*

rēgina, -ae, [rēx], f., *queen.*

regiō, -ōnis, [cf. regō, keep straight], f., *direction, line; boundary line; quarter, region, country.*

rēgius, -a, -um, [rēx], adj., *of a king, king's, kingly, royal; magnificent. As subst., rēgii, -ōrum, m., pl., the king's troops; the satraps.*

rēgnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [rēgnū],

1, have royal power, rule, be king; be lord, be supreme.

rēgnum, -ī, [cf. *rēx*], n., kingly government, royalty; dominion, sovereignty, sway; absolute authority; territory subject to a king or chieftain, kingdom.

regredior, -gredi, -gressus sum, [re- + gradior], 3, dep., go back, return; retreat.

Rēgulus, -ī, m., *Rēgulus*, family name of *M. Atilius Rēgulus*.

rēiciō (*rējiciō*), -icere, -iēcī, -iectus, [re- + iaciō], 3, throw back, hurl back; of ships, cast back, carry back; drive back, repulse; throw away; refuse, reject scornfully.

rēiectus, see *rēiciō*.

relanguēscō, -ere, -uī, —, [re- + languēscō], 3, become enfeebled, become enervated.

relātus, see *referō*.

relēgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [re- + lēgō, *depute*], 1, banish, remove.

relictus, see *relinquō*.

religiō, -ōnis, [re-, cf. *legō*], f., sense of right, moral obligation, duty; religious scruple; fear of the gods; religion, worship; religious liability.

religō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [re- + ligō], 1, bind, bind fast; chain.

relinquō, -linquere, -liquī, -lictus, [re- + linquō, *quit*], 3, leave, leave behind; desert, abandon; of a siege or attack, leave off, give up; bequeath.

reliquiae, -arum, [cf. *relinquō*], f., pl., what is left, remnant, rest.

reliquus, -a, -um, [cf. *relinquō*], adj., remaining, left, the rest. As subst., reliquī, -ōrum, m., pl., the rest. reliquum, -ī, n., re-

mainder, rest. reliquī, gen. sing. neut., in nihil reliquī, nothing left.

remaneō, -ēre, remānsī, —, [re- + maneō], 2, stay behind, remain; endure, last; continue to be.

Rēmī, -ōrum, m., pl., a Gallic people, about the head waters of the Axona (*Aisne*); chief city, Durocortorum, now *Rheims*. See map opp. p. 114.

reminiscor, -minisci, —, [re- + MEN in *mēns*], 3, dep., remember, recollect; followed by the gen.

remittō, -ere, remīsī, remissus, [re- + mittō], 3, let go back, send back, cause to return; throw back; yield, give up; relax, diminish; remit, grant exemption from; of a tax, remit. calcēs remittere, to kick.

remōtus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, [removeō], adj., far off, remote.

removeō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, [re- + moveō], 2, move back, remove, drive away; dismiss; deprive.

remūneror, -ārī, -ātus, [re- + mūnus], 1, dep., recompense, repay.

Remus, -ī, m., *Remus*, twin brother of *Romulus*.

Rēmus, -ī, m., one of the *Remi*.

rēmus, -ī, m., oar.

renovō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [re- + novō], 1, renew, restore, repeat; revive.

renūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [re- + nūntiō], 1, bring back word, announce, report.

renuō, -nuere, -nuī, —, [re- + nuō], 3, nod backward, refuse by a motion of the head; deny, refuse.

reor, *rēri*, *ratus sum*, 2, *dep.*, *reckon, believe, think, suppose.*
reparō, *-āre, -āvi, -ātus*, [*re + parō*], 1, *prepare again, renew, revive.*
repellō, *-pellere, -puli, -pulsus*, [*re + pellō*], 3, *drive back, repulse; reject, refuse.*
repente, [*repēns*], *adv.*, *suddenly, unexpectedly.*
repentīnus, *-a, -um*, [*repēns*], *adj.*, *sudden, hasty, unexpected.*
reperiō, *reperire, repperi* or *reperi*, *repertus*, 4, *find again, meet with; discover, find, find to be; learn.*
repetō, *-petere, -petivi, -petitus*, [*re + petō*], 3, *seek again, again try to obtain; demand; exact. poenās repetere, to exact punishment. repetundae (sc. pecūniae), extortion.*
repetundus, *part. of repetō.*
repleō, *-plēre, -plēvi, -plētus*, [*re + pleō*], 2, *fill again, refill, fill up; complete.*
rēpō, *rēpere, rēpsi, rēptus*, 3, *creep, crawl.*
repōnō, *-ere, -posui, -positus*, [*re + pōnō*], 3, *put back, replace, restore; renew; lay up, reckon; class.*
repraesentō, *-āre, -āvi, -ātus*, [*re + praesentō, from praesēns*], 1, *do at once, do forthwith.*
reprehendō, *-ere, reprehendi, reprehensus*, [*re + prehendō*], 3, *hold fast, seize, catch; blame, criticise, find fault with, reprove; prosecute, condemn.*
reprimō, *-ere, repressi, repressus*, [*re + premō*], 3, *press back, keep back; check, limit, confine, repress.*

repudiō, *-āre, -āvi, -ātus*, 1, *put away, divorce; cast off, reject, scorn, repudiate.*
repugnō, *-āre, -āvi, -ātus*, [*re + pugnō*], 1, *fight back, oppose, resist, defend one's self against.*
repulsa, *-ae*, [*repellō*], *f.*, *rejection, refusal, repulse; defeat at the polls.*
repulsus, *see repellō.*
reputō, *-āre, -āvi, -ātus*, [*re + putō*], 1, *count over, reckon, calculate; meditate, reflect, reflect on.*
rēs, *rei*, *f.*, *thing, object, matter; affair, event; circumstance, condition, property, possessions; object, project, business; state, commonwealth. rēs militāris, warfare, military science. rēs novae, a revolution. rēs pūblica, commonwealth, republic, the state, public business, public interest. quā rē, wherefore, and for this reason. rē vērā, indeed, in truth.*
rescindō, *-ere, rescidi, rescissus*, [*re + scindō*], 3, *cut off, cut loose, cut down, break up, destroy; renew, expose; annul, repeal.*
resciō, *-sciscere, -scivi or -scii, -scitus*, [*re + sciō*], 3, *learn, find out.*
rescribō, *-scribere, -scripsi, -scriptus*, [*re + scribō*], 3, *write again; enroll anew, transfer from one branch of the service to another.*
reservō, *-āre, -āvi, -ātus*, [*re + servō*], 1, *keep back, reverse, keep.*
resistō, *-sistere, -stiti, —*, 3, *stand back, remain; remain standing, halt, stop, stand still; resist, oppose, withstand.*

resolvō, -ere, -solvi, -solūtus, [re- + solvō], 3, *untie, unbind, loose; relax, enervate; dissolve, melt.*

respicio, -ere, respexi, respectus, [re- + specio], 3, *look back, look back upon, gaze at, contemplate; consider, respect.*

respondeō, -ēre, respondi, respond-sus, [re- + spondeō], 2, *answer, reply; correspond, agree.*

respondsum, -ī, [respondeō], n., *answer, reply, response; response of oracle.*

rēs publica, see **rēs**.

respuō, -spuere, -spuī, —, [re- + spuō, spit], 3, *spit out, reject.*

restinguō, -stinguere, restinxī, restinctus, [re- + stinguō], 3, *put out, quench, extinguish; assuage, allay; destroy.*

restituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, [re- + statuō], 3, *set up again, replace, rebuild; restore, renew, revive; remedy; reinstate; save.*

retardō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [re- + tardō], 1, *keep back, delay, impede, retard; repress, check.*

retineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentus, [re- + teneō], 2, *hold back, keep, detain, retain, restrain; preserve, maintain.*

retrahō, -ere, retrāxī, retrāctus, [re- + trahō], 3, *draw back, call back, drag back; remove, divert, turn.*

reus, -ī, m., *defendant, accused, prisoner.*

revellō, -vellere, -velli, -vulsus, [re- + vellō, pull], 3, *pull back; tear away.*

reverentia, -ae, f., *respect, regard.*

revertō, -ere, reverti, [re- + vertō], 3, *only in tenses from pf. stem, and revertor, -verti, -ver-*

sus, 3, dep., return, come back, go back; revert, recur.

revocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [re- + vocō], 1, *call again, call back, recall; call off.*

rēx, rēgis, [cf. regō, rule], m., *king, monarch, ruler, chieftain.*

Rhea, -ae, f., *Rhea*, forename of *Rhea Silvia*, daughter of Numitor, and mother of Romulus and Remus.

Rhēnus, -ī, [Kel., from root meaning 'flow'], m., *the Rhine*, the principal river of Northern Europe, having a course of about 850 miles; twice bridged by Caesar. See map opp. p. 114.

rhētor, -oris, [ῥήτωρ], m., *teacher of oratory, rhetorician, orator.*

Rhodanus, -ī, m., *the Rhone*, which rises in the Alps near the sources of the Rhine, and passing through Lake Geneva, follows at first a southwesterly direction, then flows south, reaching the Mediterranean after a course of about 500 miles. See map opp. p. 114.

Rhodium, -a, -um, adj., *Rhodian*, of *Rhodes*. As subst., *Rhodium*, -ī, m., *Rhodian, inhabitant of Rhodes.*

Rhodium, -ī, f., *Rhodes*, an important island lying south of the western part of Asia Minor. It was famous for its schools of rhetoric, and for its prominence in naval affairs. See map opp. p. 93.

rideō, ridēre, risi, risus, 2, *laugh, smile; laugh at, laugh over, mock, deride.*

ripa, -ae, f., *bank of a river, margin; shore of the sea.*

risus, -ūs, [rideō], m., *laughing, laughter; object of laughter.*

rōbur, -oris, n., *hard wood, oak; hardness, strength, vigor; best part, flower.*

rōbustus, -a, -um, [rōbur], adj., *of oak wood, oaken; strong, hardy, robust.*

rogātus, -ūs, [rogō], only found in the abl. sing., m., *request, entreaty.*

rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 1, *ask, question; beg, request, solicit.*

Rōma, -ae, f., *Rome.*

Rōmānus, -a, -um, [Rōma], adj., *Roman.* Assubst., **Rōmānus**, -ī, m., *a Roman; usually pl., the Romans, Romans.*

Rōmulus, -ī, m., *Romulus*, the mythical founder and first king of Rome. **Rōmulus Silvius**, a mythical king of Alba Longa.

Roscius, -ī, m., *Roscius*, gentile name of *Sextius Roscius* of Ameria, defended by Cicero against a charge of murder.

rōstrum, -ī, [rōdō], n., *beak, bill; ship's beak; pl., the Rostra, speaker's platform in the Forum.*

rota, -ae, f., *wheel.*

ruber, -bra, -brum, adj., *red.*

Rubrum Mare, *the Red Sea*, a name applied to the Arabian and Persian gulfs.

Rubicō, -ōnis, m., *the Rubicon*, a small river in northeastern Italy, which formed the boundary between Italy and Cisalpine Gaul. See map opp. p. 30.

rubus, -ī, m., *bramble-bush.*

Rūfus, see *Minucius Sulpicius*.

ruīna, -ae, [ruō], f., *rushing down, falling; ruin, catastrophe, destruction; fallen building, ruin.*

rūmor, -ōris, m., *rumor, report.*

rumpō, *rumpere*, rūpī, ruptus, 3,

break, tear, rend; violate, destroy.

ruō, *ruere*, rūī, rutus, 3, *fall with violence, go to ruin; cause to fall, overthrow; hasten, hurry, rush.*

rūpēs, -is, [cf. rumpō], f., *cliff, steep rock.*

rūrsus or **rūrsum**, [= *revorsus* or *revorsum*], adv., *turned back; back; on the contrary, again, anew, once more.*

rūs, **rūris**, n., *the country; lands, fields, land, estate.*

Rutēnī, -ōrum, m., pl., a Gallic people, west of the Cévennes; part of them were within the limits of 'the Province,' and were hence called *Rutēnī prōvinciālēs*. See map opp. p. 114.

Rutīlius, -ī, m., *Rutīlius*, family name of *P. Rutīlius Lupus*, consul in 90 B.C.

S.

Sabīnus, -a, -um, adj., *of the Sabines, Sabine.* As subst., **Sabīnī**, -ōrum, m., pl., *the Sabines*, dwelling in central Italy north of Latium.

Sabīnus, see *Titurius*.

Sabis, -is, m., *the Sambre*, a river in the central part of Belgic Gaul which flows northeast into the Mosa (*Meuse*). See map opp. p. 114.

sacellum, -ī, [sacrum], n., *little sanctuary, shrine, chapel.*

sacer, -cra, -crum, adj., *dedicated, consecrated, sacred, devoted; forfeited, accursed.* Used as subst., see **sacrum**.

sacerdōs, -ōtis, [sacer], m. and f., *priest, priestess.*

sacrarium, -ī, [sacrum], n., *shrine, sanctuary, chapel*.

sacrificō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [sacer, cf. faciō], 1, *offer sacrifice, sacrifice*.

sacrum, -ī, [sacer], n., *something sacred, holy thing; sacred vessel; pl., divine worship, religious rites*.

saepe, comp. -ius, sup. -issimē, adv., *often, frequently*. Comp., *too often*. **saepe numerō**, *often-times, repeatedly*.

saepēs, -is, f., *hedge*.

saepiō, -īre, **saepi**, **saepius**, [saepēs], 4, *surround with a hedge, hedge in, enclose; fortify, guard, protect*.

saeviō, -īre, -iī, -ītus, [saevus], 4, *be fierce, rage, rave; show cruelty*.

saevus, -a, -um, adj., *raging, mad, fierce, savage; violent, cruel, harsh*.

sagittarius, -ī, [sagitta], m., *archer, bowman*.

sagulum, -ī, n., *small military cloak; travelling-cloak*.

Saguntinus, -a, -um, [Saguntum], adj., *of or belonging to Saguntum*. As subst., **Saguntinus**, -ī, m., *an inhabitant of Saguntum, a Saguntine*.

Saguntus, -ī, f., or **Saguntum**, -ī, n., *Saguntum, a town in the eastern part of Spain, near the coast, the capture of which by Hannibal led to the second Punic War*. See map, frontispiece.

sāl, **salis**, n., *salt water, the sea; shrewdness, wit; good taste, elegance*.

Salaminius, -a, -um, adj., *of Salamis, at Salamis*.

Salamis, -īnis, acc. **Salamina**, [Σαλαμῖς], f., *Salamis, an island in the Saronic Gulf, not far from Athens, the scene of the defeat of the Persian fleet in 480 B.C.* See map opp. p. 75.

Salernitanus, -a, -um, adj., *of Salernum, a town in Campania, the modern Salerno*.

saltō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [freq. of saliō], 1, *dance*.

saltus, -ūs, m., *forest, woodland, forest-pasture; glen, glade; mountain pass*.

salum, -ī, n., only found in acc. and abl. sing., *deep sea, sea*.

salūs, -ūtis, [cf. salvus, well], f., *health, welfare, safety*.

salūtātiō, -ōnis, [salūtō], f., *greeting, salutation; ceremonial visit*.

salūtātor, -ōris, [salūtō], m., *saluter*.

salūtō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [salūs], 1, *greet, wish health, salute, hail; call upon, visit*.

salvus, -a, -um, adj., *in good health, well, sound, safe*.

Samnites, -ium, m., pl., *Samnites, inhabitants of Samnium, a mountainous district in central Italy, east and southeast of Latium*. See map opp. p. 30.

sanciō, **sancire**, **sānxi**, **sānctus**, 4, *render sacred, bind, confirm, ratify*.

sanguis, -inis, m., *blood, bloodshed; race, stock, family*.

sānitās, -tātis, [sānus], f., *soundness of mind, good sense*.

Santonēs, -um, or **Santonī**, -ōrum, m., pl., *a Gallic people on the seacoast north of the Garonne; the name survives in Saintes and Saintonge*. See map opp. p. 114.

sapiēns, -entis, comp. **sapientior**, sup. **sapientissimus**, adj., *wise, knowing, sensible, discreet*. As subst., m., *discreet person, man of sense, sage*.

sapienter, [**sapiēns**], adv., *sensibly, wisely, discreetly*.

sarcinae, -ārum, [**sar** in **sarciō**], f., pl., *baggage, packs*, the load that each soldier carried on his back.

Sardinia, -ae, f., *Sardinia*, a large island in the Mediterranean, west of the southern part of Italy. See map opp. p. 30.

Sardiniēsis, -e, adj., *of Sardinia, Sardinian*. As subst., **Sardiniēsis**, -is, m., *inhabitant of Sardinia, Sardinian*.

Sardiā or **Sardiās**, -ium, [**Sāpdeis**], f., pl., *Sardis* or *Sardes*, the capital of Lydia in western Asia Minor. See map opp. p. 93.

sarmentum, -ī, n., *twig, fagot*; pl., *brushwood, fagots*.

satelles, -itis, m. and f., *attendant, follower, courtier*.

satis, adj., n., indecl., *enough, sufficient, satisfactory*. As subst., *enough, sufficiency*. As adv., *enough, sufficiently, quite, wholly, tolerably, somewhat*; often used as adj. with a gen. of the whole, as *satis causae*, *sufficient reason*. Comp. *satius*, *better, preferable*.

satis faciō (*satisfaciō*), *facere*, *fēci*, *factus*, irr., *satisfy, give satisfaction; make restitution; appease, placate; make apology, apologize*.

satisfactiō, -ōnis, [cf. *satisfaciō*], f., *apology, excuse*.

satrapēs, -is, or **satrapa**, -ae, [**σραπάης**], m., *governor of a province, satrap*.

Sāturnius, -a, -um, [**Sāturnus**], adj., *of or belonging to Sāturnus, Saturnian*.

Sāturnus, -ī, m., [**serō**], *Sāturnus*, the most ancient king of Latium; afterwards worshipped as god of agriculture.

saucius, -a, -um, adj., *wounded, hurt; ill, sick*.

saxum, -ī, n., *stone, rock*.

Scaevola, -ae, m., *Scaevola*. See **Mūcius**.

scapha, -ae, [**σκάφη**], f., *light boat, skiff*.

scelustus, -a, -um, [**scelus**], adj., *impious, wicked, infamous*. As subst., m. and f., *infamous person, wretch, scoundrel*.

scelus, -eris, n., *wicked deed, crime, sin, wickedness*.

schola, -ae, f., *intermission of work, leisure for learning, debate, lecture; place of learning, school*.

scientia, -ae, [**sciēns**], f., *knowledge, skill, science*.

scilicet, [**scire licet**], adv., *you may know, of course, forsooth, evidently*.

sciō, -īre, -ivī, -ītus, 4, *know, know how; understand, perceive*.

Scipiō, -ōnis, m., [**scipiō**, *staff*], *Scipio*, the name of a very distinguished family of the Cornelian gens. In this book are mentioned:

(1) *P. Cornēlius Scipiō*, consul in 218 B.C., defeated by Hannibal at the Ticinus and at the Trebia; he was killed in battle with the Carthaginians in Spain in 212 B.C.

(2) *P. Cornēlius Scipiō Africānus*, son of the preceding; he

ended the second Punic War by defeating Hannibal at Zama, 202 B.C.

(3) *L. Cornēlius Scīpiō Asiāticus*, who defeated Antiochus in 190 B.C., and from this campaign derived his surname, *Asiaticus*.

(4) *Cn. Cornēlius Scīpiō*, consul in 222 B.C.

(5) *P. Cornēlius Scīpiō Aemiliānus Africānus Minor*, who destroyed Carthage in 146 B.C.

(6) *P. Cornēlius Scīpiō Nāsica*, consul in 111 B.C.

scītum, -ī, [scīscō], n., ordinance, decree. *populī scītum*, a decree of the people.

scrība, -ae, [cf. scrībō], m., scribe, clerk, secretary.

scribō, scribere, scripsī, scriptus, 3, scratch, engrave; write, write down; describe in letter, communicate.

scrīnium, -ī, n., case, chest, box.

scriptor, -ōris, [scrībō], m., one who writes, scribe, copyist, clerk; author, narrator.

Scultenna, -ae, f., the *Scultenna*, a river in Cisalpine Gaul, not far from Mutina. See map opp. p. 30.

scūtum, -ī, n., oblong shield, buckler; defence, protection. See INTRO., p. 16.

Scythēs, -ae, [Σκυθης], m., a *Scythian*, inhabitant of *Scythia*, a large country lying northeast of the Caspian Sea.

sē, **sēsē**, see **suī**.

sē- or **sēd-**, [abl. of **suī**], prep. used mostly in composition, *apart*, *away from*.

sēcēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessus,

[**sē** + **cēdō**], 3, *go apart*, *separate*, *retire*; *rebel*, *revolt*, *secede*.

sēcscrētō, [sēcscrētus], adv., *secretly*, *privately*.

sectiō, -ōnis, [secō], f., *booty*.

sector, -ārī, -ātus sum, [freq. of **sequor**], 1, dep., *follow eagerly*, *run after*, *pursue*; *seek the society of*; *search for*.

secundum, [sequor], prep. with acc. only, *along*, *next to*, *by the side of*, *according to*, *besides*.

secundus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, [sequor], adj., *second*, *next*; *secondary*, *inferior*; *propitious*, *fortunate*, *favorable*.

sēd, conj., *but*; *yet*, *but yet*.

sēdecim, or **XVI**, [sex + decem], indecl. num. adj., *sixteen*.

sedeō, -ēre, sēdī, sessus, 2, *sit*, *remain sitting*; *preside*, *hold court*, *be encamped*; *be established*.

sēdēs, -is, [cf. sedeō, sit], f., *seat*, *chair*, *throne*; *habitation*, *abode*, *settlement*.

sēditiō, -ōnis, [sēd + eō], f., *going aside*, *dissension*, *civil discord*, *rebellion*; *strife*, *quarrel*.

sēditiōsus, -a, -um, sup. -issimus, [sēditiō], adj., *seditionous*, *mutinous*.

Sedusiī, -ōrum, m., pl., a German tribe, the location of which is uncertain.

sēgregō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [sē + gregō, from grex], 1, *separate from the flock*; *part*, *remove*, *separate*.

Segusiāvī, -ōrum, m., pl., a Gallic state, tributary to the Aedui, in the region west of the junction of the Rhone and Saône (*Arar*). See map opp. p. 114.

sēiungō, -ere, sēiūnxī, sēiunctus, [sē + iungō], 3, *separate*, *divide*.

sella, -ae, [sedeō], f., *seat, chair*.

semel, num. adv., *once, once for all*. **semel atque iterum**, *time and again*.

sēmentis, -is, [sēmen, seed], f., *sowing; of grain, seeding*.

sēmet, see **sui**.

sēmianimis, [sēmi-+anima], adj., *half-alive, half-dead*.

semper, adv., *always, continually, forever*.

Semprōnius, -a, the name of a Roman gens. In this book are mentioned:

(1) *Ti. Semprōnius Longus*, consul in 218 B.C.; together with Scipio he was defeated by Hannibal at the river Trebia.

(2) *Ti. Semprōnius Gracchus*, consul in 213 B.C., slain in battle with the Carthaginians.

Sēna, -ae, f., *Sena*, a town in Umbria in northeastern Italy, near which Hasdrubal was defeated and killed in 207 B.C. See map opp. p. 30.

senātor, -ōris, [cf. **senex**], m., member of the Roman Senate, *senator*; applied by Caesar to members of Gallic state-councils, *councillor, senator*.

senātōrius, -a, -um, [senātor], adj., *of a senator, senatorial*.

senātus, -ūs, [senex], m., *council of elders, senate*. **senātūs cōnsultum**, *decree of the senate*.

Seneca, -ae, f., *Seneca*, family name of *L. Annaeus Seneca*, a celebrated Stoic philosopher and writer, tutor of the Emperor Nero.

senex, senis, comp. **senior**, adj., *old, aged, advanced in years*. As subst., m., *old man*. Comp. as

subst., **senior**, -ōris, m., *elder, elderly man*.

sēnī, -ae, -a, [sex], distr. num. adj., *six each*.

senior, -ōris, comp. of **senex**.

Senonēs, -um, [Kel., from **senos** = **senex**?], m., pl., a strong Gallic state south of the *Matrona (Marne)*; chief city *Agedincum*, now *Sens*. See map opp. p. 114.

sentia, -ae, [cf. **sentio**], f., *way of thinking, opinion, judgment, will, desire; thought, purpose; purport; sentence, saying, sentiment, vote*. **sententiam dicere**, *to express an opinion*.

sentio, -ire, **sēnsi**, **sēnsus**, 4, *discern by sense, perceive, feel; hear, see, perceive; think, be of opinion, believe; know; agree in opinion*.

sentis, -is, m., *thorn, brier*.

sēparātim, [sēparātus], adv., *separately, apart*.

sepeliō, -ire, **sepelivī**, **sepultus**, 4, *bury, inter; ruin, overwhelm, destroy*.

septem, or **VII**, indecl. num. adj., *seven*.

septentrīō, -ōnis, [septem + triō, *plough-ox*], m., generally pl., **septentrionēs**, -um, lit., *the seven plough-oxen*, the seven stars forming the constellation of the Great Bear, hence *the North*.

septimus, -a, -um, [septem], num. adj., *the seventh*.

septingentēsimus, -a, -um, [septingenti], adj., *the seven hundredth*.

septingentī, -ae, -a, [septem + centum], num. adj., *seven hundred*.

septuāgēsimus, -a, -um, [septuāgintā], num. adj., *seventieth*.

septuāgintā, indecl. num. adj., *seventy*.

sepulcrum, -ī, [cf. *sepeliō*], n., *burial-place, grave, tomb, sepulchre*.

sepultūra, -ae, [sepeliō], f., *burial, funeral, obsequies*.

Sēquana, -ae, f., *the Seine*, the principal river of northern France. See map opp. p. 114.

Sēquanī, -ōrum, m., pl., a Gallic state west of the Jura; chief city Vesontio, now *Besançon*. In their strifes with the Aedui they secured the aid of Ariovistus, who made them subject to himself. Cf. n. to p. 121, l. 2. See map opp. p. 114.

Sēquanus, -a, -um, adj., *Sequanian, of the Sequani*. As subst., *Sēquanus*, ī, m., *a Sequanian*.

sequor, -ī, secūtus sum, 3, dep., *follow, attend; come after, come next; pursue; follow, comply with, adopt, conform to*.

Ser., with proper names = **Servius**, a Roman forename.

Sergius, -a, the name of a Roman gens. In this book are mentioned:

(1) *M. Sergius Catilina*, the great-grandfather of the conspirator (2). See p. 62.

(2) *L. Sergius Catilina*. See *Catilina*. [seriously.]

sēriō, [sērius], adv., *in earnest*,

sermō, -ōnis, m., *speech, talk, conversation; utterance, remark; discussion; language, speech*.

serpēs, -entis, [part. of *serpō*, *crawl*], m., *serpent, snake*.

Servilius, -a, gentile name of *Cn. Servilius Geminus*, consul in 217 B.C., killed at Cannae.

servilis, -e, [servus], adj., *servile, of slaves*.

serviō, -īre, -īvi, -ītus, [servus], 4, *be a servant, be enslaved, serve; be devoted, labor for, aim at; comply with, conform*.

servitūs, -tūtis, [servus], f., *slavery, bondage, subjection*.

Servius, -ī, m., *Servius*. See *Tullius*.

servō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 1, *save, preserve; keep, maintain, retain; save up; keep watch of, watch; keep watch*.

servulus, -ī, [dim. of *servus*], m., *young slave, slave*.

servus, -ī, [cf. *servō*, *save*; slaves were generally captives whose lives had been spared], m., *slave, servant*.

sescentēsimus, -a, -um, [sex, cf. centum], adj., *the six hundredth*.

sēsē, acc. and abl. of *suī*.

sēstertius, -a, -um, [= *sēmis*, *tertius*], adj., *two and a half*. As subst., *sēstertius*, -ī, m., (sc. *nummus*), *a sesterce*, a small silver coin, originally $2\frac{1}{2}$ asses, = $4\frac{1}{4}$ cents.

sētius, adv. in comp. degree, *less*. *nihilō sētius*, *none the less, nevertheless*.

seu, see *sive*.

sevērē, comp. *sevērius*, sup. *sevērissimō*, [sevērus], adv., *gravely, seriously, severely*.

sevērus, -a, -um, adj., *serious, sober, grave, stern; gloomy*.

sex, or **VI**, indecl. num. adj., *six*.

sexāgēsīmus, -a, -um, [sexāgintā], adj., *the sixtieth*.

sexāgintā, or **LX**, indecl. num. adj., *sixty*.

sexcentī, -ae, -a, [sex + centum], num. adj., *six hundred*.

Sextilis, -e, [sextus], adj., *of the sixth month, counting from March*.

The month was afterwards called *Augustus*, in honor of the emperor.

Sextius, see *Baculus*.

sextus, -a, -um, [sex], adj., *sixth*.

sī, conj., *if, since, when, whether; would that. quod sī, but if, now if.*

sibi, see *sui*.

sic, adv., *so, in this way, thus.*

ut . . . sic, as . . . so. sic . . .

ut, so . . . that; just as.

siccō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [siccus],
1, *make dry, dry; exhaust.*

siccus, -a, -um, adj., *dry.* As
subst., **siccum**, -ī, n., *dry land,*
a dry place.

Sicilia, -ae, f., *Sicily.*

Siculus, -a, -um, adj., *Sicilian.*

As subst., **Siculi**, -ōrum, m., pl.,
the Sicilians.

sicut or **sicuti**, [sic + uti], adv.,
just as, as.

signifer, -ferī, [signum, cf. ferō],
m., *standard-bearer, ensign.*

significātiō, -ōnis, [significō], f.,
sign, signal, intimation; de-
meanor. significātiōnem facere,
to give notice, convey information.

significō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [signum,
+ fac in faciō], 1, *show by signs,*
show, intimate, indicate, give in-
timation; mean, signify.

signō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [signum],
1, *set a mark on, mark, desig-*
nate; mark with a seal, seal,
adorn; point out, indicate.

signum, -ī, n., *mark, sign; mili-*
tary standard, ensigns; signal;
seal of a letter; statue, figure.
See p. 17.

Silēnus, -ī, [Σειληνός], m., *Silēnus,*
a Greek historian, who wrote of
the wars of Hannibal.

silva, -ae, f., *wood, forest, woodland.*

silvestris, -e, [silva], adj., *cover-*
ed with woods, wooded, woody.

Silvia, -ae, f., *Silvia.* See *Rhea.*

Silvius, -ī, m., *Silvius*, mythical
king of Alba Longa. See under
Rōmulus, Proca.

similis, -e, adj., *like, resembling,*
similar.

similiter, [similis], adv., *in like*
manner, similarly.

simul, adv., *at the same time, at*
once, together; as soon as.

simul . . . **simul**, both . . . and,
partly . . . partly. simul atque
(ac), as soon as.

simulātīō, -ōnis, [cf. simulō], f.,
pretence, shamming, deceit.

simul atque, see *simul.*

simulō, -āre, -āvi, ātus, [similis],
1, *make like, imitate, copy;*
represent, pretend, feign, simu-
late.

simultās, -ātis, [simul], f., *hostile*
encounter; rivalry, grudge,
hatred.

sīn, [sī + nē], conj., *if however,*
but if.

sine, prep. with abl. only, *without.*

singulāris, -e, [singulī], adj., *one*
by one, one at a time, single, soli-
tary; remarkable, unparalleled.

singulī, -ae, -a, adj., *one to each,*
one by one, one apiece; separate,
single; individual.

sinister, -tra, -trum, adj., *left, on*
the left; in the language of the
Roman augurs, favorable, auspi-
cious; of the Greek augurs, per-
verse, unlucky.

sinistra, -ae, [sc. manus], f., *left*
hand. sub sinistrā, on the left.

situs, -a, -um, [part. of sinō], adj.,
placed, set, lying, situated; laid
out; dependent.

sīve or **seu**, [sī + ve], conj., or *if*.
sive (**seu**) . . . **sive** (**seu**), *if*
 . . . or *if, whether* . . . or,
either . . . or, *it might be* . . .
 or.

sōbrius, -a, -um, [sō = sē + ēbrius, drunk], adj., sober; moderate, temperate; sensible, pleasant.

socer, -erī, m., father-in-law.

sociālis, -e, [socius], adj., of companionship, of allies, allied, confederate.

societās, -ātis, [socius], f., fellowship, association, society; alliance, confederacy.

socius, -ī, m., comrade, fellow, ally, confederate; in Caesar always pl., allies.

sōl, sōlis, m., the sun. **ad orientem** sōlem, towards the east. **ad occidentem** sōlem, towards the west.

soleō, -ēre, solitus sum, 2, semidep., use, be wont, be accustomed.

solitus, -a, -um, [part. of soleō], adj., wonted, accustomed, usual, habitual.

solum, -ī, n., seat, throne; rule.

sollers, -ertis, [sollus, whole, + ars], adj., skilful, clever, adroit.

sollicitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [sollicitus], 1, disturb, stir, move, shake; disturb; rouse, excite, urge; tamper with, tempt.

solum, -ī, n., lowest part, ground.

agrī solum, the bare ground.

sōlum, [acc. of sōlus], adv., only. **nōn sōlum** . . . **sed etiam**, not only . . . but also.

sōlus, -a, -um, gen. sōlius, adj., alone, only, single, sole; solitary, forsaken.

solvō, -ere, solvī, solūtus, [sē + luō], 3, loosen, unbind; untie, let down; unseal, open; release;

divide; pay. **nāvem solvere**, to set sail.

somnus, -ī, m., sleep; inactivity, idleness.

sonus, -ī, m., noise, sound.

soror, -ōris, f., sister. **soror ex matrē**, half-sister on the mother's side.

sors, sortis, f., lot, fate, destiny, decision by lot.

sortior, -īrī, -ītus sum, [sors], 4, dep., cast lots; assign by lot, obtain by lot.

Sōsilus, -ī, [Σώσιλος], m., Sosilus, a Greek historian.

Sp., with proper names = **Spurius**, a Roman forename.

Sparta, -ae, [Σπάρτη], f., Sparta, Lacedaemon, the capital of Laconia, in the southeastern part of the Peloponnesus. See map opp. p. 75.

sparus, -ī, m., a small spear, with a barbed head; hunting-spear.

spatium, -ī, n., space, room, extent, distance; race-course, track; space of time; interval, time, period, duration. **ā tantō spatiō**, at so great a distance, so far off.

speciēs, gen. wanting, acc. -em, abl. -ē, f., sight, look, appearance; semblance, pretence, seeming. **ad speciem**, for show.

spectō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [freq. of speciō], 1, look at, behold, watch, observe, see; look to, aim at; tend, incline, be directed; face, lie; judge.

speculātor, -tōris, [speculor], m., spy, scout.

speculor, -ārī, -ātus, [cf. specula, watch-tower], 1, dep., spy out, reconnoitre.

speculum, -ī, n., *reflector, looking-glass, mirror.*

spērō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [cf. spēs], 1, *hope, expect.*

spēs, speī, f., *hope, expectation.*
in spem venire, *to entertain the hope, begin to have hopes.*

spīritus, -ūs, [cf. spīrō, breathe], m., *breath, air*; pl., *haughtiness, pride.*

splendor, -ōris, m., *brightness, splendor; magnificence, excellence.*

spoliō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [spolium], 1, *strip, bare; rob, pillage, plunder.*

spolium, -ī, n., *skin, hide; arms stripped from an enemy, booty, spoil.*

spondeō, -ēre, sponondī, spōnsus, 2, *promise sacredly, give assurance, vow; agree, promise.*

sponte, abl., and spontis, gen., only forms in use of an obsolete nom. spōns, f., *of one's own accord, willingly, voluntarily.* suā sponte, *by their own influence.*

Spūrinna, -ae, m., *Vestritius Spūrinna*, the name of an augur who warned Julius Caesar to beware the Ides of March.

Spurius, -ī, m., *Spurius*, a Roman forename.

statim, [cf. stō], adv., *steadily, forthwith, straightway, immediately, instantly.*

statiō, -ōnis, [cf. stō], f., *outpost, picket, guard.* in statiōe, *on guard.*

statua, -ae, [cf. sistō], f., *image, statue.*

statuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, 3, *cause to stand, set up; erect, make, build; determine, resolve; judge, think; determine on, appoint.*

statūra, -ae, [cf. stō], f., *height, size, stature.*

status, -ūs, [stō], m., *station, position, place; posture, attitude; condition, rank.*

stercus, -oris, m., *dung, ordure, manure.*

sterilis, -e, adj., *barren, unproductive, sterile.*

Stēsagorās, -ae, [Στησαγόρας], m., *Stesagoras*, brother of Miltiades.

stīpendiārius, -a, -um, [stīpendium], adj., *tributary, subject to payment of tribute.*

stīpendium, -ī, n., *paying of tax, impost, tribute; income, salary, pay; military service, campaign.*
stīpendium merēre, *stīpendia facere, to serve in the army.*

stīpes, -itis, m., *post, stake.*

stīrps, stīrpis, f., *stock, trunk; offspring, progeny, son; race, family; origin, beginning.*

stō, stāre, steti, status, 1, *stand, be upright, be erect; stand firm, abide, remain.*

stolidus, -a, -um, adj., *slow, dull, stupid.*

strāgēs, -is, f., *overthrow, destruction, ruin, defeat, massacre; wreck.*

strangulō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 1, *choke, suffocate, strangle.*

strēnuē, [strēnuus], adv., *vigorously, actively.*

strēnuus, -a, -um, adj., *brisk, nimble, quick, active, vigorous.*

strepitus, -ūs, m., *confused noise, din, clash, crash, applause.*

strictus, see stringō.

stringō, -ere, strinxī, strictus, 3, *draw tight; graze; strip off; of a sword, draw.*

struō, struere, struxī, strūctus, 3,

place together, heap up, arrange; make, construct, build.

studiōs, -ēre, -uī, —, 2, *be eager for, strive for, give attention to, pay heed to; eagerly desire, strive. novis rēbus or imperiis studēre, *to desire a revolution.*

studiōsē, [studiōsus], adv., *eagerly, zealously.*

studiōsus, -a, -um, [studium], adj., *eager, zealous, anxious, interested in, studious; attached, devoted.*

studium, -ī, [studeō], n., *application, zeal, desire, eagerness, endeavor; study, pursuit; good-will, affection, kindness.*

stultē, [stultus], adv., *foolishly.*

stultitia, -ae, [stultus], f., *folly, foolishness, simplicity.*

suādeō, -ēre, suāsī, suāsus, 2, *advise, exhort, urge, persuade.*

suāvitās, -ātis, [suāvis], f., *sweetness, pleasantness.*

sub, prep. with acc. and abl., *under:*

(1) With acc., *after verbs of motion, under, below, towards, up to; until; after.*

(2) With abl., *under, beneath, at the foot of; during; subject to.*

In composition, *under, beneath; somewhat, a little; secretly.*

subducō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, [sub + ducō], 3, *lead up from a lower to a higher position, draw away, lead away, carry off, draw off, transfer; steal, hide; haul up.*

subeō, -īre, -īvī or -iī, -itus, [sub + eō], irr., *go under; come up, go up (to), from a lower position, ascend, approach; encounter; submit to, yield to. umeris subire, carry on the shoulders.*

subiciō (subjiciō), -icere, -iēcī, -iectus, [sub + iaciō], 3, *throw from beneath; expose; make subject.*

subigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctus, [sub + agō], 3, *drive up, bring up; cultivate, work; conquer, subdue, subjugate; force, compel.*

subitō, [subitus], adv., *suddenly, on a sudden, at once.*

subitus, -a, -um, adj., *sudden, unexpected, surprising.*

sublātus, part. of tollō.

sublevō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [sub + levō], 1, *lift from beneath, lift up, support; lighten, alleviate; relieve, sustain, support, assist, encourage.*

subrideō, -ridēre, -rīsī, —, [sub + rideō], 2, *smile.*

subruō, -ruere, -ruī, -rutus, [sub + ruō, fall], 3, *undermine.*

subsequor, -sequī, -secūtus, [sub + sequor], 3, dep., *follow close upon, follow after, follow up.*

subsidiūm, -ī, [cf. subsidō], n., *reserve, reserve force, auxiliaries; support, relief, reinforcement, help, aid, resource, remedy. mittere subsidio, to send help.*

subsilio, -īre, -uī, —, 4, *leap up.*

subsisto, -sistere, -stitī, —, [sub + sistō, set], 3, *halt, make a stand; remain; stand firm, oppose.*

subsum, -esse, —, [sub + sum], irr., *be under, be behind; be near, be at hand; lie at the bottom, be concealed, be in reserve.*

subtexō, -ere, -uī, —, [sub + texō], 3, *weave under, sew on, compose; work in, add.*

subtrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāctus, [sub + trahō], 3, *carry off, draw off underneath; withdraw, take away.*

subvehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectus, [sub + vehō], 3, *carry up, bring up*.

subveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus, [sub + veniō], 3, *come to help, assist, relieve*.

succēdō, -ere, succēssī, successus, [sub + cēdō], 3, *go below, come under, enter; follow, succeed to another's place, take the place of, relieve, succeed; approach, draw near, advance; be successful*.

succendō, -cendere, -cendī, -cēnsus, [sub, cf. candeō], 3, *set on fire, set fire to*.

successus, -ūs, [cf. succēdō], m., *advance; good result, success*.

succumbō, -cumbere, -cubui, —, [sub + cumbō], 3, *fall down, lie down; submit, succumb*.

Suēba, -ae, [Suēbus, cf. Suēbī], f., *Swabian woman*.

Suēbī, -ōrum, [Ger., = 'Nomads'], m., pl., *the Swabians, a powerful German people of uncertain location*. Cf. Mommsen, *Hist. of Rome*, ed. of 1895, vol. v., p. 31, n. See map opp. p. 114.

Suessiōnēs, -um, m., pl., a Belgic state north of the Matrona (*Marne*); the name survives in *Soissons*. See map opp. p. 114.

suffectus, part. of sufficiō.

sufficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus, [sub + faciō], 3, *put under, dip, dye; choose as substitute; be sufficient, avail, suffice*.

suffigō, -figere, —, fixus, [sub + figō], 3, *fasten beneath, attach, affix*. cruci suffigere, *to crucify*.

suffodiō, -ere, -fodi, -fossus, [sub + fodiō], 3, *dig under, undermine; stab underneath*.

suffrāgator, -ōris, [suffrāgor], m., *favorer, supporter*.

suffrāgium, -ī, [suffrāgor], n., *voting-tablet, ballot, vote; decision, judgment, opinion*; pl., *the polls*. suffrāgium ferre, *to vote*.

sui (gen.), dat. sibi, acc. and abl. sē, strengthened form, sēmet, reflex. pron., sing. and pl., *himself, herself, itself, themselves, him, her*.

Sulla, -ae, m., *Lūcius Cornēlius Sulla*, born 138 B.C.; consul 88 B.C., dictator 81-79 B.C.; leader of the aristocratic party in the first of the Civil Wars, and deadly enemy of Marius; died 78 B.C.

Sullānus, -a, -um, adj., *of Sulla, by Sulla*. As subst., Sullānī, -ōrum, m., pl., *adherents of Sulla*.

Sulpicius, -a, name of a Roman gens. See Blithō, Galba, Rūfus.

sum, esse, fui, fut. part. futūrus, fut. inf. fore or futūrus esse, imp. subj. sometimes forem, irr., *be, exist, live; be true, be the case, be so*; with gen., *belong to, be the part of, be the duty of*; with dat., *be for, serve for*; with abl., *have, possess*.

summa, -ae, [summus, sc. rēs], f., *top, summit; total, whole amount, whole; sum of money; chief place, chief command, supremacy; chief point, sum*. summae imperiī praeesse, *to hold the chief command*.

sumministrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [sub + ministrō, serve], 1, *supply, provide, furnish*.

summittō, -ere, -misi, -missus, 3, *let down, lower; furnish, supply; send secretly; send as reinforcement, send as support; reduce, moderate; of hair, let grow*.

summoveō, -movēre, -mōvi, -mōtus, [sub + moveō], 2, *drive back, remove.*

summus, see **superus**.

sūmō, -ere, sūmpsi, sūmptus, [sub + emō], 3, *take, take in hand; eat, drink, consume; take, choose, select; take to one's self, take on, assume; claim; buy, purchase; take up, enter upon, begin.* **dē aliquō supplicium sūmere**, to inflict punishment on any one.

sūmptuārius, -a, -um, [sūmptus], adj., *of expense, relating to expense, sumptuary.*

sūmptus, -ūs, [sūmō], m., *outlay, expense, cost, charge.*

supellex, supellectilis, f., *domestic utensils, household stuff, furniture.*

super, prep. with acc. and abl.:

(1) With acc., *over, above, upon, upwards.*

(2) With abl., *over, upon, beyond, in addition to; during, at.*

superbē, [superbus], adv., *haughtily, proudly, superciliously.*

superbia, -ae, [superbus], f., *loftiness, haughtiness, arrogance, pride.*

superbiō, -īre, —, —, [superbus], 4, *to be haughty, take pride.*

Superbus, -ī, m., *Superbus*, surname of *Tarquinius Superbus*, seventh king of Rome.

superior, -ius, comp. of **superus**.

superiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [superus], 1, *go over, rise above, overtop; pass over; sail by, pass round; exceed; be left over; overcome, subdue, defeat, surpass, excel.*

supersedeō, -sedēre, -sēdī, -sessus, [super + sedeō, sit], 2, *refrain from.*

superstes, -itis, [super, cf. stō], adj., *standing by, present; surviving, alive.*

supersum, -esse, -fui, [super + sum], irr., *remain, be left; survive.*

superus, -a, -um, comp. **superior**, sup. **summus** or **suprēmus**, [super], adj., *above, on high.* **mare superum**, see **mare**. As subst., **superī**, -ōrum, m., pl., *the gods above, gods of heaven.* Comp., *higher, upper, superior; of time, former, earlier; as superiōre nocte, the previous night.* As subst., **superior**, -ōris, m., *a superior.* Sup., *highest; greatest, very great; most important, chief; all together, all; often denoting a part, as summus mōns, the top of the height.* As subst., **summum**, -ī, n., *top, end.* **ab summō**, *from the top.*

superveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus, [super + veniō], 4, *come in addition; come up, arrive; come upon, light upon.*

supervivō, -vivere, -vixī, —, [super + vivō], 3, *outlive, survive.*

suppetō, -petere, -petivī, -petitus, [sub + petō], 3, *be at hand; hold out.*

supplex, -icis, [sub + plicō], adj., *kneeling in entreaty, begging, suppliant.* As subst., m., *a suppliant.*

supplicātiō, -ōnis, [cf. supplicō], f., *thanksgiving.*

suppliciter, [supplex], adv., *after the manner of a suppliant, humbly.*

supplicium, -ī, [supplex], n., *kneeling, bowing down; entreaty,*

petition, supplication; as the criminal knelt to receive the death-penalty, execution; punishment of death.

supportō, -āre, -āvi, —, [sub + portō], 1, *carry up, bring up, convey.*

suprā, adv. and prep.:

(1) As adv., *on the top, above; before, formerly; beyond, more.*

(2) As prep. with acc., *above, over; beyond, more than.*

suprēmus, see **superus**.

surgō, **surgere**, **surrēxi** or **subrēxi**, —, [sub + regō], 3, *rise, get up, stand up; arise, grow.*

suscipio, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptus, [subs + capio], 3, *take, catch; receive, admit; undertake, take up; take upon one's self, assume, enter upon, begin, incur, succeed to; acknowledge, recognize. bellum suscipere, to commence war.*

suspectus, -a, -um, [part. of suspicio], adj., *subject to suspicion, mistrusted, suspected.*

suspicio, -ere, -spexi, -spectus, [sub + specio], 3, *look upwards, look up at; admire, regard, esteem, honor.*

suspicio, -ōnis, [cf. verb suspicor], f., *mistrust, distrust, suspicion.*

suspicator, -āri, -ātus sum, [cf. suspicio], 1, dep., *mistrust, suspect; suppose, believe.*

sustentō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [freq. of sustineō], 1, *sustain, endure, bear, hold out.*

sustineō, -tinēre, -tinui, -tentus, [sub + teneō], 2, *hold up, keep up, support; lift, carry; hold in check, check, restrain; support, maintain; hold out, bear, endure; hold out against, withstand.*

sustuli, see **tollō**.

sutor, -ōris, m., *shoemaker, cobbler.*

suus, -a, -um, [cf. suī], adj. pron., *his, her, its, their*, with or without own; *characteristic, peculiar; just, due, appropriate; favorable, advantageous; with clementia, his usual, his well-known showing of mercy.* As subst., suī, m., pl., *his, their friends, people, party, side, subjects; suum, -i, n., their standing; sua, n., pl., his, her, their property, possessions. sē suaque, themselves and their possessions.*

Syphax, -ācis, m., *Syphax*, a prince of Numidia, who at first sided with the Romans in the second Punic War, but subsequently allied himself with the Carthaginians.

Syrācūsae, -ārum, f., *Syracuse*, the wealthiest and largest city of Sicily, situated on the eastern coast of the island. See map, frontispiece.

Syria, -ae, [Euphrates], f., *Syria*, a country in Asia, lying between the Euphrates and the Mediterranean Sea. See map opp. p. 93.

Syriacus, -a, -um, [Syria], adj., *of or belonging to Syria, Syrian.*

T.

T., with proper names = **Titus**, a Roman forename.

tabella, -ae, [dim. of tabula], f., *small board, little picture; ballot; letter, epistle.*

tabellarius, -i, [tabella], m., *letter-carrier, messenger.*

tabernaculum, -i, [cf. taberna, hut], n., *tent, hut.*

tabula, -ae, f., *board, writing-tablet; list.* *picta tabula*, a painted tablet, painting, picture.
taceō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, 2, *be silent, remain silent; say nothing of, pass over in silence.*
tacitus, -a, -um, [part. of *taceō*], adj., *silent.*
taedium, -ī, [*taedet*], n., *weariness, loathing, disgust.*
Taenarus, or **Taenarum**, -ī, [*Taivapos* or *Talvapor*], n., *Taenarum*, a city and promontory of Laconia on the southern shore of the Peloponnesus, near a deep cavern; it was a fabled entrance to the Lower World. See map opp. p. 75.
talentum, -ī, n., *half of a hundred-weight, talent; talent*, a sum of money equal to about \$1132 in gold.
tālis, -e, adj., *such, of such a kind; the following, such as this.* *tālis . . . quālis*, of such a kind . . . as.
tam, adv., *in such a degree, as much, so, so much.*
tamen, adv., *notwithstanding, nevertheless, yet, however, still.*
tametsī [*tamen + etsī*], conj., *although, though.*
tamquam, [*tam + quam*], conj., *so as, like as, as if; just as if.*
Tanaquil, -ilis, f., *Tanaquil.*
tandem, [*tam*], adv., *at length, finally; in questions, pray, now.*
tantō, see *tantus*.
tantopere, [= *tantō opere*], adv., *so earnestly, with so great effort.*
tantulus, -a, -um, [dim. of *tantus*], adj., *so very small, so slight, so trifling.*
tantum, [*tantus*], adv., *so much, so greatly; only so much, only, merely.* *tantum quod*, only just.

tantus, -a, -um, adj., *so great, so large, such, so extensive, so important.* *tantus . . . quantus*, so great, so much, only so much . . . as. As subst., *tantum*, -ī, n., *so much; in gen. of price, tantī*, of so much value, worth so much; of so great account, so great; abl. of degree of difference, *tantō*, by so much, so much. Cf. *quantus*.
tardō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [*tardus*], 1, *check, delay, impede, hinder.*
tardus, -a, -um, comp. *tardior*, sup. *tardissimus*, adj., *slow, sluggish, tardy; irresolute; late.*
Tarentinus, -a, -um, adj., of *Tarentum*, *Tarentine*. As subst., *Tarentinī*, -ōrum, m., pl., *inhabitants of Tarentum, Tarentines.*
Tarentum, -ī, n., *Tarentum*, a celebrated and powerful city of southern Italy, situated in Calabria, on the Gulf of Tarentum. See map opp. p. 30.
tarditās, -ātis, [*tardus*], f., *slowness, tardiness.*
Tarpēia, -ae, f., *Tarpēia*, name of a Roman maiden who opened the Roman citadel to the Sabines.
Tarpēius, -a, -um, [*Tarpēia*], adj., of *Tarpēia*, *Tarpeian*; *mōns Tarpēius*, the *Tarpeian Rock* or *Hill* (= *arx Capitōlinus*).
Tarquinius, -ī, m., *Tarquinius*, *Tarquin*, the name of a family in the early history of Rome. In this book are mentioned:
 (1) *Tarquinius Priscus*, the fifth king of Rome.
 (2) *Tarquinius Superbus*, the seventh king of Rome.
 (3) *L. Tarquinius Collātinus*, husband of *Lucretia*.

petition, supplication; as the criminal knelt to receive the death-penalty, execution; punishment of death.

supportō, -āre, -āvī, —, [sub + portō], 1, carry up, bring up, convey.

suprā, adv. and prep. :

(1) As adv., *on the top, above; before, formerly; beyond, more.*

(2) As prep. with acc., *above, over; beyond, more than.*

suprēmus, see superus.

surgō, surgere, surrēxī or sub-rēxī, —, [sub + regō], 3, rise, get up, stand up; arise, grow.

suscipiō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptus, [subs + capiō], 3, take, catch; receive, admit; undertake, take up; take upon one's self, assume, enter upon, begin, incur, succeed to; acknowledge, recognize. bellum suscipere, to commence war.

suspectus, -a, -um, [part. of suspiciō], adj., subject to suspicion, mistrusted, suspected.

suspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectus, [sub + speciō], 3, look upwards, look up at; admire, regard, esteem, honor.

suspiciō, -ōnis, [cf. verb suspicor], f., mistrust, distrust, suspicion.

suspicor, -ārī, -ātus sum, [cf. suspiciō], 1, dep., mistrust, suspect; suppose, believe.

sustentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [freq. of sustineō], 1, sustain, endure, bear, hold out.

sustineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentus, [sub + teneō], 2, hold up, keep up, support; lift, carry; hold in check, check, restrain; support, maintain; hold out, bear, endure; hold out against, withstand.

sustulī, see tollō.

sūtor, -ōris, m., shoemaker, cobbler.

suus, -a, -um, [cf. suī], adj. pron., his, her, its, their, with or without own; characteristic, peculiar; just, due, appropriate; favorable, advantageous; with clēmentia, his usual, his well-known showing of mercy. As subst., suī, m., pl., his, their friends, people, party, side, subjects; suum, -ī, n., their standing; sua, n., pl., his, her, their property, possessions. sē suaque, themselves and their possessions.

Syphāx, -ācis, m., Syphāx, a prince of Numidia, who at first sided with the Romans in the second Punic War, but subsequently allied himself with the Carthaginians.

Syrācūsae, -ārum, f., Syracuse, the wealthiest and largest city of Sicily, situated on the eastern coast of the island. See map, frontispiece.

Syria, -ae, [Zupla], f., Syria, a country in Asia, lying between the Euphrates and the Mediterranean Sea. See map opp. p. 93.

Syriacus, -a, -um, [Syria], adj., of or belonging to Syria, Syrian.

T.

T., with proper names = Titus, a Roman forename.

tabella, -ae, [dim. of tabula], f., small board, little picture; ballot; letter, epistle.

tabellārius, -ī, [tabella], m., letter-carrier, messenger.

tabernāculum, -ī, [cf. taberna, hut], n., tent, hut.

tabula, -ae, f., *board, writing-tablet; list.* **picta tabula**, a painted tablet, painting, picture.

taceō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, 2, *be silent, remain silent; say nothing of, pass over in silence.*

tacitus, -a, -um, [part. of *taceō*], adj., *silent.*

taedium, -ī, [taedet], n., *weariness, loathing, disgust.*

Taenarus, or **Taenarum**, -ī, [Tal-vapos or Ταίναρος], n., *Taenarum*, a city and promontory of Laconia on the southern shore of the Peloponnesus, near a deep cavern; it was a fabled entrance to the Lower World. See map opp. p. 75.

talentum, -ī, n., *half of a hundred-weight, talent; talent*, a sum of money equal to about \$1132 in gold.

tālis, -e, adj., *such, of such a kind; the following, such as this.* **tālis . . . quālis**, *of such a kind . . . as.*

tam, adv., *in such a degree, as much, so, so much.*

tamen, adv., *notwithstanding, nevertheless, yet, however, still.*

tametsi [tamen + etsi], conj., *although, though.*

tamquam, [tam + quam], conj., *so as, like as, as if; just as if.*

Tanaquil, -ilis, f., *Tanaquil.*

tandem, [tam], adv., *at length, finally; in questions, pray, now.*

tantō, see **tantus**.

tantopere, [= tantō opere], adv., *so earnestly, with so great effort.*

tantulus, -a, -um, [dim. of *tantus*], adj., *so very small, so slight, so trifling.*

tantum, [tantus], adv., *so much, so greatly; only so much, only, merely.* **tantum quod**, *only just.*

tantus, -a, -um, adj., *so great, so large, such, so extensive, so important.* **tantus . . . quantus**, *so great, so much, only so much . . . as.* As subst., **tantum**, -ī, n., *so much; in gen. of price, tantī, of so much value, worth so much; of so great account, so great; abl. of degree of difference, tantō, by so much, so much.* Cf. **quantus**.

tardō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [tardus], 1, *check, delay, impede, hinder.*

tardus, -a, -um, comp. **tardior**, sup. **tardissimus**, adj., *slow, sluggish, tardy; irresolute; late.*

Tarentinus, -a, -um, adj., *of Tarentum, Tarentine.* As subst., **Tarentinī**, -ōrum, m., pl., *inhabitants of Tarentum, Tarentines.*

Tarentum, -ī, n., *Tarentum*, a celebrated and powerful city of southern Italy, situated in Calabria, on the Gulf of Tarentum. See map opp. p. 30.

tarditās, -ātis, [tardus], f., *slowness, tardiness.*

Tarpēia, -ae, f., *Tarpēia*, name of a Roman maiden who opened the Roman citadel to the Sabines.

Tarpēius, -a, -um, [Tarpēia], adj., *of Tarpēia, Tarpeian; mōns Tarpēius, the Tarpeian Rock or Hill (= arx Capitōlinus).*

Tarquinius, -ī, m., *Tarquinius, Tarquin*, the name of a family in the early history of Rome. In this book are mentioned:

- (1) *Tarquinius Priscus*, the fifth king of Rome.
- (2) *Tarquinius Superbus*, the seventh king of Rome.
- (3) *L. Tarquinius Collātinus*, husband of Lucretia.

Tarquiniī, -ōrum, m., pl., *Tarquiniī*, a town in southern Etruria, about forty-five miles northwest of Rome.

Taurus, -ī, [Ταῦρος], m., *Taurus*, a range of mountains in the southeastern part of Asia Minor. See map opp. p. 93.

tēctum, -ī, [tegō], n., covered structure, building, shelter, house, abode; covering, roof.

tegimentum, -ī, [cf. tegō], n., covering.

tegō, tegere, tēxī, tēctus, 3, cover, cover over; hide, conceal; keep secret; defend, guard.

tēlum, -ī, n., dart, spear.

temerārius, -a, -um, [temere], adj., rash, heedless, reckless.

temere, adv., blindly, rashly; without good reason.

temeritās, -tātis, [cf. temere], f., rashness, hastiness.

temperantia, -ae, [temperāns, temperate], f., moderation, self-control.

temperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [cf. tempus], 1, control one's self, refrain, forbear.

tempestās, -ātis, [tempus], f., portion of time, point of time, time, season; storm, tempest; disturbance, calamity.

templum, -ī, n., open place for observation, consecrated place, sacred enclosure; temple, shrine.

temptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [freq. of tendō], 1, handle; try, attempt; make an attack on, attack, assail; try to win over; tempt, tamper with.

tempus, -oris, n., period of time; time, period; opportunity, season; occasion, circumstances. in re-

liquum tempus, for the future, for all time to come. omni tempore, always. temporis causā, having regard to circumstances, insincerely.

tendō, tendere, tetendī, tentus or tēnsus, 3, stretch, spread out; of a snare, lay; offer, present; go, march; strive; extend, reach.

tenebrae, -ārum, f., pl., darkness, gloom; gloomy place; lurking-places.

teneō, -āre, -uī, —, 2, hold, grasp, hold fast; hold in, keep in, restrain, hem in; bind; take in, understand; keep; possess; guard, watch, defend; of a course, keep, hold, maintain. ventus adversum tenet, the wind blows the wrong way. sē tenēre, to keep one's self, to remain. memoriā tenēre, to remember.

tener, -era, -erum, comp. -ior, sup. tenerrimus, adj., tender, young.

tentō or **temptō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [intens. of tendō], 1, handle, touch, try, essay; try to win over.

tenuis, -e, [cf. tendō], adj., drawn out, meagre, slim; slight, insignificant, trifling.

ter, num. adv., three times, thrice.

Terentius, -a, name of a Roman gens. See Varrō.

tergum, -ī, n., back. ā tergō, post tergum, in the rear, on the rear. terga vertere, to flee.

terminus, -ī, m., boundary, limit, end.

terra, -ae, f., earth; land, ground. soil; territory, district, region. terrā, on land, by land.

terrēnus, -a, -um, [terra], adj., of earth, earthy.

terreō, -ēre, -uī, territus, 2,

frighten, alarm, terrify; deter by fear.

terrestris, -tre, [terra], adj., of the earth, on land, land.

terribilis, -e, [terreō], adj., frightful, dreadful, terrible.

terrītō, -āre, —, —, [freq. of terreō], 1, frighten greatly, terrify.

terrītōrium, -ī, [terra], n., territory.

terror, -ōris, [terreō], m., great fear, affright, panic, fear; object of fear, cause of fear.

tertiō, [tertius], adv., for the third time.

tertius, -a, -um, [cf. trēs], adj., third.

testāmentum, -ī, [cf. testor], n., will, testament.

testimōnium, -ī, [cf. testis], n., witness, proof, evidence, testimony; testimonial.

testis, -is, m. and f., witness.

testor, -ārī, -ātus sum, [testis], 1, dep., cause to testify, call as witness, invoke; show, prove, demonstrate; bear witness; make a will.

testūdō, -inis, [cf. testa, potsherd], f., tortoise, tortoise-shell; tortoise-shed, a movable shed, of which there were many varieties, designed to afford protection to soldiers at work near the foot of the enemy's wall; tortoise-cover, *testudo*, a covering formed by the soldiers' shields held above their heads and overlapping so as to ward off weapons thrown down upon them from above. See INTRO., p. 24.

tēstula, -ae, [dim. of tēsta], f., small potsherd, voting-tablet.

tēstulārum suffrāgiū or **tēstulā**, by ballot by potsherds, by ostracism.

Teutobodus, -ī, m., *Teutobodus*, chief of the *Teutonēs*.

Teutonēs, -um, or **Teutonī**, -ōrum, m., pl., the *Teutonēs*, a Germanic people who, in company with the Cimbri, invaded Italy, and were annihilated by Marius at Aquae Sextiae in 101 B.C. See Cimbri, and N. to p. 140, l. 13.

Thēbae, -ārum, [Θήβαι], f., pl., *Thebes*, the chief city of Boeotia. See map opp. p. 75.

Thēbānus, -a, -um, adj., of *Thebes*, *Theban*. As subst., **Thēbānus**, -ī, m., inhabitant of *Thebes*, *Theban*.

Themistoclēs, -is or -ī, acc. -em or -ēn, [Θεμιστοκλῆς], m., *Themistocles*, a famous statesman and general of Athens.

Thermopylae, -ārum, [Θερμοπύλαι], f., pl., *Thermopylae*, a pass through Mt. Oeta on the southern frontier of Thessaly, famous on account of its defence by Leonidas in 480 B.C. See map opp. p. 75.

Thraex, **Thraecis**, adj., *Thracian*. As subst., m., a *Thracian*.

Thūcŷdīdēs, -is, [Θουκυδίδης], m., *Thucydides*, a celebrated historian of Athens, who lived from 471 to about 400 B.C. He wrote a history of the Peloponnesian War.

Tl., with proper names = **Tiberius**, a Roman forename.

Tiberis, -is, m., the *Tiber*, the principal river of central Italy, on which Rome is situated. See map opp. p. 30.

tībia, -ae, f., *shin-bone*; by metonymy, frequently in pl., *pipe*, *flute*.

tībīcen, -inis, [tībia, cf. canere], m., *piper*, *flute-player*.

Ticinus, -ī, m., the *Ticinus*, a river

in Cisalpine Gaul, flowing into the Po, the scene of the first victory of Hannibal in Italy. See map opp. p. 30.

Tigurinus, -a, -um, adj., of the *Tigur* canton. As subst., *Tigurinī*, -ōrum, m., pl., the *Tigurini*, one of the four divisions of the Helvetii.

timeō, -ēre, -uī, —, 2, *fear, be afraid of; have fear, be afraid, be apprehensive.*

timidus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, [cf. *timeō*], adj., *fearful, afraid, cowardly, timid.*

timor, -ōris, [cf. *timeō*], m., *fear, dread, apprehension, alarm, timidity.* See n. to p. 139, l. 7.

Titurius, -ī, m., *Quintus Titurius Sabinus*, a lieutenant of Caesar, who rendered efficient service in the campaigns of B.C. 57 and 56; placed with Cotta in command of a legion and a half among the Eburones in 54, he was drawn into ambush by Ambiorix, and caused the destruction of the force.

titulus, -ī, m., *superscription, inscription, title; title of honor, glory, name.*

toga, -ae, f., *toga, gown.*

tolerō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 1, *bear, support, endure, sustain, maintain; hold out.*

tollō, -ere, sustuli, sublātus, 3, *lift, take up, raise; encourage, puff up, elate; rear; extol; remove, make way with, abolish; kill, destroy.*

Tolōsātēs, -ium, [Tolōsa], m., pl., the inhabitants of *Tolosa*, chief city of the Volcae Tectosages. See map opp. p. 114.

tonitrus, -ūs, m., pl., *tonitrūs*, m.,

and *tonitrus*, n., *thunder, thunder-peal.*

tonō, -āre, -uī, —, 1, *to make a loud noise, resound, thunder.*

tōnsor, -ōris, [tondeō, clip], m., *shearer, clipper, hair-cutter, barber.*

Tōranus, -ī, m., *T. Tōranus*, who betrayed his father to the second triumvirate in 43 B.C.

tormentum, -ī, [cf. *torqueō*, twist], n., *windlass; as a military term, pl., torsion-hurlers, engines of war, artillery, general term for machines used to hurl stones, darts, and other missiles, the motive force of which was derived from the twisting of tensile materials; torsion-missiles, missiles thrown by the torsion-hurlers; instrument of torture, rack; torture, torment, suffering.*

Torquātus, see *Mānlius*.

torqueō, -ēre, torsi, tortus, 2, *turn, twist; hurl; torture, torment.*

torquis, -is, m., *necklace, collar.*

tot, indecl. num. adj., *so many.*

totidem [tot], indecl. num. adj., *just as many, just so many.*

tōtus, -a, -um, gen. *tōtius*, adj., *the whole, all, all the, entire; with adverbial force, wholly, entirely.*

trabs, *trabis*, f., *beam, timber.*

tractō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [trahō], 1, *draw forcibly, pull; handle, manage; treat.*

tractus, -ūs, [cf. *trahō*], m., *dragging, drawing out; track, course; stretch, extent.*

trādō, -dere, -didī, -ditus, [trāns + dō], 3, *give up, hand over, deliver, surrender, consign, entrust; surrender, betray; hand down, transmit, report.*

trādficō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductus, [trāns + dūcō], 3, *lead across, carry over, transport, transfer; expose, dishonor.*

trāgula, -ae, f., *lance, javelin, perhaps having a barbed point.*

trahō, -ere, trāxī, trāctus, 3, *draw, drag; draw along, drag along; attract, allure, influence; lead, carry; derive; detain.*

trāciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus, [trāns + iaciō], 3, *throw across, lead across, transfer; penetrate, transfix; go over, pass over.*

trānō, -āre, -āvi, —, [trāns + nō, swim], 1, *swim across, swim over.*

trāns, prep. with acc. only, *across, over; on the further side of, beyond.*

trānsēō, -ire, -iī or -ivī, -itus, [trāns + eō], irr., *go over, go across, pass over, cross over; pass by, march through; be changed from.*

trānsferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, [trāns + ferō], irr., *bear across, transport; transfer; ascribe, charge; copy; put off, delay, translate.*

trānsfigō, -figere, -fixī, -fixus, [trāns + figō, fix], 3, *pierce through, transfix.*

trānsfuga, -ae, m., [trāns, cf. fugiō], *one who flees to the enemy, a deserter.*

trānsagredior, -gredi, -gressus, [trāns + gradior, walk, go], 3, dep., *go over, pass over, go across, cross.*

trānsigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctus, [trāns + agō], 3, *drive through, stab, transfix; finish, settle; perform; bring to an end, end; pass, spend.*

trānsiliō, -ire, -ilui, —, [trāns + saliō], 4, *leap across, jump over.*

trānsitus, -ūs, [trāns, cf. eō], m., *going over, passing over, passage.*

trānslātus, see **trānsferō**.

trānsmarinus, -a, -um, [trāns + marinus], adj., *beyond sea, transmarine.*

trānsmittō, -ere, -misi, -missus, [trāns + mittō], 3, *send across, carry over, let pass; go across, traverse; entrust, commit.*

trānsportō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [trāns + portō], 1, *carry over, take across, remove, transport.*

trānstuli, see **trānsferō**.

trānsversus, -a, -um, [trāns + versus], adj., *turned across, lying across, crosswise, oblique; out of the way.*

Trasumēnus, -ī, m., *Trasumēnus*, a lake in Etruria, the scene of the defeat of Flaminius by Hannibal. See map opp. p. 30.

Trebia, -ae, f., *the Trebia*, a river in Cisalpine Gaul, flowing into the Po. See map opp. p. 30.

trecentēsimus, -a, -um, [trecentī], adj., *three hundredth.*

trecentī, -ae, -a, [trēs + centum], num. adj., *three hundred.*

tredecim, [trēs + decem], indecl. num., adj., *thirteen.*

trepidātiō, -ōnis, [trepidō], f., *confused hurry, alarm, confusion, consternation, trepidation.*

trepidō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 1, *hurry with alarm, be in confusion; tremble, waver.*

trēs, tria, gen. trium, or III, num. adj., *three.*

Trēveri, -ōrum, m., pl., a powerful Belgic people near the Rhine, north of the Mediomatrici; chief

- town Augusta Treverorum, now Trier. See map opp. p. 114.
- Tribocēs**, -um, or **Triboci**, -ōrum, [Kel., = 'the very Sweet'], m., pl., a German people between the Rhine and the Vosges Mountains. See map opp. p. 114.
- tribūnal**, -ālis, [tribūnus], n., raised platform for seats of magistrates, *judgment-seat, tribunal*.
- tribūnus**, -ī, [tribus], m., head of a tribe, *tribune*. **tribūnus militāris**, *tribune of the soldiers*, six to a legion. See p. 13. **tribūnus plēbis**, *tribune of the people*. Tribunes were first appointed in 494 B.C., after the first secession to the Sacred Mount. At first there were but two; afterwards the number was increased to five, and finally to ten. They were originally appointed to afford protection to the common people; and that they might be able to afford such protection, their persons were declared sacred and inviolable. They gradually acquired the right of vetoing any act which a magistrate might undertake during his term of office. They convoked the assembly of the tribes (*comitia tributa*), and usually presided over it.
- tribuō**, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, [tribus], 3, *assign, ascribe, concede; grant, pay, render, bestow; ascribe, attribute; yield; of time, spend, devote*. **suae māgnopere virtūtī tribuere**, *to presume upon his valor*.
- tribūtum**, -ī, [tribus], n., *stated payment, contribution, tribute*.
- tricēsimus**, -a, -um. [trīgintā], adj., *thirtieth*.
- trīdium**, -ī, [trēs + diēs], n., *space of three days, three days*.
- triennium**, -ī, [trēs + annus], n., *space of three years, three years*.
- trigeminus**, -a, -um, [trēs + geminus], adj., *born three at a birth*. As subst., **trigeminī**, -ōrum, m., pl., *triplets*.
- trīgintā**, or **XXX**, indecl. num. adj., *thirty*.
- trīnī**, -ae, -a, [trēs], distrib. num. adj., *three each, three by three; threefold, triple*.
- triplex**, -icis, [trēs, cf. plicō, fold], adj., *threefold, triple*.
- tripūs**, -odis, [τρίπους], m., *three-footed seat, tripod*.
- trirēmis**, -e, [ter + rēmus], adj., *having three banks of oars*. As subst., **trirēmis**, -is, m., *vessel having three banks of oars, trireme*.
- tristis**, -e, adj., *sad, sorrowful, dejected; gloomy, sullen; grave, austere*.
- tristitia**, -ae, [tristis], f., *sadness, dejection*.
- triumphō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [triumphus], 1, *march in triumphal procession, celebrate a triumph, triumph*. **triumphāre dē aliquō**, *to celebrate a triumph in consequence of a victory over any one*.
- triumphus**, -ī, m., *triumphal procession, celebration of a victory by a triumphal entry into Rome*.
- triumvir**, -virī, [trēs + vir], m., *triumvir*, one of three associates in office, especially one of three dictators to reorganize the state.
- Troās**, -ados, [Τρώας], adj., *Trojan*. As subst., f., *the country around Troy, Troad*. See map opp. p. 93.

Troezēn, -ēnis, acc. **Troezēna**, [Τροῖζήν], f., *Troezen*, a very ancient city in the southeastern part of Argolis. See map opp. p. 75.

Trōia, -ae, f., *Troy*, a city of Phrygia.

Trōiānus, -a, -um, [Trōia], adj., of *Troy*, *Trojan*. As subst., **Trōiānus**, -ī, a *Trojan*.

tropaeum, -ī, n., *memorial of victory*, *trophy*; *victory*.

Troucillus, -ī, see **Valerius**.

trucidō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [trux + caedō], 1, *cut to pieces*, *slaughter*, *butcher*; *destroy*, *ruin*.

trux, **trucis**, adj., *wild*, *rough*, *harsh*, *savage*, *fierce*.

tū, **tui**, pl. **vōs**, **vestrum**, pers. pron., *thou*, *you*.

tuba, -ae, f., *trumpet*.

tueor, -ēri, **tūtus sum**, 2, dep., *look at*, *gaze at*, *consider*; *defend*, *protect*.

tuli, see **ferō**.

Tulingi, -ōrum, m., pl., a German tribe north of the Helvetii, across the Rhine. See map opp. p. 114.

Tullia, -ae, f., *Tullia*, the daughter of **Servius Tullius**.

Tullius, -ī, m., *Tullius*, a Roman gentile name. In this book are mentioned :

(1) *Servius Tullius*, the sixth king of Rome.

(2) *M. Tullius Cicerō*. See **Cicerō**.

Tullus, -ī, m., *Tullus*, forename of *Tullus Hostilius*, third king of Rome.

tum, adv., *then*, *at that time*, *in those times*; *thereupon*; *in that case*; *besides*, *moreover*. **cum**

. . . **tum**, *both* . . . *and*, *not only* . . . *but also*.

tumultus, -ūs, m., *disturbance*, *confusion*, *disorder*, *uproar*; *uprising*, *rebellion*; *national peril*.

tumulus, -ī, m., *mound*, *hillock*.

tunc, adv., *then*, *at that time*; *accordingly*, *consequently*.

turba, -ae, f., *tumult*, *uproar*, *disturbance*, *commotion*; *crowd*, *throng*.

turbō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [turba], 1, *make an uproar*, *be in confusion*; *throw into confusion*, *disturb*, *agitate*.

turbulentus, -a, -um, comp. **turbulentior**, sup. **turbulentissimus**, [turba], adj., *full of commotion*, *disturbed*; *stormy*, *confused*, *troubled*.

Turonī, -ōrum, m., pl., a people on the Liger (*Loire*), west of the Bituriges; the name survives in *Tours* and *Touraine*. See map opp. p. 114.

turpis, -e, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, adj., *ugly*, *foul*; *disgraceful*, *shameful*, *base*, *dishonorable*.

turpitūdō, -inis, [turpis], f., *baseness*, *disgrace*, *dishonor*.

turris, -is, f., *tower*; often = **turris ambulātōria**, *movable tower*, built on wheels so that it could be moved up to the wall of a besieged city. See **INTRODUCTION**, p. 23.

Tuscia, -ae, f., *Etruria*, the *Etruscan territory*.

Tusculum, -ī, n., *Tusculum*, an ancient town of Latium, the modern *Frascati*, about fifteen miles southeast of Rome on the foothills of the Alban Mountains. See map, frontispiece.

tūtō, [tūtus], adv., *safely*, *without danger*.

tūtor, -ōris, [tueor], m., *watcher, protector; guardian, tutor.*

tūtōr, -āri, -ātussum, [tueor], dep., *watch, guard, protect, defend.*

tūtus, -a, -um, comp. **tūtior**, sup.

tūtissimus, [part. of tueor], adj., *guarded, safe, secure.* As subst.,

tūtum, -ī, n., *place of safety, safety, security.*

tuus, -a, -um, [tū], poss. pron., adj., *thy, thine; your, yours.*

tyrannis, -idis, [rupavris], f., *rule of a tyrant, tyranny, despotic rule.*

tyrannus, -ī, m., *monarch, absolute ruler; despot, tyrant.*

U.

ūber, -eris, n., *teat, dug, udder, breast.*

ubi, adv. and conj., *in which place, where; where?* As conj., *when.*

ubique, [ubi + -que], adv., *in any place, everywhere.* **ubi primum**, *as soon as.*

ulciscor, -ī, **ultus sum**, 3, dep., *avenge one's self on, punish; take vengeance for, avenge.*

ūllus, -a, -um, gen. **ūllius**, adj., *any.* As subst., **ūllus**, -īus, m., *any one, anybody.* **ūllum**, -īus, n., *anything.*

ulterior, -ius, [ultrā], adj. in comp. degree, sup. **ultimus**, *farther, beyond, more remote or distant.* Sup., *farthest, most distant or remote; last; utmost, greatest.* Neu., **ulterius**, as adv., *beyond, farther; to a greater degree, more.*

ultimus, see **ulterior**.

ultrā, prep. with acc. only, *on the farther side of, beyond, besides.*

ultrō, adv., *to the farther side; be-*

sides, moreover, also; of one's own accord, voluntarily. **ultrō** . . . *citroque, to and fro, back and forth.*

ultus, see **ulciscor**.

Umbria, -ae, f., *Umbria, a district in east central Italy.* See map opp. p. 30.

umerus, -ī, m., *upper arm, shoulder.*

umquam, adv., *at any time, ever.*

ūnā, [ūnus], adv., *into one place; in the same place; at one and the same time, at the same time; together, in company.* **ūnā cum**, *along with, together with.*

unde, adv., *from which place, whence; where; from whom, from which; where? on which side?*

undecim, or **XI**, [ūnus + decem], indecl. num. adj., *eleven.*

undecimus, -a, -um, [undecim], num. ord. adj., *eleventh.*

ūndēquīnquāgintā, [ūnus + dē + quīnquāgintā], indecl. num. adj., *forty-nine.*

ūndētrīcēsīmus, -a, -um, [ūnus, dē, cf. trīgintā], adj., *the twenty-ninth.*

ūndēvīcēsīmus, -a, -um, [ūnus, dē, cf. vīgintī], adj., *the nineteenth.*

ūndēvīgintī, or **XVIII**, [ūnus + dē + vīgintī], indecl. num. adj., *nineteen.*

undique, [unde + que], adv., *from all sides, from all parts, on all sides, everywhere.*

unguis, -is, m., *nail.*

ūniversus, -a, -um, [ūnus + versus, from vertō], adj., *all together, all, the whole of, entire; general.* As subst., **ūniversī**, -ōrum, m.,

pl., *all the men together, the whole body, all together; all men.*
ūnus, -a, -um, gen. **ūnius**, num. adj., *one; one alone, only one, only, sole; alone; one and the same.* Pl., **ūnī**, *alone, only.*
ūnō tempore, *at one and the same time.* ad **ūnum** omnēs, *all to a man.* **Sēquanī ūnī**, *the Sequani only.*

urbānus, -a, -um, [**urbs**], adj., *of the city, in the city, in Rome.* As subst., **urbānī**, -ōrum, m., pl., *the citizens.*

urbs, **urbis**, f., *a walled town, city; often the city, Rome.*

urgeō, **urgēre**, **ursī**, —, 2, *press, push; press hard.* Pass., *be hard pressed.*

ūrīnātor, -ōris, m., *diver.*

ūsq̄ue, adv., *all the way, as far as; continuously.* **ūsq̄ue** ad, *all the way to, as far as; of time, up to, until.* **ūsq̄ue eō**, *even so far as this, even to this degree.*

ūsūrpō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [**ūsus** + **rapiō**], 1, *seize for use, seize upon, make use of, enjoy.*

ūsus, see **ūtōr**.

ūsus, -ūs, [**ūtōr**], m., *use, practice, employment; experience, training, skill; custom, practice; intercourse, association, familiarity; control; need, necessity; profit, advantage.* **ūsū venīre**, *to happen, to occur.*

ut, **utī**, adv. and conj. :

(1) As adv., *as, just as; as for instance, seeing that, as if, on the supposition that; of manner, how, in what way, in what manner; of place, where.* **ut primum**, *as soon as.* **ut . . . ita**, *as . . . so, while . . . still.*

(2) As conj., temporal, with indic., *when, as soon as; with subj., of result, that, so that; of purpose, in order that, that; of concession, though, although.*

utcumque, adv., *in what way soever, in one way or another, somehow.*

ūtēr, -tris, m., *bag of hide, leather bottle, skin.*

uter, **utra**, **utrum**, gen. **utrius**, pron. adj., often used as subst., *which of two, whichever, which.*

uterque, -traque, -trumque, gen. **utriusque**, [**uter** + **que**], adj., *each, both.* As subst., **uterque**, **utriusque**, m., *both, each.* Pl., **utrique**, *both sides, both forces, both peoples.*

utī, see **ut**.

Utica, -ae, f., *Utica, a town on the coast of Africa, about twenty-seven miles northwest of Carthage; it was founded by Tyrians.* See map opp. p. 30.

ūtīlis, -e, comp. **ūtīlior**, sup. **ūtīlissimus**, [**ūtōr**], adj., *useful, serviceable, helpful; profitable, expedient.*

ūtīlitās, -ātis, [**ūtīlis**], f., *use, usefulness, expediency, advantage.*

utique, adv., *in any case, at any rate, certainly; especially.*

ūtōr, **ūtī**, **ūsus** sum, 3, dep., used with abl., *make use of, employ, adopt, have, enjoy; observe, maintain; exercise, display, show; consume, take; experience, undergo; practise; enjoy the friendship of, associate with.* With two abls., *use as, employ as, find to be.*

utpote, [**ut** + **pote**], adv., *as is possible, as is natural, of course, seeing that, since.*

utrimque, [uterque], adv., *from both sides, on both sides.*

utrum, [uter], conj., not translated in direct questions; in indirect questions, *whether*. **utrum** . . . *an, whether* . . . or. **utrum** . . . *necne, whether* . . . or not.

utrobique, [uter + ubi + -que], *on both sides, from each side; on both land and sea.*

ūva, -ae, f., *grape*; collect., *grapes*.

uxor, -ōris, f., *wife, spouse, consort*. **uxōrem dūcere**, *to marry*.

V.

vacō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 1, *be empty, be void, be vacant, be without; be free from labor, have leisure; be unoccupied, lie waste.*

vacuus, -a, -um, sup. **vacuissimus**, [vacō], adj., *empty, clear, free, vacant, unoccupied*. **vacuus ab**, *destitute of*.

vadum, -ī, n., *shoal, shallow; ford*.

vāgītus, -ūs, [vāgiō], m., *crying, squalling*.

vagor, -ārī, -ātus, 1, dep., *wander, wander about, roam about, rove*.

valēns, -entis, comp. **valentior**, sup. **valentissimus**, [part. of valeō], adj., *strong, powerful; well*.

valeō, -ēre, -uī, fut. part. **valitūrus**, 2, *be strong, have strength, be able; be well; have power, have influence or weight, prevail; avail, extend; as greeting, imp., valē, farewell*.

Valerius, -ī, m., name of a famous Roman gens. It refers in this book to:

- (1) *P. Valerius Pūblicola*, consul in 509 B.C.

(2) *M. Valerius Corvīnus*, who served with distinction against the Gauls in 349 B.C.

(3) *P. Valerius Laevinus*, who, as consul in 280 B.C., had charge of the war against Pyrrhus.

(4) *L. Valerius Flaccus*, Cato's colleague in his consulship (199 B.C.) and censorship (184 B.C.).

(5) *Gāius Valerius Flaccus*, a governor in Gaul (called *im-perātor* by Cicero, *Pro Quinctio*, 7, 28). See N. to p. 146, l. 23.

(6) *Gāius Valerius Cabūrus*, a Gaul who received the Roman franchise, 83 B.C.

(7) *Gāius Valerius Procillus*, son of (6); sent by Caesar as envoy to Ariovistus.

(8) *Gāius Valerius Troucillus*, a prominent Gaul of 'the Province,' employed by Caesar as interpreter in an important interview.

(9) *Gāius Valerius Catullus*, the celebrated Roman poet, born in Verona in 87 B.C.; died in 54.

valētūdō, -inis, [valeō], f., *habit, state of health, health; good health; bad health*.

vāllum, -ī, n., *line of palisades, intrenchment; wall, rampart, fortification*.

valvae, -ārum, f., pl., *folding-doors, door*.

Vanglonēs, -um, m., pl., a German tribe on the west side of the Rhine, north of the Nemetes. See map opp. p. 114.

vānus, -a, -um, adj., *containing nothing, empty, void; ostentatious, vain; false, untrustworthy*.

varius, -a, -um, adj., *variegated,*

parti-colored, mottled, diverse; different, various, diverse, change-ful; inconstant, fickle.

Varrō, -ōnis, m., *Varrō*, surname of *C. Terentius Varrō*, consul in 216 B.C.; he was defeated by Hannibal at Cannae.

Vārus, -ī, m., *Vārus*. See **Quīncilius**.

vās, **vāsis**, n., *vessel, dish, utensil*; pl., **vāsa**, -ōrum, *equipments, baggage*.

vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**vāstus**], 1, *make empty, deprive of occupants, lay waste, devastate*.

vāticinātiō, -ōnis, [**vāticinor, predict**], f., *inspired foretelling, prediction*.

-**ve**, enclitic conj., or.

vectīgal, -ālis, [cf. **vehō**], n., *tax, tribute; revenue; income, rents*. See *v.* to p. 125, l. 8.

vectīgālis, -e, [**vectīgal**], adj., *paying tribute, tributary*.

vegetus, -a, -um, adj., *enlivened, lively, vigorous, brisk; bright*.

vehementer, [**vehemēns**], adv., *eagerly, ardently, earnestly, vehemently; vigorously, violently; exceedingly, very much*.

vehō, **vehere**, **vexī**, **vectus**, 3, *bear, carry, convey, draw*.

Vēiēns, -entis, adj., of **Vēī**, a town of the Etruscans, about twelve miles north of Rome. As subst., m., pl., *the inhabitants of Vēī*. See map, frontispiece.

Vēientānus, -a, -um, [**Vēīī**], adj., *of or belonging to Vēī*. As subst., **Vēientānus**, -ī, m., *an inhabitant of Vēī*.

vel, [old imp. of **volō**], conj., or *if you will, or even, or*. **vel** . . . **vel**, either . . . or.

vel, [conj. **vel**], adv., or *even, even, certainly, indeed*.

Vellocassēs, -ium, dat. **Vellocassīs**, [Kel., 'Excelling in Probity' ?], m., pl., a small state on the north side of the Sequana (*Seine*); chief town, Rotomagus, to-day Rouen. See map opp. p. 114.

vēlōcitās, -ātis, [**vēlōx**], f., *swiftness, fleetness, rapidity*.

vēlōx, -ōcis, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, adj., *swift, active, quick*.

vēlum, -ī, [cf. **vehō**], n., *means of propelling, sail*. **vēla ventis dare**, *to make sail, sail away*.

velut or **velutī**, adv., *even as, just as; just as if, as if*. **velut sī**, *just as if*.

vēnātiō, -ōnis, [**vēnor**], f., *hunting; hunting spectacle*.

vēndō, -dere, -didi, -ditus, [**vēnum**, *sale, + dō*], 3, *sell*.

Venellī, -ōrum, m., pl., a Gallic state on the north coast, west of the Lexovii. See map opp. p. 114.

venēnātus, -a, -um, [part. of **venēnō**], adj., *poisoned, poisonous, venomous*.

venēnum, -ī, n., *drug; poison*.

Venetī, -ōrum, m., pl., a seafaring Gallic people, on the west coast; almost exterminated by Caesar. See map opp. p. 114.

venerātiō, -ōnis, [**veneror**], f., *foundest respect, reverence, veneration; cause of respect*.

venia, -ae, f., *indulgence, kindness, favor, forbearance, pardon; permission*.

venīō, **venīre**, **vēnī**, **ventus**, 4, *come, go*.

venter, -tris, m., *belly, stomach*.

ventus, -ī, m., *wind*.

Venusia, -ae, f., *Venusia*, a town of Apulia on the border of Lucania, the birthplace of Horace. See map opp. p. 30.

venustus, -a, -um, comp. *venustior*, sup. *venustissimus*, adj., *charming, agreeable, beautiful; graceful*.

verberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [*verber*], 1, *beat, strike, knock*.

Verbigenus, -ī, m., a canton of the Helvetii, apparently east of the Tigurini.

verbum, -ī, n., *word, saying*.
verba dare, to deceive, to trick. to outwit. verba facere, to speak.

vērē, comp. -ius, sup. *vērissimō*, [*vērus*], adv., *truly; rightly, properly*.

verēcundia, -ae, [cf. *vereor*], f., *modesty, shame; respect*.

vereor, -ērī, *veritus sum*, 2, dep., *reverence, respect, stand in awe; fear; dread, be apprehensive*.

Verginia, -ae, f., *Virginia*, daughter of the centurion Virginius.

Verginius, -ī, m., *Virginius*.

vergō, -ere, —, —, 3, *incline, lie, slope; be situated*.

vergobretus, -ī, [Kel., = 'He that renders judgment,' 'Judge'], m., *vergobret*, title of the chief magistrate of the Aedui.

vērītās, -ātis, [*vērus*], f., *truth, truthfulness*.

vērō, [*vērus*], adv. and conj., *in truth, truly, indeed, however*.

Vērōna, -ae, f., *Vērōna*, a city of Gallia Cisalpina. See map opp. p. 30.

verruca, -ae, f., *wart*.

versiculus, -i, [dim. of *versus*], m., *little verse, verse*.

versō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [freq. of

vertō], 1, *turn often; vex, agitate; think over, meditate; pass., be, be situated, be busied; occupy one's self, conduct one's self*.

versor, -ārī, -ātus, [*versō*], 1, dep., lit., *turn one's self about, move about in any place; dwell, live, be; be occupied, engaged, employed, busy*. in *bellō versārī*, *to engage in war*.

versus, -ūs, [*vertō*], m., *line, row, verse*.

vertō, -ere, *vertī*, *versus*, 3, *turn, direct, change; pass., be turned, turn about, return. annō vertente, with the returning year, in a whole year. terga vertere, to turn and flee, to flee*.

Verucloetius, -ī, m., a Helvetian sent with Nammelius as envoy to Caesar.

vērūm, [*vērus*], adv., *truly, certainly; but*.

vērus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. *vērissimus*, adj., *true, real, actual, genuine; right, proper, fitting, reasonable. rē vērā, see rēs*. As subst., *vērūm*, -ī, n., *the truth*.

vescor, -ī, —, 3, dep., *feed upon, eat; enjoy, use*.

Vesontio, -ōnis, m., chief city of the Sequani, on the Dubis (*Doubs*) river; now *Besançon*. See map opp. p. 114.

vesper, -erī and -eris, m., *evening*.

Vestālis, -e, [*Vesta*], adj., *of Vesta, Vestal*.

vester, -tra, -trum, [*vōs*], poss. pron., *your, yours*.

vestigium, -ī, n., *bottom of foot, sole; foot; footstep, footprint; spot; trace, mark, vestige*.

vestis, -is, f., *covering for the body, clothes, clothing; robe*.

vestitus, -ūs, [vestiō], m., *clothing, apparel*.

veterānus, -a, -um, [vetus], adj., *old, veteran*. As subst., **veterāni**, -ōrum, m., pl., *veteran soldiers, veterans*.

vetō, -āre, -uī, -itus, 1, *not suffer, not permit, oppose, forbid, prohibit*.

Vettonēs, -um, m. pl., *Vettones, a people of Lusitania, the modern Portugal*. See map opp. p. 114.

Veturia, -ae, f., *Veturia, the mother of Coriolanus*.

Veturius, -ī, m., *Veturius, family name of T. Veturius Calvinus*.

vetus, -eris, sup. **veterrimus**, adj., *old, former, ancient, long-standing*.

vetustus, -a, -um, [vetus], adj., *aged, old, ancient*.

vēxillum, -ī, [cf. vēlum], n., *flag, used as an ensign for soldiers sent out as a detachment separate from the regular organization of the legion; raised by the order of the general as a signal*.

vexō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [freq. of vehō], 1, *harass, assail; lay waste, overrun*.

via, -ae, f., *way, highway, road; passage; march, journey*.

vicārius, -a, -um, [vicis, change], adj., *supplying a place, substituted, delegated*. As subst., **vicārius**, -ī, m., *substitute, delegate*.

vicēsimus, -a, -um, [viginti], adj., *twentieth*.

viclēs, [cf. viginti], adv., *twenty times*.

victor, -ōris, [vincō], m., *conqueror, vanquisher, victor*. As adj., **victoriosus**, *triumphant*.

victōria, -ae, [victor], f., *victory, success*.

victus, see **vincō**.

victus, -ūs, [vivō], m., *living, mode of life; food, provisions*.

vīcus, -ī, m., *row of houses, street, quarter; village; hamlet*.

videō, **vidēre**, **vidī**, **visus**, 2, *see, perceive, observe; understand; go to see, visit*. Pass. as dep., **videor**, **vidērī**, **visus sum**, *be seen, seem, appear; seem proper, seem good, seem best*.

vigilantia, -ae, [cf. vigil], f., *wakefulness, vigilance*.

vigilia, -ae, [vigil, watchman], f., *a keeping awake, sleeplessness, wakefulness; watch, one of the four divisions, each of three Roman hours, into which the night was divided*.

viginti, or **XX**, indecl. num. adj., *twenty*.

vīlla, -ae, [dim. of vīcus], f., *country-house, farm, villa*.

vīmen, -inis, n., *pliant twig, osier, wither*.

vinciō, -īre, **vinxī**, **vinctus**, 4, *bind, bind fast; fetter, confine, restrain*.

vinculum, see **vinculum**.

vincō, **vincere**, **vici**, **victus**, 3, *conquer, overcome, defeat, subdue; exceed, surpass; carry one's point, have one's own way*.

vinculum or **vinculum**, -ī, [vinciō], n., *means of binding, bond, band, cord, fastening, fetter, rope, chain; pl., fetters, bonds, prison*.

vindex, -icis, m., *defender, protector*.

vindicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [vindex], 1, *assert claim to, demand formally, claim; avenge, punish*.

in libertatem vindicare, to claim for liberty, set free, free.

vineā, -ae, f., vineyard; arbor-shed, vinea, a movable shed with a sloping roof, smaller than the tortoise-shed (see testūdō), used as a shelter for soldiers working the artillery or attempting to undermine a wall; the sides were probably in some cases left open; in other cases the sides were enclosed and the ends left open, so that a number of vineae, placed end to end in a row, would afford an avenue of approach to the enemy's wall. The dimensions are given by Vegetius as 16 feet long, 8 feet wide, and 7 feet high. The outside was covered with rawhides or other material to protect against fire. See INTRO., p. 23.

vinum, -i, n., wine.

violō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [cf. vis], 1, treat with violence, injure; dishonor, outrage, violate.

vir, viri, m., male person, man; husband.

virga, -ae, f., twig, sprout; switch, scourge.

virgō, -inis, f., maid, maiden, virgin; young woman, girl.

Viriāthus, -i, m., Viriāthus, a leader of the Lusitanians, who made war against the Romans. He was slain by his own followers.

Viridomarus, -i, m., Viridomarus, a king of the Gauls, conquered and slain by Marcellus.

viritim, [vir], adv., man by man, singly, individually.

Viromandui, -orum, [Kel., = 'Clients, or Descendants, of Viromandus'], m., pl., a Belgic state

about the headwaters of the Samara (Somme) and the Scaldia (Schelde). See map opp. p. 114.

virtūs, -ūtis, [vir], f., manliness; courage, bravery, valor, prowess; vigor, energy; effort; worth, goodness. Pl., manly qualities, virtues.

vis, acc. vim, abl. vī, pl. virēs, -ium, f., strength; force, violence; influence; quantity, number. Pl., physical powers, strength.

visus, see videō.

visus, -ūs, [videō], m., look; appearance, vision.

vita, -ae, [cf. vivō], f., life; way of life; existence, being.

vitis, -is, f., vine, grape-vine.

vitium, -i, n., fault, defect, blemish, vice; unfavorable sign; offence, crime.

vītō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 1, shun, seek to escape, avoid.

vivō, vivere, vixi, victus, 3, live, be alive, have life; pass the time, live; dwell.

vivus, -a, -um, [cf. vivō], adj., alive, living, having life; of a river, running; lively, vigorous, vivacious.

vix, adv., with difficulty, hardly, scarcely, barely.

Vocciō, -ōnis, m., a king of the Norici.

vōciferor, -ārī, -ātus sum, [vōx, cf. ferō], 1, dep., cry out, exclaim, shout, vociferate.

vocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [cf. vōx], 1, call, summon, invoke; call by name, name; call for, demand; call together, bid, invite; call, put, set, place. in crimen vocāre, to accuse.

Vocontii, -ōrum, m., pl., a Gallic

state in 'the Province,' east of the Rhone. See map opp. p. 114.

volitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [freq. of volō], 1, *fly to and fro, flit about, move, fly, hasten.*

volō, velle, volui, —, irr., *will, wish, be minded, determine; be willing, consent; mean, intend.*

Volscus, -a, -um, adj., *of the Volsci, Volscian.* As subst., Volsci, -ōrum, m., pl., *the Volscians*, an ancient people of Central Italy, southeast of Rome, included in Latium in its widest extent, with whom the Romans waged many wars in the early days of their history. See map opp. p. 30.

Volsō, see Mānlius.

volucer, -cris, -cre, adj., *flying, winged.* As subst., f., (sc. avis), *flying creature, bird.*

volūmen, -inis, [cf. volvō], n., *coil, whirl, fold; roll of writing, book, volume.*

Volumnia, -ae, f., *Volumnia*, the wife of Coriolanus.

voluntārius, -a, -um, [voluntās], adj., *willing, of free will, voluntary.* As subst., voluntārii, -ōrum, m., pl., *volunteers.*

voluntās, -ātis, [volō], f., *will, wish, inclination, desire; goodwill, affection; consent.* ēius voluntāte, *with his consent.*

voluptās, -ātis, [volō], f., *pleasure, enjoyment, delight; desire, passion.*

vōs, see tū.

vōtum, -ī, [voveō], n., *promise to a god, solemn pledge, vow; wish, longing, prayer.*

voveō, -ēre, vōvī, vōtus, 2, *vow,*

promise solemnly, dedicate, consecrate.

vōx, vōcis, f., *voice; utterance, cry, sound; word, saying.* Pl., vōcēs, *words, language, speeches, statements, sayings.*

vulgō, [vulgus], adv., *generally, commonly, everywhere.*

vulgus, -ī, n., *common people, mass, multitude, crowd.*

vulnerō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [vulus], 1, *wound, hurt.*

vulnus, -eris, n., *wound, blow, misfortune, calamity, defeat, disaster.*

vulpēs, -is, f., *fox.*

vultus, -ūs, m., *expression of countenance, looks, visage, feature; face.*

X.

Xanthippus, -ī, m., *Xanthippus*, a general of the Lacedaemonians, who, as leader of the Carthaginians, defeated Regulus.

Xenophōn, -ōntis, m., *Xenophon*, an Athenian who conducted the Retreat of the Ten Thousand in 400 B.C. He is celebrated also as a writer.

Xerxēs, -is or -ī, [Ξέρξης], m., *Xerxes*, king of the Persians from 485 to 465 B.C., son of Darius Hystaspis. He undertook a great expedition against Greece, but was defeated at Salamis in 480 B.C.

Z.

Zama, -ae, f., *Zama*, a town in Numidia, southwest of Carthage, the scene of the defeat of Hannibal by Scipio Africanus.

BENNETT'S LATIN GRAMMAR.

By Prof. CHARLES E. BENNETT, Cornell University.

12mo. Cloth. 265 pages. Price, 80 cents.

"The best school grammar of Latin in the English language." — THE CRITIC, Feb. 29, 1896.

The unprecedented recognition of the soundness and wisdom of Professor Bennett's plan of omitting all that is useless, while retaining and emphasizing all that is necessary, has led other publishers to imitation, — the sincerest admission of success. Nothing, however, has yet been published that rivals his work in mastery of the subject, in homogeneity of treatment, in its harmony with modern scholarship, and adaptability to the special needs for which it was written.

References to *Bennett's Latin Grammar* are given in the notes of

Rolfe's *Viri Romae* and *Nepos*;
Kelsey's *Caesar*, *Cicero*, and *Ovid*;
Comstock's *Aeneid of Virgil*;
Bennett's *Latin Composition*;

and in the recent texts of all other publishers who have no motive for ignoring it.

"Commends itself for its excellent arrangement and its clearness." — REVUE CRITIQUE, No. 21, 1895.

Prof. Heinrich Koziol, in the *Zeitschrift für die oesterreichischen Gymnasien*, 1896, p. 995. As compared with the other American books of its kind which the reviewer has seen, Bennett's *Latin Grammar* (the book before us) marks a great advance. While the others suffer from lack of system, this book exhibits a methodical plan in the treatment of forms and syntax. The results of comparative philology also, so far as they are available for the purposes of instruction in the school, have been incorporated in the book.

BENNETT'S LATIN GRAMMAR.

"Clear, direct, scholarly, untrammelled by tradition."

Bennett's Latin Grammar is endorsed by college professors all over the country, and is conceded to be ample, not only for all preparatory work, but for the required courses in college and university.

Prof. Frances E. Lord, Wellesley College. Admirably adapted to the use of students in secondary schools.

Prof. G. A. H. Fraser, Colorado College. No clearer or plainer statement could be made of the essentials of Latin grammar.

Prof. Elmer T. Merrill, Wesleyan University. It is amply sufficient for all instruction in Latin Grammar in preparation for college.

Prof. E. P. Morris, Yale University. Any student who has worked through the book carefully will be well prepared for his Latin work in college.

Prof. J. Leverett Moore, Vassar College. I heartily approve of Professor Bennett's plan of separating the essentials from the luxuries of Latin Grammar.

Prof. J. E. Goodrich, University of Vermont. It contains all the essentials clearly, shortly, and happily stated, in a logical and orderly arrangement.

Prof. W. S. Wyman, University of Alabama. I know of no book so admirably adapted to the needs of students in the secondary schools and in college classes.

Prof. Alfred M. Wilson, Lewis Institute, Chicago. A Grammar which puts within the reach of all the latest and ripest results of modern scholarship.

Prof. J. H. Westcott, Princeton University. It contains all that is needed by the schoolboy and the average college student; far more than most students ever learn.

Prof. Ferris W. Price, Swarthmore College. By the relegation of non-essentials to the Appendix the ordinary student will find what remains clearer, more accessible, and therefore practically more useful.

Prof. Harry Thurston Peck, Columbia University. Here is everything that a preparatory student ever needs in the way of grammatical information, clearly and concisely put, and with not an unnecessary line or superfluous rule.

Prof. Emma R. Clark, Elmira College for Women. All necessary matters are treated briefly, simply, and clearly, and each is regarded from a scholarly point of view. The general adoption of this grammar will further the interests of classical training.

Prof. Alfred Gudeman, University of Pennsylvania. Incomparably the best and most serviceable Elementary Latin Grammar ever published in English. It is throughout distinguished by lucidity of exposition and arrangement; by a fine discrimination between what is essential and what is relatively unimportant to the beginner.

A NEW EDITION OF AN OLD FAVORITE.

KELSEY'S CAESAR.

Edited by Prof. FRANCIS W. KELSEY, University of Michigan.

Ninth and Revised Edition.

12mo. Half leather. 584 pages. Illustrations, Maps, and Plans. Price, \$1.25.

Copies of the Text, in a separate pamphlet, will be furnished free to schools using this edition.

Kelsey's Caesar was first published in the summer of 1886, and may fairly be said to have inaugurated a new epoch in the editing of Latin classics for the use of secondary schools. Its appearance forced other publishers to revise their editions of this author, and to imitate the notable features introduced by Professor Kelsey. Some of the prominent features that won for the book its instant and widespread popularity were :

The comprehensive and scholarly Introduction, giving a compact but stimulating account of Caesar's life and times, of the Roman army and art of war, together with an outline of the geography of the countries mentioned in the Gallic War ;

The apt and sensible Notes, giving ample aid to the student where he needs it the most, together with constant suggestions as to the historic and human interest of Caesar's story ;

The Vocabulary, aiming to help the pupil, and to give him such assistance as he needs and such knowledge as he can digest, rather than an exhibition of the author's erudition ;

Pertinent and interesting Illustrations, and accurate Maps and Plans ;
The Table of Idioms, found nowhere else.

THE NEW EDITION IS FURTHER DISTINGUISHED BY :

Larger Type.

Improved Maps.

Marked Quantities.

Thoroughly Revised Notes.

Introduction wholly Rewritten.

Vocabulary Extended and Improved.

Text Scientifically Divided into Paragraphs.

A List giving English Pronunciation of Proper Names.

KELSEY'S CAESAR.

W. F. Bradbury, *Classical High School, Cambridge, Mass.* A work of art in every respect.

W. E. Stearns, *Free Academy, Rome, N.Y.* To say that I am delighted with it puts it very mildly. I do not see how there can be any demand for another text-book of Caesar after this.

Mary E. Taylor, *Lake Forest Academy, Ill.* A good book made better.

Dr. Richard M. Jones, *Head-Master William Penn Charter School, Philadelphia, Pa.* I congratulate you, as the first in this country to embody the modern idea of a school edition of Caesar, upon your pluck in determining to retain your place at the head of the Caesar column, and upon the resources and enterprise which will enable you to stay there. I have, therefore, taken great pleasure in placing the book upon our order list for next autumn.

Avarene L. Budd, *Annex Girls' High School, Philadelphia, Pa.* More attractive than any other with which I am familiar.

T. P. Farr, *Prin. High School, Rockland, Mass.* Superior to the first edition, and I considered that the best.

Preston S. Hyde, *Moore's Hill College, Moore's Hill, Ind.* A magnificent volume, and near perfection in mechanical art.

James B. Smiley, *West High School, Cleveland, Ohio.* The best school edition of Caesar that we have.

Walter E. Severance, *High School, Portland, Me.* Contains many points of superiority over other works.

Mary B. Rockwood, *Girls' Latin School, Baltimore, Md.* I could hardly have believed so much improvement possible in so excellent a work.

Victor S. Clark, *Supt., Lake City, Minn.* In typographical make-up and scholarliness I certainly prefer it to any other edition of Caesar on the market.

Russell K. Bedgood, *Prin. High School, Lafayette, Ind.* The best text for secondary schools with which I am acquainted. The paragraph arrangement is especially to be commended.

Prof. J. H. Westcott, *Princeton University.* It is a marvel of modern school book making. I wish I could begin over again with such books as this, Rolfe's *Nepos*, and *Comstock's Virgil*.

C. C. Carstens, *Prin. High School, Marshalltown, Ia.* By all means the most attractive Caesar that has come to my notice. Its notes and battle plans are especially clear and helpful.

Jno. W. Short, *Supt., Liberty, Ind.* I find its notes judicious, its idiomatic table very full and helpful, and its references to parallel historical reading exceedingly valuable to a correct knowledge of the text.

V. L. Huey, *High School, Champaign, Ill.* Leaves nothing to be desired in printing and binding, while scholarship and judgment have combined to make the selection and arrangement of material a decided improvement over any other text now offered to the student of Caesar. The division into paragraphs will be an assistance to the student in grasping the thought of the author.

KELSEY'S CICERO.

Edited by Prof. FRANCIS W. KELSEY, University of Michigan.

Sixth and Revised Edition.

12mo. Half leather. 518 pages, with Illustrations, Maps, and Plans.
Price, \$1.25.

The Letters and Orations of Cicero have been edited on the same plan as Kelsey's Caesar and the novel features introduced have proved equally practical and stimulating.

Eight Orations are given, the four against Catiline, those for the Manilian Law, the poet Archias, and Marcellus, and the fourth oration against Antony. These are edited with a view to showing their value as examples of oratory, rather than as offering mere material for grammatical drill.

Forty-six Letters have been selected. They afford pleasant glimpses of Cicero's private life, and help to make real the pupil's conception of the orator as a man, and of the times in which he lived. As material for short exercises for sight translation or rapid reading they will be found of special value.

An Introduction of sixty pages contains, besides a life of Cicero, a clear analysis of the Roman oration, and an account of the occasion and circumstances of the delivery of each oration given. To this is added a brief outline of the Roman constitution and modes of legal procedure. Here, and throughout the Notes it is attempted to make the whole environment of the orator a reality to the student.

A Table of Idioms and Phrases, found in no other edition, and several excellent and pertinent illustrations and maps greatly enhance the value of the book.

C. D. Welch, *High School, St. Paul, Minn.* Stimulating, suggestive, and helpful.

T. J. Bassett, *DePauw University, Greencastle, Ind.* The very best edition which I have yet seen.

Prof. F. M. Austin, *Wesleyan Academy, Wilbraham, Mass.* I like the Cicero more the longer I use it. It is certainly all one could ask in the way of a text-book in Cicero, and is superior to anything in that line that I have ever used.

Prof. W. F. Palmer, *Lake Forest Academy, Lake Forest, Ill.* The edition of Cicero fully sustains Professor Kelsey's reputation as an author. The introduction and analysis of the orations are exceptionally fine and pointed. The notes are scholarly and suggestive.

Prof. William R. Warren, *Bethany College, Bethany, W. Va.* The choice of Orations and Letters won me to Professor Kelsey's book at once. On further examination I found that he had kept in learned and sympathetic touch not only with the genius of the great author, but with the powers and needs of the young men and women whom he would introduce to him. He is most happy in preserving these two vital relations.

KELSEY'S OVID.

Edited by Prof. FRANCIS W. KELSEY, University of Michigan.

Fourth and Revised Edition.

12mo. Half leather. 447 pages. Illustrated. Price, \$1.25.

As in the editions of Caesar and Cicero by the same editor, no pains have been spared to make this book pleasing to the eye and useful to the student.

The selections aggregate 2700 lines, sufficient to meet the requirements of any college. With a few exceptions they are short and complete in themselves. A considerable number will be found suitable for sight reading.

The Introduction, which has been made a prominent feature of this as of all of Professor Kelsey's works, contains besides a sketch of the life and works of the poet a full and suggestive outline of Greek and Roman mythology.

The Notes lay special emphasis upon the literary importance of the selections, and aim by means of apt quotations from the English poets to bring the pupil to a right appreciation and enjoyment of Ovid's poetry.

J. W. Porter, *Hamilton Female College, Lexington, Ky.* The best edition of Ovid with which I am familiar.

Marion L. Lawall, *Iowa College, Grinnell, Ia.* Superior to all the other editions of Ovid that I have ever seen or used.

Charles R. Forster, *McKendree College, Lebanon, Ill.* Easily the best and most inspiring edition of Ovid yet put forth.

William C. Collar, *Head Master, Roxbury Latin School, Mass.* I am glad to see an edition containing so good and so varied a collection from Ovid's writings. I am particularly pleased with the frequent and happy quotations, in the notes, of passages from English poets.

A. Fremont Hendrix, *Central College, Fayette, Mo.* I am glad to be able to give my students who are beginning to read Latin poetry a book that, through its sympathetic sketch of Ovid, its lucid résumé of the Greek and the Roman mythology, its selections, — unexcelled in their variety and excellence, its helpful notes, — with their happy quotations from English poetry, — so preserves the literary charm of the poet, and that will so arouse the student to a genuine appreciation of the text as true poetry.

L. C. Hull, *Lawrenceville School, N. Y.* Professor Kelsey has again shown how admirably he can meet the wants of good teachers. But his edition of Ovid does more than this. It must quicken the poetic sense of even the most prosaic teachers. I cannot help feeling that many a pupil will thank Professor Kelsey for having shown how the same themes that inspired Ovid still live in our own English classics. We have had given to us a manual of mythology, a scholarly edition of a Latin classic, and an abundance of poetic inspiration, all at once. Ovid did not write to exhibit the grammatical usages of his day, or to help make philologists; and Professor Kelsey has not made the mistake of supposing that his verses are best used when they are made to serve such purposes.

COMSTOCK'S AENEID OF VIRGIL

By D. Y. Comstock, Principal of St. Johnsbury Academy

12mo. Cloth. 566 pages, Illustrated. Price, \$1.40.

The complete story of the Aeneid is presented in this edition. Books I.-VI. are given entire, Books VIII. and IX. almost entire, and such brief selections from the other Books as will enable the student to secure a connected idea of Virgil's great Epic as a whole.

The Introduction tells about the Poet and the Poem,—its theme, sources, story, purpose, and influence upon literature. There are chapters on Classical Mythology and Prosody, and some very useful pages of Student Helps and of Hints on the Translation of Latin Poetry.

The Notes attempt—successfully those who use the book say—"to give aid of the right sort, in right measure, and at the right time." The literary and human interest of the poem is made prominent throughout.

Full-page Illustrations and a Map showing the "Wanderings of Aeneas" add to the beauty and usefulness of this edition.

Prof. J. W. Stearns, *University of Wisconsin*. What our pupils need is help to the appreciation of Virgil as literature, . . . and this is what Mr. Comstock has given them.

F. W. Atkinson, *High School, Springfield, Mass.* I like the Notes particularly well; they show a good deal of common sense, to say nothing of scholarship.

J. H. Humphries, *Girls' High School, Philadelphia, Pa.* There is a heap of helpful common sense in all that comes before the text.

A. B. Babbitt, *DeLancey School, Philadelphia, Pa.* The Notes explain real difficulties and offer pertinent suggestions just where a pupil most needs them.

A. J. Holley, *The Hoosac School, Hoosick, N.Y.* Comstock's Virgil has given great satisfaction, and we have every reason to congratulate ourselves on this choice of text-book.

W. D. Ross, *High School, Fremont, Ohio*. Comstock's Virgil is excellent: notes brief and to the point; matter on mythology capital.

Daniel W. Lothman, *Central High School, Cleveland, Ohio*. I regard it as an excellent edition. The sections which have been added from the last books of the Aeneid furnish the best of material for sight-reading. The introductory matter is interesting and instructive. But the real merit of the book lies in the Notes, which are compact and to the point, and ought to do much to get both scholars and teachers away from the usual stereotyped "school-boy translation" to real English.

Wm. Taggart McCoy, *High School, Rensselaer, Ind.* The whole work is a masterpiece of scholarship and skilful presentation. The clearness of the text is supported by the comprehensiveness of the notes; and the valuable introduction, including the brief but effective article on mythology, gives a remarkably complete and self-sufficing character to the book. Its illustrations are well chosen and in the finest harmony with the text.

Acme Library Card Pocket
Under Pat. "Ref. Index File"

Made by **Library Bureau**

530 ATLANTIC AVE., BOSTON

Keep Your Card in the

